Ghulam Md Ashraf
Athanasios Alexiou *Editors*

Autism Spectrum Disorder and Alzheimer's Disease

Advances in Research

Springer

Autism Spectrum Disorder and Alzheimer's Disease

Ghulam Md Ashraf • Athanasios Alexiou
Editors

Autism Spectrum Disorder and Alzheimer's Disease

Advances in Research

Springer

Editors
Ghulam Md Ashraf
King Fahd Medical Research Center
Department of Medical Laboratory Sciences
Faculty of Applied Medical Sciences
King Abdulaziz University
Jeddah, Saudi Arabia

Athanasios Alexiou
Department of Science and Engineering
Novel Global Community Educational Foundation
Sydney, Australia

ISBN 978-981-16-4557-0 ISBN 978-981-16-4558-7 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-4558-7

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd.
The registered company address is: 152 Beach Road, #21-01/04 Gateway East, Singapore 189721, Singapore

Preface

The multifactorial biological etiology of Alzheimer's disease and autism spectrum disorder leads to distinctive perception, thinking, and learning in affected individuals, providing a more profound emphasis on the need for early diagnosis, continuous assessment of patients, proper educational methods, and social environment.

This book explores alternative solutions for autism spectrum disorder based on the theory of brain plasticity, the relationship between the gut microbiota and the central nervous system, along with genetic factors and toxic metal exposures, which are responsible for the oxidative damage resulting in a decreased ability of patients to use objects or response to auditory stimuli. It also identifies and provides the latest research on memory loss, the first sign of cognitive impairment followed by behavioral disturbances.

This book also provides the latest research towards efficient Alzheimer's disease management, including targeting the disease with symptomatic treatments such as cholinesterase inhibitors, NMDA receptor antagonists, β-secretase and γ-secretase inhibitors, α-secretase stimulators, tau inhibitors, immunotherapy, nutraceuticals, and nano drugs. Alzheimer's disease symptoms are mainly associated with a rigorous neuronal decline and the appearance of two brain lesions, senile plaques, and neurofibrillary tangles, mainly composed of Aβ and hyperphosphorylated tau protein, respectively.

This book aims to serve as a reference book for those teaching in Neuroscience, Medicine, Biochemistry, Neuroinformatics, and Nanotechnology, and professionals in occupational therapy, geriatric clinics, and rehabilitation.

Chapter 1 discuss the latest updates in dementia pathophysiology, sleep pathologies in dementia, insomnia disorder, management of sleep disorders in dementia, and treating sleep with breathing in dementia.

Chapter 2 explore the latest research insights on understanding autism spectrum disorder and Alzheimer's disease pathogenesis with the perspective of mitochondrial dysregulation as the underlying phenomenon.

Chapter 3 overview the recent advances and trends regarding autism spectrum disorder and its correlation with Alzheimer's disease and the medications approved for Alzheimer's disease, which have also been observed to be effective in autism spectrum disorder.

Chapter 4 present the potential application of the most common natural products to Alzheimer's disease treatment due to minimizing side effects compared to isolated chemical compounds.

Chapter 5 investigates the role of environmental toxicants, mercury, accelerating symptoms, and natural compounds' therapeutic potential in preventing Alzheimer's disease, focusing on the environmental toxicants as a risk factor in Alzheimer's disease pathogenesis.

Chapter 6 provide a systematic review of Alzheimer's disease, viz. factors, environmental toxicity, genetic predisposition, and ongoing treatment strategies for developing novel drugs and the use of medicinal herbs for treating Alzheimer's disease.

Chapter 7 demonstrate deeper insights into the various polyphenols that play a pivotal role in the therapeutics of Alzheimer's disease due to their antioxidant properties providing neuroprotection and their properties of easily crossing the blood-brain barrier.

Chapter 8 investigate the spectrum of ChE inhibitors and NMDAR antagonists along with other treatment options used in Alzheimer's therapy.

Chapter 9 discuss the clinical features of psychotic illnesses, the relationship between these disorders with genetic insight, and the common therapeutic targets for these conditions.

Chapter 10 review the representation, visualization, and mathematical formulation mostly of RNA secondary structures, which can be viewed as steps towards the three-dimensional prediction modeling and their role in neurodegeneration.

Chapter 11 emphasize the current immune-therapeutics for treating Alzheimer's disease and autism spectrum disorder that have reached clinical trials and the connecting mechanisms involved in the aggregated/toxic proteins, such as amyloid-β peptide (Aβ), Aβ precursor protein (APP), tau, α-synuclein, and apolipoproteins.

Chapter 12 discuss the applications of nanoparticles in treating Alzheimer's disease, allowing the design of clever therapeutic carriers, which can simultaneously cross the blood-brain barrier and carry payloads to the specific objectives targets.

Chapter 13 highlight the potential aspects of ABC transporters in Alzheimer's disease treatment, while inadequate Aβ, which are physiologically assisted by the superfamily ABC transporters at the brain barrier, are essential in the progression of the disease.

Chapter 14 underline the importance for children with autism spectrum disorder to identify sleep profiles and to include various aspects of their symptom profiles in sleep deficiencies, resulting in new therapeutic strategies.

Chapter 15 focus on the cognitive impairment, executive dysfunction, and rehabilitation aspects of children and adults with autism spectrum disorder.

Jeddah, Saudi Arabia — Ghulam Md Ashraf
Sydney, Australia — Athanasios Alexiou

Keywords

Acetyl cholinesterase inhibitors · Alzheimer's disease · Amyloid-β peptide · Apolipoproteins · ATP-binding cassette transporters · Autism spectrum disorder · Aβ precursor protein · Behavioral pathophysiology · Bioenergetics · Blood-brain barrier · Central nervous system · Childhood-onset schizophrenia · Cognitive behavior therapy · Complexity · Dementia · Dialectical behavior therapy · Dynamic programming · Environmental toxicity · Genetic predisposition · Hyperplasticity · Immune dysfunction · Immunotherapy · Insomnia disorder · Liposomes · lncRNAs · Medicinal herbs · Mercury · Microbiome · Mitochondrial dysfunction · Multiplex developmental disorder · Music therapy · Nanoparticles · Natural compounds · Neurodegeneration · NMDA receptor antagonist · Oxidative stress · Polyphenols · Sleep disorders · Prediction · Psychotic illness · RNA secondary structures · Schizophrenia · Social cognition · Speech therapy · Treating sleep

Contents

1 **Behavioral Pathophysiology and Psychological Implications for Sleep Disorder in Dementia** 1
Rokeya Akter, Deepak Kaushik, Kuldeep Kumar, and Md. Habibur Rahman

2 **Mitochondrial Dysfunction: A Key Player in the Pathogenesis of Autism Spectrum Disorders and Alzheimer's Disease** 21
Aisha Farhana and Yusuf Saleem Khan

3 **The Pathogenesis and Complications Associated with Autism Spectrum Disorder and Alzheimer's Disease: A Comparative Study** 43
Ishfaq Ahmad Ahanger, Anurag Sharma, and Asimul Islam

4 **Impact of Common Natural Compound in the Treatment of Alzheimer's Disease** 63
Vishav Prabhjot Kaur, Sachchida Nand Rai, Tania Bajaj, Hemraj Heer, Vishal Puri, Vivek K. Chaturvedi, Arti Singh, Ghulam Md Ashraf, M. P. Singh, and Charan Singh

5 **Mapping a Link Between Mercury Toxicity and Alzheimer's Disease** 83
Swati Kundu

6 **Drug Therapy of Alzheimer's Disease: Cholinesterase Inhibitors, NMDA Antagonists** 95
Sana Nafees, Md Faiz Akram, and Md Asad Khan

7 **Therapeutic Potential of Polyphenols in Alzheimer's Therapy: Broad-Spectrum and Minimal Side Effects as Key Aspects** 111
Anas Shamsi, Saleha Anwar, Taj Mohammad, Moyad Shahwan, Md. Imtaiyaz Hassan, and Asimul Islam

8 **Recent Advances in Alzheimer's Disease in Relation to Cholinesterase Inhibitors and NMDA Receptor Antagonists** 135
Nazia Nazam, Aisha Farhana, and Sibhghatulla Shaikh

9 Genetic Basis of Psychotic Illnesses: A Comprehensive Overview . . 153
Md. Abdul Aziz, Tahmina Akter, Md. Abdul Barek, and Mohammad Safiqul Islam

10 RNA Secondary Structures in Neurodegeneration 165
Niraj Kumar Jha, Anna Maria Louka, Christos Tsagkaris, Panagiotis Christoforou, Filia Alexiou, Panagiota Simou, Ioannis Haranas, Ioannis Gkigkitzis, Georgios Zouganelis, Md. Sahab Uddin, Ghulam Md Ashraf, Mohammad A. Kamal, and Athanasios Alexiou

11 Immunotherapy: An Approach to Treat Alzheimer's Disease and Autism Spectrum Disorder 191
Farah Ma'arfi, Ziaul Hasan, Afreen Khanam, Arbab Husain, Mohammad Haroon Rasheed Khan, and Mohd Yasir Khan

12 Alzheimer's Disease (AD): Physiological Barriers for Therapy and Nanotechnological Applications in Treatment 215
Mohd Ahmar Rauf, Katyayani Tatiparti, and Arun K. Iyer

13 Role of Impaired ABC Transporters in Alzheimer's Disease 239
Mahin Haque, Gulzar Ahmed Rather, Ehraz Mehmood Siddiqui, Sadaf Jahan, Andleeb Khan, Hafiz Antar Makeen, Athanasios Alexiou, and Ghulam Md Ashraf

14 Autism Spectrum Disorder Relationship Between Sleep and Behavior: The Effect of Sleep Variability Exploration 283
Rokeya Akter and Md. Habibur Rahman

15 Cognitive Impairment and Rehabilitation of Children and Adults with Autism Spectrum Disorder 301
Fauzia Nazam and Akbar Husain

About the Editors

Ghulam Md Ashraf is an associate professor at King Fahd Medical Research Center, King Abdulaziz University, Saudi Arabia. His PhD is in biochemistry from Aligarh Muslim University in India. His current research focuses on understanding antidiabetic drugs' molecular and behavioral mechanisms in various dementia conditions. He has more than 300 publications (citations: 6075, H-index: 40, i10-index: 150) and is involved in many research projects at the King Abdulaziz University. He is also involved in the editorial capacity for many reputed journals. He is professionally associated with the Royal Society of Medicine (Fellow), Royal Society of Biology (Member), American Society for Biochemistry and Molecular Biology (Member) and Canadian Association of Neuroscience (Member). He has also been approved as a subject of biographical record in Marquis Who's Who in the World (2020). He has been recognized as Expertscape World Expert (top 0.1% scientist) in Alzheimer's disease and Nervous System Diseases. Recently, he has been listed in Top 2% Scientists Worldwide announced by Elsevier BV.

Athanasios Alexiou is a faculty member at the Novel Global Community Education Foundation in Australia. His PhD from the Ionian University is in bioinformatics algorithms and mathematical modeling in biology and his postdoc on neuroinformatics applications. His main research field is biomedical informatics and bioethics, specializing in medical decision support systems, biomarkers modeling, and computational neuroscience. He serves as an associate editor in high-impact journals with almost 100 publications and several research projects in neuroscience.

1 Behavioral Pathophysiology and Psychological Implications for Sleep Disorder in Dementia

Rokeya Akter, Deepak Kaushik, Kuldeep Kumar, and Md. Habibur Rahman

Abstract

Dementia is considered rigorous neurodegenerative disarray, and it might be categorized addicted to numerous subtypes by dissimilar pathogenic reasons. Moreover, dementia is the typically second-hand expression for indicative and arithmetical physical 5 version main neurodegenerative disorders. These disorders characterized through functionally impairing refuse in individual or additional cognitive domains, like concentration, administrative role, reminiscence, or verbal statement, as strong-minded by equally the past and purpose deficits lying on bedside cognitive assessments or official neuropsychological trying. However, the burden of dementia is rising internationally. In the nonattendance of remedial action, defensive techniques to holdup or decrease succession of dementia are vital, relying on resting on the recognition of modifiable factors. The belongings of dementia lying on sleep are healthy documented; though, there is currently rising confirmation signifying bidirectional association connecting sleep pathologies with dementia. Equally, middle-aged and adult populations typically practice sleep-disordered breathing (SDB), deprived

R. Akter
Department of Pharmacy, Jagannath University, Sadarghat, Dhaka, Bangladesh

D. Kaushik
Department of Pharmaceutical Sciences, Maharshi Dayanand University, Rohtak, Haryana, India

K. Kumar
Department of Pharmaceutical Sciences and Drug Research, Punjabi University, Patiala, Punjab, India

M. H. Rahman (✉)
Department of Pharmaceutical Sciences and Drug Research, Punjabi University, Patiala, Punjab, India

Department of Global Medical Science, Wonju College of Medicine, Yonsei University, Wonju, Gangwon-do, South Korea
e-mail: pharmacisthabib@yonsei.ac.kr

G. Md Ashraf, A. Alexiou (eds.), *Autism Spectrum Disorder and Alzheimer's Disease*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-4558-7_1

superiority sleep, and limits of sleep. It has been related to the amplified risk of dementia with cognitive refuse in an integer of observational reports, albeit disconnectedly. The mechanisms of sleep disorders might donate to neurodegeneration are various and comprise impacts of disjointed sleep on the permission of neurotoxins within SDB via the preservative property of irregular hypoxia beta-amyloid creation, hypoxic cell loss, neuroinflammation with injuring to intellectual vasculature. Neuroimaging modalities present vital opportunities to appreciate the connection between snooze pathologies with dementia risk in vivo, particularly in the severe preclinical stage of AD. In this chapter, we highlighted in dementia pathophysiology, the confirmation connecting sleep pathologies through dementia, insomnia disorder, management of sleep disorders in dementia, Treating sleep with breathing in dementia, and draw the improvement informative this possible pathophysiological connection to have eventuated the request of neuroimaging.

Keywords

Dementia · Behavioral pathophysiology · Psychological implications · Insomnia disorder · Cognitive behavioral · Poor sleep

1.1 Introduction

Behavioral and psychological symptoms of dementia (BPSD) are a heterogeneous collection of non-cognitive symptoms and behavior in people who have dementias. Evidence recommended sleep might manipulate heart biomarkers of Alzheimer's disease (AD) (Akter et al. 2021; Rahman et al. 2021). Complexity in declining sleep (Shokeir 2014), poor sleep eminence (Lucey et al. 2018), sleep beating (Lucey et al. 2017), excessive daytime drowsiness (Carvalho et al. 2018), and sleep muddled inhalation (Shim et al. 2017) was recommended to raise intellectual Aβ evidence in non-demented aged. Dementia is a top reason for disability and loss worldwide (Livingston et al. 2017). It recurrently unfavorably affects together prejudiced and goal index of sleep (Brzecka et al. 2018), counting sleep-disordered inhalation (Emamian et al. 2016). There is a mounting confirmation to sleep pathologies frequently lead to dementia analysis (Wennberg et al. 2017), suggesting that certain sleep changes might not merely be an indicator of enlarged risk but might straight donate to dementia pathogenesis, particularly dementia attributable to Alzheimer's disease. Apnea (Arya et al. 2021; Díaz et al. 2017) or disruptive sleep apnea condition (Hooghiemstra et al. 2016) was connected to superior levels of AD-associated neuronal damage biomarkers. Sleep eminence might even adapt to the defensive property of additional ecological factors like body work out (Brown et al. 2015) on brain Aβ statement. There are several mechanisms which use sleep abnormalities. The detection of such pathways is challenging, complemented more by the heterogeneity of sleep alters and calculations, the various pathological reasons as healthy as the manifold mediator and the confounding reasons for dementia which needed the accountability. Quality of sleep abnormalities reproduce preclinical

pathological alters in areas of the intelligence serious for an excellent sleep. Sleep troubles are widespread issues for adults (Dekker et al. 2019). Compromised sleep is connected with an inferior in general and sleep-related fitness position, which might guide to unhelpful individual and communal penalty (Del Campo et al. 2011). Individuals with sleep troubles account for superior levels of nervousness, unhappy mood, physical hurt and uneasiness, and cognitive deficiencies (Kyle et al. 2010). Insomnia might also be connected by long-term fitness penalty, counting augmented morbidity, respiratory illness, rheumatic illness, cardiovascular sickness, cerebrovascular circumstances, and diabetes. Besides, potential legion studies have originated that different sleep situations or parameters, like insomnia (Benedict et al. 2015), disruptive sleep apnea (Lutsey et al. 2018), sleep linked behaviors disarray (Yaffe et al. 2011), and altered sleep period (Westwood et al. 2017), might appreciably raise the risk of cognitive disorders between non-demented adults. In the past 2 existence, large amounts of legion studies have sprung up to discover the longitudinal incurring of sleep-connected exposures on events of cognitive disarray, which necessitates a resourceful methodical review. Generally, dementia is a scientific condition recognized through the expansion of cognitive mutilation of adequate harshness to crash a person's everyday function. It is also an analysis made following keeping out of reversible reasons. Nearly all dementias are progressive circumstances as bereavement is predictable and intended for which rejection healing action is obtainable (Livingston et al. 2017). Mild cognitive impairment (MCI) is a more syndrome analysis; within cognitive utility that is underneath that predictable for a period but is inadequate to collision everyday function. Among 39% of people through MCI resolve development to dementia. The commonness of dementia is powerfully connected to grow old, with about 1 in 10 peoples aged more than 65 years and 3 within 10 elderly 85 years plus over exaggerated (Ward and Pase 2019). Even though the convinced category of dementia happens in the middle time, 90% of belongings happen in persons elderly 65 existence and more than, income again? is termed late start dementia (Elahi and Miller 2017; Rahman et al. 2020a). Through populations mature, the quantity of dementia belongings internationally, predictable to be 47 million within 2015, is predicted to come near nearly 150 million through 2050 (Livingston et al. 2017). In this chapter, we highlighted in dementia pathophysiology, the confirmation connecting sleep pathologies through dementia, and sketch the advances informative this possible pathophysiological connection that might have eventuated as of the submission of neuroimaging.

1.2 Imaging Relation of Dementia with Alzheimer's Disease

The most common neurodegenerative disorders include dementia. Dementia. It increases memory loss, deterioration of thoughts, and dying ability to do everyday business. The primary common fundamental pathologies are: AD, vascular dementia (VaD), and frontal temporal dementia (Forette and Boller 1991; Kalaria et al. 2008; Rahman et al. 2021). Owing to their similarities in pathophysiology and other risk factors, it is difficult to differentiate AD from VaD (Erkinjuntti 2001; Rahman et al.

2020a; Roman 2001). Every pathology at different levels, ensuing in various patients by clean cerebrovascular sickness and clean AD instead of the range's limits (Erkinjuntti 2001; Roman 2001). Awaiting 2018, the worldwide figure of populace livelihood by dementia has been anticipated by about 50 million (Patterson et al. 2018), and the figure will triple through 2050. The aging of this resident has important implications for the emergence of dementia, subsequent impairment enlargement and dependency (Sousa et al. 2009, 2010). The information and quantity of aged people are quickly increasing in mounting countries like India, China, and America (Espenshade et al. 2003), and dementia completed the major giving to disability in these events (Sousa et al. 2009). It is well-known massive lumber for families, health-mind techniques, and the entire civilization to mind and props up patients through dementia (Etters et al. 2008). Internationally, the price of the disease is around a trillion US dollars per time, and the expenditure is expected twice to 2030. Unplanned sampling in the case of door-to-door populations is an alternative, reliable technology in these studies as it includes patients who are unable to seek fitness treatment (Pringsheim et al. 2014). Although, the diversification of showing tackle has to be documented as the main problem in the opinion of the factual occurrence (Mayston et al. 2014) and the difference in verbal communication and civilization, as healthy as literacy levels, create it an enormous fence to conquer. Furthermore, the extended latency epoch flanked by the start of neurodegenerative processes withal analysis of dementia happening poses an additional confront informative to what degree sleep alters indeed predate, and consequently might add to, neurodegenerative processes, as opposed to what degree slumber abnormalities reproduce preclinical pathological alters in areas of the intelligence dangerous for high-quality sleep.

1.3 Insomnia Disorder in Dementia

Sleep troubles are common concerns for the elderly (Young n.d.). Compromised sleep is associated with a minor in general and sleep-related fitness standing, leading to unhelpful individual and community consequences. Individuals through sleep problems state superior levels of nervousness, miserable humor, physical soreness and uneasiness, and cognitive deficiency. Long-term health effects such as increasing morbidity, lung disease, rheumatism, cardiovascular disease, brain conditions, and diabetes can also include insomnia.

1.4 Significant Role of Insomnia with Dementia

Although, insomnia comprises a grievance of reduced sleep, through associated significant daytime belongings, happening at the slightest 3 nights for each week for at least 3 months (Beck 1979). Universal, epidemiologic studies account for constant scientific insomnia disarray about 10–12% (Lichstein et al. 2013; More et al. 2013; Ohayon 2002). In one report, 74% of persons with insomnia sustained to

have sleeplessness a year afterward, and about 46% reported sleeplessness persisting in favor of more than 3 years (Morin et al. 2009a). Conventionally measured as 'secondary,' subsumed as symptoms of extra-scientific diagnoses inside mental well-being mind, the lately revised analytic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, version 5 outlines the 'require for sovereign scientific notice of a slumber disorder' (American Psychiatric Association 2013). This is maintained by investigating representative not only to rates of cerebral and bodily health co-morbidity are elevated, but to pre-existing constant insomnia is a sovereign danger factor for the growth of gloominess (Baglioni et al. 2011), cardiovascular illness (Vgontzas et al. 2009a), and also category 2 diabetes (Vgontzas et al. 2009a, b). From the perspective of public well-being and happiness, sleep appears to exist an imperative subject that has been, up until now, renowned (Buysse 2014; Luyster et al. 2012).

1.5 Role of Pathophysiology in Dementia

There are numerous pathological reasons behind onset dementia. Correct classification needs neuropathological affirmation, although, in perform, judgment is based on syndromal observation. Around 2/3 of delayed dementia is due to AD (Rahman et al. 2020b; Uddin et al. 2020). This is pathologically well known through the development of cortically based extracellular beta-amyloid signs and neurofibrillary intracellular enclosures (Elahi and Miller 2017). The "amyloid cascade" principle of AD generally enhances the growth of beta-amyloid proteins. At the same time, the structure of cell membrane of small beta-amyloid peptide is inequitable. This is a higher protein such as amyloid precursor protein. Beta-amyloid cleavage with metabolism is damaged by a list of reasons that count heredity, partly unpredictable, although hypoxia and snooze may be significant. The excess beta-amyloid amassing can lead to an arrangement of Oligomers following these fibrils, following mats and finally extracellular plaques, which all serve to disrupt the position and relationship between neural cells. AD is next followed by expanding tau neurofibrillary tangles to spread during the intelligence happening intracellular injure, synaptic disability with neuronal cell loss, with contained hasty provocative processes accelerating injure. Jointly through structural neuroimaging events of neurodegeneration like as atrophy biomarkers strengthen the new National Institute of Aging and the Alzheimer's Association research structure that divides the attendance and phase of AD in vivo, recognizing to AD might be there in a preclinical phase biomarkers like as tau protein (Akter et al. 2021; Knopman et al. 2018). VaD is a different foremost donor behind beginning dementia. This might associate with big vessel stroke, which might be clinically "silent" brain planned lacunar infarction with little cerebral vessels' primary disease that might be calculated by the structural brain (Bos et al. 2018). Like AD, the VaD might also have an extended preclinical stage. Like dispersion tensor imaging (DTI), the latest structural imaging methods might allow the untimely test of the brain's pallid substance that might be distorted untimely in together vascular with AD pathologies (Bos et al. 2018). A combination of VaD with

AD pathologies is known and would seem to be phenotypically preservative (Arvanitakis et al. 2016).

1.6 Poor Sleep and Quality of Life Functioning

Characteristically, insomnia is connected with enlarged exhaustion, impaired labor output, condensed excellence of life with relationship approval, as healthy as augmented ill-health (Espie et al. 2012; Kyle et al. 2010; Roth and Ancoli-Israel 1999). Despite such confirmation of poor performance life form credited to deprived sleep and a necessary analytic principle for sleeplessness, there has been a moderately small investigation on life excellence. New astonishing known that the apparent collision on individual performance serves because of a significant driver of grievance and help-seeking performance rather than just apparent sleep defeat (Morin et al. 2006; Stepanski et al. 1989). In one big epidemiological report, four of the five mainly cited reasons for looking for a slumber discussion through a health expert were the morning penalty of exhaustion, mental suffering, physical uneasiness, and abridged work efficiency. Clinician information of enduring consultations, plus cross-sectional with prospective survey studies (Buysse et al. 2007; Levitt et al. 2004) additional display that persons through insomnia protest deficits in disposition, and cognitive power, joined through significant levels of nervousness, exhaustion, and bodily pain/uneasiness.

1.7 Insomnia Functioning with Cognitive Behavioral Therapy in Dementia

Cognitive-behavioral therapy (CBT) considered as the management of primary option for an importunate inadequate snooze (Espie et al. 2016; National Institutes of Health 2005), is a mental action intended to fracture the decoration of maladaptive thoughts and behavior to provide to uphold insomnia. CBT indicates various methods, counting a behavioral component joint through a cognitive with an instructive part. Meta-analyses point to CBT has reasonable to big and tough belongings on slumber excellence, sleep competence, sleep start latency plus wake-up time following sleep beginning (Mitchell et al. 2012; Trauer et al. 2015; Wu et al. 2015). Furthermore, about 60% of persons who be given CBT react to the action, and 39% attain reduction (Morin et al. 2009b). Rationally, effective action must lessen like impairments. Based on the confirmation that impaired sleep might be causally connected to condensed excellence of life domains, improving sleep should improve performance. There are a few beginning confirmations from minor analyses that CBT might yield widespread profits (Espie et al. 2001, 2007, 2008; Morin et al. 2009a), and still, a few primary data in little samples with CBT for sleeplessness might decrease depressive or nervousness symptoms (Manber et al. 2008; Pillai et al. 2015), but a sufficiently motorized, ultimate trial investigative useful health rank and well-being is extended unpaid.

1.8 The Role of Sleep in Dementia

It has elevated gratitude for the role of potentially adaptable dementia agents, such as high blood pressure, fatness, diabetes, sadness with low cognostic levels, and physical activity. These risk factors can be predicted jointly to contribute to over one-third of all traditional AD-related causes and to support the basis for many studies assessing multi-programming interventions in individuals. This background may be an unusually contemporary role of sleep pathologies in dementia. A number of resident studies with SDB propose (Ward and Pase 2019), low sleep excellence, extremely short or extended sleep before alters in slumber building (Pase et al. 2017) connect with higher risk dementia, counting dementia owing to equally AD with VaD. Although, these relations have not been time after time exposed. Besides, sleep changes might impact dementia risk through other pertinent mediators or connected factors, like obesity and diabetes. It is too hard to decide to what degree sleep alters are resultant as of preclinical neurodegenerative alters.

To be grateful for how sleep alters impact dementia pathogenesis, it is careful to appraise the contact dementia and MCI containing lying on sleep. People live through dementia are merely too well-known by alters in sleep to happen in dementia, like complexity through sleep start, distorted sleep/wake upcycles, disjointed sleep at night-time, extreme daylight sleepiness, and the augmented periods of daylight sleep (Musiek et al. 2018). Polysomnography reports explain improved sleep latency, abridged competence, augmented quantity of occasion exhausted in the lighter sleep events, and condensed time exhausted in sluggish-wave with fast eye group sleep in dementia. Comparable alters are also established in MCI, like in the society-based study. The fundamental sleep mechanisms that affect dementia may tell of a breach of neurodegenerative alterations by circadian beat of the brain and those concerned in the reserve of cortical stimulation, in particular circadian beats, changing sleep–wake-up cycles and a multiplicity of night-time arousals. Pet experiments showed that a stubborn sleep/wake-up cycle connects the Beta-amyloid accumulation (Roh et al. 2012). Tau protein collection takes place early on the hippocampus, a region essential to the development of non-RM slumber spindles with slow-gesticulation sleep, in the medial chronological lobe (Fjell et al. 2017). Cortical beta-amyloid accretion into the prefrontal cortex of medial media seems to harm the development of lenient oscillation of NREM (Mander et al. 2015). MCI dementia is also strongly linked to SDB. A meta-study of SDB in dementia recorded is approximately five times in stable older adults. MCI is related to the cognitive ordinary cognitive normal (CN), with a far superior apnea–hyperpnea directory in an elderly population Example of HypnoLaus (Haba-Rubio et al. 2017). This might be unbalanced ventilator manage ensuing beginning disjointed sleep, alter in the neuromuscular executive of the higher airway owing to degenerative alter the post middle gyrus (Joo et al. 2013) as like as upper airway power flaw, due to sarcopenia/bodily infirmity to regularly coexists with dementia. The pathological match-up has to establish to in AD, and tau protein accumulates untimely in the locus coeruleus, a section of the intelligence significant in inhalation directive and attentiveness (Fig. 1.1).

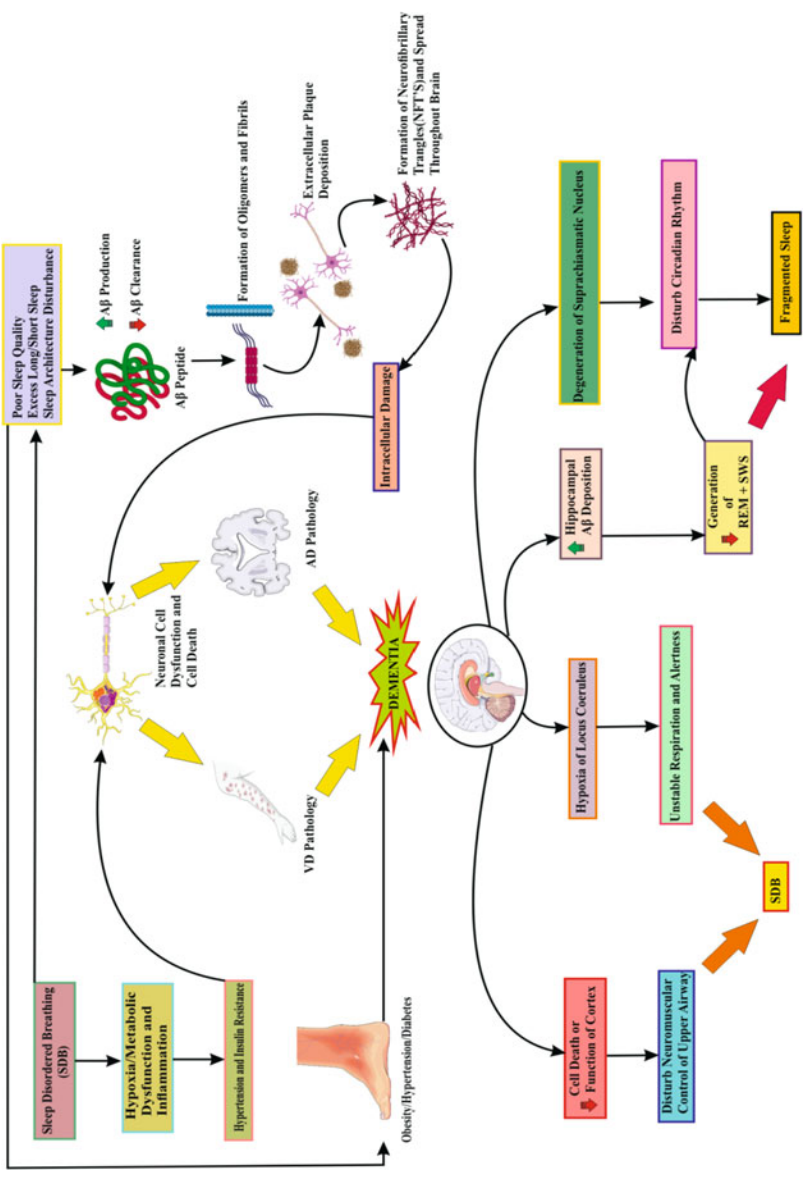


Fig. 1.1 Neuroimaging may reveal some of the pathways involved in sleep disorders that have a bidirectional relationship with neurodegeneration. Disjoined sleep may lead to condensed Aβ allowances, enabling the accumulation of toxic amyloid plaques to trigger AD pathology

1.9 Sleep Disorders Mechanism in Dementia Pathogenesis

Sleep play together healing and defensive actions in the brain and inequity might reasonably donate to neurodegeneration (Fig. 1.1). Several fundamental mechanisms are partially understood. For healing actions, sleep seems vital for the record of genes necessary for neural compartment casing and myelin honesty (Elvsåshagen et al. 2015), particularly in the pallid substance (Sexton et al. 2017; Takeuchi et al. 2018). Specific regions and functions of the intelligence in exacting might be more reliant on slumber for neural physical condition, such as preservation and reinstatement of hippocampus synaptic membranes (Van Someren et al. 2019). Sleep too appears vital for the intonation of synaptic relations, a procedure dangerous for knowledge and reminiscence (De Vivo et al. 2017). Crossways the era range, reports have exposed the significance of sleep on useful brain fitness events, particularly for the cognitive domains of reminiscence with concentration, as healthy as disposition with behavior (Scullin 2017). As a result, disturbed sleep can have reversible effects on cognitive utility, exacerbating dementia-related cognitive deficits, or contribute to minor neural cell loss and impairment that may be preservative to other neurodegenerative processes, lowering the threshold of pathological change required for dementia examination. Newly, pseudo-lymphatic coordination was discovered to give details on how the brain recover potentially neurotoxic squander (Iliff et al. 2012). This glymphatic structure has been exposed to be optimized throughout sleep (Xie et al. 2013). There is a preservative property in SDB. In addition to troublesome sleep, the periodic reductions and seizures through respiration help SDB guide irregular drops in oxygenation stages. Hypoxia itself might potentiate neural compartment loss with dysfunction, particularly inside the hippocampus, (Yuan et al. 2015), and has also been linked in mammal models through improved creation and condensed permission of beta-amyloid ("Leaf-nosed bat," 2009).

1.9.1 Consideration with the Management of Sleep Disorders in Dementia

Diagnosing sleep troubles in the populace through dementia might be complicated due to impaired reminiscence and short an imminent (Alzheimer's Association 2016; Roth 2012). For that reason, it is significant to meet together patients with caregivers (Urrestarazu and Iriarte 2016). Throughout these interviews, divan with wake-up times and bedtime routines must be reviewed. It thought to be renowned by sleep troubles in the populace through dementia are linked with lumber in caregivers of people through dementia, in exacting spousal caregivers (Rongve et al. 2010). Indeed, sleep troubles in dementia patients connecting to caregiver lumber have been established to be the main reason for the insertion populace through dementia in treatment homes (Pollak and Perlick 1991), identifying by treating slumber troubles in dementia might be vital to the happiness of patients and caregivers. We have encapsulated our suggestions in (Table 1.1) and meant for new particulars, see a new widespread review through Ooms and Ju (2016).

Table 1.1 Suggested treatments for dementia patients through sleep troubles

Sleep problem	Recommended pharmaceutical approach	Recommended non-pharmaceutical approach
Insomnia	Low dose (25–50 mg) trazodone; mirtazapine; melatonin	Bright light treatment; tumbling or withdraw caffeine with alcohol; dark and calm bedroom; not eating near bedtime; evade daytime sleeping; daytime bodily action
SDB	Think discontinuation of medications to might get worse SDB (e.g., benzodiazepines)	CPAP
Daytime sleepiness	Melatonin; altering present medication category with dosing	Daytime bodily movement
RBD	Melatonin; clonazepam	Eliminate potentially harmful substance from the bedroom; make barriers; evade antidepressants like caffeine and chocolate

Abbreviations: *CPAP* continuous positive airway pressure, *PD* Parkinson's disease, *RBD* rapid eye movement sleep behavior disorder, *SDB* sleep-disordered breathing

1.9.2 Daytime Sleepiness Treatment

Comparable to management for insomnia, melatonin has too exposed to get better daytime drowsiness and raise daytime motion (Brusco et al. 2000; Cohen-Mansfield et al. 2000; Dowling et al. 2008; Mishima et al. 2000). Daytime sleepiness might also be alleviated by altering the medication category with dosing (Urrestarazu and Iriarte 2016). Daytime sleepiness is general between people through dementia and is a particular predicament in PD. A new meta-analysis established that bodily activity might improve morning sleepiness, as healthy as numerous additional symptoms considered to be connected through sleep interruption in PD (Cusso et al. 2016). Confirmation from reports investigating pharmacological treatments' contact suggests with modafinil, and smaller amounts of caffeine with atomoxetine might improve too much daytime drowsiness in PD (Rodrigues et al. 2016). Overall, daytime drowsiness and night-time sleep troubles are regularly connected, with one problem exacerbating the new, so techniques aimed at referring problems might help lessen the new as glowing.

1.9.3 Treating Sleep with Breathing in Dementia

Continuous supportive airway stress therapy is often used to treat sleep-disordered breathing. Dementia patients with SDB seem to tolerate it at the same pace as non-demented SBD patients (Harmell et al. 2016) though, people with dementia through different neuropsychiatric syndromes might not accept continuous positive airway stress as well (AnChiu et al. 2008; Cooke et al. 2009). Two reports recommend to along with people among AD and SDB, and continuous positive airway stress use might help get better cognition, humor, and drowsiness (Ancoli-Israel

et al. 2008; Cooke et al. 2009). Continuous positive airway pressure has also been shown to lead to increases in hippocampal with cortical quantity, as well as blood oxygenation level dependent signals in the prefrontal cortex through subcortical areas (Archbold et al. 2009; Ayalon et al. 2006; Thomas et al. 2005; Zhang et al. 2011) which might potentially advance cognition.

1.9.4 Neuroimaging Studies in Dementia

Mainly significant proceed inconsiderate the relation among sleep disorders within scrupulous AD has been recognized through amyloid PET, known beta-amyloid lumber is prognostic of event dementia are shown in Table 1.2 (Elahi and Miller 2017). A study of 20 healthy men and women, with an average age of 40, who recorded their normal sleep cycle and then underwent sleep deficiency testing, is one of the most notable findings. The two were connected by baseline beta-amyloid timber, and the latter showed an improvement in all night beta-amyloid levels in the thalamus and hippocampus (Shokri-Kojori et al. 2018). Unhelpful health results connected to little sleep were too reported in an elder assembly of 70 men with women by a middle-age of about 76. Identity reported slight sleep was connected cross-sectionally through elevated beta-amyloid in the presumes with largely cortical freight, (Spira et al. 2013). However, no similar connections were found in three additional similarly sized irritated sectional studies analyzing sleep time in cohorts by a mean period of 62–76 life (Branger et al. 2016; Brown et al. 2016; Sprecher et al. 2015). In multiple studies elder populations, self-studied sleep dominance has to be originated to be linked cross-sectionally across global and local cortical beta-amyloid (Spira et al. 2013; Sprecher et al. 2015) particularly in connection by increased sleep latency (Branger et al. 2016) as like as linked by sleep construction alter as captured via PSG17 with actigraphy.

1.10 Conclusion with the Future Direction

The connection between sleep and dementia is complex and most likely bidirectional. Snoozes, as well as dementia, are associated with a number of customs. Sleep disturbances can be caused by a brain pathology called fundamental dementia. Via co-occurring sleep turbulence, sleep commotion may contribute to the improvement of dementia, and dementia may lead to a more rapid decline. The majority of the studies that have been related cross-sectional and warned on sleep as a risk factor for Alzheimer's disease (Cooke et al. 2006; Cricco et al. 2001; Lobo et al. 2008; Osorio et al. 2011; Talarico et al. 2013). Identifying by treating troubled sleep in people through dementia might improve multiple results, counting dementia route and caregiver lumber (Etters et al. 2008; Pollak and Perlick 1991). Sleep is an adaptable action. It is also a vital possible aim for involvement in cognitive refusal with dementia. Sleep as early on as in the prime of life might raise the hazard of dementia; this might have important implications for AD avoidance. Sleep, like other risk

Table 1.2 Beta-amyloid lumber is prognostic of event dementia

Study	Population	Design	Sleep measure	Confounders	Outcomes
Sleep quality					
Spira et al. (2013)	$n = 70$, F = 47% Age = 76 CN + MCI + D	Cross-sectional	Self-report WHIRS	Age/sex/race/BMI CVD/lung dis/depression Sleep meds/APOE4	↓ Sleep quality →
Spira (2014)	$n = 8$ CN, age 69 $n = 5$ MCI, age 75	Cross-sectional	PSG TST, AI, WASO	–	↑ Aβ in presumes
Mander et al. (2015)	$n = 26$, F = 69% Age = 75, CN	Cross-sectional	PSG EEG NREM and SWS	Age, sex Gray matter volume	↑ Aβ prefrontal cortex→
Branger et al. (2016)	$n = 51$, F = 55% Age = 64, CN	Cross-sectional	Self-report (PSQI)	Age/depression/anxiety/BMI/APOE4	↑ Sleep latency → ↑ Aβ
Sleep duration					
Sprecher et al. (2015)	$n = 98$, F = 67% Age = 62, CN	Cross-sectional	Self-report (MOS)	Age/sex/BMI/ Fam Hx AD/APOE4	No assoc
Branger et al. (2016)	$n = 51$, F = 55% Age = 64, CN	Cross-sectional	Self-report (PSQI)	Age/depression/anxiety/BMI/APOE4	No assoc
Daytime sleepiness					
Sprecher et al. (2015)	$n = 98$, F = 67% Age = 62, CN	Cross-sectional	Self-report (MOS and ESS)	Age/sex/BMI/ Fam Hx AD/APOE4	Sleepiness on MOS (but not ESS)→↑ Aβ
Carvalho et al. (2018)	$n = 283$, F = 28%	Longitudinal 2 years	Self-report (ESS)	Age/sex/Educ/PA/obesity/HT/DM/ Chol/depression/APOE4	EDS→ ↑ accumulation of Aβ

	Age = 77, CN + MCI				
Sleep-disordered breathing					
Spira (2014)	*n* = 8 CN, age 69 *n* = 5 MCI, age 75	Cross-sectional	PSG: AHI, TST AI, WASO	–	In MCI, ↑ AHI → ↑ Aβ global, precuneus
Elias (2018)	*n* = 42 w OSA, CN 77 controls Age = 68	Cross-sectional	OSA + CPAP use/PSG	Age/Educ/vascular APOE4/BMI	No assoc. of Aβ or tau in adjusted models with OSA or CPAP

Abbreviations: *Aβ* beta-amyloid, *AD* Alzheimer's disease, *AHI* apnea–hypopnea index, *AI* arousal index, *APOE4* apolipoprotein E4; assoc., association, *BMI* body mass index, *Chol* cholesterol, *CN* cognitively normal, *CPAP* continuous positive airway pressure, *CVD* cardiovascular disease, *D* dementia, *DIS* difficulty initiating sleep, *DM* diabetes mellitus, *EDS* excessive daytime sleepiness, *Educ* education, *EEG* electroencephalogram, *ESS* Epworth Sleepiness Scale, *ETOH* alcohol use, *F* female, *Fam Hx AD* family history of AD, *HT* hypertension, *lung dis* lung disease, *MCI* mild cognitive impairment, *MOS* Medical Outcomes Sleep Scale, *n* number, *NREM* non-rapid eye movement, *OSA* obstructive sleep apnea, *PA* physical activity, *PET* positron emission technology, *PSG* polysomnography, *PSQI* Pittsburgh Sleep Quality Index, *SD* sleep deprivation, *SWS* slow-wave sleep, *TST* total sleep time, *WASO* wake after sleep onset, *WHIRS* Women's Health Initiative Insomnia Rating Sca

factors for Alzheimer's disease, will need to be challenged in midlife. However, more investigation in this field is required. Affecting ahead, sleep investigation can decide trajectories of dementia, get a better patient prediction, and decrease the threat of deprived scientific consequences, as well as dementia oneself.

Conflict of Interest All the authors declare that they have no conflict of interest.

References

Akter R, Rahman MH, Behl T, Chowdhury MAR, Manirujjaman M, Bulbul IJ et al (2021) Prospective role of polyphenolic compounds in the treatment of neurodegenerative diseases. CNS Neurol Disord Drug Targets

Alzheimer's Association (2016) 2016 Alzheimer's disease facts and figures. Alzheimers Dement 12 (4):459–509

American Psychiatric Association (2013) Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders. BMC Med 17:133–137

AnChiu C, Xian W, Moss CF (2008) Flying in silence: echolocating bats cease vocalizing to avoid sonar jamming. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 105(35):13116–13121. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.0804408105

Ancoli-Israel S, Palmer BW, Cooke JR, Corey-Bloom J, Fiorentino L, Natarajan L et al (2008) Cognitive effects of treating obstructive sleep apnea in Alzheimer's disease: a randomized controlled study. J Am Geriatr Soc 56(11):2076–2081

Archbold KH, Borghesani PR, Mahurin RK, Kapur VK, Landis CA (2009) Neural activation patterns during working memory tasks and OSA disease severity: preliminary findings. J Clin Sleep Med 5(01):21–27

Arvanitakis Z, Capuano AW, Leurgans SE, Bennett DA, Schneider JA (2016) Relation of cerebral vessel disease to Alzheimer's disease dementia and cognitive function in elderly people: a cross-sectional study. Lancet Neurol 15(9):934–943

Arya A, Chahal R, Rao R, Rahman M, Kaushik D, Akhtar MF et al (2021) Acetylcholinesterase inhibitory potential of various sesquiterpene analogues for Alzheimer's disease therapy. Biomolecules 11(3):350

Ayalon L, Ancoli-Israel S, Klemfuss Z, Shalauta MD, Drummond SP (2006) Increased brain activation during verbal learning in obstructive sleep apnea. NeuroImage 31(4):1817–1825

Baglioni C, Battagliese G, Feige B, Spiegelhalder K, Nissen C, Voderholzer U et al (2011) Insomnia as a predictor of depression: a meta-analytic evaluation of longitudinal epidemiological studies. J Affect Disord 135(1–3):10–19

Beck AT (1979) Cognitive therapy of depression. Guilford Press, New York

Benedict C, Byberg L, Cedernaes J, Hogenkamp PS, Giedratis V, Kilander L et al (2015) Self-reported sleep disturbance is associated with Alzheimer's disease risk in men. Alzheimers Dement 11(9):1090–1097

Bos D, Wolters FJ, Darweesh SK, Vernooij MW, de Wolf F, Ikram MA, Hofman A (2018) Cerebral small vessel disease and the risk of dementia: a systematic review and meta-analysis of population-based evidence. Alzheimers Dement 14(11):1482–1492

Branger P, Arenaza-Urquijo EM, Tomadesso C, Mezenge F, André C, De Flores R et al (2016) Relationships between sleep quality and brain volume, metabolism, and amyloid deposition in late adulthood. Neurobiol Aging 41:107–114

Brown BM, Rainey-Smith SR, Villemagne VL, Peiffer JJ, Bird S, Laws SM et al (2015) Investigating the synergistic relationship between sleep quality, physical activity, and levels of brain beta-amyloid. Alzheimers Dement 11(7):P451

Brown BM, Rainey-Smith SR, Villemagne VL, Weinborn M, Bucks RS, Sohrabi HR et al (2016) The relationship between sleep quality and brain amyloid burden. Sleep 39(5):1063–1068

Brusco LI, Márquez M, Cardinali DP (2000) Melatonin treatment stabilizes chronobiologic and cognitive symptoms in Alzheimer's disease. Neuroendocrinol Lett 21(1):39–42
Brzecka A, Leszek J, Ashraf GM, Ejma M, Ávila-Rodriguez MF, Yarla NS et al (2018) Sleep disorders associated with Alzheimer's disease: a perspective. Front Neurosci 12:330
Buysse DJ (2014) Sleep health: can we define it? Does it matter? Sleep 37(1):9–17
Buysse DJ, Thompson W, Scott J, Franzen PL, Germain A, Hall M et al (2007) Daytime symptoms in primary insomnia: a prospective analysis using ecological momentary assessment. Sleep Med 8(3):198–208
Carvalho DZ, Knopman DS, Boeve BF, Lowe VJ, Roberts RO, Mielke MM et al (2018) Association of excessive daytime sleepiness with longitudinal β-amyloid accumulation in elderly persons without dementia. JAMA Neurol 75(6):672–680
Cohen-Mansfield J, Garfinkel D, Lipson S (2000) Melatonin for treatment of sundowning in elderly persons with dementia—a preliminary study. Arch Gerontol Geriatr 31(1):65–76
Cooke JR, Liu L, Natarajan L, He F, Marler M, Loredo JS et al (2006) The effect of sleep-disordered breathing on stages of sleep in patients with Alzheimer's disease. Behav Sleep Med 4(4):219–227
Cooke JR, Ayalon L, Palmer BW, Loredo JS, Corey-Bloom J, Natarajan L et al (2009) Sustained use of CPAP slows deterioration of cognition, sleep, and mood in patients with Alzheimer's disease and obstructive sleep apnea: a preliminary study. J Clin Sleep Med 5(04):305–309
Cricco M, Simonsick EM, Foley DJ (2001) The impact of insomnia on cognitive functioning in older adults. J Am Geriatr Soc 49(9):1185–1189
Cusso ME, Donald KJ, Khoo TK (2016) The impact of physical activity on non-motor symptoms in Parkinson's disease: a systematic review. Front Med 3:35
De Vivo L, Bellesi M, Marshall W, Bushong EA, Ellisman MH, Tononi G, Cirelli C (2017) Ultrastructural evidence for synaptic scaling across the wake/sleep cycle. Science 355 (6324):507–510
Dekker K, Benjamins JS, Maksimovic T, Filardi M, Hofman WF, Van Straten A, Van Someren EJ (2019) Combined internet-based cognitive-behavioral and chronobiological intervention for insomnia: a randomized controlled trial. Psychother Psychosom 88(6):378–379
Del Campo PD, Gracia J, Blasco J, Andradas E (2011) A strategy for patient involvement in clinical practice guidelines: methodological approaches. BMJ Qual Saf 20(9):779–784
Díaz M, Pulópulos M, Baquero M, Cuevas A, Ferrer I, Martín N et al (2017) Sleep disorders in mild cognitive impairment. Alzheimers Dement 13(7):P1315
Dowling GA, Burr RL, Van Someren EJ, Hubbard EM, Luxenberg JS, Mastick J, Cooper BA (2008) Melatonin and bright-light treatment for rest–activity disruption in institutionalized patients with Alzheimer's disease. J Am Geriatr Soc 56(2):239–246
Elahi FM, Miller BL (2017) A clinicopathological approach to the diagnosis of dementia. Nat Rev Neurol 13(8):457
Elvsåshagen T, Norbom LB, Pedersen PØ, Quraishi SH, Bjørnerud A, Malt UF et al (2015) Widespread changes in white matter microstructure after a day of waking and sleep deprivation. PLoS One 10(5):e0127351
Emamian F, Khazaie H, Tahmasian M, Leschziner GD, Morrell MJ, Hsiung G-YR et al (2016) The association between obstructive sleep apnea and Alzheimer's disease: a meta-analysis perspective. Front Aging Neurosci 8:78
Erkinjuntti T (2001) Clinical deficits of Alzheimer's disease with cerebrovascular disease and probable VaD. Int J Clin Pract Suppl (120):14–23
Espenshade TJ, Guzman JC, Westoff CF (2003) The surprising global variation in replacement fertility. Popul Res Policy Rev 22(5–6):575–583
Espie CA, Inglis SJ, Tessier S, Harvey L (2001) The clinical effectiveness of cognitive behaviour therapy for chronic insomnia: implementation and evaluation of a sleep clinic in general medical practice. Behav Res Ther 39(1):45–60
Espie CA, MacMahon KM, Kelly H-L, Broomfield NM, Douglas NJ, Engleman HM et al (2007) Randomized clinical effectiveness trial of nurse-administered small-group cognitive behavior therapy for persistent insomnia in general practice. Sleep 30(5):574–584

Espie CA, Fleming L, Cassidy J, Samuel L, Taylor LM, White CA et al (2008) Randomized controlled clinical effectiveness trial of cognitive behavior therapy compared with treatment as usual for persistent insomnia in patients with cancer. J Clin Oncol 26(28):4651–4658

Espie CA, Kyle SD, Hames P, Cyhlarova E, Benzeval M (2012) The daytime impact of DSM-5 insomnia disorder: comparative analysis of insomnia subtypes from the Great British Sleep Survey. J Clin Psychiatry 73(12):e1478–e1484

Espie CA, Luik AI, Cape J, Drake CL, Siriwardena AN, Ong JC et al (2016) Digital cognitive behavioural therapy for insomnia versus sleep hygiene education: the impact of improved sleep on functional health, quality of life and psychological well-being. Study protocol for a randomised controlled trial. Trials 17(1):257

Etters L, Goodall D, Harrison BE (2008) Caregiver burden among dementia patient caregivers: a review of the literature. J Am Acad Nurse Pract 20(8):423–428

Fjell AM, Idland A-V, Sala-Llonch R, Watne LO, Borza T, Brækhus A et al (2017) Neuroinflammation and tau interact with amyloid in predicting sleep problems in aging independently of atrophy. Cereb Cortex 28(8):2775–2785

Forette F, Boller F (1991) Hypertension and the risk of dementia in the elderly. Am J Med 90(3): S14–S19

Haba-Rubio J, Marti-Soler H, Tobback N, Andries D, Marques-Vidal P, Waeber G et al (2017) Sleep characteristics and cognitive impairment in the general population: the HypnoLaus study. Neurology 88(5):463–469

Harmell AL, Neikrug AB, Palmer BW, Avanzino JA, Liu L, Maglione JE et al (2016) Obstructive sleep apnea and cognition in Parkinson's disease. Sleep Med 21:28–34

Hooghiemstra AM, Visser PJ, Slot RE, Teunissen CE, Scheltens P, van der Flier WM (2016) Alzheimer's disease patients with osas history have higher CSF tau levels. Alzheimers Dement 12(7):P1115

Iliff JJ, Wang M, Liao Y, Plogg BA, Peng W, Gundersen GA et al (2012) A paravascular pathway facilitates CSF flow through the brain parenchyma and the clearance of interstitial solutes, including amyloid β. Sci Transl Med 4(147):147ra111-147ra111

Joo EY, Jeon S, Kim ST, Lee J-M, Hong SB (2013) Localized cortical thinning in patients with obstructive sleep apnea syndrome. Sleep 36(8):1153–1162

Kalaria RN, Maestre GE, Arizaga R, Friedland RP, Galasko D, Hall K et al (2008) Alzheimer's disease and vascular dementia in developing countries: prevalence, management, and risk factors. Lancet Neurol 7(9):812–826

Knopman DS, Haeberlein SB, Carrillo MC, Hendrix JA, Kerchner G, Margolin R et al (2018) The National Institute on Aging and the Alzheimer's Association Research Framework for Alzheimer's disease: perspectives from the research roundtable. Alzheimers Dement 14 (4):563–575

Kyle SD, Morgan K, Espie CA (2010) Insomnia and health-related quality of life. Sleep Med Rev 14(1):69–82

Leaf-nosed bat (2009) Encyclopædia Britannica. Encyclopædia Britannica Online

Levitt H, Wood A, Moul DE, Hall M, Germain A, Kupfer DJ, Buysse DJ (2004) A pilot study of subjective daytime alertness and mood in primary insomnia participants using ecological momentary assessment. Behav Sleep Med 2(2):113–131

Lichstein KL, Durrence HH, Riedel BW, Taylor DJ, Bush AJ (2013) Epidemiology of sleep: age, gender, and ethnicity. Psychology Press

Livingston G, Sommerlad A, Orgeta V, Costafreda SG, Huntley J, Ames D et al (2017) Dementia prevention, intervention, and care. Lancet 390(10113):2673–2734

Lobo A, LóPez-Antón R, De-La-CÁmara C, Quintanilla MÁ, Campayo A, Saz P, Workgroup Z (2008) Non-cognitive psychopathological symptoms associated with incident mild cognitive impairment and dementia, Alzheimer's type. Neurotox Res 14(2–3):263–272

Lucey BP, Hicks TJ, McLeland JS, Toedebusch CD, Boyd J, Patterson BW et al (2017) Sleep loss increases risk of Alzheimer's disease by increasing CNS A beta production. Paper presented at the Annals of neurology

Lucey BP, Hicks TJ, McLeland JS, Toedebusch CD, Boyd J, Elbert DL et al (2018) Effect of sleep on overnight cerebrospinal fluid amyloid β kinetics. Ann Neurol 83(1):197–204
Lutsey PL, Misialek JR, Mosley TH, Gottesman RF, Punjabi NM, Shahar E et al (2018) Sleep characteristics and risk of dementia and Alzheimer's disease: The Atherosclerosis Risk in Communities Study. Alzheimers Dement 14(2):157–166
Luyster FS, Strollo PJ, Zee PC, Walsh JK (2012) Sleep: a health imperative. Sleep 35(6):727–734
Manber R, Edinger JD, Gress JL, Pedro-Salcedo MGS, Kuo TF, Kalista T (2008) Cognitive behavioral therapy for insomnia enhances depression outcome in patients with comorbid major depressive disorder and insomnia. Sleep 31(4):489–495
Mander BA, Marks SM, Vogel JW, Rao V, Lu B, Saletin JM et al (2015) β-Amyloid disrupts human NREM slow waves and related hippocampus-dependent memory consolidation. Nat Neurosci 18(7):1051
Mayston R, Guerra M, Huang Y, Sosa AL, Uwakwe R, Acosta I et al (2014) Exploring the economic and social effects of care dependence in later life: protocol for the 10/66 research group INDEP study. Springerplus 3(1):379
Mishima K, Okawa M, Hozumi S, Hishikawa Y (2000) Supplementary administration of artificial bright light and melatonin as potent treatment for disorganized circadian rest-activity and dysfunctional autonomic and neuroendocrine systems in institutionalized demented elderly persons. Chronobiol Int 17(3):419–432
Mitchell MD, Gehrman P, Perlis M, Umscheid CA (2012) Comparative effectiveness of cognitive behavioral therapy for insomnia: a systematic review. BMC Fam Pract 13(1):40
More SV, Kumar H, Kim IS, Song S-Y, Choi D-K (2013) Cellular and molecular mediators of neuroinflammation in the pathogenesis of Parkinson's disease. Mediat Inflamm 2013:952375
Morin CM, LeBlanc M, Daley M, Gregoire J, Merette C (2006) Epidemiology of insomnia: prevalence, self-help treatments, consultations, and determinants of help-seeking behaviors. Sleep Med 7(2):123–130
Morin CM, Bélanger L, LeBlanc M, Ivers H, Savard J, Espie CA et al (2009a) The natural history of insomnia: a population-based 3-year longitudinal study. Arch Intern Med 169(5):447–453
Morin CM, Vallières A, Guay B, Ivers H, Savard J, Mérette C et al (2009b) Cognitive-behavior therapy, singly and combined with medication, for persistent insomnia: acute and maintenance therapeutic effects. JAMA 301(19):2005
Musiek ES, Bhimasani M, Zangrilli MA, Morris JC, Holtzman DM, Ju Y-ES (2018) Circadian rest-activity pattern changes in aging and preclinical Alzheimer disease. JAMA Neurol 75 (5):582–590
National Institutes of Health (2005) NIH state-of-the-science conference statement on manifestations and management of chronic insomnia in adults. NIH Consens Sci Statements 22:1–30
Ohayon MM (2002) Epidemiology of insomnia: what we know and what we still need to learn. Sleep Med Rev 6(2):97–111
Ooms S, Ju Y-E (2016) Treatment of sleep disorders in dementia. Curr Treat Options Neurol 18 (9):40
Osorio RS, Pirraglia E, Agüera-Ortiz LF, During EH, Sacks H, Ayappa I et al (2011) Greater risk of Alzheimer's disease in older adults with insomnia. J Am Geriatr Soc 59(3):559–562
Pase MP, Himali JJ, Grima NA, Beiser AS, Satizabal CL, Aparicio HJ et al (2017) Sleep architecture and the risk of incident dementia in the community. Neurology 89(12):1244–1250
Patterson C, Lynch C, Bliss A (2018) World Alzheimer report 2018—the state of the art of dementia research: new frontiers. Alzheimer's Disease International (ADI), London
Pillai V, Anderson JR, Cheng P, Bazan L, Bostock S, Roth TA, Drake CL (2015) The anxiolytic effects of cognitive behavior therapy for insomnia: preliminary results from a web-delivered protocol. J Sleep Med Disord 2(2):a-7
Pollak CP, Perlick D (1991) Sleep problems and institutionalization of the elderly. Top Geriatr 4(4):204–210

Pringsheim T, Jette N, Frolkis A, Steeves TD (2014) The prevalence of Parkinson's disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Mov Disord 29(13):1583–1590
Rahman MH, Akter R, Bhattacharya T, Abdel-Daim MM, Alkahtani S, Arafah MW et al (2020a) Resveratrol and neuroprotection: impact and its therapeutic potential in Alzheimer's disease. Front Pharmacol 11:619024
Rahman MH, Akter R, Kamal MAJC, Targets NDD (2020b) Prospective function of different antioxidant containing natural products in the treatment of neurodegenerative disease. CNS Neurol Disord Drug Targets
Rahman M, Bajgai J, Fadriquela A, Sharma S, Trinh Thi T, Akter R et al (2021) Redox effects of molecular hydrogen and its therapeutic efficacy in the treatment of neurodegenerative diseases. Processes 9(2):308
Rodrigues TM, Caldas AC, Ferreira JJ (2016) Pharmacological interventions for daytime sleepiness and sleep disorders in Parkinson's disease: systematic review and meta-analysis. Parkinsonism Relat Disord 27:25–34
Roh J, Huang Y, Bero A, Kasten T, Stewart F, Bateman R, Holtzman D (2012) Disruption of the sleep-wake cycle and diurnal fluctuation of beta-amyloid in mice with Alzheimer's disease pathology. Sci Transl Med 4(150):150ra122
Roman G (2001) Diagnosis of vascular dementia and Alzheimer's disease. Int J Clin Pract Suppl (120):9–13
Rongve A, Boeve BF, Aarsland D (2010) Frequency and correlates of caregiver-reported sleep disturbances in a sample of persons with early dementia. J Am Geriatr Soc 58(3):480–486
Roth HL (2012) Dementia and sleep. Neurol Clin 30(4):1213–1248
Roth T, Ancoli-Israel S (1999) Daytime consequences and correlates of insomnia in the United States: results of the 1991 National Sleep Foundation Survey. II. Sleep 22(Suppl 2):S354–S358
Scullin MK (2017) Do older adults need sleep? A review of neuroimaging, sleep, and aging studies. Curr Sleep Med Rep 3(3):204–214
Sexton CE, Zsoldos E, Filippini N, Griffanti L, Winkler A, Mahmood A et al (2017) Associations between self-reported sleep quality and white matter in community-dwelling older adults: a prospective cohort study. Hum Brain Mapp 38(11):5465–5473
Shi L, Chen S-J, Ma M-Y, Bao Y-P, Han Y, Wang Y-M et al (2018) Sleep disturbances increase the risk of dementia: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Sleep Med Rev 40:4–16
Shim A, Hogan M, Halldin K, Clark H, Behrens B, Griffith C et al (2017) Sleep disordered breathing, APOE4 and β-amyloid deposition in cognitively normal elderly. Alzheimers Dement 13(7):P1124–P1125
Shokeir AA (2014) How to write a medical original article: advice from an editor. Taylor & Francis, New York
Shokri-Kojori E, Wang G-J, Wiers CE, Demiral SB, Guo M, Kim SW et al (2018) β-Amyloid accumulation in the human brain after one night of sleep deprivation. Proc Natl Acad Sci 115 (17):4483–4488
Sousa RM, Ferri CP, Acosta D, Albanese E, Guerra M, Huang Y et al (2009) Contribution of chronic diseases to disability in elderly people in countries with low and middle incomes: a 10/66 Dementia Research Group population-based survey. Lancet 374(9704):1821–1830
Sousa RM, Ferri CP, Acosta D, Guerra M, Huang Y, Jacob K et al (2010) The contribution of chronic diseases to the prevalence of dependence among older people in Latin America, China and India: a 10/66 Dementia Research Group population-based survey. BMC Geriatr 10(1):53
Spira AP, Gamaldo AA, An Y, Wu MN, Simonsick EM, Bilgel M et al (2013) Self-reported sleep and β-amyloid deposition in community-dwelling older adults. JAMA Neurol 70 (12):1537–1543
Spira AP, Chen-Edinboro LP, Wu MN, Yaffe K (2014) Impact of sleep on the risk of cognitive decline and dementia. Curr Opin Psychiatry 27(6):478
Sprecher KE, Bendlin BB, Racine AM, Okonkwo OC, Christian BT, Koscik RL et al (2015) Amyloid burden is associated with self-reported sleep in nondemented late middle-aged adults. Neurobiol Aging 36(9):2568–2576

Stepanski E, Koshorek G, Zorick F, Glinn M, Roehrs T, Roth T (1989) Characteristics of individuals who do or do not seek treatment for chronic insomnia. Psychosomatics 30 (4):421–427

Takeuchi H, Taki Y, Nouchi R, Yokoyama R, Kotozaki Y, Nakagawa S et al (2018) Shorter sleep duration and better sleep quality are associated with greater tissue density in the brain. Sci Rep 8 (1):5833

Talarico G, Canevelli M, Tosto G, Vanacore N, Letteri F, Prastaro M et al (2013) Restless legs syndrome in a group of patients with Alzheimer's disease. Am J Alzheimers Dis Other Dement 28(2):165–170

Thomas RJ, Rosen BR, Stern CE, Weiss JW, Kwong KK (2005) Functional imaging of working memory in obstructive sleep-disordered breathing. J Appl Physiol 98(6):2226–2234

Trauer JM, Qian MY, Doyle JS, Rajaratnam SM, Cunnington D (2015) Cognitive behavioral therapy for chronic insomnia: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Ann Intern Med 163 (3):191–204

Uddin MS, Kabir M, Rahman M, Alim M, Khatkar A, Al Mamun A et al (2020) Exploring the multifunctional neuroprotective promise of rasagiline derivatives for multi-dysfunctional. Alzheimer's Dis 26(37):4690–4698

Urrestarazu E, Iriarte J (2016) Clinical management of sleep disturbances in Alzheimer's disease: current and emerging strategies. Nat Sci Sleep 8:21

Van Someren EJ, Oosterman J, Van Harten B, Vogels R, Gouw A, Weinstein H et al (2019) Medial temporal lobe atrophy relates more strongly to sleep-wake rhythm fragmentation than to age or any other known risk. Neurobiol Learn Mem 160:132–138

Vgontzas AN, Liao D, Bixler EO, Chrousos GP, Vela-Bueno A (2009a) Insomnia with objective short sleep duration is associated with a high risk for hypertension. Sleep 32(4):491–497

Vgontzas AN, Liao D, Pejovic S, Calhoun S, Karataraki M, Bixler EO (2009b) Insomnia with objective short sleep duration is associated with type 2 diabetes: a population-based study. Diabetes Care 32(11):1980–1985

Ward SA, Pase MP (2019) Advances in pathophysiology and neuroimaging: implications for sleep and dementia. Respirology 25(6):580–592

Wennberg AM, Wu MN, Rosenberg PB, Spira AP (2017) Sleep disturbance, cognitive decline, and dementia: a review. Paper presented at the Seminars in neurology

Westwood AJ, Beiser A, Jain N, Himali JJ, DeCarli C, Auerbach SH et al (2017) Prolonged sleep duration as a marker of early neurodegeneration predicting incident dementia. Neurology 88 (12):1172–1179

Wu JQ, Appleman ER, Salazar RD, Ong JC (2015) Cognitive behavioral therapy for insomnia comorbid with psychiatric and medical conditions: a meta-analysis. JAMA Intern Med 175 (9):1461–1472

Xie H, Hou S, Jiang J, Sekutowicz M, Kelly J, Bacskai BJ (2013) Rapid cell death is preceded by amyloid plaque-mediated oxidative stress. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 110(19):7904–7909

Yaffe K, Laffan AM, Harrison SL, Redline S, Spira AP, Ensrud KE et al (2011) Sleep-disordered breathing, hypoxia, and risk of mild cognitive impairment and dementia in older women. JAMA 306(6):613–619

Young K (n.d.) Sleep Formula, All Natural!

Yuan X, Guo X, Deng Y, Zhu D, Shang J, Liu H (2015) Chronic intermittent hypoxia-induced neuronal apoptosis in the hippocampus is attenuated by telmisartan through suppression of iNOS/NO and inhibition of lipid peroxidation and inflammatory responses. Brain Res 1596:48–57

Zhang X, Ma L, Li S, Wang Y, Wang L (2011) A functional MRI evaluation of frontal dysfunction in patients with severe obstructive sleep apnea. Sleep Med 12(4):335–340

Mitochondrial Dysfunction: A Key Player in the Pathogenesis of Autism Spectrum Disorders and Alzheimer's Disease

2

Aisha Farhana and Yusuf Saleem Khan

Abstract

Increasing evidence has pinpointed that loss of mitochondrial function or regulation is a critical player toward the pathogenesis of various metabolic, neurodevelopmental, and neurodegenerative disorders, including autism spectrum disorders (ASD) and Alzheimer's disease (AD). The lacuna in understanding these diseases' underlying biology is that pathology develops through the interaction of various biological pathways rather than a defined mechanism. Mitochondria are dynamic organelles that perform diverse functions, including cellular energy production, calcium homeostasis, apoptosis, and innate immune regulation. Hence, mitochondria integrate various cellular pathways, and any exogenous or endogenous perturbation may result in their dysfunction. Herein, we explore the latest research insights that have evolved our understanding of ASD and AD pathogenesis with the perspective of mitochondrial dysregulation as the underlying phenomenon. We discuss the pathological relevance of cause and effect of mitochondrial dysregulation, such as increased reactive oxygen species (ROS) production, mitochondrial DNA damage, aberrant immune responses, impaired energy metabolism, and altered gut microbiome in the etiology of ASD and AD. Being at the center stage, mitochondria have emerged as a novel target with considerable therapeutic potential, which can be exploited to delay, manage, or treat ASD, AD, and other neurological disorders. We also discuss the novel therapeutic options such as H_2S therapy, dynamic microbiome modulation, ketogenic diet, and cofactor therapy that are emerging as a plausible

A. Farhana (✉)
Department of Clinical Laboratory Sciences, College of Applied Medical Science, Jouf University, Sakaka, Saudi Arabia

Y. S. Khan
Basic Sciences Department, College of Medicine, Vision (Al Farabi) Colleges, Riyadh, Saudi Arabia

G. Md Ashraf, A. Alexiou (eds.), *Autism Spectrum Disorder and Alzheimer's Disease*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-4558-7_2

treatment regimen and have shown favorable outcomes in initial studies. Hence, this article summarizes the current understanding of the functional and structural disturbances in the mitochondria that lead to ASD and AD and could be harnessed for better diagnostic and prognostic outcomes.

Keywords

Mitochondrial dysfunction · Autism spectrum disorders · Alzheimer's disease · Oxidative stress · Microbiome · Bioenergetics · Immune dysfunction

2.1 Introduction

Mitochondria are a double membrane organelle of approximately 0.75–3 μm^2 size present in all cells of the eukaryotes and almost all prokaryotes. They act as the powerhouse of cells by producing energy in the form of adenosine triphosphate (ATP), which is required for cellular functions. Other functions of mitochondria include cellular differentiation, signaling, cell growth, death, and cell-cycle regulation. Mitochondrial structural and functional abnormalities have been demonstrated as a common shared mechanism across multiple neurodegenerative disorders that include diseases/syndromes such as cardiovascular disease; diabetes; schizophrenia; myopathy; stroke; endocrinopathy; bipolar disorder; chronic fatigue syndrome; Pearson syndrome; dementia; Kearns-Sayre syndrome; Parkinson's disease; Leber's hereditary optic neuropathy; Barth syndrome; retinitis pigmentosa; Alzheimer's; Friedreich's ataxia; mitochondrial encephalopathy, lactic acidosis, and stroke (MELAS) syndrome; Wilson's disease; progressive external ophthalmoplegia; myoclonic epilepsy with ragged red fibers (MERRF); hereditary spastic paraplegia; etc. But most often, it presents itself in the form of neurological diseases such as ASD and AD. Present epidemiological data confirms that almost 5–80% of children affected by ASD show mitochondrial dysfunction compared to only 0.1% among the general population (Rose et al. 2012; Bayer 2015). Pathophysiological studies have shown a distinct connection between mitochondria and AD; however, an exact epidemiological data is not available thus far.

ASD represents a group of confounding diseases that include autism, Asperger's syndrome, and pervasive developmental disorders. ASD is marked by developmental and neurological syndromes that lead to impaired social communication abilities and repetitive behavior. ASD symptoms start to manifest during early childhood and last throughout the lifetime. On the other hand, AD is a progressive degradation of brain cells, usually in the elderly, leading to dementia, which affects a person's social abilities. Though both disorders are at the two ends of the age spectrum, they have common clinical manifestations such as language impairment, a problem in executing functions, dementia, and motor disability (Khan et al. 2016). Understanding ASD and AD from a biological perspective becomes complex due to its diagnosis solely through behavioral criteria directed by the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (DSM), which keeps being revised based on

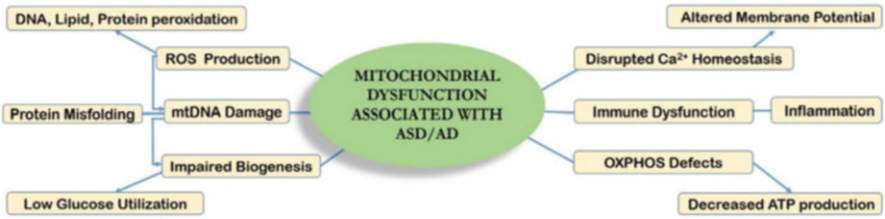


Fig. 2.1 The effectors of mitochondrial dysfunction associated with ASD and AD

identifying more contemporary patients' patterns. The identification of ASD and AD through behavioral benchmarks is partly due to an insufficient understanding of the biological processes and the non-availability of quantitative biomarkers for these diseases. The cavities in understanding these diseases' biology is that the pathology develops through a complex interaction of several biological pathways rather than a defined mechanism. It involves biological components as diverse as bioenergetics, epigenetics, and genetics, besides having environmental effectors.

The pathologies observed in ASD and AD, such as toxic accumulation of protein aggregates in AD, and increased white matter neurons together with a substantial decrease in the GABAergic cerebellar Purkinje cells in ASD, can be due to mutation, rearrangements, or point mutations in mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA). Recent researches indicate that diseases such as Parkinson's disease, AD, Rett syndrome, and ASD plausibly share a common mechanism of mitochondrial dysfunction leading to disease progression (Frye 2020). Over the last few decades, despite a compelling problem of underdiagnosis, there has been a surge in the prevalence of ASD worldwide (Chiarotti and Venerosi 2020; Maenner et al. 2020). Many studies indicate that mitochondrial dysfunction may have an essential role in the development of ASD. It is also reinforced by the evidence that several comorbidities that develop due to mitochondrial defect such as epilepsy, sleep apnea, gastrointestinal, and immune dysfunction share an association with ASD. Mitochondria are sensitive organelles susceptible to endogenous alterations such as iatrogenic medications, toxicants, immune activation, and metabolic disruption besides the exogenous environment. The general effectors for mitochondrial dysfunction that facilitate progress toward AD and ASD are illustrated in Fig. 2.1. Many of these stressors have also been demonstrated in the etiology of ASD. Hence, there seems a clear link between these two disorders, which points to a possible shared etiological mechanism.

Furthermore, AD also has multiple etiological factors, and aging is considered a significant risk factor. Most studies on AD have focused on τ (tau) and amyloid-beta (amyloid-β) pathology as underlying factors. Some studies have demonstrated that τ pathology contributes to mitochondrial dysfunction leading to neurodegeneration. Amyloid-β protein has been shown to accumulate in the mitochondrial matrix hampering its function, such as failure of energy metabolism, generation of reactive oxygen species (ROS), and permeability transition pore (PTP) formation. Hence, it could be conjectured that brain metabolism in AD may be deranged due to altered

mitochondrial functionality. This hypothesis had opened up new frontiers to explore alterations in mitochondrial bioenergetics as a possible cause of ASD, AD, and associated pathologies. Recent research studies have provided insight into novel metabolic targets to treat or prevent ASD and AD pathogenesis.

In this article, we discuss the latest findings that support that mitochondrial dysfunction and functional and structural abnormalities in mtDNA are the central mechanisms toward the pathogenesis of ASD and AD. We will also analyze the association of ASD and AD with respective co-occurring medical conditions in the light of mitochondrial dysfunction at the center stage. The review will also focus on understanding the advancement in the therapeutic approaches used for remodeling and enhancing mitochondrial functions, leading toward novel treatment methodologies for treating or managing ASD and AD.

2.2 Increased Oxidative Stress Linked to Mitochondrial Dysfunction in ASD and AD

The regulation of cellular survival, orchestration of biosynthetic metabolic pathways, and ROS signaling are the canonical functions of mitochondria. These organelles are integral to supporting the energy requirement of our body's metabolic processes during the resting, active, and stressed state. They populate the cells of the body and harbor their mtDNA (mitochondrial DNA). Besides catabolizing glucose and oxidizing fatty acids to generate ATP, mitochondria play a distinct role in forming reactive oxygen species (ROS), calcium signaling and homeostasis, and the regulation of programmed cell death (Malek et al. 2018).

The accumulation of τ-protein and amyloid-β plaques is a pathological hallmark of AD that consequently progresses toward developing the disease. On the other hand, behavioral challenges mark the identification of ASD. Studies spanning the past few decades have determined that many factors, including biological, environmental, lifestyle, epigenetics, and genetics, influence the development of the two diseases. However, the mechanism of pathogenesis remains elusive. Recent studies have furnished distinctive insights that underscore mitochondrial dysfunction as an early event in ASD and AD pathogenesis (Rossignol and Frye 2012; Frye 2020). Oxidative stress plays a pivotal role in linking mitochondrial dysfunction and neurological disorders. Imbalances in the cellular milieu rendered through the presence of pro-oxidant metabolites, activated immune cells, toxicants, etc. subsequently lead to mitochondrial dysfunction.

The notion that mitochondrial abnormalities may be the cause of ASD came up in 1985, with the observation of lactic acidosis in children with ASD. Presently, ASD is quite common among children and is noted to be affected by different triggering etiologies, one of them being physiological abnormalities of mitochondrial dysfunction widely ranging from 5 to 80% (Rose et al. 2012). Similarly, metabolic changes and increased ROS production in AD brains underscore mitochondrial abnormalities at their nexus. With the advent of more recent techniques, considerable evidence has now accumulated that pinpoints oxidative stress, and calcium homeostasis

alterations precede the formation of pathological identifiers in AD, such as plaques and tangles in the brain (Von Bernhardi and Eugenín 2012).

The mitochondrial electron transport chain (ETC) is the underlying source of ROS production. ROS serves as a signaling molecule under normal concentrations, modulating numerous physiological reactions, including the ETC, ion transport, and neurotransmitter receptors. If ROS production exceeds the physiological system's buffering capacity, it manifests in the form of oxidative stress. The primary cause of oxidative stress is the abnormality in ETC. Increased ROS in the AD brains, as well as a region-specific reduction in the blood flow and oxygen utilization, provide ample evidence implicating compromised mitochondrial physiology in the development and progression of the disease (Bonda et al. 2014). Unregulated ROS production causes damage to cellular lipid, protein, and DNA, leading to derangement in the metabolic processes or development of anatomical lesions. The brain regions that were found to be most vulnerable to high ROS were the frontal, parietal, and temporal lobes. These areas overlap the areas that are found to be affected in AD patients (Wang et al. 2006).

Higher ROS levels induce ASD cascade, which posits mitochondrial abnormalities as the critical origin of neurodevelopmental impairment in ASD. However, these deficits in the mitochondria's ETC complex activity are distinct from the abnormalities observed in classical mitochondrial diseases. Studies have identified higher ETC complex IV, III, and I activity in ASD animal models and patients (Frye and Naviaux 2011; Delhey et al. 2017; Valiente-Pallejà et al. 2018). Others have linked reduced antioxidant capacity and increased ROS levels at the systemic level in ASD. Molecules of oxidative stress have been shown in the brains of ASD patients and also in their parents (Ohja et al. 2018). Another study demonstrated impairments in the glutathione redox balanced in cerebella and temporal cortices of autistic patients (Rose et al. 2012). Transcriptional profiling of 84 genes of oxidative stress machinery identified a signature pattern of eight genes, namely, glutamate-cysteine ligase modifier (*GCLM*), superoxide dismutase 2 (*SOD2*), neutrophil cytosol factor 2 (*NCF2*), prions (*PRNP*), prostaglandin-endoperoxide synthase 2 (*PTGS2*), thioredoxin (*TXN*), and ferritin heavy chain (*FTH1*), involved in ROS metabolism which were downregulated in autistic individuals (Bolotta et al. 2018). Further, RBC damage through ROS that causes altered RBC shape and morphology has been a significant feature in autistic patients (Bolotta et al. 2018).

Interestingly, immune dysfunction identified as one of the pathological features of ASD has a close link with oxidative free radicals accumulation. Altered redox balance either in the prenatal or postnatal period is associated with immunological activation, which increases the risk of autism in children. Though prenatal immune dysregulation is not clearly understood, exposure to unhealthy postnatal environments is linked to a distinct immune dysregulation pattern, endogenous autoantibodies, and inflammation observed in autistic patients. Mitochondrial functional abnormalities can initiate specific stress signals leading to an aberrant immune response. Nonetheless, a meticulous approach toward understanding the molecular pathways that trigger inflammasome cascade resulting from mitochondrial

dysfunction needs further research (Chen et al. 2018). A thorough understanding of metabolic circuitry that underscores mitochondrial dysfunction in ASD and AD may facilitate novel treatment strategies.

2.3 Mitochondrial DNA Damage Promotes the Development of ASD and AD

Mitochondria are present in every cell at varying numbers depending upon the difference in tissue origin. Cells of tissues with greater metabolic demands like the brain, cardiac, and skeletal muscle tissues have many mitochondria. Each mitochondrion harbors many copies of mtDNA. Moreover, mitochondrial genomes have 10–20-fold high mutation rates compared to nuclear DNA, which renders them inherently heteroplasmic (Stein and Sia 2017). Studies have reported that mitochondria have a skewed concentration of nucleotides that compromise mtDNA polymerase subunit gamma (PolG) enzyme fidelity, corroborating higher mutation rates in mitochondrial DNA. Consequently, these mutations accumulate more in tissue with higher metabolic activity, such as the brain, leading to more pronounced phenotypes.

Additionally, mitochondria are subjected to oxidative stress due to their respiration function, which can induce oxidative lesions in their genome (Sharma and Sampath 2019). ASD and AD, besides other neurodegenerative diseases, have higher ROS concentrations, and reports have demonstrated its association with the deletion of mtDNA. Diminished mitochondrial genome integrity has now been understood to predispose early- and late-onset metabolic diseases such as ASD, Parkinson's disease, and Alzheimer's disease.

mtDNA mutations occur across polypeptide mutations, rRNA and tRNA mutations, rearrangement mutations, and mutations in the regulatory region affecting mtDNA replication and transcription. A study on ASD children indicated that around 28.6% of ASD subjects displayed mutations commonly associated with mitochondrial disorders, such as the presence of low mtDNA content and putative pathogenic mtDNA mutations (Varga et al. 2018). mtDNA haplogroup differences can contribute to the modulation of the ASD risk. A cohort study of 1624 patients with ASD identified many mtDNA haplogroups across different clusters in ASD. Hence, mitochondrial haplogroups associated functional variants could be a risk factor for developing ASD (Chalkia et al. 2017). Using databases of mtDNA sequence and variation (comprehensive MITOMAP, A Human Mitochondrial Genome Database initiative), many mutations in mtDNA have been identified that are linked to pathologies and comorbidities associated with ASD and AD (Sharma and Sampath 2019). Several genetic anomalies are related to mitochondrial defects in ASD, including mitochondrial DNA mutations and deletions and chromosomal abnormalities. These abnormalities have been identified in buccal cells and cells of the immune system, fibroblasts, gastrointestinal tissue, and muscle, besides in the brain tissue of patients with ASD.

Studies on AD brains have shown reduced mtDNA content and mass, increased fragmentation of mtDNA, deletion, and apoptotic cell loss, associated with elevated free radicals linked with a reduced cyclooxygenase (COX) level. In a downstream signaling cascade that perpetrates with mitochondrial stress, cell apoptosis is triggered. These innate immune mechanisms are susceptible to nuclear and mtDNA and any other type of DNA from the phagolysosomal compartment. The presence of apoptotic vesicles in the blood from ASD patients, which in turn contain a considerable concentration of mtDNA, is plausibly recognized as an innate pathogen in ASD. These vesicles enter the microglia of ASD patients through blood and lymphatic systems and triggering an immune response (Pangrazzi et al. 2020). Many studies have also observed sporadic mtDNA deletions in brain tissues obtained after the postmortem of late-onset AD patients. In a study, $mtDNA_{\Delta 4977}$ showed a 15-fold hike in its occurrence in AD subjects' cortical neurons (Phillips et al. 2014). Visible chromosomal lesions and slight copy number variants at 16p11, an inverted duplication on one of the domains of chromosome 15q11-q13, are also commonly observed in 10–20% of ASD cases (Cook Jr et al. 1997; Qureshi et al. 2014).

2.4 Calcium Homeostasis Imbalance Perpetrates Mitochondrial Dysfunction in ASD and AD

The function of mitochondria in regulating and buffering cytoplasmic Ca^{2+} (calcium ion) manifests as a central player in normal neurotransmission, neuronal plasticity, gene transcription regulation, and excitotoxicity (Celsi et al. 2009). Different studies have cited the function of mitochondria in Ca^{2+} buffering impairment in the aging brain and AD (Camandola and Mattson 2011). Disturbances in the Ca^{2+} homeostasis are closely connected with mitochondrial permeability transitions potentiated by high ROS generation, elevated phosphate concentrations, and ATP depletion. This eventually leads to the release of pro-apoptotic factors and cell death (Toglia and Ullah 2016; Granatiero et al. 2019). Predominantly, the function of most of the ions is limited to electrical conduction at the cell membrane. However, calcium additionally integrates signaling to cellular transcriptional, translational, metabolic, and biochemical events. The intrinsic function of calcium as a second messenger arbitrates diverse cellular processes through spatial and temporal alteration in concentration (Berridge et al. 2000). This function is carried out by a multitude of calcium-binding proteins, transporters, and voltage-dependent ligand-gated ion channels. Since calcium plays a ubiquitous role in cell physiology, any regulatory defects in the calcium signaling pathway can disrupt neurological function as demonstrated by several pathological conditions, including ASD (Nguyen et al. 2018). Derangement in calcium signaling potentially causes many abnormalities associated with ASD pathogenesis, such as mitochondrial function defects, neurotransmitter signaling, and synaptic plasticity. Mechanistic variants have been identified in calcium signaling pathways related to the endoplasmic reticulum

(ER) and mitochondrial organelle dysfunction in ASD and AD. Though organelles are inherent to all cells throughout the body, the central nervous system (CNS) is profoundly affected by organellar diseases (Nguyen et al. 2018). Some genetic studies have also identified ion channel gene mutations in ASD subjects, suggesting it to be a channelopathy and a plausible reason for associated comorbidities (Noebels 2017).

Cognitive functions such as memory, neuron excitability, synaptic plasticity, axon growth, the release of neurotransmitter, and precise modulation of calcium gradients are regulated through intracellular calcium homeostasis (Wen-hong et al. 1998; Hernández-López et al. 2000; Neher and Sakaba 2008). Nerve stimulation is achieved by increasing cytosolic calcium from a resting concentration of ~100 nM by mobilizing calcium from intracellular ER stores or extracellular milieu. Mitochondria play a pivotal role during this signal transduction process by immediately sequestering Ca^{2+} through its calcium uniporter. Hence, the extracellular signal impulse is swiftly propagated through a tightly regulated mitochondrial process (Giorgi et al. 2012). Mutations in mtDNA affect calcium homeostasis, such as reduced Ca^{2+} sequestration, which consequently disturb ETC, mitochondrial membrane potential, and ATP production. ATP production is reduced due to the inability of Kreb's cycle enzymes to function in the absence of calcium. Positive feedback is generated with subsequent loss of ATP synthesis, which affects overall cell physiology. Besides, Ca^{2+} homeostasis derangement can also lead to intracellular Ca^{2+} overload within the mitochondria. In AD, the accumulation of amyloid-β facilitates ROS generation, which causes the accumulation of Ca^{2+} and PTP opening in mitochondria (Giorgi et al. 2012). Vitamin D is a key modulator of calcium homeostasis, which functions through its nuclear receptor, thereby controlling gene expression. It plays a crucial role in cellular proliferation and fine-tuning voltage-gated calcium channels. Furthermore, mitochondria are imperative in producing the active form of vitamin D, D3 (1α,25-dihydroxyvitamin-D3). The deficiency of D_3 during fetal life is strongly linked with the pathogenesis of ASD (Vinkhuyzen et al. 2017).

2.5 Neuronal Mitochondrial Dysbiogenesis Underlies the Development of ASD and AD

Many studies have demonstrated that mitochondrial biogenesis is fundamental to neuronal growth. Cellular pathways that are functional during neuronal development also promote mitochondrial biogenesis to arbitrate developing neurons' energy requirements. Mitochondrial biogenesis is regulated through a concerted mechanism manifested through crosstalk between mitochondrial and genomic DNA counterparts. Mitochondria proliferate and constantly fuse as a part of healthy cellular mechanisms and respond to enhanced energy needs, oxidative stress, and disease conditions. Mitochondrial biogenesis is controlled through checkpoints

during transcription, translation, and post-translation. This process is activated by peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor γ coactivator-1α (PGC-1α) (Jones et al. 2012). Further, sequential activation of nuclear respiratory factor-1 and nuclear respiratory factors-2 (NRF-1 and NRF-2) transcription factors leads to mitochondrial biogenesis. These newly formed mitochondria are integrated into the mitochondrial metabolic machinery, while the ones that are nonfunctional or damaged or demonstrate possible membrane disruption are tagged for degradation and removal. The removal of damaged mitochondria follows an autophagy-dependent mechanism called mitophagy (Lou et al. 2020).

Additionally, mitochondrial dynamics are regulated through fusion and fission processes, which counteract cellular damage by complementing cellular components, besides removing damaged mitochondria through autophagy. The mitochondrial biogenetic pathways functional through NRF 1, NRF 2, PGC-1α, etc. are demonstrated to be impaired in neurological diseases such as ASD and AD. A number of mitochondria and biochemical mediators such as NRF 1, NRF 2, and mitochondrial transcription factor A (TFAM) and PGC-1α are shown to be decreased in the hippocampus of AD brains, which diminish AMP-activated protein kinase (AMPK)-induced neuronal growth. Disturbed mitochondrial biogenesis, demonstrated by altered expression of mitochondrial fission (Fis1 and Drp1) and fusion (Mfn1/2 and Opa1) proteins and in the temporal cortex, indicated its relation to differences in the morphology and function of mitochondria in ASD (Tang et al. 2013). Many studies have correlated this deranged biogenesis potential of mitochondria to the disruption of neuronal plasticity and compromised cellular resilience. This process is demonstrated to eventually regulate psychotic disorders regularly observed in psychiatric comorbidities (Quiroz et al. 2008).

Another feature of mitochondrial biogenesis is an interconnected network of proteases and chaperones that maintains the quality of proteins and remove damaged proteins from the mitochondrial compartment (Folisi 2015). During homeostasis, mitochondrial chaperons facilitate protein folding and translocation, while proteases degrade and remove misfolded and damaged proteins from the mitochondria. Impaired chaperons and proteases consequently lead to the accumulation of protein aggregates, such as τ-protein and amyloid-β in AD, which ensues in the form of mitochondrial dysfunction (Ruan et al. 2013; Deepa et al. 2016). Notably, genetic mutations could cause impaired functions of mitochondrial chaperones and proteases and are extensively demonstrated to precipitate severe neurological diseases (Martinelli and Rugarli 2010; Goo et al. 2013; Strauss et al. 2015). Though few studies have linked the impaired function of proteases and chaperons with AD, others have shown their upregulation to be a priming episode in amyloid progression and τ-pathology in AD (Beck et al. 2016; Sorrentino et al. 2017). Similarly, few researchers have identified impaired inner membrane protease polymorphic forms of *IMMP2L* in ASD. Recently, the identification of protease malfunction and its reciprocal effect in the development of ASD have also gained momentum.

2.6 Impaired Mitochondrial Energy Metabolism Propels the Development of AD and ASD

Brain function is a composite of neuronal and glial cell function and synaptic efficiency. Healthy neuronal function demand higher energy needs, and hence numerous mitochondria are present in the brain cells (Picard and McEwen 2014). The mitochondria carry out their primary function to synthesize ATP. Coherence with other cellular organelles provides buffering machinery that regulates calcium levels during nerve impulses and signal transduction. Besides, they are instrumental in the biosynthesis of heme and iron-sulfur (Fe-S) clusters required to synthesize presynaptic neuronal transmitters in synapses (Lin and Beal 2006). Hence, it is discernible that disruption of mitochondrial functions is likely to cause nervous system abnormalities leading to neurodegenerative or neurodevelopmental disorders (Alexiou et al. 2018).

The brain is one of the highest energy-consuming organs, which approximately uses 25% of total energy in the resting state. Hence, a deficit in the energy fuel supply, such as the availability of glucose, or metabolic machinery like mitochondrial dysfunction, negatively impacts brain function. Neurons highly depend on oxidative phosphorylation as a source of energy, which renders them susceptible to mitochondrial dysfunction (Cardoso et al. 2016. Studies using fluorodeoxyglucose positron emission tomography (FDG- PET) have identified low glucose metabolic rates in AD patients, especially in the posterior cingulate, temporal, and parietal lobes and the hippocampus (Kapogiannis and Mattson 2011). These regions are dedicated to cognition and memory, and hence defects in energy metabolism could be a proximate source of pathologies in neurological disorders such as AD and ASD. The hypometabolism of glucose in the AD brain is compensated by shifting to amino acid and lipids as energy sources (Toledo et al. 2017). Metabolomics and lipidomic studies have identified at least six central metabolic pathways, including glycerophospholipid and aspartate metabolism in human autopsy samples to be defective.

Similarly, essential amino acids, branched-chain amino acids (BCAAs), polyamine metabolism, and serotonin pathways in the APPswe/PS1deltaE9 double transgenic AD mouse model were found to be altered. Though these studies provide a direct link with AD, not all of these metabolic findings were replicated (Casanova et al. 2016; Pan et al. 2016). Presently, molecular networks, viz., systems biology approach, have identified metabolic connections in varied metabolic pathways, highlighting the dysregulation of biochemical reactions at different disease progression stages (Santiago and Potashkin 2014). This approach provides distinct mechanistic insight into complex diseases such as AD and ASD, which stem from changes in multiple genes, proteins, and metabolites.

Metabolites such as glutamate and glycolytic intermediates, lactate, and pyruvate were observed to be increased. In contrast, carnitine, the fatty acid carrier from the cytosol to the mitochondria, and glutathione were demonstrated to be lower than expected in the serum of ASD and AD patients (Shimmura et al. 2011; Frye et al. 2013; Bjørklund et al. 2020; Oh et al. 2020; Xie et al. 2021). Contrarily, fatty acid

palmitate was shown to be increased in ASD plasma samples. Palmitic and stearic acid and omega-6 fatty acids are also demonstrated to cause neuroinflammation and hence τ-phosphorylation and its aggregation in AD disease models. Palmitate is implicated as an intracellular signaling molecule that regulates the progression of several pathologies as diverse as cardiovascular diseases, neurodegenerative diseases, cancer, etc. (Fatima et al. 2019). It has also been proposed that metabolic modifiers precede the onset of neurological symptoms.

2.7 Enteric Microbiome Alterations Modulate Mitochondrial Function in ASD and AD

The enteric microbial flora (microbiome) influences the physiological and biochemical status of humans. In the last two decades, understanding the gut microbiome function in influencing health and disease has gained considerable scientific interest. The communities of microbial cells that harbor within the gut are involved in processes as diverse as metabolism, nutrition, and the host's immune regulation (Guinane and Cotter 2013). Besides a positive effect on human health, some microbial cells also release chemical mediators that can potentially disrupt normal cellular pathways, including mitochondrial functions. Diseases like gastrointestinal complications, diabetes, and autism have been attributed to a microbiome-mediated disruption in addition to other associated mechanisms. The chemical mediators secreted by the microbes residing in the gut can travel through the bloodstream, penetrating the blood-brain barrier (Guinane and Cotter 2013; Burokas et al. 2015). Studies have identified that behavioral symptoms in autism can aggravate with alterations in the diet and changes in the gut microbiota through early antibiotic exposure, perinatal infection, hospitalization, etc. The gut microbe produces short-chain fatty acids (SCFA) upon dietary carbohydrates fermentation, which serve as an essential trigger to modulate mitochondrial functions and other cellular regulatory pathways (Saint-Georges-Chaumet and Edeas 2016). These SCFA produced by gut microbes, most notably propionate, have been concomitant with the development of ASD to affect mitochondrial function (MacFabe 2015) directly. Some microbial products induce a damaging immune response in their immediate vicinity and travel to invade the blood-brain barrier inducing a pro-inflammatory state in the sentinel microglia. This pro-inflammation is associated with derangement in the normal mitochondrial functions and progression toward hypoxia as well as neuroinflammatory and epigenetic modifications (Siniscalco et al. 2013; MacFabe 2015). An SCFA component, propionate, is demonstrated to increase anti-nitrotyrosine immunoreactivity indicating oxidative stress. Propionate is also demonstrated to increase glutamate cysteine ligase modifier (GFA), a marker of immunoreactivity, and reactive astrocytes in the hippocampus of ASD subjects (Edmonson et al. 2014).

The microbiota of the intestinal system is altered as a result of unhealthy lifestyles such as food, sleep problems, circadian rhythm disturbance, and sedentary routines. Multifactorial changes spanning quantitative and qualitative differences have been

documented in the gut microbiome of AD patients and are considered a significant risk factor for sporadic pathogenesis of AD. Studies using specific pathogen-free mice and microbiome-reconstituted mice models have revealed increased brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BNDF) in the amygdala and reduced serotonin receptor (5HT1A) mRNA and NR2B subunit of the N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptor mRNA expression. Also, in the hippocampus, this decrease is associated with an insufficiency of working and spatial memory (Neufeld et al. 2011). In another study, intestinal dysbiosis induced through ampicillin reduces the mineralocorticoid level and NMDA receptors in the amygdala, impaired spatial memory, and increased test animals' aggressiveness. However, this was restored through the *Lactobacillus fermentum NS9* strain as a part of the intestinal microbiome (Wang et al. 2015). Studies using matched cohorts have also pointed toward an association of microbiome composition with AD (Haran et al. 2019). Metagenomics complemented by clinical data has also confirmed a nexus between microbiome disturbance, neuroinflammation, intestinal disturbances, and AD/ASD disease.

The presence of acute stress and infection with conditional pathogenic bacteria *Citrobacter rodentium* are also reported to cause memory disorders in C57BL/6 mice (Gareau et al. 2011). A study conducted by Alzheimer's Disease Research Center (Wisconsin, USA) in 2017 demonstrated marked changes in the gut microbiome of AD patients matched to healthy individuals. This study decreased bacterial numbers belonging to *Firmicutes* and *Actinobacteria* phyla (particularly genus *Bifidobacterium*), and a surge in Bacteroidetes and *Proteobacteria* phyla bacteria in the gut microflora of AD patients was observed. Hence, the study distinctly demonstrated that intestinal microflora's functional component and taxonomy influence brain functions (Vogt et al. 2017). The human intestinal microflora has a direct regulatory role that works along the gut-brain-mitochondrial axis, modulating the development of neurological diseases such as ASD and AD.

2.8 Biomarkers of AD and ASD Linked to Mitochondrial Dysfunction

The pathological markers of AD include β-amyloid and τ-accumulation in the brain of AD patients. τ-protein regulates microtubule stability. However, modified τ aggregates in the neurons and is identified as a significant player in neurodegenerative diseases. In mice studies, τ-ablation has been concurrent with the enhanced ATP production and improvement in attentive capacity and recall memory (Jara et al. 2018). Mechanistically, τ-deletion reduced oxidative damage, thereby restoring the mitochondrial pro-fusion state besides inhibiting mitochondrial PTP formation, thus enhancing positive mitochondrial dynamics. There are reports that β-amyloid and τ-protein accumulation and apolipoprotein E (APOE) genes (a sporadic AD risk factor gene) could trigger mitochondrial dysfunction, which exacerbates the pathology.

Another pathological marker of AD, amyloid precursor protein, APP, together with amyloid-β, has a more direct link with mitochondria as compared to τ-protein

(Zhang et al. 2021; Mantzavinos and Alexiou 2017). These proteins localize to mitochondrial membranes and interact with other mitochondrial proteins besides disrupting ETC and importing nuclear-encoded mitochondrial proteins. They are shown to increase the production of ROS. However, it is also reported that the declining function of disrupted mitochondria leads to the accumulation of β-amyloid proteins besides several other comorbidities of AD. However, the existence of feedback loops makes a blurred understanding of the cause and effect. Recent researches have revealed that a highly toxic oligomeric form of β-amyloid protein (OAβ) disrupts normal mitochondrial function leading to a cascade mechanism responsible for severe deficit in the energy deficits preceding the development of AD (Sackmann and Hallbeck 2020).

Though ASD is identified mainly through behavioral pattern changes, several pathological markers have recently been correlated with the disease, including biomarkers of fatty acid metabolism, buccal cell enzymology, apoptotic markers, and ROS alteration. Most of these biomarkers are directly related to mitochondrial dysfunction, indicating an active role of mitochondrial disruption in the pathogenesis of ASD (Rose et al. 2018). Environmental exposure to toxicants and microbiome metabolites vis-a-vis oxidizing microenvironment is demonstrated to modulate mitochondrial function in ASD models.

2.9 Mitochondrial Targeting as a Therapeutic Approach for ASD and AD

The current therapy for AD relies on administering either glutamate-NMDA receptor antagonist like memantine or cholinesterase inhibitors, such as galantamine, rivastigmine, and donepezil. However, drug therapy is not approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for treating symptoms of autism. Autism is usually treated through behavioral management therapy, speech language, nutritional therapy, cognitive behavior therapy, joint attention therapy, physical therapy, etc. Regardless of the underlying mechanism that finally results in the development of ASD and AD, early diagnosis and intervention would lead to better treatment outcomes. As the knowledge of these neurodevelopmental diseases' pathogenesis is advancing, the prospects of better treatments can be augmented with targeted approaches (Fig. 2.2). Besides the present methodology of the drug-based treatment, many novel therapies are being explored and are continually evolving. Some of the new treatment approaches are discussed here.

2.9.1 H_2S Therapy

As observed in AD and ASD, enhanced ROS production affects mitochondrial function, contributing to the onset of neurodegeneration. Immediate consequences of high oxidative stress include lipid and protein oxidation and mtDNA mutation that induces neuronal cell death. Hydrogen sulfide (H_2S) has been demonstrated to

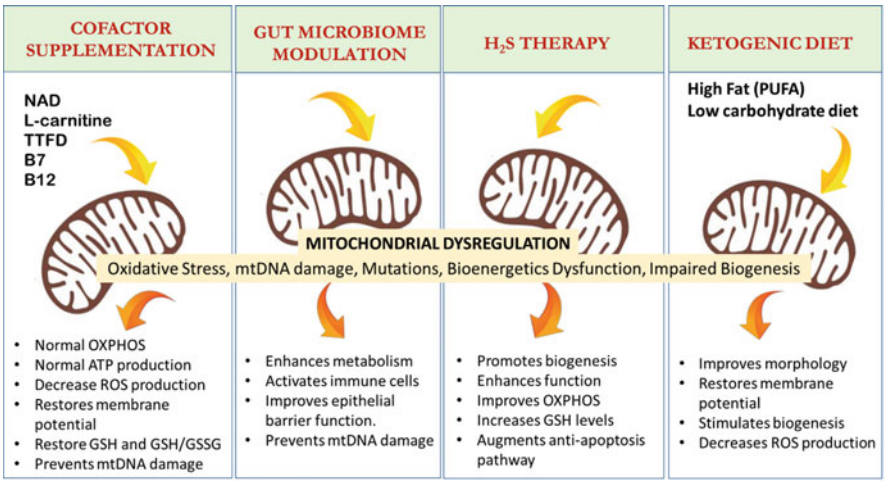


Fig. 2.2 Therapeutic modulation strategies for the restoration of mitochondrial dysfunction in ASD/AD patients

mitigate these effects of oxidative stress by elevating glutathione (GSH) concentrations through the potassium (K_{ATP}/K^+) and calcium (Ca^{2+}) ion channels. H_2S exerts its antioxidant effect through inorganic and organic compounds that mediate the activities of GSH, glutathione peroxidase, and superoxide dismutase, which in turn neutralizes hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2)-induced oxidative damage.

Endogenously, H_2S is produced through pyridoxal phosphate-dependent enzymes in tissues, namely, cystathionine β-synthase (CBS), cystathionine γ-lyase (CγL), cysteine aminotransferase (CT), and 3-mercaptopyruvate sulfur transferase (MST). The normal level of H_2S for both plasma and tissue is 50–160 μM. CBS expression is very high in the hippocampus and cerebellum areas of the central nervous system (CNS). H_2S is a gasotransmitter that functions as a powerful antioxidant during the mitochondrial oxidation process to reduce oxidative stress generated in neurodegenerative diseases. Besides, H_2S can exert its protective effects as an anti-inflammatory molecule in the CNS to dissipate neuroinflammation (Zhang et al. 2017). Treatment with H_2S donor, sodium hydrosulfide (NaHS), has proven efficacy in suppressing hypoxia-induced neuronal apoptosis by blocking the H_2O_2-activated Ca^{2+} signal pathway. H_2S could also augment anti-apoptosis through nuclear translocation of nuclear factor kappa B (NF-κB) regulation (Zhang et al. 2017). Furthermore, the enzyme cystathionine γ-lyase (CSE), which produces H_2S, binds to τ-protein to exert its catalytic activity. Recently, this enzyme is shown to be depleted in AD human brains and 3xTg-AD mouse models, which leads to lower production and hence diminished concentrations of H_2S (Giovinazzo et al. 2021). Therefore, in the absence of H_2S, hyperphosphorylation of τ-proteins progresses as observed in AD. On the other hand, H_2S prevents this phosphorylation by sulfhydrating the τ-protein kinase, namely, glycogen synthase kinase 3β (GSK3β). This understanding has been furthered in the study by Giovinazzo et al. that

demonstrated the amelioration of both motor and cognitive deficits in AD upon administration of the H_2S donor sodium GYY4137 to 3xTg-AD mice (Giovinazzo et al. 2021).

2.9.2 Microbiome Modulation and Probiotic Therapy

ASD and AD have a compelling association with mitochondrial dysfunction. Besides, gastrointestinal symptoms are an essential indicator of ASD and are strongly associated with mitochondrial dysfunction. It is noticeable that the gut microbial flora can orchestrate immune modulation and inflammasome activation in both these diseases, as previously described. Furthermore, mitochondrial damage-associated molecular patterns (DAMPs) are signals to activate innate immunity. Hence, a cascade of molecular events triggered by a dysbiotic gut microbiome could stimulate the production of metabolites that target and damage mitochondria. Recent research has indicated that the plasma levels of pro-inflammatory cytokines such as IL-2, IL-4, IL-6, TNF-α, TNF-β, IFN-γ, etc. are significantly high in subjects with ASD. The increase in cytokines TNF-α and IL-6 is distinctly associated with the pathogenic gut microbiome, which constitutes the microbiota unique to ASD individuals in most of the disease cases. Beneficial gut microbiota, which includes *Lachnospiraceae and Bacteroides* and negatively correlates with pro-inflammatory cytokines, is present at reduced levels or absent in ASD (Cao et al. 2021). Hence, disturbances in plasma cytokine profile that link with alterations in the abundance of healthy gut microbiota in ASD patients could be considered an early diagnostic mechanism for ASD.

On the contrary, a specified microbial population with positive effectors harbors the ability to enhance oxidative capacity and be exploited as treatment strategies. Such a therapeutic approach holds the potential of slowing the onset of several metabolic and neurodegenerative diseases such as ASD and AD. Probiotics have shown promise in improving autistic symptoms by directly restoring intestinal microflora balance with subsequent positive effects in strengthening the gastrointestinal barrier. A study conducted on ASD children used four bacterial strains plus a prebiotic, fructooligosaccharide. It helped to normalize the gut microbiome and gastrointestinal functions, besides ameliorating the typical behaviors in autistic children. The probiotic therapy also increased the bacteria population, such as *Bifidobacteriaceae* and *B. longum*, which are beneficial. It reduced the existing potentially disease-causing bacteria such as *Clostridium* and *Ruminococcus* associated with autism symptomatology (Wang et al. 2020). Hence, probiotics are being tested as a promising treatment for ASD associated with gastrointestinal symptoms and can be utilized as a safe and effective treatment.

Future AD therapies can also involve the use of probiotics, especially as prophylaxis methodology, when mild cognitive impairment is observed or AD is first diagnosed. A healthy gastrointestinal tract harbors facultative anaerobic or microaerophilic *Lactobacillus* and *Bifidobacterium* species, which metabolize glutamate to produce gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA). GABA is an important

inhibitory neurotransmitter in the CNS, and dysfunction of GABA is connected to dysfunction of synaptogenesis, cognitive impairment, and AD (Bhattacharjee and Lukiw 2013). Hence, restoring the typical microbiome in AD patients may have enormous effects and may facilitate customized microbiome manipulative strategies for the therapeutic management of AD and other neurodegenerative disorders.

2.9.3 Ketogenic Diet

A ketogenic diet has shown beneficial effects in children with ASD in improving the primary and associated symptoms of epilepsy. Unlike antiepileptic drugs, they are not related to adverse effects. The ketogenic diet exerts its beneficial effects, possibly through cerebral glucose metabolism, to improve mitochondrial morphology and white matter development in the brain. The ketogenic diet's positive influence has been observed in children with pyruvate dehydrogenase complex deficiency, with improvement in speech, language, and social functioning. In a case study, early initiation of a ketogenic diet has been associated with longevity and mental growth. From the mitochondrial standpoint, the ketogenic diet seems to be a promising therapy in both ASD and AD. In these neurodegenerative diseases, mitochondrial dysfunction and impaired bioenergetics can be salvaged through the use of ketone bodies. Ketone bodies can serve as the primary energy source for many metabolic processes instead of glucose. Besides, ketone bodies can exert neuroprotective effects by reducing glucose levels and increasing ketone bodies' formation by the liver. An increase in ketone bodies is mainly through the oxidation of polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFA). PUFA increases peroxidases and reduces mitochondrial membrane potential and ROS through enhanced mitochondrial uncoupling protein expression (Milder and Patel 2012). A ketogenic diet also enhances the overall anti-injury potential of neurons by increasing global metabolic efficiency even under insufficient energy phases (Henderson et al. 2009). Ketogenic diet therapy seems to be a promising candidate as it can reduce inflammation and ROS generation, delay the progression of AD, and improve cognitive ability in AD patients.

2.9.4 Cofactor Supplementation

Besides many general cofactors that support improvement in the symptomatology of ASD and AD, nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD), thiamine tetrahydrofurfuryl disulfide (TTFD), biotin (B7), and methylcobalamin (B12) are imperative to healthy mitochondrial functions. Thiamine facilitates normal cellular energy metabolism, production of energy equivalence, and reduction of cellular ROS besides maintaining the structure and function integrity of mitochondria. At the same time, biotin attenuates the loss of mitochondrial membrane potential and reduces ROS production. Methylcobalamin (B12) is an integral cofactor for the regeneration of GSH and GSH/GSSG (James et al. 2004). It is vital for the proper functioning of the brain and nerves and red blood cell production. In a randomized

controlled trial, oral supplementation of cofactors (vitamin/minerals) for 3 months has shown improvement in the symptoms of autistic children besides improving methylation, glutathione, ATP, and NAD levels and reducing oxidative stress (Adams et al. 2011).

Additionally, L-carnitine is an amino acid derivative, which affects CNS and mitochondrial physiology. Studies have indicated altered metabolic channeling of L-carnitine in ASD patients (Demarquoy and Demarquoy 2019; Malaguarnera and Cauli 2019). Clinical trials are underway for the use of cofactor therapy in AD, focusing on metabolic improvement through dietary supplementation of L-carnitine tartrate, N-acetylcysteine, nicotinamide riboside, and serine. These studies aim to increase mitochondrial activity in the brain cell types through simultaneous dietary supplementation (ClinicalTrials.gov Identifier: NCT04044131) (Remington et al. 2016; Tardiolo et al. 2018; Peng et al. 2020). The cofactor therapies are well tolerated throughout a person's pathological status without any significant side effects or long-term detrimental effects. Many of the cofactors are water-soluble vitamin B supplements, which can be eliminated from the body through the kidneys.

2.10 Conclusion

Recent years have observed notable research advances in the field of mitochondrial disease. The development of advanced techniques that provide the ability to uncover novel mitochondrial gene mutations and associated metabolic derangements has immensely improved our understanding of molecular mechanisms that lead to mitochondrial dysfunction, which can influence a plethora of metabolic pathways including amino acid, carbohydrate, and lipid metabolism. Additionally, mitochondrial derangement also affects regulatory networks modulating apoptosis, calcium flux, hormonal and immunologic responses, and oxidative stress, eventually affecting the brain function. Mitochondria posit an inherent tendency to adapt to changing energy demands and microenvironments. However, increased environmental stress such as oxidative stress and diminished defense responses potentially induce structural and functional abnormalities in the mitochondria. Induced or genetic defects in the mitochondria thus act as the precursor of a plethora of neuronal disorders. In this review, we have provided an integrated perception of the major aspects of mitochondrial functional and structural abnormalities such as imbalance in calcium homeostasis, mitochondrial dysbiogenesis, gut microbiome alterations, mtDNA defects, etc. and their implications for neurodevelopmental and neurodegenerative disorders, namely, ASD and AD. Mitochondrial mechanistic failure is presently established as a significant event that impinges upon the progression of these diseases, and hence a potential target for therapeutic intervention.

Conflict of Interest The authors declare no conflict of interest.

References

Adams JB, Audhya T, McDonough-Means S, Rubin RA, Quig D, Geis E, Gehn E, Loresto M, Mitchell J, Atwood S (2011) Nutritional and metabolic status of children with autism vs. neurotypical children, and the association with autism severity. Nutr Metab 8(1):34

Alexiou A, Nizami B, Khan FI, Soursou G, Vairaktarakis C, Chatzichronis S, Tsiamis V, Manztavinos V et al (2018) Mitochondrial dynamics and proteins related to neurodegenerative diseases. Curr Protein Pept Sci 19(9):850–857

Bayer TA (2015) Proteinopathies, a core concept for understanding and ultimately treating degenerative disorders? Eur Neuropsychopharmacol 25(5):713–724

Beck S, Mufson EJ, Counts SE (2016) Evidence for mitochondrial UPR gene activation in familial and sporadic Alzheimer's disease. Curr Alzheimer Res 13(6):610–614

Berridge MJ, Lipp P, Bootman MD (2000) The versatility and universality of calcium signalling. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 1(1):11–21

Bhattacharjee S, Lukiw WJ (2013) Alzheimer's disease and the microbiome. Front Cell Neurosci 7:153

Bjørklund G, Tinkov AA, Hosnedlová B, Kizek R, Ajsuvakova OP, Chirumbolo S, Skalnaya MG, Peana M, Dadar M, El-Ansary A (2020) The role of glutathione redox imbalance in autism spectrum disorder: a review. Free Radic Biol Med 160:149–162

Bolotta A, Battistelli M, Falcieri E, Ghezzo A, Manara MC, Manfredini S, Marini M, Posar A, Visconti P, Abruzzo PM (2018) Oxidative stress in autistic children alters erythrocyte shape in the absence of quantitative protein alterations and of loss of membrane phospholipid asymmetry. Oxidative Med Cell Longev 2018

Bonda DJ, Wang X, Lee H-G, Smith MA, Perry G, Zhu X (2014) Neuronal failure in Alzheimer's disease: a view through the oxidative stress looking-glass. Neurosci Bull 30(2):243–252

Burokas A, Moloney RD, Dinan TG, Cryan JF (2015) Microbiota regulation of the mammalian gut–brain axis. Adv Appl Microbiol 91:1–62

Camandola S, Mattson MP (2011) Aberrant subcellular neuronal calcium regulation in aging and Alzheimer's disease. Biochim Biophys Acta (BBA) Mol Cell Res 1813(5):965–973

Cao X, Liu K, Liu J, Liu Y-W, Xu L, Wang H, Zhu Y, Wang P, Li Z, Wen J (2021) Dysbiotic gut microbiota and dysregulation of cytokine profile in children and teens with autism spectrum disorder. Front Neurosci 15

Cardoso S, Carvalho C, Correia SC, Seiça RM, Moreira PI (2016) Alzheimer's disease: from mitochondrial perturbations to mitochondrial medicine. Brain Pathol 26(5):632–647

Casanova R, Varma S, Simpson B, Kim M, An Y, Saldana S, Riveros C, Moscato P, Griswold M, Sonntag D (2016) Blood metabolite markers of preclinical Alzheimer's disease in two longitudinally followed cohorts of older individuals. Alzheimers Dement 12(7):815–822

Celsi F, Pizzo P, Brini M, Leo S, Fotino C, Pinton P, Rizzuto R (2009) Mitochondria, calcium and cell death: a deadly triad in neurodegeneration. Biochim Biophys Acta (BBA) Bioenerget 1787 (5):335–344

Chalkia D, Singh LN, Leipzig J, Lvova M, Derbeneva O, Lakatos A, Hadley D, Hakonarson H, Wallace DC (2017) Association between mitochondrial DNA haplogroup variation and autism spectrum disorders. JAMA Psychiat 74(11):1161–1168

Chen Y, Zhou Z, Min W (2018) Mitochondria, oxidative stress and innate immunity. Front Physiol 9:1487

Chiarotti F, Venerosi A (2020) Epidemiology of autism spectrum disorders: a review of worldwide prevalence estimates since 2014. Brain Sci 10(5):274

Cook EH Jr, Lindgren V, Leventhal BL, Courchesne R, Lincoln A, Shulman C, Lord C, Courchesne E (1997) Autism or atypical autism in maternally but not paternally derived proximal 15q duplication. Am J Hum Genet 60(4):928

Deepa SS, Bhaskaran S, Ranjit R, Qaisar R, Nair BC, Liu Y, Walsh ME, Fok WC, Van Remmen H (2016) Down-regulation of the mitochondrial matrix peptidase ClpP in muscle cells causes mitochondrial dysfunction and decreases cell proliferation. Free Radic Biol Med 91:281–292

Delhey L, Kilinc EN, Yin L, Slattery J, Tippett M, Wynne R, Rose S, Kahler S, Damle S, Legido A (2017) Bioenergetic variation is related to autism symptomatology. Metab Brain Dis 32 (6):2021–2031

Demarquoy C, Demarquoy J (2019) Autism and carnitine: a possible link. World J Biol Chem 10 (1):7

Edmonson C, Ziats MN, Rennert OM (2014) Altered glial marker expression in autistic post-mortem prefrontal cortex and cerebellum. Mol Autism 5(1):3

Fatima S, Hu X, Gong R-H, Huang C, Chen M, Wong HLX, Bian Z, Kwan HY (2019) Palmitic acid is an intracellular signaling molecule involved in disease development. Cell Mol Life Sci 76 (13):2547–2557

Folisi C (2015) Oxidative stress and anti-oxidant response in allergen, virus, and corticosteroids withdrawal-induced asthma exacerbation

Frye RE (2020) Mitochondrial dysfunction in autism spectrum disorder: unique abnormalities and targeted treatments. Semin Pediatr Neurol 35:100829

Frye RE, Naviaux RK (2011) Autistic disorder with complex IV overactivity: a new mitochondrial syndrome. J Pediatr Neurol 9(4):427–434

Frye RE, Melnyk S, MacFabe DF (2013) Unique acyl-carnitine profiles are potential biomarkers for acquired mitochondrial disease in autism spectrum disorder. Transl Psychiatry 3(1):e220–e220

Gareau MG, Wine E, Rodrigues DM, Cho JH, Whary MT, Philpott DJ, MacQueen G, Sherman PM (2011) Bacterial infection causes stress-induced memory dysfunction in mice. Gut 60 (3):307–317

Giorgi C, Agnoletto C, Bononi A, Bonora M, De Marchi E, Marchi S, Missiroli S, Patergnani S, Poletti F, Rimessi A (2012) Mitochondrial calcium homeostasis as potential target for mitochondrial medicine. Mitochondrion 12(1):77–85

Giovinazzo D, Bursac B, Sbodio JI, Nalluru S, Vignane T, Snowman AM, Albacarys LM, Sedlak TW, Torregrossa R, Whiteman M (2021) Hydrogen sulfide is neuroprotective in Alzheimer's disease by sulfhydrating GSK3β and inhibiting Tau hyperphosphorylation. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 118(4)

Goo H-G, Jung MK, Han SS, Rhim H, Kang S (2013) HtrA2/Omi deficiency causes damage and mutation of mitochondrial DNA. Biochim Biophys Acta (BBA) Mol Cell Res 1833 (8):1866–1875

Granatiero V, Pacifici M, Raffaello A, De Stefani D, Rizzuto R (2019) Overexpression of mitochondrial calcium uniporter causes neuronal death. Oxidative Med Cell Longev 2019

Guinane CM, Cotter PD (2013) Role of the gut microbiota in health and chronic gastrointestinal disease: understanding a hidden metabolic organ. Ther Adv Gastroenterol 6(4):295–308

Haran JP, Bhattarai SK, Foley SE, Dutta P, Ward DV, Bucci V, McCormick BA (2019) Alzheimer's disease microbiome is associated with dysregulation of the anti-inflammatory P-glycoprotein pathway. MBio 10(3)

Henderson ST, Vogel JL, Barr LJ, Garvin F, Jones JJ, Costantini LC (2009) Study of the ketogenic agent AC-1202 in mild to moderate Alzheimer's disease: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, multicenter trial. Nutr Metab 6(1):31

Hernández-López S, Tkatch T, Perez-Garci E, Galarraga E, Bargas J, Hamm H, Surmeier DJ (2000) D2 dopamine receptors in striatal medium spiny neurons reduce L-type Ca^{2+} currents and excitability via a novel PLCβ1–IP3–calcineurin-signaling cascade. J Neurosci 20 (24):8987–8995

James SJ, Cutler P, Melnyk S, Jernigan S, Janak L, Gaylor DW, Neubrander JA (2004) Metabolic biomarkers of increased oxidative stress and impaired methylation capacity in children with autism. Am J Clin Nutr 80(6):1611–1617

Jara C, Aránguiz A, Cerpa W, Tapia-Rojas C, Quintanilla RA (2018) Genetic ablation of tau improves mitochondrial function and cognitive abilities in the hippocampus. Redox Biol 18:279–294

Jones AW, Yao Z, Vicencio JM, Karkucinska-Wieckowska A, Szabadkai G (2012) PGC-1 family coactivators and cell fate: roles in cancer, neurodegeneration, cardiovascular disease and retrograde mitochondria–nucleus signalling. Mitochondrion 12(1):86–99

Kapogiannis D, Mattson MP (2011) Disrupted energy metabolism and neuronal circuit dysfunction in cognitive impairment and Alzheimer's disease. Lancet Neurol 10(2):187–198

Khan SA, Khan SA, Narendra AR, Mushtaq G, Zahran SA, Khan S, Kamal MA (2016) Alzheimer's disease and autistic spectrum disorder: is there any association? CNS Neurol Disord Drug Targets 15(4):390–402

Lin MT, Beal MF (2006) Mitochondrial dysfunction and oxidative stress in neurodegenerative diseases. Nature 443(7113):787–795

Lou G, Palikaras K, Lautrup S, Scheibye-Knudsen M, Tavernarakis N, Fang EF (2020) Mitophagy and neuroprotection. Trends Mol Med 26(1):8–20

MacFabe DF (2015) Enteric short-chain fatty acids: microbial messengers of metabolism, mitochondria, and mind: implications in autism spectrum disorders. Microb Ecol Health Dis 26(1):28177

Maenner MJ, Shaw KA, Baio J (2020) Prevalence of autism spectrum disorder among children aged 8 years—autism and developmental disabilities monitoring network, 11 sites, United States, 2016. MMWR Surveill Summ 69(4):1

Malaguarnera M, Cauli O (2019) Effects of l-carnitine in patients with autism spectrum disorders: review of clinical studies. Molecules 24(23):4262

Malek M, Hüttemann M, Lee I (2018) Mitochondrial structure, function, and dynamics: the common thread across organs, disease, and aging, Hindawi

Martinelli P, Rugarli EI (2010) Emerging roles of mitochondrial proteases in neurodegeneration. Biochim Biophys Acta (BBA) Bioenerget 1797(1):1–10

Mantzavinos V, Alexiou A (2017) Biomarkers for Alzheimer's disease diagnosis. Curr Alzheimer Res 14(11):1149–1154

Milder J, Patel M (2012) Modulation of oxidative stress and mitochondrial function by the ketogenic diet. Epilepsy Res 100(3):295–303

Neher E, Sakaba T (2008) Multiple roles of calcium ions in the regulation of neurotransmitter release. Neuron 59(6):861–872

Neufeld K, Kang N, Bienenstock J, Foster JA (2011) Reduced anxiety-like behavior and central neurochemical change in germ-free mice. Neurogastroenterol Motil 23(3):255-e119

Nguyen RL, Medvedeva YV, Ayyagari TE, Schmunk G, Gargus JJ (2018) Intracellular calcium dysregulation in autism spectrum disorder: an analysis of converging organelle signaling pathways. Biochim Biophys Acta (BBA) Mol Cell Res 1865(11):1718–1732

Noebels J (2017) Precision physiology and rescue of brain ion channel disorders. J Gen Physiol 149 (5):533–546

Oh M, Kim SA, Yoo HJ (2020) Higher lactate level and lactate-to-pyruvate ratio in autism spectrum disorder. Exp Neurobiol 29(4):314

Ohja K, Gozal E, Fahnestock M, Cai L, Cai J, Freedman JH, Switala A, El-Baz A, Barnes GN (2018) Neuroimmunologic and neurotrophic interactions in autism spectrum disorders: relationship to neuroinflammation. NeuroMolecular Med 20(2):161–173

Pan X, Nasaruddin MB, Elliott CT, McGuinness B, Passmore AP, Kehoe PG, Hölscher C, McClean PL, Graham SF, Green BD (2016) Alzheimer's disease–like pathology has transient effects on the brain and blood metabolome. Neurobiol Aging 38:151–163

Pangrazzi L, Balasco L, Bozzi Y (2020) Oxidative stress and immune system dysfunction in autism spectrum disorders. Int J Mol Sci 21(9):3293

Peng Y, Gao P, Shi L, Chen L, Liu J, Long J (2020) Central and peripheral metabolic defects contribute to the pathogenesis of Alzheimer's disease: targeting mitochondria for diagnosis and prevention. Antioxid Redox Signal 32(16):1188–1236

Phillips NR, Simpkins JW, Roby RK (2014) Mitochondrial DNA deletions in Alzheimer's brains: a review. Alzheimers Dement 10(3):393–400

Picard M, McEwen BS (2014) Mitochondria impact brain function and cognition. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 111(1):7–8

Quiroz JA, Gray NA, Kato T, Manji HK (2008) Mitochondrially mediated plasticity in the pathophysiology and treatment of bipolar disorder. Neuropsychopharmacology 33 (11):2551–2565

Qureshi AY, Mueller S, Snyder AZ, Mukherjee P, Berman JI, Roberts TP, Nagarajan SS, Spiro JE, Chung WK, Sherr EH (2014) Opposing brain differences in 16p11. 2 deletion and duplication carriers. J Neurosci 34(34):11199–11211

Remington R, Bechtel C, Larsen D, Samar A, Page R, Morrell C, Shea TB (2016) Maintenance of cognitive performance and mood for individuals with Alzheimer's disease following consumption of a nutraceutical formulation: a one-year, open-label study. J Alzheimers Dis 51 (4):991–995

Rose S, Melnyk S, Pavliv O, Bai S, Nick T, Frye R, James S (2012) Evidence of oxidative damage and inflammation associated with low glutathione redox status in the autism brain. Transl Psychiatry 2(7):e134–e134

Rose S, Niyazov DM, Rossignol DA, Goldenthal M, Kahler SG, Frye RE (2018) Clinical and molecular characteristics of mitochondrial dysfunction in autism spectrum disorder. Mol Diagn Ther 22(5):571–593

Rossignol DA, Frye RE (2012) A review of research trends in physiological abnormalities in autism spectrum disorders: immune dysregulation, inflammation, oxidative stress, mitochondrial dysfunction and environmental toxicant exposures. Mol Psychiatry 17(4):389–401

Ruan Y, Li H, Zhang K, Jian F, Tang J, Song Z (2013) Loss of Yme1L perturbates mitochondrial dynamics. Cell Death Dis 4(10):e896–e896

Sackmann C, Hallbeck M (2020) Oligomeric amyloid-β induces early and widespread changes to the proteome in human ipSc-derived neurons. Sci Rep 10(1):1–12

Saint-Georges-Chaumet Y, Edeas M (2016) Microbiota–mitochondria inter-talk: consequence for microbiota–host interaction. FEMS Pathog Dis 74(1):ftv096

Santiago JA, Potashkin JA (2014) A network approach to clinical intervention in neurodegenerative diseases. Trends Mol Med 20(12):694–703

Sharma P, Sampath H (2019) Mitochondrial DNA integrity: role in health and disease. Cell 8 (2):100

Shimmura C, Suda S, Tsuchiya KJ, Hashimoto K, Ohno K, Matsuzaki H, Iwata K, Matsumoto K, Wakuda T, Kameno Y (2011) Alteration of plasma glutamate and glutamine levels in children with high-functioning autism. PLoS One 6(10):e25340

Siniscalco D, Cirillo A, Bradstreet JJ, Antonucci N (2013) Epigenetic findings in autism: new perspectives for therapy. Int J Environ Res Public Health 10(9):4261–4273

Sorrentino V, Romani M, Mouchiroud L, Beck JS, Zhang H, D'Amico D, Moullan N, Potenza F, Schmid AW, Rietsch S (2017) Enhancing mitochondrial proteostasis reduces amyloid-β proteotoxicity. Nature 552(7684):187–193

Stein A, Sia EA (2017) Mitochondrial DNA repair and damage tolerance. Front Biosci (Landmark Ed) 22:920–943

Strauss KA, Jinks RN, Puffenberger EG, Venkatesh S, Singh K, Cheng I, Mikita N, Thilagavathi J, Lee J, Sarafianos S (2015) CODAS syndrome is associated with mutations of LONP1, encoding mitochondrial AAA+ Lon protease. Am J Hum Genet 96(1):121–135

Tang G, Rios PG, Kuo S-H, Akman HO, Rosoklija G, Tanji K, Dwork A, Schon EA, DiMauro S, Goldman J (2013) Mitochondrial abnormalities in temporal lobe of autistic brain. Neurobiol Dis 54:349–361

Tardiolo G, Bramanti P, Mazzon E (2018) Overview on the effects of N-acetylcysteine in neurodegenerative diseases. Molecules 23(12):3305

Toglia P, Ullah G (2016) The gain-of-function enhancement of IP3-receptor channel gating by familial Alzheimer's disease-linked presenilin mutants increases the open probability of mitochondrial permeability transition pore. Cell Calcium 60(1):13–24

Toledo JB, Arnold M, Kastenmüller G, Chang R, Baillie RA, Han X, Thambisetty M, Tenenbaum JD, Suhre K, Thompson JW (2017) Metabolic network failures in Alzheimer's disease: a biochemical road map. Alzheimers Dement 13(9):965–984

Valiente-Pallejà A, Torrell H, Muntané G, Cortés MJ, Martínez-Leal R, Abasolo N, Alonso Y, Vilella E, Martorell L (2018) Genetic and clinical evidence of mitochondrial dysfunction in autism spectrum disorder and intellectual disability. Hum Mol Genet 27(5):891–900

Varga NÁ, Pentelényi K, Balicza P, Gézsi A, Reményi V, Hársfalvi V, Bencsik R, Illés A, Prekop C, Molnár MJ (2018) Mitochondrial dysfunction and autism: comprehensive genetic analyses of children with autism and mtDNA deletion. Behav Brain Funct 14(1):1–14

Vinkhuyzen AA, Eyles DW, Burne TH, Blanken LM, Kruithof CJ, Verhulst F, White T, Jaddoe VW, Tiemeier H, McGrath JJ (2017) Gestational vitamin D deficiency and autism spectrum disorder. BJPsych Open 3(2):85–90

Vogt NM, Kerby RL, Dill-McFarland KA, Harding SJ, Merluzzi AP, Johnson SC, Carlsson CM, Asthana S, Zetterberg H, Blennow K (2017) Gut microbiome alterations in Alzheimer's disease. Sci Rep 7(1):1–11

Von Bernhardi R, Eugenín J (2012) Alzheimer's disease: redox dysregulation as a common denominator for diverse pathogenic mechanisms. Antioxid Redox Signal 16(9):974–1031

Wang J, Markesbery WR, Lovell MA (2006) Increased oxidative damage in nuclear and mitochondrial DNA in mild cognitive impairment. J Neurochem 96(3):825–832

Wang T, Hu X, Liang S, Li W, Wu X, Wang L, Jin F (2015) Lactobacillus fermentum NS9 restores the antibiotic induced physiological and psychological abnormalities in rats. Benefic Microbes 6 (5):707–717

Wang Y, Li N, Yang J-J, Zhao D-M, Chen B, Zhang G-Q, Chen S, Cao R-F, Yu H, Zhao C-Y (2020) Probiotics and fructo-oligosaccharide intervention modulate the microbiota-gut brain axis to improve autism spectrum reducing also the hyper-serotonergic state and the dopamine metabolism disorder. Pharmacol Res 157:104784

Wen-hong L, Llopis J, Whitney M, Zlokarnik G, Tsien RY (1998) Cell-permeant caged InsP3 ester shows that Ca^{2+} spike frequency can optimize gene expression. Nature 392(6679):936

Xie K, Qin Q, Long Z, Yang Y, Peng C, Xi C, Li L, Wu Z, Daria V, Zhao Y (2021) High-throughput metabolomics for discovering potential biomarkers and identifying metabolic mechanisms in aging and Alzheimer's disease. Front Cell Dev Biol 9:602887

Zhang J-Y, Ding Y-P, Wang Z, Kong Y, Gao R, Chen G (2017) Hydrogen sulfide therapy in brain diseases: from bench to bedside. Med Gas Res 7(2):113

Zhang H, Wei W, Zhao M, Ma L, Jiang X, Pei H, Cao Y, Li H (2021) Interaction between Aβ and Tau in the Pathogenesis of Alzheimer's Disease. Int J Biol Sci 17(9):2181–2192. https://doi.org/10.7150/ijbs.57078

3 The Pathogenesis and Complications Associated with Autism Spectrum Disorder and Alzheimer's Disease: A Comparative Study

Ishfaq Ahmad Ahanger, Anurag Sharma, and Asimul Islam

Abstract

Autism spectrum disorder (ASD) is a neurodevelopmental disability that is associated with the promotion of social, communication, and behavioral inflexibility or impairment in an individual, whereas Alzheimer's disease (AD) is a progressive neurodegenerative disorder characterized by degeneration and death of brain cells and ultimately leads to dementia and cognitive decline. However, reports suggest that both share common neuronal proteins including amyloid precursor protein (APP), phosphatase and tensin homolog (PTEN), fragile X mental retardation protein, and metabotropic glutamate receptors. Here, the correlation between neuronal proteins of these two diseases is highlighted. The significance of common signaling pathway is illustrated though the NOWADA model. The brain of individual suffering from ASD exhibits phenomenon of hyperplasticity that can be very crucial in tackling the AD. This study overview the medications approved for AD such as donepezil, galantamine, rivastigmine, tacrine and memantine, which have been also observed to be effective in ASD. More vigorous investigations are obligatory as there is an absence of medication for ADS and AD. Through overviewing the recent advances and trends regarding ASD and its correlation with AD can be fundamentally conducive in understanding mechanism of etiology of ASD and AD and formulating the ultra-efficient therapeutic approach to impediment complications due to these diseases.

I. A. Ahanger · A. Sharma
Department of Chemistry, Biochemistry and Forensic Science, Amity School of Applied Sciences, Amity University Haryana, Gurgaon, Haryana, India

A. Islam (✉)
Centre for Interdisciplinary Research in Basic Sciences, Jamia Millia Islamia, Jamia Nagar, New Delhi, India
e-mail: aislam@jmi.ac.in

G. Md Ashraf, A. Alexiou (eds.), *Autism Spectrum Disorder and Alzheimer's Disease*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-4558-7_3

Keywords

Autism spectrum disorder · Alzheimer's disease · Neuronal proteins · Hyperplasticity · NOWADA model

3.1 Introduction

Autism spectrum disorder (ASD), simply referred as autism spectrum, is a group of neurodevelopmental disabilities that are associated with introducing the social, communication, and behavioral inflexibility and problems in an individual. It may also comprise autism, Asperger syndrome, Rett syndrome, and childhood disintegrative disorders. An individual always repeats such social, communication, and behavioral problems without having any interest modification from the complications. It has been reported in 2015 that around 1% of people are suffering from the autism spectrum which makes it near about 62.2 million people worldwide associated with this issue. The exact causes responsible for autism still remain unfold or unexplored to the world. In the initial 2 years of age of an individual, symptoms usually come into sight; that is why autism spectrum disorder is considered as a neurodevelopmental disorder.

Alzheimer's disease is a progressive neurodegenerative disorder characterized by degeneration and death of brain cells and ultimately leads to dementia and cognitive decline (Querfurth and LaFerla 2010). Trouble in memorizing the current events are the initial symptoms, difficulties in language and problems in behavior, and reduction in the muscle mass which weakens and ultimately leads to death (Querfurth and LaFerla 2010). The Alzheimer's disease cause is not explored yet clearly. Alzheimer's disease is known to be associated with protein misfolding diseases (proteopathy). Amyloid beta protein and tau protein are two proteins recognized to be responsible in causing Alzheimer's disease (Hashimoto et al. 2003).

Amyloid beta protein is structurally composed of 6–43 amino acids that are critically associated with Alzheimer's disease (Hamley 2012). It is regarded as intrinsically unstructured which is lacking the specific three-dimensional conformation. Amyloid beta is a portion of other bigger protein in the synapses of nerve cells known as amyloid precursor protein (APP). APP has the ability to penetrate into the membrane neurons and is very vital for the growth and development of neurons ("About Alzheimer's Disease: Symptoms," 2012).

Amyloid beta has been observed to cause the impairment, the death of neurons, and production of ROS (Hardy and Allsop 1991). It contains small portions of beta sheet and alpha helix structures, but it results into the formation of aggregates at higher concentration called amyloid fibrils, which is dominated by the presence of beta sheets. In the neuron cells, amyloid beta protein helps in the formation of lipid peroxidation and the formation of 4-hydroxynonenal. 4-hydroxynonenal is structurally an aldehyde group, which is toxic in nature, and found in cells formed during the process of lipid peroxidation (Hardy and Allsop 1991). The phenomenon of lipid peroxidation results in damaging the functioning of ATPases, transporters of

glutamate, and glucose. Thus, in the membrane where the transmission of nerve impulses occurs in the neurons, amyloid beta protein stimulates the phenomenon of depolarization, influx of calcium ion, and dysfunctioning of mitochondria (Mattson 2004). Reports suggest that the deficiency of amyloid beta protein is not exhibiting any noticeable absence of any role in the functioning. For the diagnosis of a patient suffering from Alzheimer's disease, no clear blood test is available in medical science; thus, signs and symptoms associated with Alzheimer's disease are usually exploited by doctors to diagnose this complication. Enzymes like gamma secretase and beta secretase are involved in the cleaving of APP into the minor parts (Hooper 2005). Among such minor fractions of APP, one of them results into the formation of amyloid beta, which ultimately bundles and accumulates exterior of neurons in compact structures referred to as senile plaques (Hooper 2005). The shape and size of senile plaque vary, but then its usual size is 50 μm which has a tendency to form protein aggregates and which functions as neurotoxic in nature.

Tau protein is a microtubule-associated protein (MAP), primarily found in neurons, and structurally is an isoform of six proteins formed via alternative splicing. In neurons, its role is to keep the microtubule in a stable condition. Tau proteins in hyper-phosphorylated form are coupled with the pathogenesis of Alzheimer's disease and Parkinson's disease (Goedert et al. 1991). Tau protein is phosphorylated through serine and threonine residues as these residues have binding sites for phosphorylation. The phosphorylation phenomenon is controlled by protein kinases especially serine threonine kinases. The proteoglycans including heparin sulfate are vital in the absorption of tau protein on the surface of cells by means of micropinocytosis process. It has been also observed that tau proteins play a crucial role in cell signaling and apoptosis (Ahanger et al. 2021a). There is obstruction of synapses by the misfolding and aggregation of tau protein. Some well-established reports depict that the Alzheimer's disease is caused due to protein misfolding or it is a proteopathy, in which the brain of the patient suffering from Alzheimer's disease is clumped due to aberrant amyloid beta protein (Ahanger et al. 2021b; Bashir et al. 2021). The brain cells or neurons have no tendency to be reversed after its death. Hence, there is lack of sustainable medicine for this fatal complication. But, in order to live with this suffering, scientists have suggested some therapeutic molecules, which provide the patient some sight of relief.

Acetylcholine is a neurotransmitter that is very crucial for the transmission of nerve impulse. Choline acetyltransferase is the crucial enzyme responsible for the synthesis of acetylcholine from choline and acetyl-CoA. Acetylcholine can be fragmented into choline and acetate in the presence of acetylcholinesterase. The action of acetylcholinesterase can be inhibited in order to design the therapeutic approach in various neurological complications including Alzheimer's disease. Taking clue from this approach, rivastigmine is a drug which has been found very effective as the blocker of acetylcholinesterase. Rivastigmine has been used in the preparation of nanoparticles, namely, cholesterol liposomal nanoparticles (Govindarajan Karthivashan et al. 2018). It has been found that in the brain, half-life of rivastigmine after conjugation with nanoparticle is enhanced significantly that contributes in its ability to tackle Alzheimer's disease. Reports have shown that there

are other important inhibitors of acetylcholinesterase such as catechin, which is very effective in the protection against various neurological diseases, when incorporated in gold nanoparticles (Govindarajan Karthivashan et al. 2018).

The genetic, neuroanatomical aberrations and environmental factors are thought to be the probable risk factors responsible for triggering the autism spectrum disorder. Reports obtained from MRI experiments suggest that people suffering from autism spectrum especially between the age group of 3 and 4 years possess a bigger total cerebral brain volume with respect to children which are at a verge of developing. Other reports depict that patients suffering from ASD from age group between 2 and 4 years also possess a larger brain volume with respect to the normal. Such uncharacteristic expansion of brain formation is due to extreme broadening of brain white matter and gray matter especially from the cerebral region. The H-MRS technique is very significant to identifying deformities and pathologies in brain sections that seem normal under MRI technique. From such experiments, N-acetyl aspartate choline, creatine, and myoinositol are some molecules with important spectral peaks. N-acetyl aspartate acts as an indicator which is very sensitive to structural stability of neurons. From the MRSI experiments, it is clear that people suffering from autism spectrum especially between the age group of 3 and 4 years shows that there is a reduction of *N*-acetyl aspartate. Such outcomes possess the significance for understanding the complexity of anomalous enlargement of the brain in the autism spectrum disorder. There is the assumption regarding the enlargement value of the brain in the patient suffering from ASD, which points it toward the impairment phenomenon of apoptosis or synaptic pruning. This suggestion depicts that as the concentration of *N*-acetyl aspartate elevates, it results into the formation of further compactly packed neurons or enlarged synaptic networks.

Immense measures of collective initiatives and associations such as Alzheimer's Disease Neuroimaging Initiative obtain and stake huge number of data including phenotypic, genotypic, behavioral, and imaging in order to assist in determining new biomarkers so to better apprehend the complexity of fatal complications. The extensively recommended approach which is the usual outline deals with the relation of the specific components symbolized in the form of nodes by the graph (Sarah Parisotb et al. 2018). In biomedical sciences, particularly, these nodes may signify the persons or patient observed in the possibly huge population, which comprises groups of characteristics, whereas the boundaries of the graph possess the relations of components and topics by the natural means. This type of demonstration permits to integrate the information about imaging and non-imaging data and personal characteristics all together, which may be used for the examination and pathology of brain diseases in huge populations (Sarah Parisotb et al. 2018). Many studies use the Graph Convolutional Networks, which involves ABIDE and ADNI, two huge datasets, in order to forecast the autism spectrum disorder and its transformation into the Alzheimer's disease, respectively. This demonstration from both databases depicts that this innovative arrangement may expand outcomes. The acquired results were with precision by means of ABIDE with 70% and ADNI with 80% (Sarah Parisotb et al. 2018). Downregulation of the immune system, inflammation (local reaction to cellular damage), oxidative stress (cellular damage caused due to the

inequality between free radicals and antioxidant), mitochondrial impairment, and exposure to environmental toxicants are some major physiological aberrations which are coupled with autism spectrum disorder (Fry and Frye 2012).

3.2 Materials and Methods

3.2.1 Comprehensive Study of Review of Literature of Different Neuronal Proteins

The basic material is acquired from the vigorous study of different previously authentic publications. Different neuronal proteins including amyloid precursor protein (APP), fragile X mental retardation protein, metabotropic glutamate receptors, and phosphatase and tensin homolog (PTEN) in association with autism spectrum disorder and Alzheimer's disease were thoroughly studied and reviewed. Various cell signaling pathways comprise NOTCH, WNT proteins of Alzheimer's diseases, and the protein of apoptosis pathway. All these pathways are collectively referred to as NOWADA model or NOTCH-WNT-Alzheimer's Disease-Apoptosis model. This vital pathway is comprehensively highlighted in this chapter (Fig. 3.1).

3.3 Discussion

There are many reports that suggest a link between autism spectrum disorder (ASD) and Alzheimer's disease (AD). Patients especially children suffering from autism have shown an increased percentage of amyloid precursor protein in plasma (Sokol et al. 2006). It has been observed that such patients exhibit two times the quantity of amyloid precursor protein as compared to patients suffering from mild autism spectrum disorder. Generally, it is estimated that a greater amount of soluble amyloid precursor protein-alpha results in insignificant reduction of Aβ40 in patients suffering from autism (Sokol et al. 2011). Such observations indicate that there are more chances of formation of higher proteins which are non-amyloidogenic in nature with anabolic behavior in autism spectrum disorder as compared to Alzheimer's disease which are dominated by catabolic behavior (Sokol et al. 2011). Increased amount of soluble amyloid precursor protein-alpha formed by means of non-amyloidogenic phenomenon might be involved in the complexity of autism spectrum disorder. There is a genetic disorder which is involved in intellectual disability called fragile X syndrome (FXS). The phenotypes responsible for mental retardation, introducing the social, communication, and behavioral problems in an individual, are called FXS phenotypes. Enhancement in the formation of soluble amyloid precursor protein-alpha through non-amyloidogenic phenomenon might be backing to phenotypes of both autism spectrum disorder and fragile X syndrome. The neurological disorder where there is an absence of a well-developed brain, especially in the newborns, which results into the development of a smaller than normal head is referred to as microcephaly. Increased levels of soluble amyloid

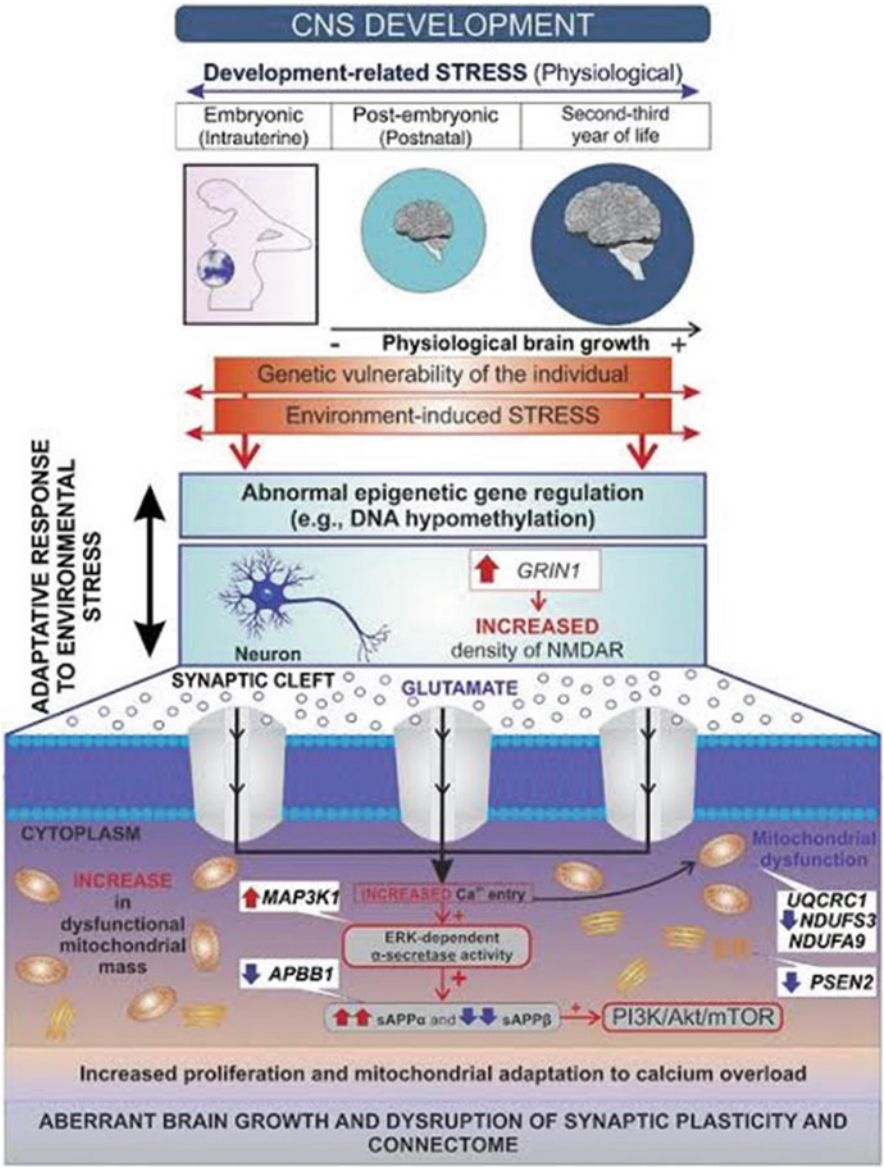


Fig. 3.1 Different abnormal neuronal proteins associated with autism spectrum disorder and their influence on neuroplasticity (Zeidan-Chulia et al. 2014)

precursor protein-alpha are also believed to be associated with microcephaly. Such kind of involvement of soluble amyloid precursor protein-alpha is partly facilitated by binding of sAPP-alpha to catenin. Cortical neurons are changed by adhesion and

migration due to sAPP-alpha to catenin thus stimulating this abnormal development of the brain.

The abrupt uncontrolled electrical signals between the neurons are referred to as seizures. It has been found that patients suffering from autism spectrum disorder, fragile X syndrome, and Alzheimer's disease are also characterized with possessing 10–30% of seizures (Hagerman 2002; Scarmeas et al. 2009).

3.3.1 Different Neuronal Proteins Associated with Autism Spectrum Disorder and Alzheimer's Disease

3.3.1.1 Amyloid Precursor Protein (APP)

Amyloid precursor protein (APP) is a bigger fraction of amyloid beta protein largely located in the synapses of nerve cells. It is present in many tissues but is largely located in synapses of nerve cells. The arrangement of different subcellular components in the presynaptic and postsynaptic locations for transmission of nerve impulse is controlled through the process called synapse formation. APP plays an important role in the process of synapse formation. The significant modifications exhibited by the neurons of the brain due to cortical reorganization are also facilitated by amyloid precursor protein, and the tendency is called neuroplasticity. Further, the enabling of exportation of iron is also an important biological function of amyloid precursor protein (Rogers et al. 2008). The export of iron is enabled by binding of APP with ferroportin and due to the presence of ferroxidase activity observed in APP, and this activity can be suppressed by the zinc ion (Rogers et al. 2008). In addition, the neuronal transport of molecules produced in neurons transported into synapses of neurons in the distal portion is also facilitated by amyloid precursor protein (Satpute-Krishnan et al. 2006). This transport is meditated by binding of cargo protein with kinesin protein. This type of transport is called anterograde neuronal transport (ANT), which occurs by transport of neuron molecules from the cell body outward into the synapse portion of neurons (Satpute-Krishnan et al. 2006). The gene present in humans which is responsible for encoding glutamate receptor is called metabotropic glutamate receptor 1 protein (mGluR1). The receptor, which functions by means of secondary messenger, is regarded as metabotropic receptor. It has been suggested that during the cell culture, there is the stimulation of glutamate receptor 1 which in turn leads to the enhancement in the release of soluble amyloid precursor protein (Jolly-Tornetta et al. 1998). In addition, there are reports which suggest that during cell culture, amyloid precursor protein is also associated with adhesion of nerve cells which signifies that this protein might also be vital in prevention. Hence, the position and role of APP in the autism is important for normal growth and development of the brain (Geschwind 2009).

3.3.1.2 Fragile X Mental Retardation Protein (FMRP)

Fragile X mental retardation protein (FMRP) is a vital protein, which is crucial for normal growth and development of the brain. There is development of FXS, ASD,

Parkinson's disease, mental retardation, and POF when the FMRP gene undergoes mutation (Verheij et al. 1993). Transportation of target mRNAs and guiding the phenomenon of translation at the synapse are major effects of FMRP. It has also been linked to interact with the assembly of ribosomes connected to the molecule of mRNA (Weiler et al. 1997). This interaction tendency of FMRP is operative in the presence of H homology domain, and glycine-arginine rich residues facilitated by controlling translation are apparently crucial for usual memory and learning (Weiler et al. 1997). The proximal portion of dendrite is the site involved in the formation of fragile X mental retardation protein, whereas distant portion of a dendrite is involved in transmission of nerve impulse synapse after the stimulation from mGluR (Miller et al. 2005). In patients suffering from fragile X syndrome, there is a rise in amount of dendritic spines in an immature form, which signifies that the morphology of the spine is irregular and uncharacteristic in nature (Sokol and Edwards-Brown 2004). Deficiency of fragile X mental retardation protein has been also linked with the formation of anomalous dendritic spine, which is a membranous outgrowth from the dendrite of a neuron crucial for the transmission of nerve impulse (Sokol and Edwards-Brown 2004).

3.3.1.3 Metabotropic Glutamate Receptors (mGluRs)

Metabotropic glutamate receptors (mGluRs) refer to glutamate receptor or type of GPCRs situated in the synapses of nerve cells, which function as metabotropic in nature, i.e., functions in the presence of secondary messenger (Bonsi et al. 2005). mGluRs interact with the excitatory neurotransmitters glutamate (Bonsi et al. 2005). mGluR is involved in the phenomenon of translation through triggering the different cell signaling pathways such as PI3K/mTOR pathway that is based on the fragile X mental retardation protein pathway (Lahiri et al. 2002). There are different subclasses of mGluRs and mGluRs 1, which have been observed to be responsible for causing the complications like Fragile X syndrome. The most frequently reported cause of autism spectrum disorder is Fragile X syndrome. mGluRs I are recognized to enhance the functioning of *N*-methyl-D-aspartate receptors which are important sites in causing excitotoxicity (excessive stimulation of glutamate receptor by the increase in glutamate that leads to damage and death of neurons) (Skeberdis et al. 2002). Metabotropic glutamate receptor II acts as agonists very important in the treatment of mood swings or mania or depression which are the peculiarities of a prolonged mental health complication known as schizophrenia (Krystal et al. 2003).

3.3.1.4 Phosphatase and Tensin Homolog (PTEN)

PTEN is an important human protein that functions as the tumor suppressor gene due to its phosphatase activity. The tensin domain and the catalytic domain are the two types of domains found in the structure of PTEN protein (Steck et al. 1997). Phosphatase activity in PTEN is responsible for tumor suppression. This phosphatase activity possessed by the protein PTEN is also very significant in cell cycle control, stopping cells from increasing and dividing too promptly (Steck et al. 1997). There can be more susceptibility in the formation of various cancers if this PTEN gene undergoes mutation. There is the formation of structure of lesions in the

cerebellar portion causing a disease called dysplastic gangliocytoma of the cerebellum characterized by the presence of mutated PTEN (Pilarski and Eng 2004). The study also suggests that there is the development of autism complications if the PTEN gene goes through any defects or abnormalities. The protein PTEN has been observed to be involved in the binding with the tumor suppressor protein called Tp53. This interaction results in the reduction in formation of energy in the nerve cells. This energy crisis in neurons results in destructive changes in the DNA of mitochondria with formation of energy in an abnormal way in different portions of the brain which is very vital for an individual's social behavior (Steck et al. 1997). The deficiency of PTEN protein leads to the binding of PTEN to p53 which initiates insufficiencies and abnormalities of different proteins observed in patients suffering from incapacities in learning such as autism spectrum disorder (Napoli et al. 2012). The structural change of various PTEN proteins is a key distinguishing trait seen in people suffering from autism spectrum disorder. This condition in which an individual is characterized with having an enlarged and abnormal head is called macrocephaly (Kerrr et al. 2006).

3.3.1.5 Correlation Between Amyloid Precursor Protein (APP), Fragile X Mental Retardation Protein, and Metabotropic Glutamate Receptors

There are reports which illustrate the significant governing correlation between amyloid precursor protein (APP), fragile X mental retardation protein, and metabotropic glutamate receptors with respect to autism spectrum disorder and Alzheimer's diseases (Westmark and Malter 2007). When the synaptic terminal is isolated from the nerve cell, it is called a synaptosome. When the synaptosome is resealed at postsynaptic level, it is called a synaptoneurosome. There is enhancement of amyloid precursor protein (APP) in protein synthesis when the synaptoneurosome is activated in the presence of metabotropic glutamate receptors (Westmark and Malter 2007).

The complex formation between RNA and protein in the presence of amyloid precursor protein (APP) and fragile X mental retardation protein mRNA has been observed to be denatured via agonist behavior exhibited by metabotropic glutamate receptors in animals especially wild type (Westmark and Malter 2007). With basal conditions, fragile X mental retardation protein is involved in the suppression of translation of amyloid precursor protein. However, this suppression is operative once metabotropic glutamate receptor 5 is stimulated and activated. The suppression of amyloid precursor protein is lacking which is based on translation of fragile X mental retardation in fragile X syndrome (FXS) (Vanderklish and Edelman 2002). Studies also suggest that increase in the translation of amyloid precursor protein is not observed to be activating the amyloidogenic pathway of amyloid precursor protein. This ultimately can facilitate the additional substrate for the enzyme such as alpha-secretase pathway and possibly display significant neuroprotection from the lethality of Alzheimer's disease. Specifically, this would describe the deficiency of Aβ plaques detected in fragile X syndrome and in autism spectrum disorder (Vanderklish and Edelman 2002).

3.3.1.6 Significance of NOWADA Model in Alzheimer's Disease and Autism Spectrum Disorder

There is web of various cell signaling proteins associated with Autism Spectrum Disorder such as Notch, Wnt, proteins of Alzheimer's disease, and the proteins of apoptosis pathway. Notch protein refers to transmembrane protein responsible for cell-cell communication and regulating the fate of the cell at the time of development. Wnt protein is a glycoprotein involved in Wnt signaling pathways responsible for the interaction between cells either cell-cell communication or same-cell communication and controlling of developmental processes, and this protein has been also observed in association with ASD (Zeidan-Chulia et al. 2014). There are at least 374 proteins in this model, which are interrelating with each other by means of 3665 interactions. These proteins result into the formation of some nodes with various categories: Notch, Wnt, AD, or apoptosis. These networks of proteins have been observed in patients suffering from autism spectrum disorder in the cerebellar portion of the brain (Zeidan-Chulia et al. 2014). The network of such complex of proteins is believed to be a mutual pathway existing between the etiology of Alzheimer's disease and autism. In silico studies depict that there are two therapeutic molecules such as magnesium and rapamycin that exhibit significant effects on proteins associated with NOWADA model.

Rapamycin Rapamycin is a conjugated molecule that acts as antibiotic and has been observed to be involved in the suppression of B cell and T cell process of activation by decreasing the sensitivity of IL-2 via suppression of mTOR. But nowadays, it is believed that rapamycin can be significant in the prevention of autism spectrum disorder (Spilman et al. 2010). Studies from mice tell us that rapamycin could be involved in restoring the synaptic plasticity and enhancement of transmission of nerve (Ehninger et al. 2008; Spilman et al. 2010).

Magnesium Magnesium serves as the cofactor and possesses the catalytic effectiveness in the hydrolysis of GTP. The enzyme serine threonine kinase containing proline is known as glycogen synthase kinase-3 beta or simply the GSK3B (Zhang et al. 2000). Its phosphorylating activity is based on the substrate of magnesium. Its mutation has been coupled with neurological complications including bipolar disease and Alzheimer's disease (Zhang et al. 2000). There are studies which illustrate that the decreased level of magnesium has been observed markedly in the brain of individuals suffering from autism spectrum disorder; correspondingly, a decreased level of magnesium has also been observed markedly in the brain of individuals suffering from Alzheimer's disease with respect to normal brains (Strambi et al. 2006). In recent times, there are studies which show that the increased level of magnesium in the brain performs a vital role and results in the neuroprotective effects in the synapses portion in individuals suffering from Alzheimer's disease. Therefore, magnesium could be used as a therapeutic strategy in order to tackle Alzheimer's disease. There are also reports of progressive communicative effects of magnesium in the presence of pyridoxine treatment with respect to the treatment of autism spectrum disorder (Strambi et al. 2006).

3.3.1.7 Neurotoxic Nature of Aluminum as the Inducer of Autism Spectrum Disorder and Alzheimer's Disease

Aluminum is the commonly observed and most extensively used metal on the surface of the planet. Approximately 52 million tons of aluminum are produced annually throughout the world. The report suggests noncarcinogenic nature of aluminum in humans. Aluminum is harmless or nontoxic in nature up to 40 mg per day. Aluminum oxide has been used as food additive, coloring agent, emulsifying agent, and thickener. It is also reported in humans that aluminum oxide has been associated in the formation of numerous neurological complications such as Alzheimer's disease and autism spectrum disorder (Virk and Eslick 2015). Ample reports are there which illustrate that aluminum shows a neurotoxic behavior in humans and might be a very critical inducer in the pathogenesis of Alzheimer's disease, autism spectrum disorder, and some gradual, neurological complications based on age (Virk and Eslick 2015). Hence, it is believed that such types of contact circumstances to aluminum can harmfully deteriorate human health. In other studies, involving a postmortem examined human brain, there was an increased level of aluminum which could be suggestive to be associated with Alzheimer's disease (Aileen Pogue 2016). It is also observed that toxicity of aluminum can be a causative agent for degeneration of the central nervous system, which can especially lead to the formation of encephalopathy (malfunction and damage of the brain) (Aileen Pogue 2016).

3.3.1.8 Correlation in Therapeutic Approach Approved for Autism Spectrum Disorder and Alzheimer's Disease

As far as treatment of autism spectrum disorder is concerned, there are only two drugs for the treatment of autism spectrum disorder, risperidone and aripiprazole. These therapeutic molecules are approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) not for the primary symptoms of this complication but for countering the irritability complication associated with ASD. There are some treatments which have been observed to be effective in treating the symptoms associated with autism spectrum disorder, and among them there are also some medications which are also effective and recommended in the treatment of Alzheimer's. According to US FDA, donepezil, galantamine, rivastigmine, tacrine, and memantine are few molecules which have been accepted as effective therapeutic strategy for Alzheimer's disease. Such molecules are responsible for obstructing and blocking the usual breakdown of the neurotransmitter acetylcholine, referred to as cholinesterase inhibitors.

3.3.1.8.1 Donepezil

Donepezil is structurally a hydrochloride salt derived from piperidine, which is approved for the treatment of Alzheimer's disease. Donepezil is observed to be interacting with cholinesterases and deactivates the activity of this enzyme, thereby by obstructing acetylcholine from the breakdown (Anas Shamsi et al. 2020). At synapses, this ultimately leads to increases in the level of acetylcholine (Kumar and Sharma 2020). However, its exact mechanism of action is still not explored yet.

There are reports which depict that 70% of patients suffering from autism spectrum disorder have shown improvement (Anas Shamsi et al. 2020). Studies have shown that in patients suffering from autism spectrum disorder, children from the age group of 2.5–6.9 years have disturbances in rapid eye movement (REM) sleep (Buckley et al. 2011). Upon administration of the drug donepezil to these patients, there has been an enhancement in the level of REM sleep (Buckley et al. 2011). In other studies, before donepezil was administered, particularly in children aged 5 years, patients showed symptoms of lacking communication, eye contact, and hyperactivity (Srivastava et al. 2011). Upon administration, a marked enhancement in communication, eye contact, and hyperactivity was seen. Still, there are inconsistent evidences regarding the improvement from symptoms of ASD with the use of donepezil (Srivastava et al. 2011).

3.3.1.8.2 Galantamine

Galantamine is a benzazepine derivative of norbelladine which acts as a cholinesterase blocker. It is approved for different memory loss problems and treatment of Alzheimer's disease. Galantamine obstructs the acetylcholinesterase, which is responsible for the breakdown of the neurotransmitter acetylcholine. This suppression of acetylcholinesterase results in the rise of neurotransmitter acetylcholine significantly for transmission of nerve impulse. Studies suggest that galantamine can be administered in patients suffering from autism spectrum disorder especially to children (Ghaleiha et al. 2013). Upon administration of this drug, there has been an observance of removal of the social irritability and lethargy (Ghaleiha et al. 2013). In other studies, suggesting administration of 16 mg per day of galantamine in patients suffering from autism spectrum disorder especially adults from the age group 21–25 years, there is enhancement in the expression of language and communication. It is assumed that galantamine is possessing dual activity as it has been exhibiting parallel effects in both children and adolescent patients suffering from autism spectrum disorder (Nicolson et al. 2006).

3.3.1.8.3 Rivastigmine

Rivastigmine is a carbamate ester which acts as a cholinesterase blocker and is approved to treat neurological complications including Alzheimer's disease and Parkinson's (Khoury et al. 2018). It has been observed that rivastigmine is involved in the suppression of butyrylcholinesterase activity as well as acetylcholinesterase. It is also reported that the pathway associated with the activity of alpha-secretase can be modified in the presence of rivastigmine (Khoury et al. 2018). Another study suggests that rivastigmin (0.8 mg twice a day) when administered to patients (children) suffering from autism spectrum disorder leads to enhancement of communication (Chez et al. 2004b). Such improvement in the communication has been observed statistically substantial for therapeutic approach and provides optimistic healing effects in the individuals suffering from the autism spectrum disorder (ASD) (Chez et al. 2004b).

3.3.1.8.4 Tacrine

Tacrine chemically belongs to the class of acridines, regarded as blocker of acetylcholinesterase, and has been recommended for the treatment of Alzheimer's disease (Taraschenko et al. 2005). The tread name of tacrine is Cognex in the market (Taraschenko et al. 2005). Tacrine is easily soluble in distilled water, 0.1 normal solution of HCl, dimethylsulfoxide, methanol, ethanol, and propylene glycol, and in both the buffers including phosphate buffer and acetate buffers (Taraschenko et al. 2005). Reports suggest that 20 mg of tacrine can be given to autism spectrum disorder patients especially in the age group 17–33 years. Upon administration of this drug, there has been an observance of recovery from bad temper and unfitting communication-like symptoms (Niederhofer 2007).

3.3.1.8.5 Memantine

Memantine is a primary aliphatic amine, which acts as a blocker of acetylcholinesterase, and is approved as medication for Alzheimer's disease. Excessive release of glutamate results in the repeated stimulation of glutamate receptors. This repeated stimulation results in the deterioration and death of neurons. This process is called neuronal excitotoxicity. This excitotoxicity phenomenon has been assumed to be responsible for the pathogenesis of Alzheimer's disease. The *N*-methyl-D-aspartate receptor (NMDA receptor) provides an innovative method to understand the narrow effectiveness of present medications aiming the cholinergic system.

Memantine is reported to be interacting with NMDA receptor. The binding affinity of this interaction is excellent; thereby, memantine is able to conquer the continued entry of calcium ions, predominantly from the extrasynaptic receptors involved in neuronal excitotoxicity. Thus, memantine is involved in the suppression of neuronal excitotoxicity and reserves the role of the receptor at synapses. Hence, the binding of memantine to glutamate receptors or NMDA receptors is very significant in the symptomatic enhancement.

There are several studies which describe the effectiveness of memantine administrated in patients suffering from autism spectrum disorder. Reports suggest that 8.1 mg per day of memantine drug (Chez et al. 2004a) provides recovery from bad temper and unfitting communication-like symptoms, further improving attention and language (Chez et al. 2004a). In another study, 20 mg per day dose of memantine was administered (patients aged 6–19 years) showing progress in social withdrawal and carelessness (Erickson et al. 2007). However, a few patients experienced increase in side effects such as irritability, rash, and seizures with this medication (Erickson et al. 2007).

Numerous reports have delineated contradictory effects in some individuals suffering from ASD after the medication of memantine (Rossignol and Frye 2014). Remarkably, memantine has been described to both recover and deteriorate the irritability. Such studies indicate that there can be particular subcategories of children suffering from ASD which react significantly to memantine (Rossignol and Frye 2014). Evidently bigger, well-made, and vigorous investigations are required to further assess the effectiveness of memantine in patients suffering from ASD

especially children and also subcategories that may significantly react to medication of memantine (Rossignol and Frye 2014).

3.3.2 Role of Neuroplasticity in Autism Spectrum Disorder and Protection from Alzheimer's Disease

Due to proliferation of cells, there is organ enlargement, which is called hyperplasia or hypergenesis or neoplasia or benign tumor. The condition of being hyperplastic is known as hyperplasticity. Many times, hyperplasticity condition may be harmless, which takes place in some specific tissues (Sembulingam and Sembulingam 2012). During pregnancy, glandular cells in the breast that are responsible for secreting milk undergo growth and multiplication. This is an excellent instance of hyperplastic response (Dirbas and Carol 2011). The innate ability of brain neurons to form and reorganize or modify their synaptic connections and behavior in response to new information, injury, or dysfunction is known as neuroplasticity (Davidson and Bruce 2012; Doidge 2007). These changes occur from the cellular level (neurons) to extensive level comprising cortical remapping. In the cortex of the brain, there is an assembly of minicolumns (vertical column) responsible in executing particular information including texture, color, and outline maps; it is called cortical maps (Doidge 2007). The phenomenon through which the brain is influenced and stimulus results in the formation of the cortical map which is new is known as cortical remapping (Doidge 2007). Thus, neuroplasticity is some sort of hyperplasticity in which the brain adjusts some significant changes such as training and acquiring new abilities that may be learning languages, math, and also physical activities and strength (Compare: Reznikov et al. 2012). The phenomenon in physical activities is involved in the initiation of motor cortex which ultimately is responsible for enhancing the connectivity between your brain and your body, which is regarded as neuropriming. During the event of neuropriming, the brain goes into a state of profound plasticity so that brain acclimatizes such physical activities more efficiently through the process of hyperplasticity (Livni 2019). The physical activity which involves the building of robust networks of the brain with the muscles by means of neurostimulation is called neuropriming (Livni 2019). It involves the phenomenon of hyperplasticity or hyper-learning. There is the headset that permits the operator to increase any physical ability rapidly through the use of neuropriming mechanism, and this headset is called halo sport (Livni 2019).

Thus, the soundness of the brain is reliant on sustaining a suitable equilibrium at the cellular level and extensive level of cortical plasticity (Freitas et al. 2013). In cortical plasticity, gradual deterioration at the cellular level (neurons) of the brain involves modifications which are associated with the age of an individual and a compensating rise in extensive level of cortical plasticity (Freitas et al. 2013). It has been observed that individuals suffering from ASD are also suffering from age-linked cognitive and behavioral problems. There is, however, no indication that people with ASD have a shorter lifespan than the rest of the population. This report shows that patient suffering from ASD can also sustain a significant tendency for

modulation throughout the lifespan. In the pathogenesis of dementia in Alzheimer's disease, there is the involvement of phenomenon of cascade prematurely which is believed to be driven by changes in synaptic plasticity. In these complications of the brain, there is accumulation of amyloid aggregates; tau protein-induced neuronal degeneration is also supposed to occur due to changes in synaptic plasticity (Oberman and Pascual-Leone 2013). The autism spectrum disorder is mostly associated with hyperplasticity. The hyperplasticity has been also reported to form a cascade by the involvement of various neuronal proteins which can provide the defense from the early offense of various neurological complications (Andrasi et al. 2005). Numerous reports indicate that neuroplasticity decreases during the course of the life cycle. It is further suggested that the cortex of the brain in patients suffering from autism spectrum disorder is exhibiting the hyperplastic response. Therefore, such complications must be prevented by decrease in the hyperplastic response (Oberman and Pascual-Leone 2013). It is reported that individuals suffering from autism spectrum disorder manifest hyperplasticity or brain plasticity through adulthood. This may be crucial for the prevention of the onset of Alzheimer's disease (Andrasi et al. 2005; Oberman and Pascual-Leone 2013). Figure 3.1 shows different abnormal neuronal proteins associated with autism spectrum disorder and their influence on neuroplasticity (Zeidan-Chulia et al. 2014).

In conclusion, the neurodevelopmental disability caused by autism spectrum disorder (ASD) and neurodegenerative complication caused by Alzheimer's disease (AD) are two dangerous diseases with debilitating consequence in the human health. However, research refers that both complications involve the same neuronal proteins such as amyloid precursor protein (APP), phosphatase and tensin homolog (PTEN), fragile X mental retardation protein, and metabotropic glutamate receptors. Therefore, there may be a strong relationship among these neuronal proteins with respect to the pathogenesis of these complications, so this study also describes such correlation. The significance of common signaling pathway is illustrated though the NOWADA model. Also, hyperplasticity is also a significant phenomenon in the brain of individuals suffering from ASD whose exhibition could be the possible key factor in the pathogenesis of AD. There is no medication available for the treatment of ASD; still, there are some drugs such as donepezil, galantamine, rivastigmine, tacrine, and memantine approved for AD. In ASD, acetylcholine and glutamate neurotransmitters in the state of impairment are targeted by such medications. Studies reveal that these drugs have also shown some improvement in a few symptoms of ASD. Therefore, further strong studies are recommended, as efficient medication for ADS and AD is unavailable. Through emphasizing the current advances and progress on ASD and its association with AD, this study focuses the importance on understanding the pathogenesis and complications associated with these disorders and urge to design effective medications for such a frustrating human disease.

Conflict of Interest The authors declare no conflict of interest.

References

About Alzheimer's Disease: Symptoms (2012) National Institute on Aging. Archived from the original

Ahanger IA, Parray ZA, Nasreen K, Ahmad F, Hassan MI, Islam A, Sharma A (2021a) Heparin accelerates the protein aggregation via the downhill polymerization mechanism: multi-spectroscopic studies to delineate the implications on proteinopathies. ACS Omega 6(3):2328–2339

Ahanger IA, Bashir S, Parray ZA, Alajmi MF, Hussain A, Ahmad F et al (2021b) Rationalizing the role of monosodium glutamate in the protein aggregation through biophysical approaches: potential impact on neurodegeneration. Front Neurosci 15(141). https://doi.org/10.3389/fnins.2021.636454

Bashir S, Ahanger IA, Shamsi A, Alajmi MF, Hussain A, Choudhry H et al (2021) Trehalose restrains the fibril load towards α-lactalbumin aggregation and halts fibrillation in a concentration-dependent manner. Biomolecules 11(3):414

Aileen Pogue WJL (2016) Natural and synthetic neurotoxins in our environment: from Alzheimer's disease (AD) to autism spectrum disorder (ASD). J Alzheimers Dis Parkinsonism 6(4):249

Anas Shamsi MAS, Hsaaan MI, Islam A (2020) Spectroscopic, calorimetric and molecular docking insight into the interaction of Alzheimer's drug donepezil with human transferrin: implications of Alzheimer's drug. J Biomol Struct Dyn 38(4):1–12

Andrasi E, Pali N, Molnar Z, Kosel S (2005) Brain aluminum, magnesium and phosphorus contents of control and Alzheimer-diseased patients. J Alzheimers Dis 7:273–284

Bonsi P, De Persis C, Centonze D, Bernardi G, Calabresi P, Pisani A (2005) Modulatory action of metabotropic glutamate receptor (mGluR) 5 on mGluR1 function in striatal cholinergic interneurons. Neuropharmacology 49:104–113

Buckley AW, Sassower K, Rodriguez AJ, Jennison K, Wingert K, Buckley J et al (2011) An open label trial of donepezil for enhancement of rapid eye movement sleep in young children with autism spectrum disorders. J Child Adolesc Psychopharmacol 21(4):353–357

Chez M, Hung P, Chin K, Memon S, Kirschner S (2004a) Memantine experience in children and adolescents with autistic spectrum disorders. Ann Neurol 56(8 Suppl):109

Chez MG, Aimonovitch M, Buchanan T, Mrazek S, Tremb RJ (2004b) Treating autistic spectrum disorders in children: utility of the cholinesterase inhibitor rivastigmine tartrate. J Child Neurol 19(3):165–169

Davidson RJM, Bruce S (2012) Social influences on neuroplasticity: stress and interventions to promote well-being. Nat Neurosci 15(5):689–695

Dirbas FS-C, Carol (2011) Breast surgical techniques and interdisciplinary management. Springer, New York

Doidge N (2007) The brain that changes itself: stories of personal triumph from the frontiers of brain science. Viking, New York

Ehninger D, Han S, Shilyansky C, Zhou Y, Li W, Kwiatkowski DJ et al (2008) Reversal of learning deficits in a Tsc2+/- mouse model of tuberous sclerosis. Nat Med 4:843–848, 821

Erickson CA, Posey D, Stigler KA, Mullett J, Katschke AR, McDougle CJ (2007) A retrospective study of memantine in children and adolescents with pervasive developmental disorders. Psychopharmacology 191(1):141–147

Freitas C, Farzan F, Pascual-Leone A (2013) Assessing brain plasticity across the lifespan with transcranial magnetic stimulation: why, how, and what is the ultimate goal? Front Neurosci 7:42

Fry DA, Frye RE (2012) A review of research trends in physiological abnormalities in autism spectrum disorders: immune dysregulation, inflammation, oxidative stress, mitochondrial dysfunction and environmental toxicant exposures. Mol Psychiatry 17(4):389–401

Geschwind DH (2009) Advances in autism. Annu Rev Med 60:367–380

Ghaleiha A, Ghyasvand M, Mohammadi MR, Farokhnia M, Yadegari N, Tabrizi M, Hajiaghaee R, Yekehtaz H, Akhondzadeh S (2013) Galantamine efficacy and tolerability as an augmentative therapy in autistic children: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. J Psychopharmacol 28(7):677–685

Goedert M, Spillantini M, Crowther RA (1991) Tau proteins and neurofibrillary degeneration. Barin Pathaol 1(4):279–286

Govindarajan Karthivashan PG, Park S-Y, Kim J-S, Choi D-K (2018) Therapeutic strategies and nano-drug delivery applications in management of ageing Alzheimer's disease. Drug Deliv 25:307–320. https://doi.org/10.1080/10717544.2018.1428243

Hagerman RJ (2002) The physical and behavioral phenotype. In: Hagerman RJ, Hagerman P (eds) Fragile X syndrome, 3rd edn. Johns Hopkins University Press, Baltimore, pp 3–109

Hamley IW (2012) The amyloid beta peptide: a chemist's perspective. Role in Alzheimer's and fibrillization. Chem Rev 112(10):5147–5192

Hardy J, Allsop D (1991) Amyloid deposition as the central event in the aetiology of Alzheimer's disease. Trends Pharmacol Sci 12(10):383–388. https://doi.org/10.1016/0165-6147(1091)90609-V. PMID 1763432

Hashimoto M, Rockenstein E, Crews L, Masliah E (2003) Role of protein aggregation in mitochondrial dysfunction and neurodegeneration in Alzheimer's and Parkinson's diseases. NeuroMolecular Med 4(1–2):21–36

Hooper NM (2005) Roles of proteolysis and lipid rafts in the processing of the amyloid precursor protein and prion protein. Biochem Soc Trans 33(Pt 2):335–338

Jolly-Tornetta C, Gao Z, Lee VM, Wolf BA (1998) Regulation of amyloid precursor protein secretion by glutamate receptors in human Ntera 2 neurons. J Biol Chem 273:14015–14021

Kerrr F, Rickle A, Nayeem N, Brandner S, Cowburn RF, Lovestone S (2006) PTEN, a negative regulator of PI3 kinase signalling, alters tau phosphorylation in cells by mechanisms independent of GSK-3. FEBS Lett 580:3121–3128

Khoury R, Jayashree R, Grossberg GT (2018) An update on the safety of current therapies for Alzheimer's disease: focus on rivastigmine. Therap Adv Drug Saf 9(3):171–178

Krystal JH, D'Souza D, Mathalon D, Perry E, Belger A, Hoffman R (2003) NMDA receptor antagonist effects, cortical glutamatergic function, and schizophrenia: toward a paradigm shift in medication development. Psychopharmacology 169(3–4):215–233

Kumar A, Sharma S (2020) Article-20656, Donepezil. StatPearls Publishing, Treasure Island, FL

Lahiri DK, Nall C, Chen D, Zaphiriou M, Morgan C, Nurnberger JI Sr (2002) Developmental expression of the betaamyloid precursor protein and heat-shock protein 70 in the cerebral hemisphere region of the rat brain. Ann N Y Acad Sci 965:324–333

Livni E (2019) Learning faster might be possible with this wearable headset. Halo Neurosci

Mattson MP (2004) Pathways towards and away from Alzheimer's disease. Nature 430:631–639

Miller MT, Stromland K, Ventura L, Johansson M, Bandim JM, Gillberg C (2005) Autism associated with conditions characterized by developmental errors in early embryogenesis: a mini review. Int J Dev Neurosci 23:201–219

Napoli E, Ross-Inta C, Wong S, Hung C, Fujisawa Y, Sakaguchi D, Angelastro J, Omanska-Klusek A, Schoenfeld R, Giulivi C (2012) Mitochondrial dysfunction in Pten haplo-insufficient mice with social deficits and repetitive behavior: interplay between Pten and p53. PLoS One 7(8)

Nicolson R, Craven-Thuss B, Smith J (2006) A prospective, open-label trial of galantamine in autistic disorder. J Child Adolesc Psychopharmacol 16(5):621–629

Niederhofer H (2007) Treating autism pharmacologically: also tacrine might improve symptomatology in some cases. J Child Neurol 22(8):1054

Oberman LM, Pascual-Leone A (2013) Hyperplasticity in autism spectrum disorder confers protection from Alzheimer's disease. Med Hypothesis 83(3):337–342

Pilarski R, Eng C (2004) Will the real Cowden syndrome please stand up (again)? Expanding mutational and clinical spectra of the PTEN hamartoma tumour syndrome. J Med Genet 41(5):323–326

Querfurth HW, LaFerla F (2010) Alzheimer's disease. N Engl J Med 362(4):329–344

Reznikov LRF, Fadel JR, Reagan LP (2012) Glutamate-mediated neuroplasticity deficits in mood disorders. SpringerLink 13

Rogers JT, Bush A, Cho HH, Smith DH, Thomson AM, Friedlich AL, Lahiri DK, Leedman PJ, Huang X, Cahill CM (2008) Iron and the translation of the amyloid precursor protein (APP) and ferritin mRNAs: riboregulation against neural oxidative damage in Alzheimer's disease. Biochem Soc Trans 36(Pt 6):1282–1287

Rossignol DA, Frye RE (2014) The use of medications approved for Alzheimer's disease in autism spectrum disorder: a systematic review. Front Pediatr 2:87

Sarah Parisotb SIK, Ferrantec E, Leea M, Guerrerod R, Glockera B, Rueckert D (2018) Disease prediction using graph convolutional networks: application to autism spectrum disorder and Alzheimer's disease. Med Image Anal 48:117–130

Satpute-Krishnan P, DeGiorgis J, Conley MP, Jang M, Bearer EL (2006) A peptide zipcode sufficient for anterograde transport within amyloid precursor protein. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103(44):16532–16537

Scarmeas N, Honig L, Choi H et al (2009) Seizures in Alzheimer disease: who, when, and how common. Arch Neurol 66:992–997

Sembulingam K, Sembulingam P (2012) Essentials of medical physiology. JP Medical Ltd.

Skeberdis VA, Lan J, Opitz T, Zheng X, Bennett MV, Zukin RS (2002) mGluR1-mediated potentiation of NMDA receptors involves a rise in intracellular calcium and activation of protein kinase. Neuropharmacology 40(7):856–865

Sokol DK, Edwards-Brown M (2004) Neuroimaging in autistic spectrum disorder (ASD). J Neuroimaging 14:8–15

Sokol DK, Chen D, Farlow MR et al (2006) High levels of Alzheimer beta-amyloid precursor protein (APP) in children with severely autistic behavior and aggression. J Child Neurol 21:444–449

Sokol DK, Long JM, Ray B, Lahiri DK (2011) Autism, Alzheimer disease, and fragile X. Neurology 76:1344–1352

Spilman P, Natalia P, Hart MJ, Debnath J, Gorostiza O, Bredesen D et al (2010) Inhibition of mTOR by rapamycin abolishes cognitive deficits and reduces amyloid-beta levels in a mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. PLoS One 5:e9979

Srivastava RK, Agarwal M, Pundhir A (2011) A role of donepezil in autism: its conduciveness in psychopharmacotherapy. Case Rep Psychiatry 2011:63204. https://doi.org/10.1155/2011/563204

Steck PA, Pershouse M, Jasser SA, Yung WK, Lin H, Ligon AH, Langford LA, Baumgard ML, Hattier T, Davis T, Frye C, Hu R, Swedlund B, Teng DH, Tavtigian SV (1997) Identification of a candidate tumour suppressor gene, MMAC1, at chromosome 10q23.3 that is mutated in multiple advanced cancers. Nat Genet 15(4):356–362

Strambi M, Longini M, Hayek J, Berni S, Macucci F, Scalacci E et al (2006) Magnesium profile in autism. Biol Trace Elem Res 109:97–104

Taraschenko OB, Barnes WG, Herrick-Davis K, Yokoyama Y, Boyd DL, Hough LB (2005) Actions of tacrine and galanthamine on histamine-N-methyltransferase. Methods Find Exp Clin Pharmacol 27(3):161–165

Vanderklish PW, Edelman G (2002) Dendritic spines elongate after stimulation of group 1 metabotropic glutamate receptors in cultured hippocampal neurons. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 99

Verheij C, Bakker C, de Graaff E, Keulemans J, Willemsen R, Verkerk AJ, Galjaard H, Reuser AJ, Hoogeveen AT, Oostra BA (1993) Characterization and localization of the FMR-1 gene product associated with fragile X syndrome. Nature 363(6431):722–724

Virk SA, Eslick G (2015) Aluminum levels in brain, serum and cerebrospinal fluid are higher in Alzheimer's disease cases than in controls: a series of meta-analyses. J Alzheimers Dis 47:629–638

Weiler IJ, Irwin S, Klintsova AY, Spencer CM, Brazelton AD, Miyashiro K, Comery TA, Patel B, Eberwine J, Greenough WT (1997) Fragile X mental retardation protein is translated near synapses in response to neurotransmitter activation. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 94 (10):5395–5400

Westmark CJ, Malter J (2007) FMRP mediates mGluR5dependent translation of amyloid precursor protein. PLoS Biol 5:e52

Zeidan-Chulia F, de Oliveira B-H, Salmina AB, Casanova MF, Gelain DP, Noda M, Verkhratsky A, Moreira JCF (2014) Altered expression of Alzheimer's disease-related genes in the cerebellum of autistic patients: a model for disrupted brain connectome and therapy. Cell Death Dis 5:e1250

Zhang B, Zhang Y, Wang Z, Zheng Y (2000) The role of Mg^{2+} cofactor in the guanine nucleotide exchange and GTP hydrolysis reactions of Rho family GTP-binding proteins. J Biol Chem 275:25299–25307

Impact of Common Natural Compound in the Treatment of Alzheimer's Disease

4

Vishav Prabhjot Kaur, Sachchida Nand Rai, Tania Bajaj, Hemraj Heer, Vishal Puri, Vivek K. Chaturvedi, Arti Singh, Ghulam Md Ashraf, M. P. Singh, and Charan Singh

Abstract

Alzheimer's disease (AD) is considered one of the most complex neurodegenerative disorders. Amyloid and tau pathology, along with neurofibrillary tangles, are most commonly seen in this disease. Various compounds show promising responses in treating this disease, but they also cause severe side effects. To minimize these side effects, researchers explored several natural products for the treatment of this disease. Natural products cause very minimal side effects as compared to isolated chemical compounds. The minimal side effect might be due to the complex synergistic effects of various bioactive components present in these natural products. Several natural products like green tea, epigallocatechin gallate, baicalein, berberine, and quercetin show a robust response in the treatment of AD. Some natural compounds like *Ginkgo biloba* extract and Huperzine

Vishav Prabhjot Kaur and Sachchida Nand Rai contributed equally to this work.

V. P. Kaur · T. Bajaj · H. Heer · V. Puri · C. Singh (✉)
Department of Pharmaceutics, ISF College of Pharmacy, Moga, Affiliated to IK Gujral Punjab Technical University, Jalandhar, Punjab, India

S. N. Rai · V. K. Chaturvedi · M. P. Singh
Centre of Biotechnology, University of Allahabad, Prayagraj, Uttar Pardesh, India

A. Singh
Department of Pharmacology, ISF College of Pharmacy, Moga, Affiliated to IK Gujral Punjab Technical University, Jalandhar, Punjab, India

G. M. Ashraf
Pre-Clinical Research Unit, King Fahd Medical Research Center, King Abdulaziz University, Jeddah, Saudi Arabia

King Fahd Medical Research Center, Department of Medical Laboratory Sciences, Faculty of Applied Medical Sciences, King Abdulaziz University, Jeddah, Saudi Arabia

G. Md Ashraf, A. Alexiou (eds.), *Autism Spectrum Disorder and Alzheimer's Disease*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-4558-7_4

A passed the clinical trial on PD. This chapter has explored the potential of some of the most common natural products to treat AD in a sequence-wide manner.

Keywords

Alzheimer's disease · Green tea · Epigallocatechin · Baicalein · Clinical trials

4.1 Introduction

Alzheimer's disease (AD) is a multifactorial and progressive disease of the brain that occurs worldwide. AD is also considered one of the most common forms of progressive dementia characterized by beta-amyloid and tau pathology (DeTure and Dickson 2019). Oxidative stress, neuroinflammation, mitochondrial dysfunction, and synaptic dysfunction are common factors observed in AD progression (Tönnies and Trushina 2017). Targeting mitochondrial dysfunction shows a better therapeutic response to stop the progression of this disease (Rai et al. 2020). Despite several treatment options, there is no holistic approach to stop the disease progression. Although several compounds have a strong potential to treat AD, several side effects limit their usage.

Consequently, researchers have shifted their attention toward natural compounds that might have significantly fewer side effects. Researchers have demonstrated that several natural products show enhanced therapeutic efficacy in treating AD (Dey et al. 2017; Shao and Xiao 2013). In this book chapter, we have discussed the role of some common natural products which are used to treat AD.

4.2 Green Tea in the Treatment of AD

In a recent study, green tea's neuroprotective role was evaluated in a rat model of AD. In this study, the authors demonstrated that cognitive functions were improved after green tea administration (Schimidt et al. 2017). In a similar work, the impact of green tea consumption on oxidative stress parameters was shown in 30 patients with chronic AD. Based on the antioxidant level improvement, they implicated that green tea could be added as a prophylactic agent in the AD therapeutic category (Arab et al. 2016). Zhu et al. aimed to conduct a study to improve synaptic efficiency to revive memory impairment in AD. The authors explored L-theanine's role, a natural constituent present in green tea, to achieve the memory improvement goal by altering hippocampal synaptic transmissions in transgenic experimental mice. They further suggested that L-theanine could modulate the hippocampal synaptic efficiency, consequently alleviating AD symptoms, hence could be considered as a therapeutic candidate in the AD treatment regime (Zhu et al. 2018). In a most recent study, green tea as cognitive impairment rejuvenating moiety in the form of the

dietary supplement was investigated. In the study, firstly, an extract was obtained from dried *Camellia sinensis* (CS) leaves and later was decaffeinated. Further in vitro and in vivo studies revealed a decline in beta-amyloid (Aβ42 and Aβ40) levels (Kim et al. 2019). Ali et al. carried a molecular docking study to examine green tea's effect on the level of acetylcholinesterase (AChE)- and butyrylcholinesterase (BChE)-dependent neurodegeneration in AD. They suggested green tea as a potential inhibitor of AChE and BChE with enhanced cholinergic neurotransmission for a prolonged period (Ali et al. 2016). Another investigation by Kaur et al. depicted that green tea extract exhibited therapeutic abilities for age-related cognition impairment in young and old male Wistar rats. The current study suggested that green tea could be employed as a potential therapy to reverse age-related deficits in learning and memory through selective acetylcholinesterase inhibition (Kaur et al. 2008). Another group evaluated green tea's constituent polyphenol epigallocatechin gallate (EGCG) to halt the aggregation cascade of Aβ and tau proteins. In vitro assays revealed that EGCG has the potential to prevent amyloid-like formation of β-sheet rich along with aggregates of tau. Hence, EGCG was found to be a potential candidate to attenuate Aβ by inhibiting the hallmarks of AD (Wobst et al. 2015). In another investigation, the antioxidant and antiapoptotic pathway inhibitor potential of green tea was studied in the primary cortical neuron. The authors quantified the level of reactive oxygen species (ROS) and superoxide dismutase (SOD) in the serum and performed Western blot. The study concluded tea polyphenol as potential therapeutics against glutamate-induced excitotoxicity and their protective effect mediated by the attenuation of oxidative stress and anti-mitochondrial apoptotic pathway (Lin et al. 2016). In a similar work, the antioxidant potential of EGCG was concluded based on the findings of behavioral and biochemical tests (Biasibetti et al. 2013). In another study, fish oil in combination with EGCG was administered in transgenic mice. The authors reported a decline in the therapeutic dose of EGCG due to possible synergistic effects. Eventually, enhanced inhibition of cerebral Aβ deposits was observed in the mice (Giunta et al. 2010).

Additionally, Lim et al. evaluated catechin of green tea to treat AD via free radical scavenging activity. The studies established a significant improvement in behavioral deficits utilizing shortening of escape latencies, escape distances, and swimming velocities in diseased mice. Hence, the authors demonstrated that catechin could be a potential therapeutic intervention in AD-related dementia (Lim et al. 2013). Another study employed multi-dimensional targeting approach of green tea component L-theanine to attenuate β-amyloid-induced cognitive dysfunction and neurotoxicity. Findings of the experiments concluded L-theanine as a potential therapeutic agent by declining extracellular signal-regulated kinase and p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase (ERK/p38) and nuclear factor κB (NF-κB) and by the reduction of macromolecular oxidative damage (Kim et al. 2009).

4.3 Therapeutic Role of Vitamins in AD

Fillenbaum et al. demonstrated that taking vitamin C and/or vitamin E alone did not delay dementia and AD in community-dwelling elders (Fillenbaum et al. 2005). Therefore, the authors finally suggested that supplemental vitamin C and/or E use alone is inadequate to delay dementia or AD. On the contrary, Boothby et al. investigated the potential of supplemental vitamin C and E in the treatment. They showed that the combined use of vitamin C and/or vitamin E reduces AD prevalence (Boothby and Doering 2005). One study explored the role of vitamin E along with donepezil for mild cognitive impairment treatment. The double-blind study results demonstrated no significant improvement in cognitive impairment with the combined use of vitamin E and donepezil. However, donepezil therapy displayed a lower rate of AD progression up to some extent (Petersen et al. 2005). Additionally, Refsum et al. confirmed the link between low levels of vitamin B-12 in AD. Finally, the authors' findings suggested that the level of cobalamine is impaired in AD and can be improved with the administration of B-12 (Refsum and Smith 2003). In another study, Kontush et al. explored the effect of vitamin E and C supplementation on lipoprotein oxidation in AD patients. They suggested that vitamin E and C significantly prevented autoxidation of CSF and plasma lipoproteins. So, the above findings documented that combined use of vitamin E and C supplementation provides a biochemical basis for AD (Kontush et al. 2001). Additionally, Li et al. evaluated the impact of dietary intakes of vitamin E, vitamin C, and β-carotene on AD's development. The meta-analysis results indicated a reduction in AD risk after taking vitamin E and C, along with β-carotene as dietary components (Li et al. 2012). Moreover, another study investigated the role of vitamin E in Alzheimer's disease (Lloret et al. 2009). In addition to this, in old-age conditions, Polidori et al. showed an enhanced level of carotid intima–media thickness and reduced levels of plasma vitamin C along with vitamin E. Biochemical results revealed that optimum level of vitamin C might be involved in protection against AD and other cognitive manifestations (Polidori et al. 2015). Takasaki et al. investigated the anti-oligomerization potential of vitamin A through in vitro studies on Aβ. They examined the oligomerization inhibitory effect of vitamin A on $A\beta_{40}$ and $A\beta_{42}$. Thus, based on the above evidence, author confirmed that vitamin A could be useful in AD prevention (Takasaki et al. 2014). In another similar study conducted by Huy et al., the anti-amyloidogenic potential of vitamin K3 analogs was shown via in silico and in vitro characterization for AD treatment. Both numerical and experimental results exhibited significant inhibition of Aβ aggregation and conformational conversion by different analogs. Moreover, cell viability results showed strong free radical reduction and protection against A-β-induced toxicity. Based on all these findings, the authors documented that modified vitamin K3 analogs could become a strong anti-amyloidogenic therapeutic candidate for AD (Huy et al. 2013). Moreover, Gezen-Ak et al. studied the effect of Apa1 and Taq1, two single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) of vitamin D receptor (VDR) gene in 104 Alzheimer's participants. They concluded that the risk of AD was more in Apa1 heterozygotes (Gezen-Ak et al. 2007). In a similar finding,

Lehmann et al. confirmed the interaction of two VDR polymorphisms, i.e., Apa1 and Taq1, in the regulation of neuroinflammation in patients <75 years old (Lehmann et al. 2011). Meanwhile, another study examined the role of vitamin D in decreasing L-type voltage-sensitive calcium channels A1C (LVSCCA1C) levels and in causing the downregulation of cytotoxicity in the vitamin D treated group, resulting in upregulation of nerve growth factor (NGF) secretion compared to the control group. This study also determined that inhibition of Aβ toxicity prevents the alteration of cortical neuronal activity (Dursun et al. 2010). Moreover, Annweiler et al. showed that higher intake of dietary vitamin D leads to fewer chances of AD among women aged 75 years and older (Annweiler et al. 2012a).The same group studied a combination of memantine and vitamin D and demonstrated improvement in Mini-Mental State Examination (MMSE) score and cognition performance in patients with AD compared to drug alone (Annweiler et al. 2012b). Similar results were reported by another group (Pogge 2015). A meta-analysis performed by Zhao et al. revealed that a lower level of 25-hydroxy-vitamin D was observed in patients with AD and Parkinson's disease as compared to healthy control (Zhao et al. 2013). Additionally, Grimm et al. demonstrated that 25(OH)-vitamin D increases β-secretase BACE1 protein levels, responsible for an increase in Aβ peptide level. Vitamin D leads to upregulation of neprilysin (NEP) expression and consequent increase in Aβ degradation. They concluded the potential of vitamin D in the management of AD (Grimm et al. 2014). The same group reported the strong link between vitamin D deficiency in AD and other neurodegenerative disorders like PD and vascular dementia (Grimm et al. 2019). Additionally, other reports also found that development of dementia and AD is increased in vitamin D-deficient patients (Littlejohns et al. 2014; Afzal et al. 2014). Furthermore, Gangwar et al. demonstrated that the MMSE score was significant in the treatment group as compared to the control group. Thus, they indicated that vitamin D effectively improves cognitive functions and senile dementia in the elderly (Gangwar et al. 2015). In this regard, Oudshoorn and colleagues exhibited similar findings where MMSE score was higher in vitamin D-sufficient patients and suggested vitamin D_3 has an additional effect in enhancing cognitive performance in patients with AD (Oudshoorn et al. 2008). Mohamed et al. reported that vitamin D_3 exerts a neuroprotective effect in AD (Mohamed et al. 2014). Further, Mizwicki et al. reported that insufficiency of 1α,25 $(OH)_2$-vitamin D_3 (1,25D3) and resolvin D1 might involve a risk factor for the development of AD (Mizwicki et al. 2013). Recently, Fan et al. provided evidence that four potential targets encoded by genes CACNA1C, NOTCH4, COMT, and DRD3 show the important effect of vitamin D against AD and psychosis (Fan et al. 2020).

4.4 Epigallocatechin Gallate in AD

Zadeh et al. reported the potential of (-)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG) to decrease the Aβ generation through in vitro studies using murine neuron-like cells (N2a). These cells were transfected with the human "Swedish" mutant amyloid

precursor protein (APP). They observed that EGCG significantly enhanced the cleavage of the α-C-terminal section of APP and lifted the N-terminal AP cleavage product, soluble APP-α. In this study, a reduced level of Aβ and plaque were observed. Finally, they concluded that EGCG could be used as a prophylactic treatment for AD (Zadeh et al. 2005).

In another study, Cano et al. designed epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG) and ascorbic acid (AA) dual drug-loaded PEGylated Poly Lactic-Co-Glycolic Acid (PLGA) nanoparticles to improve the stability of EGCG by enhancing the bioavailability and effectiveness in the AD model. They concluded that nanoformulations of EGCG/AA nanoparticles (NPs) have a unique property to be developed as a safe and effective treatment of AD (Cano et al. 2019). In an interesting study, the neuroprotective potential of EGCG was explored using surface plasmon resonance imaging (SPRi) of Aβ aggregation. Based on the above findings, they suggested SPRi asone of the promising tools for screening the neuroprotective effects of new compounds (Cheng et al. 2013).

In a different study, Engel et al. showed EGCG amyloid inhibitor activity. They demonstrated that in contrast to its behavior in a bulk environment, EGCG has a strong potential to prevent hIAPP amyloid fibril formation at the phospholipid interface (Engel et al. 2012). In another study, the neuroprotective effect of EGCG in contrast to some other selective bioactive compounds was investigated against Aβ fibril formation and neuronal cell death in H_2O_2 developed pro-oxidant PC12 cells. Based on the findings of in vitro cell viability results and ROS assays, the authors concluded intense neuroprotective activity of EGCG (Harvey et al. 2011). In another study, Mori et al. investigated the combinatorial effect of EGCG and ferulic acid in the AD mice model.

Furthermore, combination treatment reduces neuroinflammation, oxidative stress, and synaptotoxicity. Authors concluded that using plant-derived phenolics, EGCG, and ferulic acid could serve as a promising therapeutic strategy to treat AD (Mori et al. 2018). Similarly, Lee et al. demonstrated the neuroprotective potential of EGCG against β-amyloid-induced cognitive dysfunction. The results of α-, β-, and γ-secretase assay demonstrated the $A\beta_{1-42}$ level reduced in the hippocampus and cortex region of the brain. Furthermore, Western blot results also illustrated the substantial reduction in signal conduction of kinase, and nuclear transcription factor (NF-kB) extracellular pathways were involved in apoptotic cell death induced by $A\beta_{1-42}$ (Lee et al. 2009). In another study, Smith et al. developed nanolipidic particles to improve the bioavailability and α-secretase inducing ability of polyphenol EGCG. Nanoformulations of EGCG exhibited significant α-secretase promoting activity in SweAPP N2a cells. In vitro results confirmed that this novel formulation of EGCG would be a promising approach to use for AD treatment (Smith et al. 2010).

Similarly, Zhang et al. prepared EGCG selenium nanoparticles coated with tet-1 peptide to stabilize and reduce cytotoxicity. Furthermore, in vitro results exhibited that both SE-EGCG- and Tet-1-EGCG-Se-coated nanoparticles could label Aβ fibrils with a high affinity and Tet-1 peptides promisingly improved the cellular uptake of Tet-1-EGCG-Se coated in PC12 cells in comparison to NIH/3T3 cells. So,

the anti-AD results of various studies strongly recommended that Tet-1-EGCG@Se was a novel therapeutic candidate for labeling and disaggregating Aβ fibrils (Zhang et al. 2014).

4.5 Baicalein and Berberine in AD

In a recent study, Chen et al. investigated that baicalein flavone has the potential to suppress the $A\beta_{1-42}$ protein-induced Alzheimer-like pathophysiological changes and cognitive dysfunction in the AD mice model. The findings of in vitro assays, immunohistochemistry, and Western blot demonstrated that baicalein possesses a strong neuroprotection potential to attenuate the $A\beta_{1-42}$-related pathological complications and memory (Chen et al. 2015). In another similar study, authors elucidated baicalein's neuroprotective effect on $A\beta_{1-42}$-induced cognitive dysfunction, Oxidative stress, apoptosis, and histopathological studies proved the significant neuroprotective role of baicalein in Aβ-induced hippocampus injury. Furthermore, results of the TUNNEL assay investigated the reduction in oxidative stress-induced cell death treated with baicalein. Hence, based on the above-accumulating evidence, the authors indicated baicalein as an effective therapeutic agent to treat AD (Ding et al. 2015). In a different study, Choi and colleagues aimed to develop an effective therapeutic candidate against Alzheimer's using a combination of flavonoids, baicalein, and daidzein to explore synergistic estrogenic and neuroprotective response using MCF-7 breast and PC12 neuronal cells. They further showed the synergistic activity of these two flavonoids. Finally, the authors concluded that daidzein and baicalein strongly potentiate the attenuation of $A\beta$ aggregation, and in the future, it could become a beneficial therapy against the treatment of Alzheimer's disease (Choi et al. 2013). Gu et al. aimed to investigate the protective role of baicalein against synaptic plasticity and cognitive dysfunction in a mouse model of Alzheimer's diseases. In vitro studies examined the effect of baicalein on $A\beta_{1-42}$ oligomer impaired long-term potentiation (LTP), which was investigated by electrophysiological methods. They also evaluated that baicalein significantly reduces the activity of 12/15 lipoxygenase (12/15LO) and glycogen synthase kinase 3β (GSK3β); β-secretase enzyme levels and concentration of total Aβ also block the phosphorylation of tau in APP/PS1 mice (Gu et al. 2016). Additionally, Xiong and colleagues elucidated baicalein's neuroprotective potential to attenuate Aβ-induced microglial cell activation through the Janus kinase/signal transducer and activator of transcription (JAK2/STAT3) signaling pathway. Both in vitro and in vivo studies showed the neuroprotective properties through anti-inflammatory, anti-proliferative effect through the JAK2/STAT3 signaling pathway, which revealed the new means to cure Alzheimer's disease (Xiong et al. 2014).

Another study aimed to elucidate Baicalein's inhibitory effect against hydrogen peroxide production and oxidative stress produced due to Aα aggregation in SH-SY5Y cells. Finally, based on experimental investigations, the authors concluded that baicalein possesses a strong ability to attenuate Aα aggregation.

Thus, it could act as a potential therapeutic agent to prevent the progression of neurodegenerative diseases such as AD (Fei Yina et al. 2011).

In a recent study, the authors demonstrated baicalein's ability to diminish the β-amyloid activity and to elevate the nonamyloidogenic APP processing in AD transgenic mice. In vitro and in vivo results evidenced that this flavonol improved the nonamyloidogenic processing of APP and was beneficial in reducing Aβ synthesis and cognitive impairment (Zhang et al. 2013).

Zhao et al. aimed to investigate in the AD model the combined effect of baicalein with ginsenoside Rb1 on the differentiation and proliferation of neural stem cells (NSC). Immunohistochemistry examinations indicated the significant increase in the percentage of NSCs, astrocytes, and neuronal cells in ginsenoside Rb1c and baicalein treated cells. In the end, the authors demonstrated the neuroprotective potential of combined ginsenoside Rb1 and baicalein therapeutic agents in AD treatment (Zhao et al. 1678). Asai and fellows aimed to elucidate the potential of berberine to inhibit Aβ secretion, which resulted in a change in the processing of Alzheimer's APP. They have shown that the APP-H4 neuroglioma cells (APP_{NL}-H4 cells) exhibited a significantly reduced level of Aβ without inducing any cytotoxicity and alteration in cell morphology. Therefore, based on these findings, the authors suggested that berberine could be a drug of choice in treating AD (Asai et al. 2007). In another similar study, berberine chloride's potential to improve cognitive dysfunction and anti-inflammatory response through upregulation of interleukin-1beta and nitric oxide synthase expression in an AD rat model was investigated. Findings on real-time polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) and immunohistochemistry analysis evidenced enhanced cognitive functions and anti-inflammatory activity (Zhu and Qian 2006).

In a recent study, berberine's potential against the cognitive experimental model of intracerebroventricular streptozotocin (ICV-STZ)-induced sporadic Alzheimer's-like dementia was investigated. Diverse in vitro and in vivo assays confirmed the neuroprotective behaviour of berberine against neurodegenerative conditions (Oliveira et al. 2016). In a similar kind of study, Durairajan et al. examined berberine's potential to improve β-amyloid pathology, gliosis, and memory dysfunction using the TgCRND8 transgenic mouse model (Durairajana et al. 2012). Another similar study aimed to investigate the improved memory dysfunction and antioxidative and anti-neuroinflammation potential of berberine (BBR) in APP/PS1 mice. Experiments showed that BBR could strongly inhibit the NF-κB signaling pathway and oxidative stress involved in neuroinflammation, resulting from hyperphosphorylation of tau proteins. Hence, further investigations about neuroprotective mechanisms of BBR might provide sufficient evidence as novel strategies for AD treatments (He et al. 2017).

Hussein et al. explored the neuroprotective role of berberine to counteract environmental heavy metal-induced Alzheimer's-like pathology in an experimental model of AD rat. In silico and docking studies proved that BBR significantly inhibited enzymes like acetylcholinesterase (AChE), cycyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2), and tumor necrosis factor-alpha converting enzyme (TACE) and

decreased the level of AChE expression in brain tissues. Additionally, ELISA measurement also confirmed the anti-inflammatory and antioxidant response via an elevated level of $A\beta_{42}$. Thus, the authors advocated the ability of berberine to protect against various inflammation and stress-induced neurodegenerative diseases and its application as a therapeutic agent to cure Alzheimer's-like disease (Hussain et al. 2018).

In another recent study, berberine's role was investigated to inhibit AChE, BChE, and two isoforms of monoamine oxidase (MAO) in Alzheimer's disease (Ji and Shen 2012). Molecular docking studies examined the close resemblance between in silico binding of berberine with AChE, BChE, and MAO. Moreover, further investigation demonstrated that significant forces involved in ligand-receptor interactions were the hydrophobic surface of berberine and neighboring hydrophobic residues. However, electrostatic interaction between the cationic surface of berberine and neighboring residues also participated but not in all of the above enzymes. Finally, the authors enlightened the molecular basis of the inhibitory impact of berberine against different enzymes involved in AD pathogenesis (Ji and Shen 2012).

A study conducted by Jiaa et al. aimed to explore the potential of berberine to inhibit the production of Aβ-induced inflammatory response in primary microglia and BV2 microglia cells through blocking of signaling pathways of nuclear factor-kappaB and mitogen-activated protein kinase. ELISA test results exhibited a significant reduction in Aβ-stimulated interleukin-6 (IL-6) and monocyte chemotactic protein-1 production in a concentration-dependent manner. Similarly, RT-PCR and Western blot analysis confirmed that berberine could strongly inhibit nuclear factor-kappaB (NFκB) and mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) signaling pathway stimulation. Finally, the authors suggested berberine to be an important candidate for designing various strategies to treat neurodegenerative diseases like AD (Jiaa et al. 2012).

Liu et al. aimed to investigate the role of berberine to improve axonal transport defect and Calyculin-A-induced axonopathy in neuroblastoma-2a (N2a) cells. MTT assay exhibited the significant protection of berberine-treated cells against CA-induced toxicity as well as hyperphosphorylation of tau and neurofilaments (NFs). Additionally, berberine restored the activity of protein phosphatase 2A (PP-2A) by reversing the phosphorylation of the catalytic subunit of PP-2A and reduction in the level of SOD. So, based on the comparative analysis of berberine treated and untreated cells, it was suggested to use berberine as a therapeutic drug to treat AD (Liu et al. 2014).

In a recent study, Lohan et al. aimed to develop berberine (BBR)-loaded surface decorated multi-walled carbon nanotubes (MWCNTs) to manage AD. They validated the significant uptake of BBR-loaded MWCNT formulations through a confocal examination on SH-SY5Y cell lines. Further, pharmacokinetic analysis in rats elucidated the promising drug absorption in plasma and brain tissues. Moreover, the results of Morris Maze studies revealed a significant improvement in cognitive impairment and memory performance. Additionally, biochemical estimation indicated a significant reduction in oxidative stress-induced AD-like conditions.

So, above findings suggested the potential of BBR-loaded polysorbate/phospholipid coated MWCNTs in the management of AD (Lohan et al. 2017).

4.6 Quercetin in AD

In a recent study, in a triple transgenic Alzheimer's disease (3xTg-AD) mouse model, Paula et al. conducted a study to examine the role of chronic administration of oral quercetin on markers of neurodegeneration, cognitive behavior, and emotional deficits. This chronic treatment reduced the β-amyloidosis and tauopathy in the hippocampus and amygdala. They further showed that quercetin protects neuronal cytotoxicity, oxidation of protein, peroxidation of lipid, and Aβ-induced apoptosis. In the end, the authors concluded that quercetin might lead to delayed progression of histological hallmarks observed in AD patients (Paula et al. 2019).

Recently, Mani et al. induced AD in wild adult zebra fishes administering aluminium chloride via the intraperitoneal route. Behavioral and biochemical analyses were then performed which showed a reduction of oxidative stress and improved cognition. They also performed target identification, gene enrichment studies, and molecular docking studies. The results depicted the protective effects of quercetin on the AD model (Mani et al. 2018). A similar study by Ansari et al. evaluated quercetin's dose-response pattern and showed that quercetin protects against Aβ toxicity by reducing oxidative stress at lower doses. Bioinformatics studies were applied to know the binding sites of AChE. One of the binding sites was used for molecular docking of quercetin with AChE. Finally, the authors suggested that quercetin might act as an AChE inhibitor (Ansari et al. 2009). Quercetin's impact on the inflammatory response was explored by Vargas-Restrepo and colleagues in the CA1 area of the hippocampus in a 3xTg-AD male and female mice model. In this study, histological and biochemical experiments were performed. And it was observed that the proinflammatory response in the CA1 hippocampal region of aged 3xTg-AD mice was lowered along with GFAP, inducible nitric oxide synthase (iNOS), cyclooxygenase 2 (COX-2) immunoreactivity, and interleukin 1β (IL-1β) in hippocampal lysates with the quercetin administration. Authors hypothesized that quercetin decreases the tauopathy by regulating IL-1β/p38 MAPK activation, ultimately leading to enhanced cognitive performance (Vargas-Restrepo et al. 2018).

Anticholinesterase and antioxidative activity of quercetin and its glycosylated form rutin was explored in an interesting study. In vitro studies depicted the inhibition of AChE and BChE activities with inhibition of Fe^{2+}-induced peroxidation of lipid in homogenates of rat brain. Apart from this, quercetin portrays better radicals scavenging and Fe^{2+}-chelating abilities than rutin. The authors further proved better quercetin activity through the IC_{50} values (Ademosun et al. 2016).

In an animal model of AD, in the hippocampus, Tong-Un et al. assessed the effects of nasal route administration of quercetin liposomes on cognitive behavior and biochemical markers of oxidative stress, SOD, catalase, glutathione, and MDA. This nasal quercetin liposome administration significantly improved memory

impairment by inhibiting the oxidative damage of the hippocampus. This could be related to the decreased MDA level and improved level of SOD, catalase, and glutathione (Tong-Un et al. 2010).

Ashrafpour et al. assessed acquisition and retention of spatial memory by quercetin in a rat model of AD. The results showed that intracerebroventricular (ICV)-STZ AD groups exhibited significant impairment in the acquisition and retrieval of spatial memory as compared to the control group. In the AD groups, training trials showed considerable downfall in escape latency. The authors concluded that quercetin acted as a spatial memory enhancer in ICV-STZ-induced AD rats (Ashrafpour et al. 2015). In another work, quercetin's role on cytotoxicity and cognitive impairment caused by Aβ-peptide in mice was explored. In this study, quercetin inhibited the 1,1-diphenyl-2-picrylhydrazyl (DPPH) radical activity and protected PC12 neuronal apoptosis induced by the treatment of Aβ (Li et al. 2017). Kim et al. demonstrated the protective effect of quercetin and quercetin-3-b-D-glucoside (Q3G) in the T-maze and object recognition test, as compared with $A\beta_{25-35}$-injected control mice; administration of quercetin and Q3G improved memory and cognitive function. Compared to the Q3G administered group, the quercetin group exhibited enhanced protective effects from long-term spatial memory and learning ability impairments. Besides, in the brain of $A\beta_{25-35}$-injected control mice, peroxidation of lipid and formation of nitric oxide (NO) was significantly increased. In the end, the authors suggested quercetin could be a better option for the management of AD (Kim et al. 2016).

Recently, Molaei et al. reported an interesting work to assess quercetin's synergic effects (as chemical treatment) and exercise (as physical treatment) on AD-induced learning and memory impairment. When the treatment was completed, the results depicted that streptozotocin (STZ) in rats led to the impairment of spatial memory and enhanced hippocampus oxidative stress. However, pretreatment with exercise or quercetin injection enhanced spatial memory and oxidative stress caused by STZ injection, the combination of quercetin and exercise pretreatment was more efficacious (Molaei et al. 2020). Aliaga et al. investigated the anti-amyloidogenic and antioxidant properties of quercetin. In this study, quercetin inhibited the formation of Aβ fibrils and disaggregated Aβ fibrils.

Furthermore, quercetin decreased almost entirely ROS generation in H_2O_2 treated APPswe cells. Moreover, intracellular GSH content and redox status were improved and diminished the index of lipid peroxidation as compared to the control APPswe cells after quercetin treatment (Jiménez-Aliaga et al. 2011). In another study, in human neuronal SH-SY5Y cells, quercetin neuroprotective effects were investigated against H_2O_2-induced apoptosis. In a quercetin concentration-dependent manner, H_2O_2-mediated cytotoxicity and lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) release were suppressed. Additionally, in SH-SY5Y cells, quercetin reduced Bax gene expression and enhanced the level of Bcl-2 gene. Moreover, activation of the caspase cascade which leads to DNA fragmentation ultimately responsible for apoptosis was also inhibited effectively by quercetin. Thus, quercetin exhibited significant neuroprotective activity to prevent neurodegeneration progression induced by oxidative stress (Suematsu et al. 2011).

Heo et al. investigated the protective effects of quercetin on hydrogen peroxide, and a significant decrease in cell viability was observed. However, preincubation with quercetin and vitamin C protected H_2O_2-induced toxicity in PC12 cells in a dose-dependent manner. As it is already known that oxidative stress increases neuronal cell membrane breakdown, lactate dehydrogenase and trypan blue exclusion assays were performed. The results showed that quercetin decreased oxidative stress-induced neuronal cell membrane damage higher than that of vitamin C. The authors concluded that quercetin contributed significantly to cells' neuroprotection from oxidative stress-induced stress neurotoxicity (Heo and Lee 2004). Nakagawa et al. assessed the role of long-term quercetin intake on memory recall in aged wild-type mice by using contextual fear conditioning. They also studied whether memory recall was affected by the administration of quercetin-rich onion powder in early-stage AD patients. Later on, in vivo analysis indicated that aged mice fed with quercetin-containing diet showed improved memory recall. Additionally, the Revised Hasegawa Dementia Scale was used to identify memory recall in early-stage AD patients, which was significantly improved by the intake of quercetin-rich onion powder for 4 weeks compared with the intake of control onion powder (Nakagawa et al. 2016).

The protective effect of quercetin and its glycosides, rutin and quercitrinon reactive oxygen species (ROS)-dependent (H_2O_2) and -independent (chemical anoxia) apoptosis in rat glioma C6 cells was investigated by Chen et al. Authors found that incubation of C6 cells with quercetin, but not rutin or quercitrin, protected C6 cells from cytotoxicity induced by H_2O_2 and chemical anoxia as shown by 3-(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)-2,5-diphenyltetrazolium bromide (MTT) and LDH assays. Quercetin, rutin, and quercitrin dose-dependently inhibited DPPH radicals' production in vitro as demonstrated by anti-DPPH radical assay. On the other hand, DNA damage induced by OH radicals was prevented by quercetin (but not rutin and quercitrin), as shown by plasmid digestion assay. Altogether, this study concluded that quercetin showed an inhibitory effect on both ROS-dependent and ROS-independent apoptosis, and induction of HO-1 protein expression was also identified (Chen et al. 2006).

In separate work, in the AD *Drosophila* model, Kong et al. showed the impact of quercetin and explored the underlying mechanisms. This study showed that quercetin might restore the gene expression agitated by an accumulation of Aβ. Furthermore, it was also shown that cyclin B RNAi in the brain could ameliorate AD phenotypes. Altogether, neuroprotective effects of quercetin were significantly exhibited by this interesting study (Kong et al. 2016).

Ginkgo biloba extract EGb761 tends to protect against Aβ-induced neurotoxicity, but the mechanisms remain unknown. To elucidate this further, Shi et al. tested the effects of EGb761 and its two important constituents, quercetin and ginkgolide B, on the cytotoxic action of $A\beta_{1-42}$ with human neuroblastoma SH-SY5Y cells. Authors demonstrated that through c-jun N-terminal kinase (JNK), extracellular signal-regulated kinase 1/2 (ERK1/2), and Akt signaling pathways, EGb761 blocked the $A\beta_{1-42}$-induced cell death, ROS accumulation, and mitochondrial dysfunction. It

was also shown that the same signaling pathway also demonstrated that quercetin and ginkgolide B might be involved in the inhibitory effects of EGb761. Ginkgolide B also improved the functions of mitochondria, but quercetin failed to do so. Individual EGb761 components showed the direct mechanisms underlying the neuroprotective effects of EGb761 (Ihl et al. 2011).

4.7 Clinical Trial of Some Natural Compound in AD

Ihl et al., in a clinical trial, revealed that *Ginkgo biloba* extract EGb 761 increased the baseline in primary outcomes Erzigkeit's short syndrome test (SKT) and neuropsychiatric inventory total score. Simultaneously, SKT was found to be decreased, and no change was observed in NPI score after placebo once-daily dose treatment for 24 weeks in 410 patients. Interestingly, extract EGb 761 showed significant results compared to placebo in secondary outcome measures (Ihl et al. 2011). The same group tested the efficacy of EGb 761 in AD and vascular dementia in 404 outpatients aged 50 years or above and reported enhanced therapeutic effects (Ihl et al. 2012). Additionally, Herrschaft et al. reported improved SKT total score and NPI composite score in patients treated with EGb 761 and placebo. Simultaneously, most of the secondary efficacy variables provided better results with a once-daily dose of 240 mg of EGb 761 (Herrschaft et al. 2012). Most surprisingly, Villas and colleagues demonstrated that participants aged 70 years or above who were given one dose of placebo and EGb 761 for 5 years were unable to show any protective action in lowering AD's progression (Vellas et al. 2012).

Furthermore, Gavrilova et al. summed up that long-term exposure to *Ginkgo biloba* extract was considered to be beneficial in improving cognitive performance in patients with mild cognitive impairment (MCI) and neuropsychiatric symptoms (NPS) with no severe adverse reaction reported (Gavrilova et al. 2014). Meanwhile, Rafii et al. indicated that Huperzine A 200μg BID did not exert any change in Alzheimer's Disease Assessment Scale-cognitive subscale (ADAS-Cog) at 16 weeks of primary analysis, while 400μg bis in die (BID) given in secondary analysis showed enhancing effect in ADAS-Cog. Still, the effect got declined in the placebo group at 16 weeks (Rafii et al. 2011). In this regard, Yang et al. confirmed the similar action of Huperzine A in improving cognitive function with no significant adverse effect reported in AD patients (Yang et al. 2013). Moreover, Ringman and colleagues pronounced that placebo and curcumin C3 complex treated group showed some adverse effects after 24 weeks of trial. However, they were unable to determine the sufficient efficacy of the drug due to low plasma level (Ringman et al. 2012). In a study, Nelson et al. indicated that bryostatin increased BDNF and PSD-95, MMSE score at 3 h, and peripheral blood mononuclear cells-protein kinase C epsilon (PBMCPKCε) level within 1 h after IV infusion and concluded that this drug was well tolerated in patients (Nelsona et al. 2017). A Phase-II trial by Farlow et al. also reported similar results and suggested bryostatin was considered safe and effective as compared to the placebo-treated participants (Farlow et al. 2018). The

study performed by Turner et al. revealed the reduced CSF Aβ40 and plasma Aβ40 levels after placebo treatment.

Additionally, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) detected that resveratrol treatment decreased brain volume and increased ventricular volume at 52 weeks compared to a placebo-treated group (Scott Turner et al. 2015). In addition to this, Zhu et al. conducted the study with no significant difference in scores obtained from resveratrol-, glucose-, and malate-treated patients. Although low-dose resveratrol was safe and well tolerated, the study did not prove effective in stopping disease progression (Zhu and Grossman 2018). Simultaneously, Chang et al. implied that memantine's efficacy was enhanced in combination with tenuigenin and β-asarone. They observed an increase in change scores after 12 weeks of treatment which would be beneficial in treating moderate-to-severe Alzheimer's disease mainly in 60–74-year-old patients (Wenguang and Junfang 2018).

4.8 Corelation Between Microbiota Activity and Polyphenolic Compounds

As we know, polyphenols in the diet are necessary to nurture one's health, especially the gut, and they do so by prompting the growth of particular bacterias and inhibiting the growth of unwanted bacterias. Through recent advancements in the field of science and technology, there are chances for a better understanding of the interaction between dietary phenols and gut microbiota (Popa et al. 2017). This hypothesis has further been supported by Cardona et al. (2013) and Tomás-Barberán et al. (2016). Additionally, Cardona F et al. briefed that microorganisms convert polyphenols into active metabolites, and hence the changes in gut microbiota have the tendency to affect the polyphenol activity (Cardona et al. 2013). Moreover, for an in-depth knowledge of this relationship, metagenomic and metabolomic studies should be conducted (Cardona et al. 2013).

4.9 Conclusion

In conclusion, we can say that several natural compounds like green tea, epigallocatechin gallate, baicalein, berberine, quercetin, *Ginkgo biloba*, and Huperzine A exhibit potent neuroprotective activity in AD treatment. These natural compounds can stop AD progression by acting on amyloid and tau pathology (Fig. 4.1). Clinical trials also show the efficacy of some of the common natural products like *Ginkgo biloba* and Huperzine A. Further studies will be needed to explore additional bioactive compounds present in these natural products for their AD treatment role.

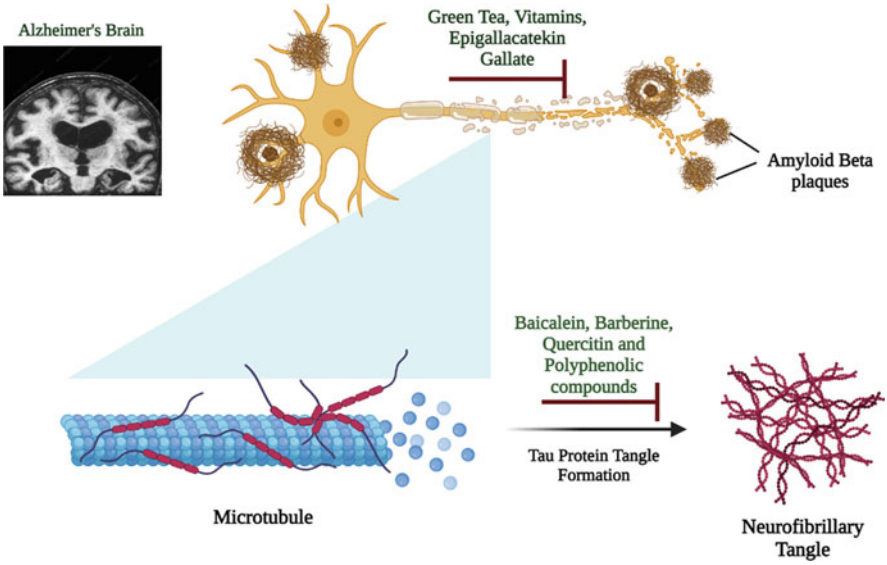


Fig. 4.1 Some natural compounds like green tea, vitamins, and epigallocatekin gallate inhibiting beta-amyloid plaque formation and other natural compounds like baicalein, barberine, quercetin, and polyphenolic compounds inhibiting neurofibrillary tangle formation in Alzheimer's disease pathology

Acknowledgments Authors would like to acknowledge UGC Dr. D.S. Kothari Postdoctoral scheme for awarding the fellowship to Dr. Sachchida Nand Rai (Ref. No-F.4-2/2006 (BSR)/BL/19-20/0032). CS, VK, HH, TB, VP, and AS wish to thank Director, ISF College of Pharmacy, Moga, for motivation to write this manuscript.

Conflict of Interest All authors declared that there is no conflict of interest.

References

Ademosun AO, Oboh G, Bello F, Ayeni PO (2016) Antioxidative properties and effect of quercetin and its glycosylated form (Rutin) on acetylcholinesterase and butyrylcholinesterase activities. J Evid Based Complement Alternat Med 21(4):NP11–NP17

Afzal S, Bojesen SE, Nordestgaard BG (2014) Reduced 25-hydroxyvitamin D and risk of Alzheimer's disease and vascular dementia. Alzheimer's Dement 10:296–302

Ali B, Jamal QM, Shams S et al (2016) In silico analysis of green tea polyphenols as inhibitors of AChE and BChE enzymes in Alzheimer's disease treatment. CNS Neurol Disord Drug Targets 15:624–628

Annweiler C, Rolland Y et al (2012a) Higher vitamin D dietary intake is associated with lower risk of Alzheimer's disease: a 7-year follow-up. J Gerontol Biol Sci Med Sci 67(11):1205–1211

Annweiler C, Herrmann FR et al (2012b) Effectiveness of the combination of memantine plus vitamin D on cognition in patients with Alzheimer disease: a pre-post pilot study. Cogn Behav Neurol 25:121–127

Ansari MA, Abdul HM, Joshi G, Opii WO, Butterfield AD (2009) Protective effect of quercetin in primary neurons against Abeta(1–42): relevance to Alzheimer's disease. J Nutr Biochem 20 (4):269–275

Arab H, Mahjoub S, Hajian-Tilaki K et al (2016) The effect of green tea consumption on oxidative stress markers and cognitive function in patients with Alzheimer's disease: a prospective intervention study. Caspian J Int Med 7:188–194

Asai M, Iwata N, Yoshikawa A et al (2007) Berberine alters the processing of Alzheimer's amyloid precursor protein to decrease Ab secretion. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 352:498–502

Ashrafpour M, Parsaei S, Sepehri H (2015) Quercetin improved spatial memory dysfunctions in rat model of intracerebroventricular streptozotocin-induced sporadic Alzheimer'sdisease. Natl J Physiol Pharm Pharmacol 5(5):411–415

Biasibetti R, Tramontina AC, Costa AP et al (2013) Green tea (-) epigallocatechin-3-gallate reverses oxidative stress and reduces acetylcholinesterase activity in a streptozotocin-induced model of dementia. Behav Brain Res 236:186–193

Boothby LA, Doering PL (2005) Vitamin C and vitamin E for Alzheimer's disease. Ann Pharmacother 39:2073–2080

Cano A, Ettcheto M, Chang JH et al (2019) Dual-drug loaded nanoparticles of epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG)/ascorbic acid enhance therapeutic efficacy of EGCG in a APPswe/PS1dE9 Alzheimer's disease mice model. J Control Release 301:62–75

Cardona F, Andrés-Lacueva C, Tulipani S, Tinahones FJ, Queipo-Ortuño MI (2013) Benefits of polyphenols on gut microbiota and implications in human health. J Nutr Biochem 24 (8):1415–1422

Chen TJ, Jeng JY, Lin CW, Wu CY, Chen YC (2006) Quercetin inhibition of ROS-dependent and-independent apoptosis in rat glioma C6 cells. Toxicology 223(1–2):113–126

Chen C, Li X, Gao P et al (2015) Baicalin attenuates Alzheimer-like pathological changes and memory deficits induced by amyloid β1–42 protein. Metab Brain Dis 30:537–544

Cheng RX, Hau BYH, Veloso AJ et al (2013) Surface plasmon resonance imaging of amyloid-ß aggregation kinetics in the presence of epigallocatechin gallate and metals. Anal Chem 12:1–23

Choi RCY, Zhu JTT, Yung AWY et al (2013) Synergistic action of flavonoids, baicalein, and daidzein in estrogenic and neuroprotective effects: a development of potential health products and therapeutic drugs against Alzheimer's disease. Evid Based Complement Alternat Med 1:1–10

DeTure MA, Dickson DW (2019) The neuropathological diagnosis of Alzheimer's disease. Mol Neurodegener 14(1):32

Dey A, Bhattacharya R, Mukherjee A, Pandey DK (2017) Natural products against Alzheimer's disease: pharmaco-therapeutics and biotechnological interventions. Biotechnol Adv 35 (2):178–216

Ding H, Wang H, Zhao Y et al (2015) Protective effects of baicalin on Ab1–42-induced learning and memory deficit, oxidative stress, and apoptosis in rat. Cell Mol Neurobiol 35:623–632

Durairajana SSK, Liua LF, Lua HJ et al (2012) Berberine ameliorates-amyloid pathology, gliosis, and cognitive impairment in an Alzheimer's disease transgenic mouse model. Neurobiol Aging 33:2903–2919

Dursun E, Gezen-Ak D, Yilmazer S (2010) A Novel Perspective For Alzheimer's disease: vitamin D Receptor Suppression By Amyloid-β and preventing the amyloid-β induced alterations by vitamin D in cortical neurons. J Alzheimer's Dis 23:1–13

Engel MFM, van den Akker CC, Schleeger M et al (2012) The polyphenol EGCG inhibits amyloid formation less efficiently at phospholipid interfaces than in bulk solution. J Am Chem Soc 134:14781–14788

Fan P, Qi X et al (2020) Network systems pharmacology based mechanism study on the beneficial effects of vitamin D against psychosis in Alzheimer's disease. Sci Rep 10:6136

Farlow MR, Thompson RE et al (2018) A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, phase II study assessing safety, tolerability, and efficacy of bryostatin in the treatment of moderately severe to severe Alzheimer's disease. J Alzheimer's Dis

Fei Yina F, Liua J, Ji X et al (2011) Baicalin prevents the production of hydrogen peroxide and oxidative stress induced by A-β aggregation in SH-SY5Y cells. Neurosci Lett 492:76–79
Fillenbaum GG, Kuchibhatla MN, Hanlon JT et al (2005) Dementia and Alzheimer's disease in community-dwelling elders taking vitamin C and/or vitamin E. Ann Pharmacother 39:2009–2014
Gangwar AK, Rawat A et al (2015) Role of vitamin-D in the prevention and treatment of Alzheimer's disease. Indian J Physiol Pharmacol 59(1):94–99
Gavrilova SI, Preuss UW et al (2014) Efficacy and safety of Ginkgo biloba extract EGb 761® in mild cognitive impairment with neuropsychiatric symptoms: a randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind, multicenter trial. Int J Geriatr Psychiatry
Gezen-Ak D, Dursun E et al (2007) Association between vitamin D gene receptor polymorphism and Alzheimer's disease. Tohoku J Exp Med 212:275–282
Giunta B, Hou H, Zhu Y et al (2010) Fish oil enhances anti-amyloidogenic properties of green tea EGCG in Tg2576 mice. Neurosci Lett 471:134–138
Grimm MOW, Lehmann J et al (2014) Impact of vitamin D on amyloid precursor protein processing and amyloid-β peptide degradation in Alzheimer's disease. Neurodegener Dis 13:75–81
Grimm MOW, Lehmann J et al (2019) Profiling of Alzheimer's disease related genes in mild to moderate vitamin D hypovitaminosis. J Nutr Biochem 67:123–137
Gu HX, Xu LJ, Liu ZQ et al (2016) The flavonoid baicalein rescues synaptic plasticity and memory deficits in a mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. Behav Brain Res 15:309–321
Harvey BS, Musgrave IF, Ohlsson KS et al (2011) The green tea polyphenol (−)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate inhibits amyloid-β evoked fibril formation and neuronal cell death in vitro. Food Chem 129:1729–1736
He W, Wang C, Chen Y et al (2017) Berberine attenuates cognitive impairment and ameliorates tau hyperphosphorylation by limiting the self-perpetuating pathogenic cycle between NF-κB signaling, oxidative stress and neuro-inflammation. Pharmacol Rep 69:1341–1348
Heo HJ, Lee CY (2004) Protective effects of quercetin and vitamin C against oxidative stress-induced neurodegeneration. J Agric Food Chem 52(25):7514–7517
Herrschaft H, Nacub A et al (2012) Ginkgo biloba extract EGb 761® in dementia with neuropsychiatric features: a randomised, placebo-controlled trial to confirm the efficacy and safety of a daily dose of 240 mg. J Psychiatr Res 46:716–723
Hussain HM, Elmegied AA, Ghareeb DA et al (2018) Neuroprotective effect of berberine against environmental heavy metals-induced neurotixicity and Alzheimer's-like disease in rats. Food Chem Toxicol 111:432–444
Huy PDQ, Yu YC, Ngo ST et al (2013) In silico and in vitro characterization of anti-amyloidogenic activity of vitamin K3 analogues for Alzheimer's disease. Biochim Biophys Acta 27410:1–10
Ihl R, Bachinskaya N et al (2011) Efficacy and safety of a once-daily formulation of Ginkgo biloba extract EGb 761 in dementia with neuropsychiatric features: a randomized controlled trial. Int J Geriatr Psychiatry 26:1186–1194
Ihl R, Tribanek M, Bachinskaya N (2012) Efficacy and tolerability of a once daily formulation of Ginkgo biloba extract EGb 761 ® in Alzheimer's disease and vascular dementia: results from a randomised controlled trial. Pharmacopsychiatry 45:41–46
Ji HF, Shen L (2012) Molecular basis of inhibitory activities of berberine against pathogenic enzymes in Alzheimer's disease. Sci World J 2012:1–4
Jiaa L, Liua J, Songa Z (2012) Berberine suppresses amyloid-beta-induced inflammatory response in microglia by inhibiting nuclear factor-kappaB and mitogen-activated protein kinase signalling pathways. J Pharm Pharmacol 64:1510–1521
Jiménez-Aliaga K, Bermejo-Bescós P, Benedí J, Martín-Aragón S (2011) Quercetin and rutin exhibit antiamyloidogenic and fibril-disaggregating effects in vitro and potent antioxidant activity in APPswe cells. Life Sci 89(25–26):939–945
Kaur T, Pathak CM, Pandhi P et al (2008) Effects of green tea extract on learning, memory, behavior and acetylcholinesterase activity in young and old male rats. Brain Cogn 67:25–30

Kim T, Lee KY, Park GS et al (2009) L-Theanine, an amino acid in green tea, attenuates β-amyloid-induced cognitive dysfunction and neurotoxicity: reduction in oxidative damage and inactivation of ERK/p38 kinase and NF-κB pathways. J Free Radic Biol Med 47:1601–1610

Kim JH, Lee J, Lee S, Cho EJ (2016) Quercetin and quercetin-3-β-d-glucoside improve cognitive and memory function in Alzheimer's disease mouse. Appl Biol Chem 59(5):721–728

Kim J, Funayama S, Izuo N et al (2019) Dietary supplementation of a high-temperature-processed green tea extract attenuates cognitive impairment in PS2 and Tg2576 mice. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 83:2364–2371

Kong Y, Li K, Fu T, Wan C, Zhang D, Song H, Zhang Y, Liu N, Gan Z, Yuan L (2016) Quercetin ameliorates Aβ toxicity in Drosophila AD model by modulating cell cycle-related protein expression. Oncotarget 7(42):67716

Kontush A, Mann U, Arlt S et al (2001) Influence of vitamin E and C supplementation on lipoprotein oxidation in patients with Alzheimer's disease. Free Radic Biol Med 31:345–354

Lee JW, Lee YK, Ban JO et al (2009) Green tea (-)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate inhibits β-amyloid-induced cognitive dysfunction through modification of secretase activity via inhibition of ERK and NF-kB pathways in mice. J Nutr 139:1987–1993

Lehmann DJ, Refsum H et al (2011) Vitamin D receptor gene associated withAlzheimer's disease. Neurosci Lett 504:79–82

Li FJ, Shen L, Ji HF (2012) Dietary intakes of vitamin E, vitamin C, and β-carotene and risk of Alzheimer's disease: a meta-analysis. J Alzheimer's Dis 31:253–258

Li YL, Guo H, Zhao YQ, Li AF, Ren YQ, Zhang JW (2017) Quercetin protects neuronal cells from oxidative stress and cognitive degradation induced by amyloid β-peptide treatment. Mol Med Rep 16(2):1573–1577

Lim JH, Shima BS, Jeea WS et al (2013) Green tea catechin leads to global improvement among Alzheimer's disease-related phenotypes in NSE/hAPP-C105 Tg mice. J Nutr Biochem 24:1302–1313

Lin C, Chang C, Yong C et al (2016) Green tea polyphenols attenuated glutamate excitotoxicity via antioxidative and antiapoptotic pathway in the primary cultured cortical neurons. Oxid Med Cell Longev 2016:1–8

Littlejohns TJ, Henley WE et al (2014) Vitamin D and the risk of dementia and Alzheimer disease. Neurology 83:920–928

Liu X, Zhou J, Abid MDN et al (2014) Berberine attenuates axonal transport impairment and axonopathy induced by calyculin A in N2a cells. PLoS One 9:e93974

Lloret A, Badia MC, Moraa NJ et al (2009) Vitamin E paradox in Alzheimer's disease: it does not prevent loss of cognition and may even be detrimental. J Alzheimer's Dis 17:143–149

Lohan S, Raza K, Mehta SK et al (2017) Anti-Alzheimer's potential of berberine using surface decorated multi-walled carbon nanotubes: a preclinical evidence. Int J Pharm 530:263–278

Mani RJ, Mittal K, Katare DP (2018) Protective effects of quercetin in zebrafish model of Alzheimer's disease. Asian J Pharm 12(2):S660

Mizwicki MT, Liu G et al (2013) 1α,25-Dihydroxyvitamin D3 and resolvin D1 retune the balance between amyloid-β phagocytosis and inflammation in Alzheimer's disease patients. J Alzheimer's Dis 34:155–170

Mohamed AR, Soliman GY et al (2014) Neuroprotective role of vitamin D3 in colchicine-induced Alzheimer's disease in rats. Alexandria J Med

Molaei A, Hatami H, Dehghan G, Sadeghian R, Khajehnasiri N (2020) Synergistic effects of quercetin and regular exercise on the recovery of spatial memory and reduction of parameters of oxidative stress in animal model of Alzheimer's disease. Excli J 19:596

Mori T, Koyama N, Tan J (2018) Combined treatment with the phenolics (−)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate and ferulic acid improves cognition and reduces Alzheimer-like pathology in mice. J Biol Chem 294:2714–2731

Nakagawa T, Itoh M, Ohta K, Hayashi Y, Hayakawa M, Yamada Y, Akanabe H, Chikaishi T, Nakagawa K, Itoh Y, Muro T (2016) Improvement of memory recall by quercetin in rodent

contextual fear conditioning and human early-stage Alzheimer's disease patients. Neuroreport 27(9):671–676
Nelsona TJ, Sun M-K et al (2017) Bryostatin effects on cognitive function and PKCε in Alzheimer's disease phase IIa and expanded access trials. J Alzheimer's Dis 58:521–535
Oliveira JSD, Abdalla FH, Dornelles GL et al (2016) Berberine protects against memory impairment and anxiogenic-like behavior in rats submitted to sporadic Alzheimer's-like dementia: involvement of acetylcholinesterase and cell death. Neurotoxicology 57:241–250
Oudshoorn C, Mattace-Raso FUS et al (2008) Higher serum vitamin D 3 levels are associated with better cognitive test performance in patients with Alzheimer's disease. Dement Geriatr Cogn Disord 25:539–543
Paula PC, Angelica Maria SG, Luis CH, Gloria Patricia CG (2019) Preventive effect of quercetin in a triple transgenic Alzheimer's disease mice model. Molecules 24(12):2287
Petersen RC, Thomas RG, Grundman M et al (2005) Vitamin E and donepezil for the treatment of mild cognitive impairment. N Engl J Med 352:2379–2388
Pogge E (2015) Vitamin D for the prevention of Alzheimer's disease. Bioactive nutraceuticals and dietary supplements in neurological and brain disease
Polidori MC, Ruggiero C, Croce MF et al (2015) Association of increased carotid intima–media thickness and lower plasma levels of vitamin C and vitamin E in old age subjects: implications for Alzheimer's disease. J Neural Transm 122(4):523–530
Popa DE, Drăgoi CM, Arsene AL, Dumitrescu IB, Nicolae AC, Velescu BS, Burcea-Dragomiroiu GT (2017) The relationship between phenolic compounds from diet and microbiota. Phenolic compounds-biological activity
Rafii MS, Walsh S et al (2011) A phase II trial of huperzine A in mild to moderate Alzheimer disease. Neurology 76:1389–1394
Rai SN, Singh C, Singh A, Singh MP, Singh BK (2020) Mitochondrial dysfunction: a potential therapeutic target to treat Alzheimer's disease. Mol Neurobiol 57(7):3075–3088
Refsum H, Smith AD (2003) Low vitamin B-12 status in confirmed Alzheimer's disease as revealed by serum holotranscobalamin. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 74:959–961
Ringman JM, Frautschy SA et al (2012) Oral curcumin for Alzheimer's disease: tolerability and efficacy in a 24-week randomized, double blind, placebo-controlled study. Alzheimer's Res Ther 4:43
Schimidt HL, Garcia A, Martins A et al (2017) Green tea supplementation produces better neuroprotective effects than red and black tea in Alzheimer-like rat model. Food Res Int 100:442–448
Scott Turner R, Thomas RG et al (2015) A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of resveratrol for Alzheimer disease. Am Acad Neurol 85:1383–1391
Shao R, Xiao J (2013) Natural products for treatment of Alzheimer's disease and related diseases: understanding their mechanism of action. Curr Neuropharmacol 11(4):337
Smith A, Giuntac B, Bickford PC et al (2010) Nanolipidic particles improve the bioavailability and α-secretase inducing ability of epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG) for the treatment of Alzheimer's disease. Int J Pharm 389:207–212
Suematsu N, Hosoda M, Fujimori K (2011) Protective effects of quercetin against hydrogen peroxide-induced apoptosis in human neuronal SH-SY5Y cells. Neurosci Lett 504(3):223–227
Takasaki J, Ono K, Yoshiik Y et al (2014) Vitamin A has anti-oligomerization effects on amyloid-β in vitro. J Alzheimer's Dis 27:271–280
Tomás-Barberán FA, Selma MV, Espín JC (2016) Interactions of gut microbiota with dietary polyphenols and consequences to human health. Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care 19 (6):471–476
Tong-Un T, Wannanon P, Wattanathorn J, Phachonpai W (2010) Cognitive-enhancing and antioxidative activities of quercetin liposomes in animal model of Alzheimer's disease. J Biol Sci 10:84–91
Tönnies E, Trushina E (2017) Oxidative stress, synaptic dysfunction, and Alzheimer's disease. J Alzheimers Dis 57(4):1105–1121

Vargas-Restrepo F, Sabogal-Guáqueta AM, Cardona-Gómez GP (2018) Quercetin ameliorates inflammation in CA1 hippocampal region in aged triple transgenic Alzheimer's disease mice model. Biomédica 38:62–69

Vellas B, Coley N et al (2012) Long-term use of standardised Ginkgo biloba extract for the prevention of Alzheimer's disease (GuidAge): a randomised placebo-controlled trial. Lancet Neurol 11:851–859

Wenguang C, Junfang T (2018) Combined application of tenuigenin and β-asarone improved the efficacy of memantine in treating moderate-to-severe Alzheimer's disease. Drug Design Dev Ther 12:455–462

Wobst HJ, Sharma A, Diamond MI et al (2015) The green tea polyphenol-epigallocatechin gallate prevents the aggregation of tau protein into toxic oligomers at substoichiometric ratios. FEBS Lett 589:77–83

Xiong J, Wang C, Chen H et al (2014) Aβ-induced microglial cell activation is inhibited by baicalin through the JAK2/STAT3 signaling pathway. Int J Neurosci 124(8):609–620

Yang G, Wang Y et al (2013) Huperzine A for Alzheimer's disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials. PLoS One 8(9):e74916

Zadeh KR, Shytle D, Sun N et al (2005) Green tea epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG) modulates amyloid precursor protein cleavage and reduces cerebral amyloidosis in Alzheimer transgenic mice. J Neurosci 25:8807–8814

Zhang SQ, Obregon D, Ehrhart J et al (2013) Baicalein reduces β-amyloid and promotes nonamyloidogenic amyloid precursor protein processing in an Alzheimer's disease transgenic mouse model. J Neurosci Res 91:1239–1246

Zhang J, Zhou X, Yu Q et al (2014) Epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG)-stabilized selenium nanoparticles coated with Tet-1 peptide to reduce amyloid-β aggregation and cytotoxicity. Appl Mater Interfaces 6:8475–8487

Zhao J, Lu S, Yu H et al (1678) Baicalin and ginsenoside Rb1 promote the proliferation and differentiation of n eural stem cells in Alzheimer' s disease model rats. Brain Res 2018:187–194

Zhao Y, Sun Y et al (2013) Vitamin D levels in Alzheimer's and Parkinson's diseases: a meta-analysis. Nutrition 29:828–832

Zhu CW, Grossman H (2018) A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of resveratrol with glucose and malate (RGM) to slow the progression of Alzheimer's disease: a pilot study. Alzheimer's Dement 4:609–616

Zhu F, Qian C (2006) Berberine chloride can ameliorate the spatial memory impairment and increase the expression of interleukin-1beta and inducible nitric oxide synthase in the rat model of Alzheimer's disease. BMC Neurosci 78:1–9

Zhu G, Yang S, Xie Z et al (2018) Synaptic modification by L-theanine, a natural constituent in green tea, rescues the impairment of hippocampal long-term potentiation and memory in AD mice. Neuropharm 138:331–340

Mapping a Link Between Mercury Toxicity and Alzheimer's Disease

5

Swati Kundu

Abstract

Alzheimer's disease (AD), the most common form of dementia, poses a threat to the elderly worldwide. During AD progression, neurons' structural and functional features are affected by the accumulation of amyloid beta-peptide (Aβ) and tau protein. This study investigates the role of environmental toxicants, mercury, accelerating AD symptoms, and natural compounds' therapeutic potential in preventing AD. Mercury caused aggregation of Aβ protein, thus establishing a direct link between AD's mercury toxicity and pathogenesis. Natural compounds with antioxidant and anti-inflammatory properties, namely, curcumin, carvacrol, eugenol, and linalool, can be used to treat AD. This study focuses on the environmental toxicants as a risk factor in AD's pathogenesis and provides a vision to look for natural compounds as therapeutics for AD treatment.

Keywords

Alzheimer's disease · Carvacrol · Curcumin · Eugenol · Mercury · Natural compounds · Linalool

Abbreviations

Aβ	Amyloid beta protein
AD	Alzheimer's disease
APP	Amyloid precursor protein
BBB	Blood-brain barrier

S. Kundu (✉)
Department of Biological Sciences, Faculty of Science, National University of Singapore, Singapore, Singapore
e-mail: DBSSWAT@nus.edu.sg

G. Md Ashraf, A. Alexiou (eds.), *Autism Spectrum Disorder and Alzheimer's Disease*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-4558-7_5

NFT Neurofibrillary tangles
NP Neuritic plaques
PS Presenilin
ROS Reactive oxygen species

5.1 Introduction

A neurodegenerative disease where an irreversible and progressive loss of memory occurs is termed Alzheimer's disease (AD). Symptoms usually go unnoticed during the infection stages, and the symptoms are prominent in later stages when there is a subtle decline in cognitive function (Braak et al. 2011). This affects individuals' daily activities and ends in fatality. It usually hits at the age of >60 years; however, this is not mechanistically linked to brain ageing (Nelson et al. 2011).

The prevalence rate of AD has shown a peak in the last 10 years and has become a known cause of dementia in Western countries (Alzheimer's Disease International 2019). Its age-wise distribution in European countries is shown in Fig. 5.1. An estimate reveals that AD would be affecting approximately 152 million population by 2050 across the world (Alzheimer's Disease International 2019). Unsurprisingly, AD has gradually become one of the major reasons for the rising number of deaths in the elderly population, just after cardiovascular diseases and cancer (Alzhemier's Association 2020). Figure 5.2 illustrates the death rate of patients suffering from AD across various countries. Due to this disease's rising trajectory, low survival rate, and substantial financial burden on the family, it becomes imperative to unravel the

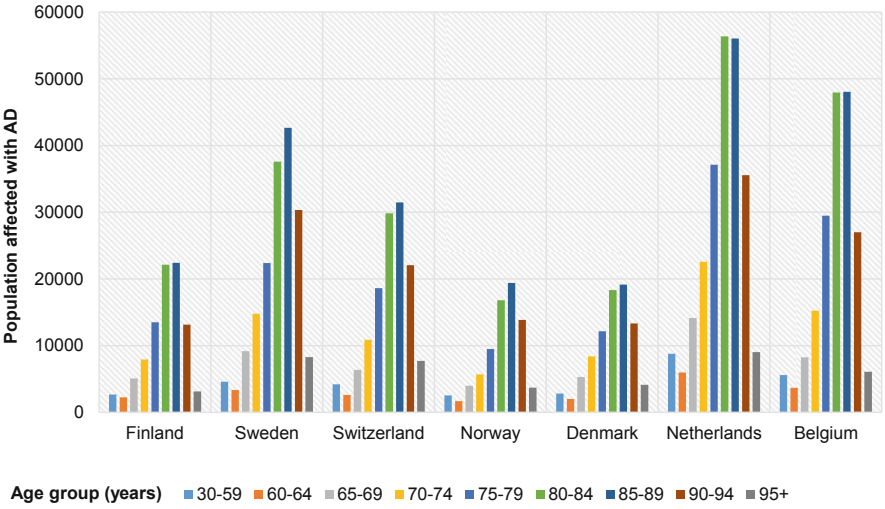


Fig. 5.1 Age-wise distribution of population affected with AD in Europe (World Health Organization 2020)

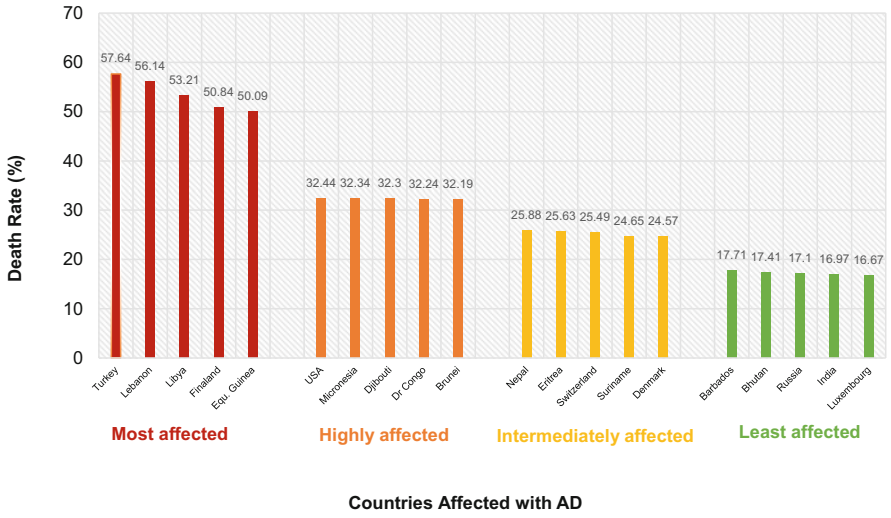


Fig. 5.2 The death rate of top five countries from most, highly, intermediately, to least affected with AD categories (World Health Organization 2020)

causes and potential therapies to control the disorder. This chapter will review AD's pathophysiology, how it gets affected by environmental factors, and the potential of natural therapeutics to prevent AD symptoms.

5.1.1 Functional Alteration in the Brain During AD

A healthy human brain has about a hundred billion neurons, a specialized cell designated to transmit information in chemicals from one to the other. Their extensions form a connection known as synapses, where this chemical transfer occurs. This rapid transfer through the synapses generates a cellular basis of memories, thoughts, sensations, emotions, and skills. Any changes in the structural form or protein accumulation inside/outside the neurons lead to cognitive capability loss. During the progression of AD, risk factors, namely, amyloid precursor protein (APP) and presenilin (PS), are known causes for early onset; however, apolipoprotein E allele 4 (APEA4) mutation is a high risk factor for late-onset AD (Koffie et al. 2012; Meraz-Ríos et al. 2014). APP, a single-pass transmembrane protein, is highly expressed in the brain which is cleaved via either α- and γ-secretases or β- and γ-secretases and generates amyloid beta-peptide (Aβ) (Sadigh-Eteghad et al. 2015).

Moreover, the proteolytic function of γ-secretase is regulated by PS (Ridge et al. 2013). APEA, a dominant cholesterol and lipid carrier in the brain, regulates Aβ aggregation and clearance in the brain (Liu et al. 2013a). An increased concentration of Aβ impairs blood flow within the cerebral structure and speeds up neuronal dysfunction. Additionally, an increased reactive oxygen species (ROS) generation and mitochondrial damage are reported by the risk mentioned above that enhance

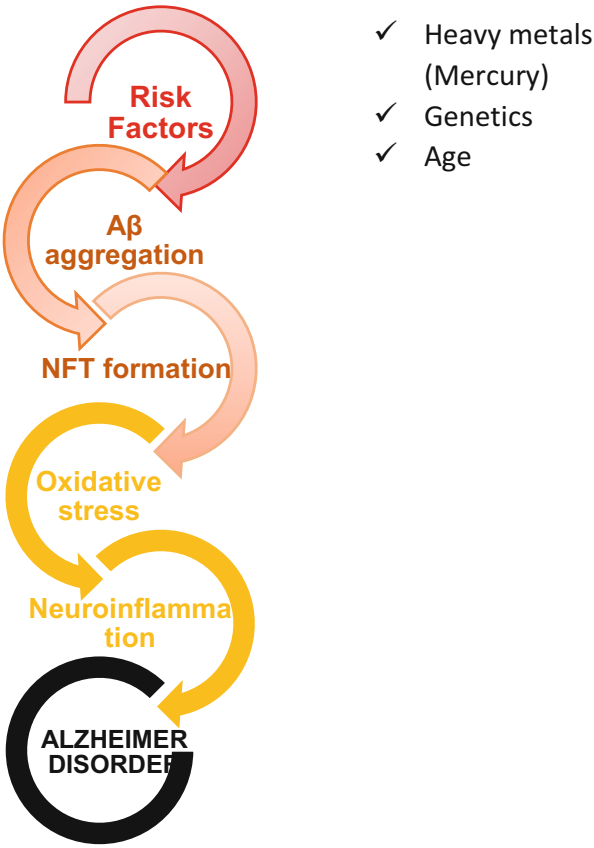


Fig. 5.3 Schematic representation of AD development

AD's neurodegenerative process (Meraz-Ríos et al. 2014). A sequential progression of AD is shown in Fig. 5.3.

In AD, accumulation of Aβ acquires a *β-sheet structure which* forms a spherical deposit called neuritic plaques (NP) (Sakono and Zako 2010). It is a 39–42 amino acid peptide consisting of fibrillary core and microglia, astrocytes, and neurites surrounding the core. These NPs are deposited outside the neurons and interfere with neuron communication at the synaptic junction. This amyloidosis process also leads to the hyperphosphorylation of the microtubule-associated protein called tau protein (Li et al. 2016). It leads to the breakdown of microtubules and neuronal skeleton resulting in the accumulation of flame-shaped neurofibrillary tangles (NFT) which promote neuroinflammation. The Aβ fragments are deposited outside the neurons causing interference in their communication, whereas tau protein deposits inside the neurons and blocks transmission of essential nutrients to the brain (Alzhemier's Association 2020).

5.1.2 Challenges in the AD Treatment

Limited understanding of brain complexity poses a daunting challenge in the treatment of neurodegenerative disorders, including AD. A semipermeable membrane of the brain, the blood-brain barrier (BBB), limits drug penetration, which is the foremost cause for failure of proposed drugs in their preclinical trials for AD (Pardridge 2009). Another hurdle during clinical trials for AD is the enrollment of patients (Watson et al. 2014). This may be due to the poor public awareness and high risk involved in the trials. Crucially, there is no standardized effect on the general population, and its resultant effectiveness varies from one individual to the other (Watson et al. 2014). Some drugs, namely, rivastigmine, galantamine, donepezil, memantine, memantine combined with donepezil, and tacrine, have been approved by the US Food and Drug Administration (Alzhemier's Association 2020). However, these drugs do not entirely cure AD but are effective over the short term. Additionally, we need to emphasize the risk factors, including environmental causing AD.

A link between environmental factors and the development of AD is well established (Killin et al. 2016). Although factors like age, family history, prevailing health conditions, etc. cannot be changed, environmental factors can be assessed carefully to reduce the risk of cognitive decline. These factors include heavy metal toxicity, which is reported to cause systemic alterations when exposed to their threshold concentration (Bakulski et al. 2020). Among heavy metals, mercury seems to be the most hazardous one as it does not have any physiological function and excretory mechanism in humans. Therefore, a longer duration of mercuryexposure leads to its accumulation in nervous tissue.

5.1.3 Role of Mercury Toxicity

Historically, mercury toxicity has resulted in two major pandemics—the Minamata Bay disaster and the Iraq incident. These incidents gave a clear picture of the neural damage caused by mercury ingestion causing sensory, motor, and visual disturbances (Harada 1986). The chemical form and dose of mercury to which the human system gets exposed define its toxicity. As per the US Environmental Protection Agency, the recommended reference blood concentration of mercury is 5.8 ng/mL; concentrations below this level are safe (Choi et al. 1981). Its vapor form (elemental) makes it easily absorbable by biological tissue such as the respiratory system. Since there is no mercury physiological function in humans, 80% of mercury gets accumulated into tissues and cells in its oxidized form of Hg^{2+} (inorganic form). Now, this Hg^{2+} form can bind to the sulfhydryl groups of thiol, hereby altering cysteine-containing proteins (Rooney 2013). This results in the variation in these proteins and, therefore, inhibiting their enzymatic function.

Mercury (organic form) can cross the blood-brain barrier (BBB) by binding to the thiol group and gets converted into an inorganic form in the neurons and glial cells (Cariccio et al. 2019). In the brain, mercury is reported to interact with numerous

targets involved in various cellular functions and, therefore, interfere with the brain's structural stability and functionality. The high affinity of mercury for thiol and selenol groups leads to depleting intracellular antioxidants, causing inhibition of antioxidant enzyme activity (Wagner et al. 2010). This results in a redox imbalance causing oxidative stress. Also, dysregulation of calcium stores results in calcium overload in the brain which elicits mitochondrial permeability transition pore opening leading to ROS overproduction (Roos et al. 2012). A resultant alteration in chemical signals from the presynaptic membrane occurs, causing postsynaptic receptor functions (Castoldi et al. 2001).

In AD, mercury binding to neuronal microtubules via thiol group blocks their assembly and causes tubule disintegration (Siblerud et al. 2019). The structural formation of neurons, an important factor in its sustainability and survival, is stabilized by polymerization/depolymerization cycle of the cytoskeleton components—actin filaments (F-actin) and microtubules (β-tubulin). Mercury causes a change in β-tubulin; however, F-actin intensity remains unchanged (Xu et al. 2012). Another consequence of mercury toxicity is the inhibition of glutamate uptake a neurotransmitter by altering glutamatergic signaling in astrocytes (Aschner et al. 2000). This causes an increased glutamine synthase activity, and a sudden increase in glutamate release from the neuron occurs (Fuentes et al. 2001). Consequently, glutamate levels rise from 0.6 to 10μM at the synaptic cleft, which is a critical factor in the regulation of neural signaling (Bouvier et al. 1992).

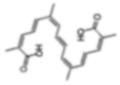
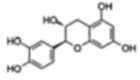
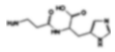
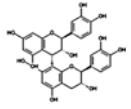
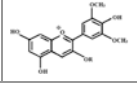
Taken together, environmental toxicants in the form of mercury directly accelerated the progression of AD symptoms by altering neural signaling.

5.1.4 Natural Compounds as AD Therapeutics

For ages, natural compounds hold prime importance for therapeutic use. Based on the fact, in my previous research, based on antioxidant and anti-inflammatory properties, I selected four natural compounds to study their effect on mercury toxicity (Kundu et al. 2014, 2016). All these four compounds show not only ameliorative but also prophylaxis effect against mercury in smooth muscle systems. Their action of mechanism against mercury toxicity makes them suitable candidates to study in AD. Some natural extracts are already in clinical trials to treat AD (Table 5.1), while some natural compounds (mentioned below) are in their preclinical trials that need to be investigated further in AD treatment.

(a) Curcumin is an active component of *Curcuma longa* L. plants. Its antioxidant and anti-inflammatory potential is known to act against oxidative stress caused during AD (Reddy et al. 2016). Curcumin has shown preventive actions against AD by counteracting its primary cause, i.e., Aβ aggregation, at IC50 = 0.8 **μ**M (Yang et al. 2005). A decrease in Aβ pathological aggregation has been reported by inhibiting PS-2 or accelerating its clearance through degrading enzymes (Wang et al. 2014). Furthermore, in vitro experiments showed that curcumin at 0–20 **μ**M reduced secretion of β- and γ-secretase, leading to improvements in

Table 5.1 Natural extracts in clinical trials for AD therapy

Natural extracts	Structure	Active component	Toxicity	Severity level of AD	Outcomes	Reference
Saffron oil		Crocetin, crocin, safranal	0.15 and 0.35 mL/kg, i.p.	Mild	Improved cognitive functions	Hosseinzadeh and Talebzadeh (2005), Gavrilova et al. (2014)
Green tea extract		Alkaloids and tannins	210 mg/kg	Severe	Improved cognitive function and memory	Arab et al. (2016), National Library of Medicine (2013)
Papaya		Alkaloids, tannins, antraquinone, cardenolides, steroids, saponins, phenolics	Data not available	Last stages	Decreased oxidative stress	Barbagallo et al. (2015)
Coconut oil	Due to flexibility, 3D structure is not available	Lauric acid and myristic acid	Data not available	Last stages	Improved cognitive functions	De la Rubia Orti et al. (2018)
Apple extract		Quercetin-3-galactoside, catechin, epicatechin, procyanidin, cyanidin-3-galactoside, coumaric acid, chlorogenic acid, gallic acid, and phloridzin	13,956 mg/kg	Moderate	No improvement in cognitive functions	Remington et al. (2010), U. S. National Library of Medicine (n.d.)
Blueberry extract		Phenolic compounds	Data not available	Initial stages	Improved learning ability	Krikorian et al. (2010)

learning and memory (Xiong et al. 2011). A clinical trial conducted to ascertain curcumin's side effects proved it a safe compound for AD patients (Baum et al. 2008). However, more clinical trials are needed to know the efficacy of curcumin in AD treatment.

(b) Carvacrol is an active component of thyme oil. A study shows the effectiveness of carvacrol against AD by alleviating cognitive impairments. This effect was mediated at 471.2 mg/kg of carvacrol which increased levels of Aβ and cholinergic hypofunction (Azizi et al. 2012). Carvacrol (IC50 = 0.063 **μ**M) also displays an inhibitory effect on acetylcholinesterase, resulting in the loss of its function (Jukic et al. 2007). An increased acetylcholine concentration in the brain leads to better neuron-neuron communication, which repairs the loss of cognitive function during AD. These studies highlight the natural therapeutic potential of carvacrol; however, detailed investigations can only summarize the clinical efficacy and potential sideeffects in the human system.

(c) Eugenol is an active compound of clove oil, cinnamon, and basil. In AD, eugenol at the concentration of 0.01 mg/kg has shown a reduced amount of amyloid plaques significantly in the hippocampus part of the brain (Taheri et al. 2019). This results in improved memory in AD rat models. Also, an increase in the activity of antioxidant enzymes (glutathione peroxidase and superoxide dismutase) and a decrease in the malondialdehyde content in the hippocampus area in the eugenol treated rats have been reported (Liu et al. 2013b). Eugenol has also shown its stabilizing effect for a native protein that delays the conversion of the native conformation into β-sheet assembled mature fibrils, preventing AD symptoms (Dubey et al. 2017).

(d) Linalool is an active ingredient of lavender oil. It showed a reversal of AD's histopathological hallmarks and subsequently restores cognitive functions in hippocampus and amygdala parts of the brain (Maria et al. 2016). The concentration used to study the effects was 25 mg/kg. It shows anti-inflammatory effects including a significant reduction in the levels of the pro-inflammatory markers—*p38 MAP Kinase*, nitric oxide synthase 2, cyclooxygenase-2, and *interleukin-1β*—and antioxidant effects including maintaining antioxidant enzyme (superoxide dismutase, glutathione peroxidase) activities and malondialdehyde levels and enhanced activity of acetylcholinesterase (Xu et al. 2017; Maria et al. 2016). This results in the reduction of extracellular β-amyloidosis, tauopathy, astrogliosis, and microgliosis, leading to AD's improved symptoms. Linalool showed therapeutic potential against AD, which makes it an ideal candidate for clinical investigations.

5.2 Summary

This review presents mercury toxicity as one of the significant risk factors humans face in terms of loss of brain function, leading to AD. Further experimental data may warrant a neural cascade affected with acute and chronic mercury exposure. My previous studies have established the prophylaxis and ameliorative role of natural

compounds against mercury toxicity which calls for a check of their potential role in AD considering mercury as a risk factor. In vivo and in vitro studies done with some of the natural compounds imply that treatment with curcumin, carvacrol, eugenol, or linalool may inhibit the pathological mechanism(s) responsible for the development of AD, including Aβ accumulation, oxidative stress, and neuroinflammation. If we keep a check on the mercury accumulation in our system and look for natural compound dosages which we should consume, it may open a new way in AD therapeutics.

Conflicts of Interest All the authors declare no conflict of interest.

References

Alzheimer's Disease International (2019) World Alzheimer Report 2019. Alzheimer's Disease International (ADI), London

Alzhemier's Association (2020) 2020 Alzheimer's disease facts and figures. Alzheimer's Assocaition

Arab H, Mahjoub S, Hajian-Tilaki K, Moghadasi M (2016) The effect of green tea consumption on oxidative stress markers and cognitive function in patients with Alzheimer's disease: a prospective intervention study. CASP J Int Med 7(3):188–194

Aschner M, Yao CP, Allen JW, Tan KH (2000) Methylmercury alters glutamate transport in astrocytes. Neurochem Int 37(3):199–206

Azizi Z, Ebrahimi S, Saadatfar E, Kamalinejad M, Majlessi N (2012) Cognitive-enhancing activity of thymol and carvacrol in two rat models of dementia. Behav Pharmacol 23(3):241–249

Bakulski KM, Seo YA, Hickman RC, Brandt D, Vadari HS, Hu H et al (2020) Heavy metals exposure and Alzheimer's disease and related dementias. J Alzheimers Dis 76(4):1215–1242

Barbagallo M, Marotta F, Dominguez LJ (2015) Oxidative stress in patients with Alzheimer's disease: effect of extracts of fermented papaya powder. Mediat Inflamm 2015(1):624801

Baum L, Lam CW, Cheung SK, Kwok T, Lui V, Tsoh J, Lam L et al (2008) Six-month randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind, pilot clinical trial of curcumin in patients with Alzheimer disease. J Clin Psychopharmacol 28(1):110–113

Bouvier M, Szatkowski M, Amato A, Attwell D (1992) The glial cell glutamate uptake carrier countertransports pH-changing anions. Nature 360(6403):471–474

Braak H, Thal DR, Ghebremedhin E, Del Tredici K (2011) Stages of the pathologic process in Alzheimer disease: age categories from 1 to 100 years. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol 70 (11):960–969

Cariccio VL, Samà A, Bramanti P, Mazzon E (2019) Mercury involvement in neuronal damage and in neurodegenerative diseases. Biol Trace Elem Res 187(2):341–356

Castoldi AF, Coccini T, Ceccatelli S, Manzo L (2001) Neurotoxicity and molecular effects of methylmercury. Brain Res Bull 55(2):197–203

Choi BH, Cho KH, Lapham LW (1981) Effects of methylmercury on human fetal neurons and astrocytes in vitro: a time-lapse cinematographic, phase and electron microscopic study. Environ Res 1:61–74

De la Rubia Orti JE, Garcia-Pardo MP, Drehmer E, Cantus SD, Rochina JM, Aguilar MA, Hu YI (2018) Improvement of main cognitive functions in patients with Alzheimer's disease after treatment with coconut oil enriched mediterranean diet: a pilot study. J Alzheimers Dis 65 (2):577–587

Dubey K, Anand BG, Shekhawat DS, Kar K (2017) Eugenol prevents amyloid formation of proteins and inhibits amyloid-induced hemolysis. Sci Rep 7(1):40744

Fuentes SI, Allen DJ, Ortiz-Lopez A, Hernández G (2001) Over-expression of cytosolic glutamine synthetase increases photosynthesis and growth at low nitrogen concentrations. J Exp Bot 52 (358):1071–1081. https://doi.org/10.1093/jexbot/52.358.1071

Gavrilova SI, Preuss UW, Wong JWM, Hoerr R, Kaschel R, Bachinskaya N (2014) Efficacy and safety of Ginkgo biloba extract EGb 761® in mild cognitive impairment with neuropsychiatric symptoms: a randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind, multi-center trial. Int J Geriatr Psychiatry 29(10):1087–1095

Harada M (1986) Congenital Minamata disease, intrauterine methylmercury poisoning. Teratogen 18(2):123–126

Hosseinzadeh H, Talebzadeh F (2005) Anticonvulsant evaluation of safranal and crocin from Crocus sativus in mice. Fitoterapia 6(7–8):722–724

Jukic M, Politeo O, Maksimovic M, Milos M (2007) In vitro acetylcholinesterase inhibitory properties of thymol, carvacrol and their derivatives thymoquinone and thymohydroquinone. Phytother Res 21(3):259–261

Killin LOJ, Starr JM, Shiue IJ, Russ TC (2016) Environmental risk factors for dementia: a systematic review. BMC Geriatr 175

Koffie RM, Hashimoto T, Tai H-C, Kay KR, Serrano-Pozo A, Joyner D, Hou S, Kopeikina KJ, Frosch MP, Lee VM (2012) Apolipoprotein E4 effects in Alzheimer's disease are mediated by synaptotoxic oligomeric amyloid-β. Brain 135(7):2155–2168

Krikorian R, Shidler MD, Nash TA, Kalt W, Vinqvist-Tymchuk MR, Shukitt-Hale B, Joseph JA (2010) Blueberry supplementation improves memory in older adults. J Agric Food Chem 58 (7):3996–4000

Kundu S, Shabir H, Basir SF, Khan LA (2014) Inhibition of As(III) and Hg (II) caused aortic hypercontraction by eugenol, linalool and carvone. J Smooth Muscle Res 50:93–102

Kundu S, Shabir H, Basir SF, Khan LA (2016) Eugenol and carvone as relaxants of arsenic and mercury hypercontracted rat trachea. Toxicol Ind Healh 32(12):1935–1941

Li T, Braunstein KE, Zhang J, Lau A, Sibener L, Deeble C et al (2016) The neuritic plaque facilitates pathological conversion of tau in an Alzheimer's disease mouse model. Nat Commun 7:12082

Liu C, Kanekiyo T, Xu H, Bu G (2013a) Apolipoprotein E and Alzheimer disease: risk, mechanisms, and therapy. Nat Rev Neurol 9(2):106–118

Liu Z, Niu W, Yang X, Wang Y (2013b) Effects of combined acupuncture and eugenol on learning-memory ability and antioxidation system of hippocampus in Alzheimer disease rats via olfactory system stimulation. J Tradit Chin Med 33(3):399–402

Maria SA, Edison O, Patricia CG (2016) Linalool reverses neuropathological and behavioral impairments in old triple transgenic Alzheimer's mice. Neuropharmacology 102:111–120

Meraz-Ríos MA, Franco-Bocanegra D, Rios DT, Campos-Peña V (2014) Early onset Alzheimer's disease and oxidative stress. Oxid Med Cell Longev 2014:375968

National Library of Medicine (2013) The National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH). PubChem, United States

Nelson PT, Head E, Schmitt FA, Davis PR, Neltner JH, Jicha GA et al (2011) Alzheimer's disease is not "brain aging": neuropathological, genetic, and epidemiological human studies. Acta Neuropathol 121(5):571–587

Pardridge WM (2009) Alzheimer's disease drug development and the problem of the blood-brain barrier. Alzheimers Dement 5(5):427–432

Reddy PH, Manczak M, Yin X, Grady MC, Mitchell A, Kandimalla R et al (2016) Protective effects of a natural product, curcumin, against amyloid β induced mitochondrial and synaptic toxicities in Alzheimer's disease. J Investig Med 64(8):1220–1234

Remington R, Chan A, Lepore A, Kotlya E, Shea TB (2010) Apple juice improved behavioral but not cognitive symptoms in moderate-to-late stage Alzheimer's disease in an open-label pilot study. Am J Alzheimers Dis Dement 25(4):367–371

Ridge PG, Ebbert MT, Kauwe JS (2013) Genetics of Alzheimer's disease. Biomed Res Int 2013:254954

Rooney JP (2013) The retention time of inorganic mercury in the brain—a systematic review of the evidence. Toxicol Appl Pharm 274:425–435

Roos D, Seeger R, Puntel R, Barbosa NV (2012) Role of calcium and mitochondria in MeHg-mediated cytotoxicity. J Biomed Biotechnol 2012:248764

Sadigh-Eteghad S, Sabermarouf B, Majdi A, Talebi M, Farhoudi M, Mahmoudi J (2015) Amyloid-beta: a crucial factor in Alzheimer's disease. Med Princ Pract 24(1):1–10

Sakono M, Zako T (2010) Amyloid oligomers: formation and toxicity of Abeta oligomers. FEBS J 277(6):1348–1358

Siblerud R, Mutter J, Moore E, Naumann J, Walach H (2019) A hypothesis and evidence that mercury may be an etiological factor in Alzheimer's disease. Int J Environ Res Public Health 16 (24):5152

Taheri P, Yaghmaei P, Tehrani HS, Ebrahim-Habibi A (2019) Effects of eugenol on Alzheimer's disease-like manifestations in insulin- and Aβ-induced rat models. Neurophysiology 51:114–119

U. S. National Library of Medicine (n.d.) Industrial medicine and surgery. ChemIDplus

Wagner C, Sudati JH, Nogueira CW, Rocha JB (2010) In vivo and in vitro inhibition of mice thioredoxin reductase by methylmercury. Biometals 23:1171–1177

Wang P, Su C, Li R, Wang H, Ren Y, Sun H et al (2014) Mechanisms and effects of curcumin on spatial learning and memory improvement in APPswe/PS1dE9 mice. J Neurosci Res 92(2):218–231

Watson JL, Ryan L, Silverberg N, Cahan V, Bernard MA (2014) Obstacles and opportunities in Alzheimer's clinical trial recruitment. Health Aff (Millwood) 33(4):574–579

World Health Organization (2020) Alzheimers and dementia. World Health Ranking

Xiong Z, Hongmei Z, Lu S, Yu L (2011) Curcumin mediates presenilin-1 activity to reduce β-amyloid production in a model of Alzheimer's disease. Pharmacol Rep 63(5):1101–1108

Xu F, Farkas S, Kortbeek S, Zhang F, Chen L, Zamponi GW et al (2012) Mercury-induced toxicity of rat cortical neurons is mediated through N-methyl-D-aspartate receptors. Mol Brain 5:30

Xu P, Wang K, Lu C, Dong L, Gao L, Yan M et al (2017) The protective effect of lavender essential oil and its main component linalool against the cognitive deficits induced by Dgalactose and aluminium trichloride in mice. Evid Based Complement Alternat Med 2017:7426538

Yang F, Lim GP, Begum AN, Ubeda OJ, Simmons MR, Ambegaokar SS, Chen SP et al (2005) Curcumin inhibits formation of amyloid beta oligomers and fibrils, binds plaques, and reduces amyloid in vivo. J Biol Chem 290(7):5892–5901

Drug Therapy of Alzheimer's Disease: Cholinesterase Inhibitors, NMDA Antagonists

6

Sana Nafees, Md Faiz Akram, and Md Asad Khan

Abstract

Alzheimer's disease (AD) is one of the brain's progressive neuronal diseases named after Aloes Alzheimer, a German physician who first described it in 1906. AD is one of the most widespread forms of dementia, presenting one of the biggest healthcare challenges in developed countries. AD causes a reduction in cognitive function and language ability. Multi-target inhibitors have been developed as AD is a multifactorial disease. There is no effective treatment capable of slowing down disease progression. Recently, the primary focus of research is on novel pharmacotherapies. Several current drugs taken to treat the disease have repulsive side effects and new substitutes. There is no therapy for AD, but medicines are available that are designed to slow disease progression. Various studies have shown that some herbs may improve brain function; however, experimental data is limited to prove that they can treat AD. The objective here is to provide a systematic review of AD's factors, viz., environmental toxicity and genetic predisposition, and ongoing treatment strategies used to treat it. Additionally, this review presents the current status and future directions for developing novel drugs with pharmacological activity. Evidence about the use of medicinal herbs in treating AD and symptoms related to AD is discussed.

S. Nafees
Department of Biosciences, Faculty of Natural Science, Jamia Millia Islamia, New Delhi, India

M. F. Akram
Department of Pharmacology, Faculty of Dentistry, Jamia Millia Islamia, New Delhi, India

M. A. Khan (✉)
Department of Biochemistry, Faculty of Dentistry, Jamia Millia Islamia, New Delhi, India

G. Md Ashraf, A. Alexiou (eds.), *Autism Spectrum Disorder and Alzheimer's Disease*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-4558-7_6

Keywords

Alzheimer's disease · Environmental toxicity · Genetic predisposition · Treatment strategies · Medicinal herbs

6.1 Introduction

Alzheimer's disease (AD) comes under a broad category of neurodegenerative disorders (ND). The NDs are characterized by the progressive and irreversible loss of neurons from specific regions of the brain. The NDs also include Parkinson's disease (PD) and Huntington's disease (HD), where basal ganglia neurons are involved, and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), where degeneration of spinal, bulbar, and cortical motor neurons are involved. In AD, there is a loss of hippocampal and cortical neurons resulting in disability of memory and cognition. AD is the most common cause of dementia. There is persistent memory loss combined with personality changes. The main risk factor for AD is age; AD affects 10% of the population above the age of 65 (Evans et al. 1989). In AD, the hippocampus and neocortex are most affected, but AD may also involve other brain regions (Arnold et al. 1991).

AD is the most important cause of dementia, accounting for 60–70% of cases. The sign of this dreadful disease deteriorates over time—from early lack of memory to regular degeneration in language, orientation, and behavior and delayed severe loss of memory and a few body functions till final death. The etiology of AD appears to be multifactorial. Genetic mutations in presenilin (PS1, PS2) and amyloid precursor protein (APP) genes, affecting a common pathogenic pathway in APP synthesis and proteolysis, cause early onset of familial AD, causing the production of amyloid β (Aβ) in excess (Wu et al. 2012). However, the cause of AD's late onset is inadequately understood, but it is believed that the leading risk factor is the involvement of genetics with several genes. Aging, apolipoprotein (Apo) E4 genotype, head trauma, and vascular conditions are other threats to the disease (Burns and Iliffe 2009). Both structural and functional abnormalities are involved in the pathophysiology of AD. Numerous injuries occur in the brain, including the appearance of senile plaques consisting of Aβ and neurofibrillary tangles containing phosphorylated tau as AD goes into the advanced stage and the substantial loss of synaptic profiles (Perl 2010). Significant oxidative stress and mitochondrial abnormalities are also observed in AD together with neuronal death. There is no cure for AD through a small number of treatments till now. FDA approved two categories of drugs for the treatment of AD patients according to the AD Medications Fact Sheet published by the National Institute on Aging. One is cholinesterase inhibitors for mild to moderate AD. In contrast, the other is used to treat moderate-to-severe AD and contains memantine, an antagonist against *N*-methyl-D-aspartate receptor (NMDAR), a receptor gated by the neurotransmitter glutamate.

The purpose of this chapter is to shed light on the factors associated with AD, viz., environmental toxicity and genetic predisposition, and current treatment strategies used to treat AD. Moreover, this chapter presents the current status and future directions for developing novel drugs with pharmacological activity, medicinal herbs in the treatment of AD, and the symptoms related to AD.

6.2 Environmental Toxicity and Genetic Predisposition

Some of the environmental agents including (1) toxic metals, (2) insecticides and pesticides, (3) industrial/commercial pollutants, (4) antimicrobials, and (5) air pollutants are all known to aggravate AD in vitro, in vivo and in clinical research. Aluminum (Campbell 2002) and lead (Basha et al. 2005; Shih et al. 2007) are known toxic metals that have been linked with many neurodegenerative diseases, including AD, which cause toxic effects to many organs of the human body. Copper and arsenic are other elements that disrupt the homeostasis of brain amyloid-β protein associated in experimental model systems (Baum et al. 2010; Singh et al. 2013). Chronic exposures to pesticides such as organophosphates (Kamel and Hoppin 2004), simultaneously with occupational exposure predominantly in agriculture, have been shown to lead to cognitive and psychomotor impairment and possibly to the progress of AD (Baldi et al. 2003). Behavioral changes were observed in murine neonates exposed to brominated flame retardants, which are readily absorbed by body fat, whereas adult mice exhibited impaired learning and remembrance (Viberg et al. 2003). The use of plasticizers like, bisphenol A and phthalates can cross the fetoplacental barrier to damage neurons (Zaman 2010). Neurodevelopmental disturbances and behavioral changes were observed using broad-spectrum antimicrobials, which are active ingredients of consumer products like soaps and toothpaste; however, direct evidence linking these to AD is missing (Barse et al. 2010; Veldhoen et al. 2006). Studies have been done on animal models, and epidemiological approaches have reported other evidence that link with the exposure to toxic metals (Sparks and Schreurs 2003; Thompson et al. 1988) and air pollutants that cause neurological symptoms, including AD. Significantly, most of the concerned environmental toxins are endocrine-disrupting chemicals that impair neurogenesis and cognitive function in brain development and affect the neurological function throughout human existence (Weiss 2007).

It remains unknown whether a single agent or combination of environmental factors contributes to AD's onset and progression. Further research is in progress to endow with new insights into possible mechanisms to identify environmental risk factors and strategies to lessen harmful exposures contributing to AD.

AD has a very strong root in genetics, whose classification has become an essential part of hard work to know its pathology. For the last 10 years, AD risk has been linked to more than 40 genes. Genetic data has shed new light, particularly the main role of microglia and the pathogenesis of AD. However, further various genetic studies are essential as our information of the genetics of AD is not sufficient. Families with a high incidence have been identified and showed some evidence of

the disorders' pathogenesis, although most AD cases are sporadic. Mutations in the genes coded for the amyloid precursor protein (APP) and proteins known as the presenilins may be involved in APP processing causing inherited AD forms (Bellenguez et al. 2020). Since the 1930s, AD presents an autosomal dominant form of inheritance because rare forms of AD are entirely genetically determined. Until the 1980s, the systematic linkage approaches for characterizing the contributing genes were not developed. In this perspective, three genes, APP, PSEN1, and PSEN2, were responsible for early-onset, dominantly inherited forms of AD coding, respectively, for amyloid precursor protein, presenilin-1, and presenilin-2 (Cacace et al. 2016). The majority of cases of AD are late-onset sporadic forms, with no evident familial aggregation. AD appears to be one of the human multifactorial diseases with the highest heritability level (70%). It has been reported that the e4 allele of the apolipoprotein E (APOE) gene was connected with the risk of early AD (Strittmatter et al. 1993). Since then, with the remarkable exception of some African populations, this group has been detected in approximately all ethnic groups (Farrer et al. 1997; Gureje et al. 2006). Due to the discovery of APOE and the potency of the genetic factor in AD, our knowledge of AD's genetics was expected to amplify speedily. With the discovery of three new genetic risk factors, CLU, CR1, and PICALM in 2009, the publication of the first two large-scale genome-wide association studies (GWASs) of AD formed a landmark field in genetics (Harold et al. 2009; Lambert et al. 2009).

6.3 Treatment Strategies

Based on the pathophysiology and neurochemistry of AD, the treatment strategies are planned accordingly. The pathology of AD is categorized principally by extracellular senile plaques and intracellular neurofibrillary tangles. The pathological hallmark of AD increases protein β-amyloid, also called senile plaques, and neurofibrillary tangles, the collections of tau protein that are hyperphosphorylated as paired helical filaments (Lambert et al. 2009; Athanasios and Stefan 2016). Several hypotheses aimed at explaining the origins of AD and different treatment strategies are discussed below.

6.3.1 β-Amyloid Cascade Hypothesis

Proteolysis of APP leads to the formation of Aβ peptide, an integral transmembrane protein found in different cell types, including neurons and glial cells (Santana et al. 2015; Chiang and Koo 2014). Alternative splicing produces multiple isoforms of the molecule in humans, with APP695 being the most abundant in the brain (Chiang and Koo 2014). Aβ is formed via cleavage of α-, β-, and γ-secretase enzyme protein complexes when APP is processed into smaller peptide fragments which include presenilin and nicastrin molecules (Haass et al. 2012). APP is catabolized by α-secretase and produces soluble sAPPα fragment, which remains in the

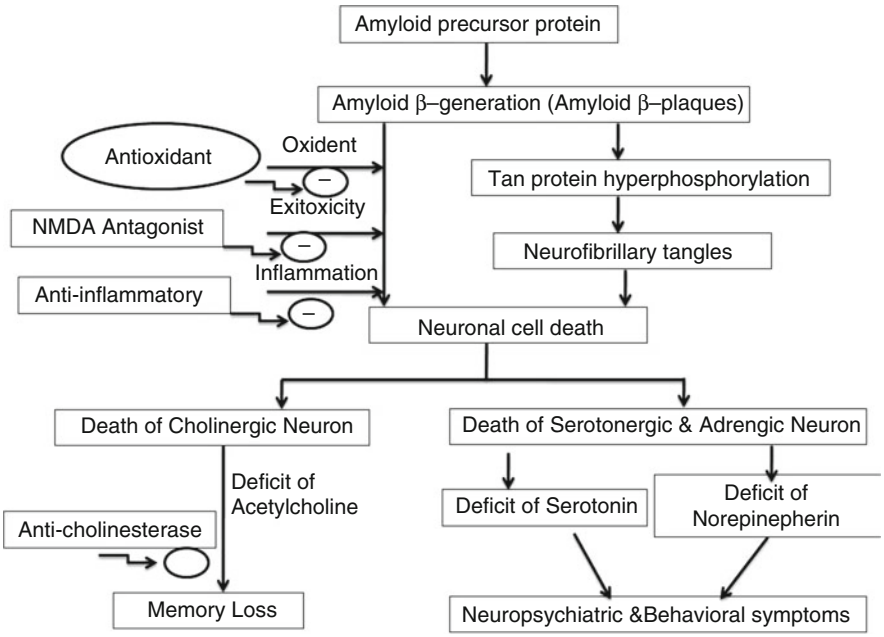


Fig. 6.1 Potential targets for drug action in Alzheimer's disease

extracellular space, and a carboxy-terminal 83-amino acid (C83) fragment, which is anchored in the plasma membrane under physiological conditions (Eriksen et al. 2003; Alvarez et al. 2015). APP is primarily cleaved by β-secretase 1 (BACE), which fragments APP into sAPPβ and a 99-amino acid membrane-bound fraction (C99) in a neuropathological situation. Additionally, processing of the C99 fragment by γ-secretase results in the production of either A(1–40) or Aβ(1–42) peptides, which might lead to the formation of senile plaque (Mucke and Selkoe 2012; Castello and Soriano 2013; Drachman 2014). Aβ peptides may cause synaptic loss, decrease neuronal plasticity, alter energy metabolism, induce oxidative stress and mitochondrial dysfunction, and provoke disruptions in cellular calcium homeostasis, whereas sAPPα is beneficial to humans (Haass et al. 2012; Mucke and Selkoe 2012). The amyloid cascade hypothesis reveals that the development, aggregation, and deposition of Aβ peptides constitute a significant incident in pAD's pathogenesis, which activates neurotoxicity and neurodegeneration (Hardy and Selkoe 2002; Haass et al. 2012) as shown in Fig. 6.1. Increased tau phosphorylation and the formation of neurofibrillary tangles are most probably due to extreme extracellular Aβ. Molecular genetics studies gave acceptance to this hypothesis, signifying the possible novel therapeutics for inhibitors of β- and γ-secretase or enhancers of α-secretase activity. However, in sporadic AD cases, the amyloid cascade hypothesis cannot fully elucidate the root causes of the AD where the generation of Aβ does not show a clear basis of genetics (Nalivaeva et al. 2008).

6.3.2 Strategies Focused on Tau Proteins

Tau proteins have an essential function in stabilizing microtubules, extremely soluble, particularly in axons abundant in the neurons (Cowan and Mudher 2013). Insoluble paired helical filaments (PHF) are formed from hyperphosphorylation of tau, which forms neurofibrillary tangles. Cytoskeleton destabilization was provoked by the loss of microtubule-binding capacity, which ultimately leads to neurons' degeneration and death (West and Bhugra 2015). Tau-centered treatments intend to reduce the phosphorylation and aggregation of Tau protein as a substitute for amyloid-centric strategies. Additionally, microtubule-stabilizing drugs could be used as a disease-modifying approach in AD (Shefet and Benhar 2015). Recently, immunomodulation was recommended as a possible opportunity for promoting adequate clearance of aggregates of TAU proteins.

6.3.3 The Cholinergic Hypothesis

AD is characterized by a progressive loss of learning and memory in addition to neuronal death. The hippocampus is influenced by cholinergic modulation which is the main region of the brain involved in **memory processing** (Konishi et al. 2015). Neurotransmitter alterations are associated with the degeneration of cholinergic neurons in the nucleus basalis of Meynert and the loss of cholinergic inputs to the neocortex and hippocampus. Several studies showed a reduction in choline acetyltransferase (ChAT) and acetylcholine (ACh) release, with decrease in nicotinic and muscarinic receptors in the cerebral cortex and hippocampus of postmortem AD brains (Tata et al. 2014). One of the two classes of drugs approved for treating AD-like acetylcholinesterase inhibitors (AChEI) works by increasing ACh bioavailability at the synapse. But none of these drugs are competent neither in reversing the route of AD nor decreasing the progression of AD (Wallace and Bertrand 2013). Their possible use in combination therapy with other disease-modifying compounds should not be excluded; however, their clinical effect is largely calming. The use of ladostigil (TV3326) improves extrapyramidal symptoms. It provides an antidepressant effect as a reversible inhibitor of AChE and is a selective and irreversible inhibitor of brain monoamine oxidases A and B (Weinreb et al. 2011, 2012). It also appears to be a potent antiapoptotic, antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, and neuroprotective agent.

6.3.4 Dendritic Hypothesis

Dendritic abnormalities come in comparatively early stages of AD. It has just been recently shown that this is where we begin to know the primary molecular changes that occur on the postsynaptic side in the dendrite, although dystrophic neurites, reduced dendritic complexity, and dendritic spine loss are all documented features of AD (Shirazi and Wood 1993; Cochran et al. 2014). Studies documented that soluble

Aβ oligomers are the primary neurotoxic species accountable for the pathology of dendrites. Aβ oligomers might cause anomalous activation of *N*-methyl-D-aspartate receptor (NMDAR) postsynaptically by forming complexes with the cell-surface prion protein (PrPC). PrPC, which interacts with Fyn tyrosine kinase-metabotropic glutamate receptor 5 complex (FynmGluR5), is enriched at the neuronal postsynaptic density. Fyn activation occurs when Aβ is bound to PrPCFyn- mGluR5 complex. Activation of Fyn leads to the tyrosine phosphorylation of the NR2B subunit of NMDAR. This causes initial augmentation and then a loss of NMDARs present at the cell surface (Yang et al. 2011). It has been shown that overexpression of Fyn accelerated the loss of synapse and the beginning of cognitive impairment in the transgenic mouse model of AD; at the same time, its inhibition produced an opposite effect (Cochran et al. 2014). Elevated levels of Fyn in AD brain have been reported in the brain of AD. Moreover, it has been reported that Fyn phosphorylates Tau at Tyr18 residue (Wilkinson et al. 2014). Therefore, Fyn might be a potential target in the treatment of AD.

6.3.5 5-HT$_6$ Receptors in Alzheimer's Disease

Receptors of 5-HT$_6$ are articulated in areas of the CNS implicated in learning and memory. Their inhibition promoted the release of acetylcholine. The restoration of acetylcholine levels is due to 5-HT$_6$ antagonism (Woolley et al. 2001). This hypothesis confirms that 5-HT6 receptor antisense oligonucleotides improve learning and memory in the Morris water maze test in normal rats (Ramirez et al. 2014). Together with AChEIs, 5-HT$_6$ inhibitors might be helpful in amalgamation therapy, such as Lu-AE-58054 (SGS-518) and PF-05212365 (SAM-531), considered as potential treatments for mild-to-moderate AD (De Felice 2013a, b).

6.3.6 Changing the Concept

Clinical studies propose that diabetes is the most important contributing risk factor in AD. There is a close link between insulin-deficient diabetes and cerebral amyloidosis, as demonstrated by research data (Lourenco et al. 2015). Peripheral and central insulin signaling impairments are likely to be present in both diseases. Thus, "type 3 diabetes" theory of AD was developed, which contributes to bridging the experimental metabolic phenotypes present in diabetes and AD into a rational structure (Clarke et al. 2015). Factors such as glucose toxicity, insulin resistance, oxidative stress, elevated levels of advanced glycation end products, and cytokine-mediated neuroinflammation are among the proposed mechanisms by which diabetes could increase the risk of AD development. Recently it has been demonstrated that hypothalamic administration of soluble Aβ oligomers initiates neuroinflammatory cascades which ultimately leads to disorders in peripheral glucose homeostasis (De Felice 2013a, b). Tumor necrosis factor α (TNFα) might play a key role in this process (Lourenco et al. 2013; Risner et al. 2006). As AD and T2DM diseases

are probably linked with each other due to somewhat similar molecular mechanisms, it is rational to presume that drugs used in the treatment of T2DM may have a neuroprotective effect in AD (Gold et al. 2010). It has been studied that thiazolidinediones (TZDs) are an example of antidiabetic compounds having a possible role in AD. Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor γ (PPAR-γ) has an agonist, e.g., TZDs, which is involved in promoting the PPAR-γ heterodimerization with the retinoid X receptor (RXR) which regulates expression of genes involved in lipid and glucose metabolism. TZDs are known to improve the sensitivity of insulin and decrease cytokine-dependent inflammation (Blalock et al. 2010). Rosiglitazone and pioglitazone are known antidiabetic medicines, which help in regulating glucose homeostasis by increasing insulin sensitivity, reducing blood glucose levels, and improving lipid metabolism. Both medicines have also been studied as potent therapeutics for the treatment of AD. Pioglitazone modified various brain aging indices but did not slow down the cognitive decline studied in animal models (Sato et al. 2011). It has been studied that pioglitazone treatment improved memory and cognition in patients suffering from AD in a clinical trial (Cardoso et al. 2013).

6.4 Future Strategies

AD is a multifaceted pathology that might entail multiple strategies for the treatment. Early disease detection, combination therapies, and lifestyle choices are all likely contributors (Mi et al. 2013; Barnard et al. 2014; Humpel 2011). For the successful eradication of the disease, an extensive range of studies demonstrated insufficient nutrition could augment AD development threat (Cooper 2014). Diet rich in nutrients can progress your probability of not developing AD. However, neither the Mediterranean-type diet nor the antioxidant diet only can prevent AD. Identification of biomarkers indicates primary stages of AD, which can lead to early diagnosis and development extrapolative outcomes. Recently, diagnostic strategies are paying attention to A (1–42) detection and total and phosphorylated Tau levels in the CSF and the brain. Imaging techniques such as brain MRIs are also used (Humpel 2011; Wallon et al. 2012). When the pathology has fully developed for both Aβ and tau increases to use as a diagnostic markers for AD development at primary stages. Another set of molecules which can potentially improve AD pathology is growth factors. Transforming growth factor β family, insulin-derived GFs (insulin-like growth factor 1 (IGF-1) and insulin-like growth factor 2 (IGF-2)), basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF), and neurotrophins (nerve growth factor, NGF; brain-derived growth factor, BDGF; glial-derived neurotrophic factor, GDNF) all contribute in neurogenesis and neurodevelopment and might be measured as possible targets for AD treatment (Tuszynski et al. 2015; Perry 1986).

6.5 Neurochemistry of AD and Its Association with Treatment

Neurochemical instability is most significant as far as drug treatment of AD is concerned. All the four drugs approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and their mechanism of action revolve around neurochemical conflicts. There is a cholinergic hypothesis that suggests the deficiency of acetylcholine as the main factor for the symptoms of AD (Paul 2005). However, from the pharmacological approach, the cholinergic hypothesis is most important, but considering the cholinergic deficiency as an exclusive reason for AD symptoms is an overgeneralization. Instead, AD involves many neurotransmitters like glutamate, serotonin, and neuropeptides (Chen et al. 2014).

6.5.1 Drug Treatment of Alzheimer's Disease

Several approaches are in the process of trials based on AD's pathophysiology and neurochemistry, but a cure of AD is vague, and stopping disease progression is still a dispute. None of the drugs has reached the stage of approval although numerous drug trials are ongoing to target amyloid-beta production. Recently permitted drug classes are only for neurochemicals. The two classes are cholinergic modulation and NMDA modulation. The cholinesterase inhibitors and NMDA antagonist at least decelerate the turndown of cognition, behavior, and global AD patients' changes. Though cholinergic and glutamatergic dysfunctions are neurochemical targets for AD's indicative progression, these drugs do not heal the disease (Giacobini 2000).

6.5.2 Cholinesterase Inhibitors

The fundamental idea is to enhance the cholinergic function of the brain. Recently acetylcholinesterase enzyme (AchE) inhibitors are used as a new approach. Acetylcholinesterase is the degrading enzyme of acetylcholine. As per cholinergic hypothesis on AD, there is lack of acetylcholine and inhibition of degrading enzyme. the acetycholine level enhances. The irreversible inhibitors of AchE (e.g., organophosphorus) turn into poisonous ones. Therefore, only reversible high lipid-soluble inhibitors that can cross the blood-brain barrier are used (Yan and Vassar 2014). Anticholinesterase drugs approved by the FDA for AD-related dementia are donepezil, rivastigmine, and galantamine. These drugs have been selected because of their central role in the selection of peripheral ChE inhibition.

6.6 Future Perspectives and New Drug Targets

There is no clear evidence that the current approved drugs help in modifying the primary pathological process of AD. Instead, they only give suggestive relief and slow the process of symptom deterioration. So the search of drugs acting on new

targets is needed, and accordingly, several trials are in the pipeline. Several trials were started, but they didn't get approval, and many of them discontinued due to lack of any considerable advantage in Phase II or III clinical trials. One recent target is β-secretase, namely, β-site APP cleaving enzyme 1 (BACE1). BACE1 cleaves precursor protein. Many compounds are being tried, but none have passed Phase III due to lack of significant efficiency with discontinuation of studies for some compounds (Napryeyenko and Borzenko 2007). Some other targets like tau stabilization, tau aggregation inhibitor, microglial activation inhibitor are new molecules might be passed the clinical trials' phases.

6.7 Alternative or Herbal Medicine for Alzheimer's Disease

Herbal drugs are acquiring enormous fame around the world as far as health is concerned. Lack of allopathic medicines for the treatment of AD has focused interest on herbal drugs. On medicinal herbs, a number of researches have been done. Herbs have pharmacological properties like anti-inflammatory and antioxidant activities that may be used in the treatment of AD. Patients suffering from AD have an acetylcholine deficiency. Anti-inflammatory herbs like chamomile, ginseng, licorice, turmeric, and white willow bark might decrease the brain tissue inflammation in AD. Acetylcholine plays a significant function in cognitive function and reasoning. Brains of the patients suffering from mild-to-moderate AD have unusually low acetylcholine concentrations. This ensures that any compound that augments the cholinergic organization in the brain might help treat AD and related brain failures. For AD, herbs that inhibit acetylcholinesterase (AchE) have natural COX-2 inhibitors, also documented as medicinal herbs. Some other herbs are known for decreasing the degeneration of the brain caused by AD-like Guduchi, Yashtimadhuk, Padma (*Nelumbo nucifera*), Vacha, Convolvulus pluricaulis, Shankhpushpi, Pancha-Tikta-Ghruta Gugguli, Amalaki, Musta Arjun, Amalaki, Ashwagandha, Galo Satva, and Kutaj. They increase the function of the brain and provide constancy when continuously used.

6.7.1 *Ginkgo biloba*

Gingko biloba is used as an extract. Several placebo-controlled trials have been conducted. Numerous of these studies were less well designed and have not been rigorously used in current investigative criteria. A meta-analysis of studies suggested either pathetic or without benefit in patients of AD. Its use as an additional therapy with anticholinesterase has not been estimated in long-term studies (Montgomery et al. 2003).

6.7.2 Acetyl-L-carnitine

Studies utilizing modern diagnostic definitions and conclusion methods have no benefit for ALC. However, meta-analysis of studies with altering definitions, inclusion criteria, and a conclusion has found proof of its use in mild disease. Studies with its add-on to current standard treatments are still going on. No severe side effects have been observed clinically or on an individual (Yang et al. 2005).

6.7.3 Curcumin

No clinical facts of curcumin for AD are available, despite many assert and animal studies, for its function in decreasing oxidative damage and pathology of amyloid protein. However, it is being used for many similar conditions (Lannert and Hoyer 1998). The list of drugs approved by the FDA and future drugs used to treat Alzheimer's disorder is shown in Table 6.1.

6.7.4 *Panax ginseng* (Araliaceae)

Panax ginseng (Ren-shen) possesses saponins, protopanaxadiol, protopantriol, and oleanolic acid saponins known to have memory-increasing properties for the learning destruction persuaded by scopolamine (Park et al. 1996). Ginseng grows in Northeastern Asia. Its roots have been used in folk medicine in countries like China and Korea, for boosting energy from ancient time. For thousands of years, it

Table 6.1 Drug used in Alzheimer's

Drugs	Targets
FDA approved	
Donepezil	
Glantamine	Improve cholinergic deficit
Rivastigmin	
Tacrine	
Memantine	Reduce exitoxicity by glutaminegic action
Future drugs	
Ginkgo biloba	Effects on cerebral blood flow, neurotransmitter systems, direct effect on amyloid aggregation
Acetyl-L-carnitine	Modulate the activity of neurotrophic factors
Lecithin	Accelerate acetylcholine synthesis by increasing availability of the substrate choline
Vinca minor (Vinpocetine)	Improve cerebral metabolism, increase glucose consumption by the brain
Curcumin	Antioxidant and anti-inflammatory properties as well as a direct effect against β-amyloid aggregation

was used as a medicinal herb. The ginseng extract has many uses: it maintains human beings' both physical and mental health (Bilge and Ilkay 2005).

6.7.5 *Glycyrrhiza glabra* (Fabaceae)

Glycyrrhiza glabra is also known as licorice. The effects of a water extract of licorice on Aβ25–35-induced apoptosis in PC12 cells have been investigated. The result suggests that it exhibits a shielding effect against apoptotic death of neurons induced by Aβ fragments. Extract from the licorice root is reported to treat or even prevent brain cell death in diseases like Alzheimer's and its related symptoms (Rubio et al. 2011).

6.7.6 *Commiphora wighitti* (Burseraceae)

A plant resin, *Commiphora wighitti* (Guggulu) constitutes major constituents, guggulipid and guggulsterone. The guggulipid is a possible cognitive stimulator for the progression of memory in scopolamine-induced memory deficiency (Park et al. 1996). Guggulu acts on impairment in learning and memory and reduces choline actyltransferase levels in the hippocampus. However, it shows maximum effects on memory functions and potential for dementia (Kumar et al. 2011).

6.7.7 *Withania somnifera* (Solanaceae)

Active glycowithanolides of *Withania somnifera* (Ashawgandha) have a major antioxidant function, which is attained by increased activities of several enzymes, viz., superoxide dismutase, catalase, and glutathione peroxidise (Sandhu et al. 2010). Ashwagandha is used as a nervine tonic that rejuvenates the cells and boosts energy. The cholinesterase inhibition assessment was carried out using a colorimetric method based on Ellman's reaction and demonstrated that the *W. somnifera* extract significantly inhibited AChE in a concentration-dependent manner (Sandhu et al. 2010).

6.8 Conclusion

This review focuses on the associations between environmental causes and the development of AD and other neurodegenerative disorders. Our information on the genetics of AD has improved extensively over the last few years. But much work remains to be completed to exemplify the missing genetic causes. This must show how to modify treatments that go with the individual patient's genetic report. Present data revealed that AD neuropathology engages numerous signalling cascades. Over the last few years, amyloid protein hypothesis has conquered the

field, due to which many studies have focused on inhibition and elimination of Aβ and senile plaques. Unluckily, the amyloid-centric strategies have failed to exhibit developments in cognition in AD patients. Herbs may take part in the early treatment of Alzheimer's and other disorders like reduced memory and dementia. One of the major benefits is that they have low toxicity compared to modern medicines. As a result, if any person has a family history of AD or has memory problems, they may start taking these herbal medications earlier to delay symptoms or possibly prevent the arrival of the symptoms.

References

Alvarez MM, Lozano AS, Gomar FS et al (2015) Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs as a treatment for. Alzheimer's Dis 32(2):139–147

Arnold SE, Hyman BT, Flory J et al (1991) The topographical and neuroanatomical distribution of neurofibrillary tangles and neuritic plaques in the cerebral cortex of patients with Alzheimer's disease. Cereb Cortex 1:103–116

Athanasios M, Stefan JK (2016) Neurofibrillary tangles in Alzheimer's disease: elucidation of the molecular mechanism by immunohistochemistry and tau protein phospho-proteomics. Neural Regen Res 11(10):1579–1581

Baldi I, Lebailly P, Mohammed-Brahim B et al (2003) Neurodegenerative diseases and exposure to pesticides in the elderly. Am J Epidemiol 157(5):409–414

Barnard ND, Bush AI, Ceccarelli A et al (2014) Dietary and lifestyle guidelines for the prevention of Alzheimer's disease. Neurobiol Aging 35(2):74–S78

Barse AV, Chakrabarti T, Ghosh TK et al (2010) Vitellogenin induction and histo-metabolic changes following exposure of Cyprinus carpio to methyl paraben. Asian Aust J Anim Sci 23 (12):1557–1565

Basha MR, Wei W, Bakheet SA et al (2005) The fetal basis of amyloidogenesis: exposure to lead and latent overexpression of amyloid precursor protein and β-amyloid in the aging brain. J Neurosci 25(4):823–829

Baum L, Chan I, Cheung S-K et al (2010) Serum zinc is decreased in Alzheimer's disease and serum arsenic correlates positively with cognitive ability. Biometals 23(1):173–179

Bellenguez CL, Grenier-Boley B, Lambert JC (2020) Genetics of Alzheimer's disease: where we are, and where we are going. Curr Opin Neurobiol 61:40–48

Bilge S, Ilkay O (2005) Discovery of drug candidates from some. Turkish plants and conservation of biodiversity. Pure Appl Chem 77:53–64

Blalock EM, Phelps JT, Pancani T et al (2010) Effects of longterm pioglitazone treatment on peripheral and central markers of aging. PLoS One 5(4):e10405

Burns A, Iliffe S (2009) Alzheimer's disease. BMJ 338:b158

Cacace R, Sleegers K, Van Broeckhoven C (2016) Molecular genetics of early-onset Alzheimer's disease revisited. Alzheimers Dement 12:733–748

Campbell A (2002) The potential role of aluminium in Alzheimer's disease. Nephrol Dialysis Transplant 17(2):17–20

Cardoso BR, Cominetti C, Cozzolino SMF (2013) Importance and management of micronutrient deficiencies in patients with Alzheimer's disease. Clin Intervent Aging 8:531–542

Castello MA, Soriano S (2013) On the origin of Alzheimer's disease. Trials and tribulations of the amyloid hypothesis. Ageing Res Rev 13(1):10–12

Chen CT, Jin TY, Hui FW et al (2014) Efficacy and safety of donepezil, galantamine, rivastigmine, and memantine for the treatment of Alzheimer's disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Alzheimers Dis 41(2):615–631

Chiang K, Koo EH (2014) Emerging therapeutics for Alzheimer's disease. Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol 54:381–405

Clarke JR, Lyra e Silva NM, Figueiredo CP et al (2015) Alzheimer-associated Aβ oligomers impact the central nervous system to induce peripheral metabolic deregulation. EMBO Mol Med 7 (2):190–210

Cochran JN, Hall AM, Roberson ED (2014) The dendritic hypothesis for Alzheimer's disease pathophysiology. Brain Res Bull 103:18–28

Cooper JK (2014) Nutrition and the brain: what advice should we give? Neurobiol Aging 35(2):79–S83

Cowan CM, Mudher A (2013) Are tau aggregates toxic or protective in tauopathies? Front Neurol 4:114

De Felice FG (2013a) Alzheimer's disease and insulin resistance: translating basic science into clinical applications. J Clin Investig 123(2):531–539

De Felice FG (2013b) Connecting type 2 diabetes to Alzheimer's disease. Expert Rev Neurother 13 (12):1297–1299

Drachman DA (2014) The amyloid hypothesis, time to move on: amyloid is the downstream result, not cause, of Alzheimer's disease. Alzheimer's Dement 10(3):372–380

Eriksen JL, Sagi SA, Smith TE et al (2003) NSAIDs and enantiomers of flurbiprofen target γ-secretase and lower Aβ42 in vivo. J Clin Invest 112(3):440–449

Evans DA, Funkenstein HH, Albert MS et al (1989) Prevalence of Alzheimer's disease in a community population of older persons: higher than previously reported. JAMA 262:2551–2556

Farrer LA, Cupples LA, Haines JL et al (1997) Effects of age, sex, and ethnicity on the association between apolipoprotein E genotype and Alzheimer disease: a meta-analysis. JAMA 278:1349–1356

Giacobini E (2000) Cholinesterase inhibitors: from the Calabar bean to Alzheimer's therapy. In: Giacobini E (ed) Cholinesterases and cholinesterase inhibitors. Martin Dubitz, London, pp 181–227

Gold M, Alderton C, Zvartau-Hind M et al (2010) Rosiglitazone monotherapy in mild-to-moderate Alzheimer's disease: results from a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled phase III study. Dement Geriatr Cogn Disord 30(2):131–146

Gureje O, Ogunniyi A, Baiyewu O et al (2006) APOE e4 is not associated with Alzheimer's disease in elderly Nigerians. Ann Neurol 59:182–185

Haass C, Kaether C, Thinakaran G (2012) Trafficking and proteolytic processing of APP. Cold Spring Harbor Perspect Med 2(5):a006270

Hardy J, Selkoe DJ (2002) The amyloid hypothesis of Alzheimer's disease: progress and problems on the road to therapeutics. Science 297(5580):353–356

Harold D, Abraham R, Hollingworth P et al (2009) Genome-wide association study identifies variants at CLU and PICALM associated with Alzheimer's disease. Nat Genet 41:1088–1093

Humpel C (2011) Identifying and validating biomarkers for Alzheimer's disease. Trends Biotechnol 29(1):26–32

Kamel F, Hoppin JA (2004) Association of pesticide exposure with neurologic dysfunction and disease. Environ Health Perspect 112(9):950–958

Konishi K, Hori K, Tani M et al (2015) Hypothesis of endogenous anticholinergic activity in Alzheimer's disease. Neurodegener Dis 15(3):149–156

Kumar S, Christopher JS, Edward JO (2011) Kinetics of acetylcholinesterase inhibition by an aqueous extract of Withania somnifera roots. Int J Pharm Sci Res 2:1188–1192

Lambert J-C, Heath S, Even G et al (2009) Genome-wide association study identifies variants at CLU and CR1 associated with Alzheimer's disease. Nat Genet 41:1094–1099

Lannert H, Hoyer S (1998) Intracerebroventricular administration of streptozotocin causes long term diminutions in learning and memory abilities and in cerebral energy metabolism in adult rats. Behav Neurosci 112:1199–1208

Lourenco MV, Clarke JR, Frozza RL et al (2013) TNF-α mediates PKR-dependent memory impairment and brain IRS-1 inhibition induced by Alzheimer's β-amyloid oligomers in mice and monkeys. Cell Metab 18(6):831–843
Lourenco MV, Ferreira ST, De Felice FG (2015) Neuronal stress signaling and eIF2α phosphorylation as molecular links between Alzheimer's disease and diabetes. Prog Neurobiol 129:37–57
Mi W, Wijk NV, Cansev M (2013) Nutritional approaches in the risk reduction and management of Alzheimer's disease. Nutrition 29(9):1080–1089
Montgomery SA, Thal LJ, Amrein R (2003) Meta-analysis of double blind randomized controlled clinical trials of acetyl-L-carnitine versus placebo in the treatment of mild cognitive impairment and mild Alzheimer's disease. Int Clin Psychopharmacol 18:61–71
Mucke L, Selkoe DJ (2012) Neurotoxicity of amyloid β-protein: synaptic and network dysfunction. Cold Spring Harbor Perspect Med 2(7):a006338
Nalivaeva NN, Fisk LR, Belyaev ND et al (2008) Amyloid-degrading enzymes as therapeutic targets in Alzheimer's disease. Curr Alzheimer Res 5(2):212–224
Napryeyenko O, Borzenko I (2007) Ginkgo biloba special extract in dementia with neuropsychiatric features. A randomised, placebo-controlled, double-blind clinical trial. Arzneimittelforschung 57:4–11
Park CH, Kim SH, Choi W et al (1996) Novel anticholinesterase and antiamnesic activities of dehydroevodiamine, a constituent of Evodia ruraecarpa. Planta Med 62:405–409
Paul TF (2005) The interplay of neurotransmitters in Alzheimer's disease. CNS Spectr 10(11):6–9
Perl DP (2010) Neuropathology of Alzheimer's disease. Mt Sinai J Med 77(1):32–42
Perry EK (1986) The cholinergic hypothesis ten years on. Br Med Bull 42:63–69
Ramirez MJ, Lai MKP, Tordera RM et al (2014) Serotonergic therapies for cognitive symptoms in Alzheimer's disease: rationale and current status. Drugs 74(7):729–736
Risner ME, Saunders AM, Altman JF et al (2006) Efficacy of rosiglitazone in a genetically defined population with mild-tomoderate Alzheimer's disease. Pharmacogenomics J 6(4):246–254
Rubio J, Qiong W, Liu X et al (2011) Aqueous extract of black maca (Lepidium meyenii) on memory impairment induced by ovariectomy in mice. Evid Based Complement Alternat Med 2011:253958
Sandhu JS, Shah B, Shenoy S (2010) Effects of Withania somnifera (Ashwagandha) and Terminalia arjuna (Arjuna) on physical performance and cardiorespiratory endurance in healthy young adults. Int J Ayurveda Res 1:144–149
Santana I, Farinha F, Freitas S et al (2015) The epidemiology of dementia and Alzheimer disease in portugal: estimations of prevalence and treatment-costs. Acta Med Port 28(2):182–188
Sato T, Hanyu H, Hirao K (2011) Efficacy of PPAR-γ agonist pioglitazone in mild Alzheimer disease. Neurobiol Aging 32(9):1626–1633
Shefet CL, Benhar I (2015) Antibody-targeted drugs and drug resistance—challenges and solutions. Drug Resist Updat 18:36–46
Shih RA, Hu H, Weisskopf MG et al (2007) Cumulative lead dose and cognitive function in adults: a review of studies that measured both blood lead and bone lead. Environ Health Perspect 115 (3):483–492
Shirazi SK, Wood JG (1993) The protein tyrosine kinase, fyn, in Alzheimer's disease pathology. Neuroreport 4(4):435–437
Singh N, Chhillar N, Banerjee B et al (2013) Organochlorine pesticide levels and risk of Alzheimer's disease in north Indian population. Hum Exp Toxicol 32(1):24–30
Sparks DL, Schreurs BG (2003) Trace amounts of copper in water induce β-amyloid plaques and learning deficits in a rabbit model of Alzheimer's disease. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100 (19):11065–11069
Strittmatter WJ, Saunders AM, Schmechel D et al (1993) Apolipoprotein E: high-avidity binding to b-amyloid and increased frequency of type 4 allele in late-onset familial Alzheimer disease. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 90:8098–8102
Tata AM, Velluto L, Angelo CD et al (2014) Cholinergic system dysfunction and neurodegenerative diseases: cause or effect? CNS Neurol Disord Drug Targets 13(7):1294–1303

Thompson CM, Markesbery WR, Ehmann WD et al (1988) Regional brain trace-element studies in Alzheimer's disease. Neurotoxicology 9(1):1–7

Tuszynski MH, Yang JH, Barba D et al (2015) Nerve growth factor gene therapy: activation of neuronal responses in Alzheimer disease. JAMA Neurol 72(10):1139–1147

Veldhoen N, Skirrow RC, Osachoff H et al (2006) The bactericidal agent triclosan modulates thyroid hormone-associated gene expression and disrupts postembryonic anuran development. Aquat Toxicol 80(3):217–227

Viberg H, Fredriksson A, Eriksson P (2003) Neonatal exposure to polybrominated diphenyl ether (PBDE 153) disrupts spontaneous behaviour, impairs learning and memory, and decreases hippocampal cholinergic receptors in adult mice. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 192(2):95–106

Wallace TL, Bertrand D (2013) Importance of the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor system in the prefrontal cortex. Biochem Pharmacol 85(12):1713–1720

Wallon D, Rousseau S, Rovelet-Lecrux A et al (2012) The French series of autosomal dominant early onset Alzheimer's disease cases: mutation spectrum and cerebrospinal fluid biomarkers. J Alzheimer's Dis 30(4):847–856

Weinreb O, Amit T, Bar-Am O et al (2011) A novel anti-Alzheimer's disease drug, ladostigil: neuroprotective, multimodal brain-selective monoamine oxidase and cholinesterase inhibitor. Int Rev Neurobiol 100:191–215

Weinreb O, Amit T, Bar-Am O et al (2012) Ladostigil: a novel multimodal neuroprotective drug with cholinesterase and brain-selectivemonoamine oxidase inhibitory activities for Alzheimer's disease treatment. Curr Drug Targets 13(4):483–494

Weiss B (2007) Can endocrine disruptors influence neuroplasticity in the aging brain? Neurotoxicology 28(5):938–950

West S, Bhugra (2015) Emerging drug targets for Aβ and tau in Alzheimer's disease: a systematic review. Br J Clin Pharmacol 80(2):221–234

Wilkinson D, Windfeld K, Jorgensen EC (2014) Safety and efficacy of idalopirdine, a 5-HT6 receptor antagonist, in patients with moderate Alzheimer's disease (LADDER): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled phase 2 trial. Lancet Neurol 13(11):1092–1099

Woolley ML, Bentley JC, Sleight AJ (2001) A role for 5-ht 6 receptors in retention of spatial learning in the Morris water maze. Neuropharmacology 41(2):210–219

Wu L, Rosa-Neto P, Hsiung GY et al (2012) Early-onset familial Alzheimer's disease (EOFAD). Can J Neurol Sci 39(4):436–445

Yan R, Vassar R (2014) Targeting the beta secretase BACE1 for Alzheimer's disease therapy. Lancet Neurol 13:319–329

Yang F, Lim GP, Begum AN et al (2005) Curcumin inhibits formation of amyloid beta oligomers and fibrils, binds plaques, and reduces amyloid in vivo. J Biol Chem 280:5892–5901

Yang K, Belrose J, Trepanier CH et al (2011) Fyn, a potential target for Alzheimer's disease. J Alzheimer's Dis 27(2):243–252

Zaman T (2010) The prevalence and environmental impact of single use plastic products. Public health management & policy: an online textbook, 11th edn. 23:2011

Therapeutic Potential of Polyphenols in Alzheimer's Therapy: Broad-Spectrum and Minimal Side Effects as Key Aspects

7

Anas Shamsi, Saleha Anwar, Taj Mohammad, Moyad Shahwan, Md. Imtaiyaz Hassan, and Asimul Islam

Abstract

Alzheimer's disease (AD) is a degenerative brain disease that is the leading cause of dementia among the human population. AD is characterized by accumulating amyloid plaques which are insoluble deposits of a 4 kDa peptide of ~40–42 amino acids in length, known as amyloid-β (Aβ). The imbalance between Aβ generation and clearance in the brain leads to the progression of AD. AD pathology is characterized by the deposition of oligomeric and fibrillar forms of amyloid-β (Aβ) in the neuropil and cerebral vessel walls. Neurofibrillary tangles are composed mainly of hyperphosphorylated tau and neurodegeneration. Polyphenols are the most abundant antioxidants in the diet. More than 8000 naturally occurring polyphenols exist.

Numerous studies have indicated that high consumption of fruits and vegetables rich in flavonoids and other polyphenols reduces the risk/incidence of age-related neurodegenerative disorders, highlighting the importance of these polyphenols as neuroprotective agents. Due to polyphenols' ability to influence and modulate multiple targets in the cascade of the pathogenesis of neurodegenerative diseases, they are considered a candidate with a promising result against neurodegeneration, halting the progression of the disease. There is now

A. Shamsi
Centre for Interdisciplinary Research in Basic Sciences, Jamia Millia Islamia, Jamia Nagar, New Delhi, India

College of Pharmacy & Health Sciences, Ajman University, Ajman, United Arab Emirates

S. Anwar · T. Mohammad · M. I. Hassan · A. Islam (✉)
Centre for Interdisciplinary Research in Basic Sciences, Jamia Millia Islamia, Jamia Nagar, New Delhi, India
e-mail: aislam@jmi.ac.in

M. Shahwan
College of Pharmacy & Health Sciences, Ajman University, Ajman, United Arab Emirates

G. Md Ashraf, A. Alexiou (eds.), *Autism Spectrum Disorder and Alzheimer's Disease*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-4558-7_7

substantial evidence indicating that oxidative damage to the brain is an early AD pathogenesis event. Oxidative stress and damage to brain macromolecules are vital processes in neurodegenerative diseases. The antioxidant properties of many polyphenols are purported to provide neuroprotection. There are pieces of evidence that some of the polyphenols can easily cross the blood-brain barrier (BBB). This chapter will provide deeper insights into various polyphenols that play a pivotal role in AD and shed light on the roles of these in the context of AD therapeutics.

Keywords

Alzheimer's disease · Polyphenols · Rosmarinic acid · Resveratrol · Green tea polyphenol · EGCG · Curcumin · Quercetin

7.1 Introduction

Polyphenols are phenolic compounds that constitute one of the most abundantly present secondary metabolites in the plant kingdom. Plant polyphenols were earlier referred to in the literature as vegetable tannins due to the tanning effect on animal skin (Bate-Smith et al. 1962). Structurally, the compounds are characterized by one or more hydroxyl groups attached to the aromatic ring (Tsao 2010). Polyphenols constitute a well-differentiated group in terms of the chemical structure and biological activities as well. Their occurrence is conjugated chiefly with sugars, amines, lipids, acids, and other phenols. The classification in different groups is based on the number of phenol rings and structural elements attached to the rings (Pandey and Rizvi 2009; Pimpão 2014). The primary classes are phenolic acids, flavonoids, stilbenes, coumarins, and lignans (Fig. 7.1).

Phenolic acids are represented by hydroxybenzoic and hydroxycinnamic acid. Hydroxybenzoic is rare in its contribution to the human diet, with a few exceptions: gallic acid and ellagic acid (Manach et al. 2004). Hydroxycinnamic acid, on the other side is common with candidates such as caffeic acid, ferulic acid, sinapic acid, shikimic, and tartaric acid (Pandey and Rizvi 2009). The second group, flavonoid,

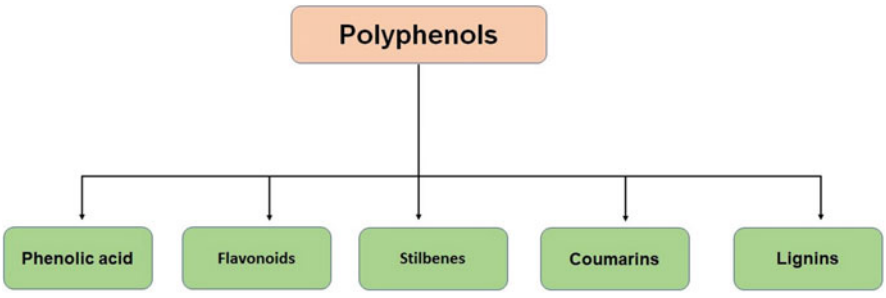


Fig. 7.1 Classification of polyphenols

is the most studied group. More than 10,000 different structures have been incorporated in this group with a common basic structure consisting of two aromatic rings bound together by three carbon atoms that form an oxygenated heterocycle (Cheynier et al. 2013). This phenol class is responsible for mesmerizing and alluring colors presented by fruits, flowers, and leaves.

The most diverse group is subdivided into six subgroups: flavonols, flavones, isoflavones, flavanones, anthocyanins, and flavanols. Differences within each group arise due to the functional hydroxyl arrangement, its number, and alkylation and glycosylation capabilities (Spencer et al. 2008). Some of the commonly known flavonoids are quercetin, myricetin, kaempferol, etc. Stilbenes are not so common in diet except for resveratrol found in grapes and red wine. The group is structurally characterized by a two-carbon methylene bridge connecting two phenyl moieties (Cassidy et al. 2000). The fourth group, coumarin, is made of an aromatic ring linked to a condensed lactone ring. The fifth group is lignans, which are diphenolic compounds formed by dimerization of two cinnamic acid residues. The richest dietary source is linseed, containing secoisolariciresinol and low quantities of matairesinol (Adlercreutz and Mazur 1997)

Fruits and vegetables are mainly considered to be the richest source of dietary polyphenols. Hence, a healthy diet contains a cocktail of several phenolic compounds in varied chemical forms (Lewandowska et al. 2016). It's a challenging task to determine the daily intake of polyphenols due to every person's variable dietary pattern. On average, it is estimated that a normal person takes about 14 mg of flavonoids per day (Scalbert and Williamson 2000). Polyphenols are one of the largest sources of antioxidants in the diet. However, the total phenolic content does not directly correspond to the total antioxidant activity (Pérez-Jiménez et al. 2010). The metabolism and absorption of phenolic compounds are essential for their bioavailability, which is responsible for their significant biological activity. However, absorption and metabolism are affected by the polyphenol's chemical structure and factors related to interpersonal variabilities, such as systemic factors like age, gender and pathologies, and the level of enzymatic activities.

Considering the largest class of polyphenols, the cleavage of the flavonoids can occur in the stomach with a very low pH. Flavonoids are degraded into smaller phenolic acids by the colon's microflora, enabling them to be absorbed into the cells and even cross the BBB (Spencer et al. 2004). The crossing of the BBB by polyphenols is well evident; studies in situ, in vitro, and in silico showed polyphenol structure, and efflux systems influence their brain bioavailability (Youdim et al. 2004; Figueira et al. 2017). However, the exact mechanism and route by which they cross the barrier is still unclear. Most of the metabolites are lost in the urine and contribute to a lower bioavailability (Spencer et al. 2004). Despite having phenotypical differences, neurodegenerative diseases have few common factors, such as oxidative stress and inflammation. Our bodies have an endogenous mechanism to maintain redox homeostasis to deal with overproduced free radicals in oxidative stress. Somehow, these mechanisms seem to be inefficient in pathologic contexts, making exogenous sources of antioxidants capable of dealing with oxidative stress so crucial. Among these, dietary polyphenols have been extensively studied for their

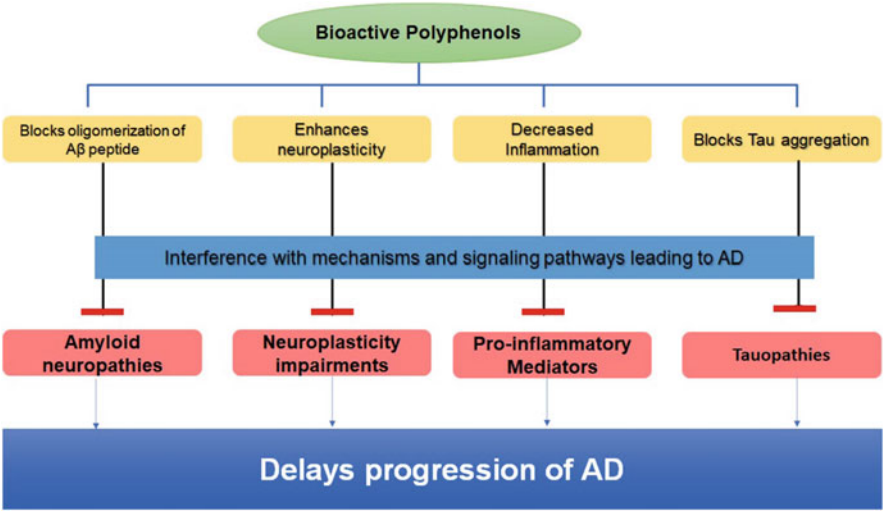


Fig. 7.2 Flowchart depicting different bio-effects of polyphenols

strong antioxidant capabilities. Among the possible known mechanisms, the scavenging of free radicals by binding with polyphenols postulated under the radical elimination hypothesis shows deleterious effects on free radicals (Das et al. 2016). However, strategies for the antioxidant activity go beyond the neutralization of free radicals having a modulating effect on the signaling pathways (Han et al. 2007).

Figure 7.2. shows a flowchart that depicts different bioeffects of polyphenols. The well-fortified effect of polyphenols is majorly due to their capability to regulatory effects on signaling pathways related to diseases, such as PGC-1α (Pasinetti et al. 2015), SIRT1 (Wu et al. 2017), AMPK (Jiménez-Flores et al. 2014), MAPK which further regulates extracellular signal-regulated kinases (ERK), the p38 MAPKs, and the c-Jun NH2-terminal kinases, NF-*k*B, activator protein 1, canonical Wnt, and protein kinase C (PKC) (Das et al. 2016; Kaulmann and Bohn 2016). These pathways play a crucial role in many biological functions, such as apoptosis, cell proliferation, and many more (Das et al. 2016; Kaulmann and Bohn 2016). The role of polyphenols as signal regulators is due to redox-sensitive changes on the cascades. These phenolic compounds are engaged in several pathologies and are used as a drug to hit many targets involved in neurodegenerative diseases, cancer, and other pathologies (Upadhyay and Dixit 2015).

7.2 Polyphenols for Prevention and Treatment of Various Diseases

Table 7.1. provides an insight into the mechanism of different polyphenols specifying their bioactivity.

Table 7.1 Mechanism of different polyphenols specifying their bioactivity

Bioactivity	Polyphenols/compounds	Mechanism	References
1. Antioxidant	(i) Green tea polyphenols	(a) Increase in total capacity of serum and blood plasma	Kumar and Pandey (2013)
	(ii) Quercetin, rutin, EC	(a) Metal chelator (b) ROS scavenging (c) Increases the production of endogenous enzymes	da Silva Pinto (2013), Kukula-Koch et al. (2013), Kumar and Pandey (2013), Mishra et al. (2013), Bruno et al. (2014)
	(iii) Theoflavins and thearubigins	(a) Increase in the antioxidant parameters of blood (b) Significant reduction in lipid profile, glucose content, and renal function (c) Increases insulin levels	Arent et al. (2010), Imran et al. (2018)
2. Anticancer	(i) Quercetin	(a) Lung cancer inhibition by the antiproliferative effect on HepG2 and A549 cell lines	Dahiya et al. (2019a, b), Gupta et al. (2019a, b)
		(b) Inhibition of tumor progression and invasion (c) Angiogenesis inhibition	Hashemzaei et al. (2017), Song et al. (2017)
		(d) Inhibition of kinases involved in cancer progression	Khan et al. (2017)
	(ii) Rutin and vanillin	(a) Inhibition of cell viability of MCF-7 and HeLa cells in a dose-dependent manner (b) Inhibition of MAP-kinases involved in cancer progression (c) Apoptosis induction	Dahiya et al. (2019a, b), Gupta et al. (2019a, b)
	(iii) Ellagic acid	(a) Lung cancer inhibition by the antiproliferative effect on HepG2 and A549 cell lines (b) Inhibition of kinases like PDK3 and SPHK1 involved in major signaling pathways leading to cancer	Lee et al. (2010), Zhao et al. (2017)
	(iv) Hesperidin	(a) Apoptosis induction (b) Increasing cleaved caspase-3 protein expression levels	

(continued)

Table 7.1 (continued)

Bioactivity	Polyphenols/compounds	Mechanism	References
3. Anti-inflammatory	(i) ECGC	(a) Decreases pro-inflammatory chemokine production (b) Inhibits proliferation of autoreactive T cells (c) Reduces the production of autoimmune agents	Pae and Wu (2013), Wu (2016)
	(ii) Rutin, quercetin, virtexin	(a) Significantly reduces NO, MPO, and TNF-α (inflammatory mediators) production	Nikfarjam et al. (2017)
	(iii) Apigenin	(a) Inhibits the production of pro-inflammatory cytokines, Th1 cytokines, TNF-α, interferon-gamma (IFN-γ), and interleukin-2 (IL-2)	Zhang et al. (2016)
4. Cardiovascular disease prevention	(i) Green tea polyphenols	(a) Reduces both systolic and diastolic blood pressures (b) Significant reduction of C-reactive protein levels, TNF-α, insulin levels, insulin resistance, and fasting serum glucose	Bogdanski et al. (2012)
	(ii) EGCG	(a) Significant decrease in blood pressure (b) Increased nitric oxide production from endothelium through a PI-3-kinase pathway	Potenza et al. (2007)
5. Antidiabetic activity	(i) Naringin	(a) Inhibits inflammation and insulin resistance by stopping the activation of the MAPK pathways and alternatively by activating IRS-1 (b) Lipid reduction by inhibition of synthesis and increased fatty acid oxidation (c) Hypoglycemic effect by regulating PEPCK and G6pase activity in the liver	Pu et al. (2012)
	(ii) Hesperidin	(a) Reduces blood glucose level by decreased activity of G6Pase and an increase in the expression of GK (b) Decreases in glucose export through glucose transporter membrane proteins	Akiyama et al. (2009)
	(iii) Quercetin	(a) Significant glucose uptake through the insulin-independent AMPK pathway (b) Inhibition of mitochondrial ADP-stimulated oxygen consumption (c) Inhibition of ATP synthase in mitochondria	Eid et al. (2010)

	(iv) Rutin	(a) Decreases in the concentration of plasma glucose (b) Increase in blood insulin level (c) Restoration of glycogen content (d) Protective effect toward pancreatic cells (reduced fatty infiltrate of the Langerhans islets)	Prince and Kamalakkannan (2006)
	(v) Catechins	(a) Inhibitory effect on intestinal glucose uptake (b) Effective in the reduction of glucose uptake under both sodium-dependent and sodium-free conditions	Johnston et al. (2005)
6. Neuroprotective and anti-AD activity	(i) Several dietary polyphenols (e.g., tea catechins, apigenin, quercetin, rutin, vanillin)	(a) Dietary polyphenols are a major class of compounds active toward the inhibition of α-synuclein (b) Significant reduction in the hazard ratio for probable Alzheimer's disease (c) Anti-tau effects (d) Inhibition of SH-SY5Y cell line	Masuda et al. (2006), Khan et al. (2017)
	(ii) EGCG	(a) EGCG directly converted fibrillar species into benign protein aggregates (b) Inhibition of α-synuclein and amyloid-β-fibril formation by EGCG through direct binding to β-sheet-rich aggregates (c) Activation of PKCα and PKCε which leads to increased production of neuroprotective, non-amyloidogenic sAPPα (d) Inhibition of SH-SY5Y cell line	Levites et al. (2003), Bieschke et al. (2010)
	(iii) Wine-derived polyphenols (morin, myricetin, quercetin, catechin, kaempferol, epicatechin)	(a) Anti-AD effects (b) Inhibition of β-amyloid formation in a dose-dependent manner (c) Destabilization of preformed β-amyloid aggregation	Ono et al. (2003)

7.3 Neurodegeneration and Role of Polyphenols

Neurodegenerative disorders (NDs) are diseases that collectively lead to debilitating and fatal conditions affecting neurons. These neurological syndromes are chronic and cause dysfunction of the nervous system due to neuronal cell failure (Brettschneider et al. 2015), ultimately leading to dementia and ataxia. Hereditary and/or sporadic conditions lead to the progression of the syndromes, which exerts a deleterious impact on the central nervous system (CNS) and the peripheral nervous system (PNS) (Soto 2003). Therapies to entirely modify the diseases by delaying or reversing disease progression are not available. Hundreds of disorders afflict the nervous system, such as Parkinson's disease (PD), Alzheimer's disease (AD), Huntington's disease (HD), multiple sclerosis (MS), amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), degenerative nerve diseases, brain cancer, encephalitis, stroke, prion diseases, etc. NDs are heterogeneous and have multiple factors responsible for the pathology, affecting brain structure. AD, HD, PD, and ALS share misfolded protein aggregation as common pathology, designated as protein conformational disorders (Quist et al. 2005). AD, a clinical syndrome, is characterized by degeneration of neocortical neurons and the hippocampus part of the brain (Braak et al. 1996), responsible for major symptoms like loss of memory and cognitive decline (O'Brien and Wong 2011). PD, the most common motor neuron disease, has clinical symptoms such as bradykinesia, muscle rigidity, resting tremor, and postural instability caused by the loss of dopaminergic neurons in the substantia nigra pars compacta (Lees 2007). Lewy bodies (LBs), the cytoplasmic inclusions, enclose aggregated α-synuclein which is the disease's hallmark (Shults 2006). HD displays many symptoms including dementia, chorea, and emotional disturbance (Martin and Gusella 1986; Walker 2007). The striatal region of the basal ganglia suffers a neuronal demise. HD is linked to genetic mutation linked to the expression of N-terminal polyglutamine (polyQ)-Huntingtin (Htt) beyond a length of ~35 glutamine residues. Cleavage of these polyQ tails produces cytotoxic fragments with a high tendency to cross-link and aggregate in neurons and glial cells (Tydlacka et al. 2008; Bugg et al. 2012). ALS is a fatal disease of motor neurons that can cause death within a few years of the condition's onset. The primary reason for death is respiratory failure. The disease is caused by progressive loss of bulbar, cortical, and ventral cord motor neurons, with the major genetic risk factors being mutations in the genes encoding the superoxide dismutase SOD1 (Rosen et al. 1993), the TAR-DNA-binding protein (Sreedharan et al. 2008), and the fused in sarcoma or translocated in liposarcoma protein (FUS/TLS) (Kwiatkowski et al. 2009; Vance et al. 2009). Neurodegeneration is known to have multiple underlying factors, and polyphenols present pleiotropic effects (antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, antitumor, anti-tau, immunomodulatory properties, etc.; Kimura et al. 2010). Polyphenols have been implicated as potential protective, curative, and preventive agents for many diseases, such as AD (Silveira et al. 2019), Parkinson's disease (Aquilano et al. 2008), Huntington's disease (Maher et al. 2011), hypercholesterolemia (Zou et al. 2003), diabetes mellitus (Bahadoran et al. 2013), chronic fatigue syndrome (Gupta et al. 2009), stroke (Wang et al. 2013), many cancers (Zhou et al. 2016), autism (Parker-

Athill et al. 2009), cardiovascular disease (Perez-Vizcaino et al. 2006), and vitiligo (Jalel et al. 2009), among others (Das et al. 2016). Due to polyphenols' ability to influence and modulate multiple targets in the cascade of pathogenesis, they are considered a candidate with a promising result against neurodegeneration, halting the progression of the disease. For many years, polyphenols were thought to protect cell constituents against oxidative damage through direct scavenging of free radicals. Such an idea has become very popular, leading to several studies exploring this property of polyphenols for NDs since oxidative stress constitutes an important hallmark of these diseases.

The emerging acceptance of polyphenols and their derivatives shows an effect on inhibition of specific protein kinases and lipid kinase signaling pathways (Williams et al. 2004). Several other neuroprotective functions of polyphenols are contributed due to properties like iron chelators (Griffioen et al. 2006), interference with signaling pathways associated with neurogenerative diseases (Spencer 2010), inhibition of neuropathological processes (Rezai-Zadeh et al. 2005), and regulation of mitochondrial function (Surh et al. 2001; Mandel and Youdim 2004; Skupień et al. 2006).

7.4 Role of Some Important Polyphenols in AD

Aging alters an individual's normal functioning as time passes by (Queen and Tollefsbol 2010); it deteriorates and weakens the overall biological system. The primary effect is faced by the brain and cognitive functions, affecting memory, calculation, thinking, learning, and judgment. The effects are so severe that it changes the overall physiology and behavior; AD is a severe problem with millions of new cases every year (World Health Organization 2018).

Tau protein and the amyloid-β peptide (Aβ) are thought to be the key regulators in AD. Both the proteins self-assemble to form amyloid plaques and neurofibrillary tangles, respectively, which are well-known hallmarks of AD. Amyloid plaques with 40/42 ($A\beta_{40}$ and $A\beta_{42}$) amino acids are extracellular accumulations formed as a by-product of APP metabolism. Mutations in the gene PSEN1 and PSEN2 of the APP leads to overproduction of $A\beta_{42}$. The imbalance between production and clearance of Aβ is assumed to the major process of pathology. Oligomerization of Aβ has been reported to be the prime cause of neuronal death and synaptic dysfunction. The tau hypothesis of AD progression claims that the accumulation of tau proteins tangled together leads to the progression of this condition. Tangle formation disintegrates the microtubule assembly and structure of the neuronal cells. The communication between neurons is interfered with, leading to brain cell death. Naturally occurring polyphenols have shown deleterious effects on these hallmarks by targeting the associated signaling pathways (Zheng et al. 2019). Polyphenols alter the amyloid-β precursor protein's enzymatic processing and block toxic Aβ oligomerization by upregulating the clearance of $A\beta_{42}$ monomer, modulating monomer interactions, and remodeling oligomers nontoxic forms.

Additionally, polyphenols prevent tau hyperphosphorylation and inhibit the formation of tau β-sheet. The anti-Aβ-self-assembly and anti-tau-self-assembly effects of polyphenols increase their potential as preventive or therapeutic agents against AD, a complex disease with many pathological mechanisms. Polyphenols are excellent antioxidants, and several in vivo experiments have been conducted to find an association between polyphenol-rich food and amyloid accumulation (Hu et al. 2013). AD risk was reduced to half in a group of mice fed with food and rich in polyphenols and pomegranate, a good source of polyphenols (Hartman et al. 2006). Resveratrol from grape extracts reduced hippocampal neurodegeneration in transgenic mice (Kim et al. 2007).

The pathophysiology has a direct relation to oxidative stress related to neurons. Oxidative stress causes neuronal damage and disrupts the intracellular signaling leading to apoptosis (Ramassamy 2006). With continued aging, the central nervous system becomes more susceptible and affected by oxidative stress (Joseph et al. 2005). In the early stages, the Aβ amyloid peptide exploits many mechanisms to damage neurons, including mitochondrial dysfunction, apoptosis, and NF-kB activation. Plaque toxicity involves forming reactive oxygen species (ROS) and metal transitions (Kaltschmidt et al. 1997, 1999; Longpré et al. 2006). Antioxidants from the diet have a strong negative correlation with the factors promoting AD. Several experimental evidence of dietary and naturally occurring polyphenols in curbing the menace of AD are present. Flavonoid derivatives have been tested in vitro on rat acetylcholinesterase (AChE) and shown better inhibitory activity than the marketed drug rivastigmine, while a few demonstrated inhibitory activities similar to donepezil (Kumar et al. 2016). Flavanols, catechins, and epicatechins in research proved to be very promising against AD. However, many others have also reversed the impact of AD, some of which are extensively approached in the following sections.

7.4.1 Rosmarinic Acid

Rosmarinic acid is a naturally occurring phenolic compound, an ester of caffeic acid and 3,4-dihydroxyphenyl lactic acid, generally found in plants of Lamiaceae (the mint) family that possess broad-spectrum therapeutic potential (Shamsi et al. 2020a, b). RA has been well studied for different biological activities ranging from anticancer to neuroprotective activities (Anwar et al. 2020; Shamsi et al. 2020a, b). RA is known to suppress various cancer types (Anwar et al. 2020) by interfering with the signaling pathways involved in the upregulation of metastasis like ERK. RA targets a major factor in the MAP kinases cascade. In vitro and in vivo studies have given evidence for the potency of RA in AD therapy. Computation technique like docking simulation has helped investigate binding efficiencies and affinity of RA to Aβ peptide (Ramazzotti et al. 2016). Many mechanisms contribute to the anti-AD effect of RA; one such is a reduction in amyloid-β (Aβ) secretion by increasing the synthesis of monoamines. Amyloidosis, the formation of amyloid aggregates, is the hallmark of systemic and neurodegenerative disorders. In RA's

presence, there is increased production of monoamine synthesis like epinephrine, 3,4-dihydroxyphenylacetic acid, and levodopa with the enhancement of dopamine signaling pathways. The monoamines are responsible for the degradation of amyloid-β production (Hase et al. 2019). Oligomerization and aggregation of Aβ are inhibited in the presence of RA (Ono et al. 2012), which inhibits AD progression. PC12 cells were cultured and treated with Aβ1–42. Cell cytotoxicity was observed with ROS formation, DNA fragmentation, lipid peroxidation, caspase-3 activation, and hyperphosphorylation tau; all the effects were suppressed in 10μM RA (Iuvone et al. 2006). RA's potential AD effect was studied in vivo by administrating RA orally to mice for 14 days in AD mice. The outcomes were favorable with restored memory and neuromotor functions (Lee et al. 2016). Tau hyperphosphorylation and aggregation are known to promote AD. RA has been studied for its effects on tau as a potential candidate against AD. RA binds to tau in a manner that inhibits β-sheet assembly, demonstrating the effect of RA as an anti-AD polyphenol (Shan et al. 2016; Cornejo et al. 2017).

7.4.2 Resveratrol

Resveratrol, a naturally occurring polyphenol, chemically known as trans-3,4′,5-trihydroxystilbene, is known to exert beneficial effects against AD (Baur et al. 2006; Lagouge et al. 2006) by influencing cognitive impairments (Lagouge et al. 2006; Ranney and Petro 2009). The compound is a known modulator of a few important metabolic proteins such as peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor γ co-activator-1α (PGC-1α), sirtuin 1 (SIRT1), and AMP-activated protein kinase (AMPK) which are involved in the progression of AD and other neurological disorders (Um et al. 2010; Vinciguerra et al. 2010; Vingtdeux et al. 2011). Resveratrol has been shown to benefit in vitro models of epilepsy, AD, HD, PD, ALS, and nerve injury (Rocha-González et al. 2008). The polyphenol belonging to the stilbene subclass is not very abundant in nature; a low concentration of the compound is found in some food sources such as red grapes and its by-products such as juice and wine, some berries, etc. (Sanders et al. 2000; Rimando et al. 2004). A study demonstrated that subjects with mild cognitive impairment showed significant memory function improvement after consuming purple grape juice (Krikorian et al. 2010). Similarly, in another study, it was found that moderate red wine consumption proved beneficial in AD-type cognitive deterioration in the Tg2576 transgenic mouse model of AD by exerting a negative effect on Aβ neuropathology (Ho et al. 2009). This AD model showed a steep decrease in the generation of Aβ peptide in the hippocampal neuron cultures generated from these mice (Vingtdeux et al. 2008). Many ongoing research pieces have claimed control on Aβ accumulation by resveratrol facilitating the proteolytic clearance in neurons (Vingtdeux et al. 2010). Resveratrol shows anti-amyloidogenic effects by exerting modulating effects on AMPK (Vingtdeux et al. 2010).

7.4.3 Green Tea Polyphenol: EGCG

Asian countries traditionally consume green tea extracted from the *Camellia sinensis* plant (Khokhar and Magnusdottir 2002). Green tea is rich in polyphenols with four major derivatives based on structural variance which are epicatechin (EC), epigallocatechin (EGC), epicatechin gallate (ECG), and epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG), with EGCG being the major one (Nanjo et al. 1996; Khan et al. 2006). In the past few decades, green tea has gained a lot of attention mainly due to its active compound EGCG, which is a known therapeutic agent targeting neurodegeneration (Weinreb et al. 2004; Guo et al. 2005), inflammation (Singh et al. 2010), and cancer. EGCG is a well-known radical scavenger (Weinreb et al. 2004), anti-inflammatory agent (Singh et al. 2010), antioxidant (Weinreb et al. 2004), and metal chelator (Lambert and Elias 2010), which makes it a suitable drug candidate against neurodegenerative diseases and other disorders. The metabolism of green tea polyphenols has also been studied, and it was reported that these polyphenols are absorbed, metabolized, and excreted within 24 h from the body. With a few cups of green tea ingestion in a day, the concentrations of polyphenols in plasma increased by more than ten times, sufficient to exert antioxidant activity against all the oxidative damages (Lee et al. 1995; Sharma et al. 2007). EGCG's radical scavenging properties have been measured compared to vitamins E and C, and polyphenol overtook them (Nanjo et al. 1996). Within the derivatives, the order of protective effects in vitro has been reported to be ECG > EGCG > EC > EGC (Nie et al. 2002) and their order of antioxidant potential, EGCG ≥ ECG > EGC > EC (Weinreb et al. 2004).

The extensive researches on EGCG have uncovered its potential to promote aging by exerting functional and morphological alterations on the human brain, like suppression of cognitive dysfunction (Unno et al. 2004), enhancement in the learning process (Unno et al. 2007), and reduction in oxidative damage to the brain (Unno et al. 2007; Schaffer et al. 2012). In AD, EGCG has shown ROS inhibition, degradation of Aβ, and γ-secretase activity, hence clearing off amyloid accumulations. Increased α-secretase activity and suppression of tau have also been observed (Lim et al. 2013). Advances in the mechanism by which EGCG acts on AD and other related conditions have been well studied. EGCG modulates many essential signaling pathways such as MAPK, PKC, PKA, and PI3K/AKT pathways (Mandel et al. 2005; Kalfon et al. 2007). Tau protein and amyloid-β are the two biomarkers of AD, and their inhibition leads to the prevention of AD (Singh et al. 2015). In vitro studies on neuronal cells treated with 10μM EGCG show neuroprotective effects by inhibiting Aβ-induced cytotoxicity; EGCG also acted as an excellent acetylcholinesterase inhibitor (Okello et al. 2012; Qin et al. 2012). The ability of ECGC as a ROS scavenger confers neuroprotective effects against A-β-induced neuronal apoptosis (Choi et al. 2001). EGCG acts as a metal chelator by inhibiting Al (III)-induced fibrillation of toxic amyloid-β and further converting Aβ42 monomers into a folded conformation. Tau aggregation and oligomerization are also inhibited, and at the exact time, the reversal of oligomers to unfolded monomeric state occurs (Wobst et al. 2015). Administration of ECGC in AD

transgenic mice suppressed phosphorylation of tau isoforms and regulated the tau profile (Rezai-Zadeh et al. 2008). Long-term administration of the polyphenol in rats significantly improved spatial cognitive learning abilities (Haque et al. 2006). All the literature and experiments showed ECGC's ability to reduce tau toxicity and Aβ fibrillation and toxicity, thus showing its ability to prevent AD.

7.4.4 Curcumin

Curcumin is the active component of *Curcuma longa*, a widely grown spice in India and other Asian and Middle East companies. It has been used extensively in the Ayurvedic medical system as a pain reliever, antiseptic, and anti-inflammatory agent; the compound is also known to have anticancer properties (Shishodia et al. 2005; Kunnumakkara et al. 2017). Effects of curcumin on AD and its reversal have been studied extensively; in research on the prevalence of AD in India, a lower risk factor of the disease in the population was found (Ganguli et al. 2000; Ng et al. 2006). Inflammation of the nerve cell is one of the pathogenesis in AD (Mishra and Palanivelu 2008). Associated inflammatory changes are the presence of pro-inflammatory factors that accompany the deposition of amyloid-β peptide. Patients with prolonged use of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAID) showed a reduced risk of developing AD. However, prolonged use can lead to toxic effects on the human body (Mazzolani and Togni 2013). Curcumin, a potent anti-inflammatory agent, has shown a reversal in AD by various mechanisms. Curcumin is found to inhibit phospholipases, cyclooxygenase (COX-2), enzymes, and transcription factor involved in metabolizing the membrane phospholipids into prostaglandins (Shen and Ji 2012). ROS reduction, inhibition of factors such as NF-κB and AP-1, which are involved in the expression of amyloid and linked to AD by inhibiting pro-inflammatory cytokines activation like Tumor necrosis factor α (TNFα) and interleukin β (IL-β), IL-1 and IL-6 (Park and Kim 2002; Kim et al. 2005). Curcumin is also a proven antioxidant and acts as a neuroprotectant against AD and other ND diseases (Hewlings and Kalman 2017). Aβ levels in AD mice were reduced to 40% with low doses of curcumin compared to control. A 43% decrease in plaque formation was also observed. Low doses of curcumin over a more extended period proved beneficial; however, higher doses surprisingly showed less effect. The compound binds to Aβ at higher concentrations and blocks its self-assembly (Yang et al. 2005). Curcumin easily crosses the blood-brain barrier and binds to the plaques; majorly, Aβ40 aggregation is targeted for inhibition by curcumin (Narlawar et al. 2008). Various other studies also demonstrated the same results, showing the compound's deleterious effect on senile plaques (Garcia-Alloza et al. 2007). Curcumin also promotes phagocytosis of Aβ, clearing the depositions from the AD brain (Fiala et al. 2007). Metal toxicity-induced Aβ aggregation was also reversed; curcumin interacts with heavy metals such as cadmium and prevents neurotoxicity from contributing to AD and related conditions (Baum and Ng 2004; Daniel et al. 2004).

7.4.5 Quercetin

Quercetin (3,5,7,3′,4′-pentahydroxyflavone) (QC), a polyphenol under subgroup flavonoid, is generally found in fruits and vegetables. Many studies have reported diverse quercetin activities, namely, anti-inflammatory, antithrombotic, anti-obesity, anti-hypercholesterolemic, anti-atherosclerotic, and anticancer (Wang et al. 2014; Dahiya et al. 2019a, b; Gupta et al. 2019a, b). The neuroprotective effects of quercetin have been studied extensively, and the results are promising. At low concentrations, QC neutralizes cell toxicity caused by oxidative stress in neuronal cells. QC challenges the hallmarks of AD. It interferes with the formation of neurotoxic Aβ species, prevents its oligomerization, and destabilizes the fibrils (Regitz and Wenzel 2014; Caruana et al. 2016). QC inhibits β-secretase1 enzyme activity by binding to it with hydrogen bonds; the hydroxyl group at C3 has a significant role in inhibiting the enzyme that promotes AD (Shimmyo et al. 2008). It stimulates the regeneration of neurons by downregulation of pro-inflammatory cytokines, such as NF-kB and iNOS (Regitz and Wenzel 2014; Jantan et al. 2015; Costa et al. 2016). NF-κB plays a significant role in assisting APP cleavage and amyloid-β formation. QC-induced NF-κB inhibition was investigated, which showed inhibition of the cytokine (Shimmyo et al. 2008; Paris et al. 2011). Tauopathies commonly lay their roots in the brain's hippocampal region, hampering the cognitive abilities related to the region and further expanding to other regions of the brain. QC decreased tau phosphorylation and the formation of NFTs (Sabogal-Guáqueta et al. 2015). Kinases and phosphatases play a regulatory role in tau hyperphosphorylation. Protein phosphatases keep a check on kinase activity, and the imbalance between the two can cause AD progression. Quercetin reverses tau proteins' hyperphosphorylation via PI3K/Akt/GSK3β and MAPKs signaling pathways (Jiang et al. 2016). Acetylcholinesterase (AChE) is an enzyme responsible for the degradation of acetylcholine (ACh), leading to cognitive symptoms of AD. Inhibiting AChE is a common method to treat mild and moderate types of AD (Abdalla et al. 2014). QC inhibits AChE, balancing the levels of Ach in synaptic cleft thus reversing the progression of the disease (Abdalla et al. 2013).

ROS is formed in the cells by oxidative damage, a major contributor to various neurodegenerative disorders (Kennedy et al. 2016). Aβ is known to exert oxidative damage on neurons (Kennedy et al. 2016). QC, a potent antioxidant, has been shown to efficiently reduce superoxide free radicals (Alok et al. 2014). QC is a radical scavenger, and it modulates the cell's antioxidant properties by activating antioxidant enzymes such as paraoxonase-2 (PON2). Nrf-2 is a regulator of the cell's defense against oxidative stress. The pathway linked, the Nrf-2-ARE pathway, has several enzymes downstream that play a significant role in forming and destroying misfolded and aggregated proteins in AD (Lakhanpal and Rai 2007; Kaur et al. 2013). Figure 7.3. depicts a diagrammatic representation of the involvement of polyphenols with different signaling pathways that are implicated in neurodegenerative disorders.

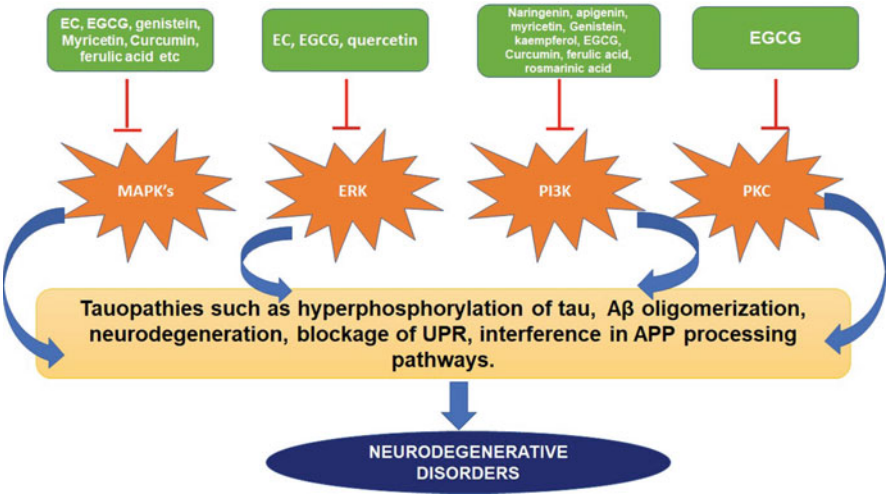


Fig. 7.3 Diagrammatic representation of involvement of polyphenols with different signaling pathways that are implicated in neurodegenerative disorders

7.5 Conclusion

With no cure and several unclear underlying mechanisms, the search for new drug candidates is never lasting. Modern research focuses on various alterable factors such as diet, which can play a significant role in the progression and suppression of AD. Nutrients are primarily researched to find the missing links between neurodegeneration and its reversal. Many nutrients present in our diet have altering effects on the biochemical pathways and energy sources, thereby encouraging us to study CNS and neurodegeneration. This chapter delineates the importance of different polyphenols in the prevention of AD. These act as protective agents by different mechanisms, and this has been discussed in detail, highlighting the beneficial importance of consuming these in our diet. Oxidative stress and damage to brain macromolecules are essential processes in neurodegenerative diseases. In lieu of the fact that polyphenols are excellent antioxidants and several in vivo experiments that have been conducted to find an association between polyphenol-rich food and amyloid accumulation, these are known to have therapeutic potential to treat AD. Moreover, recent studies have shown that polyphenols have an inhibitory effect on kinases such as MARK4, a key player in tau phosphorylation leading to AD pathology. The inhibitory effect of different polyphenols has been studied for other kinases as well, viz., SPHK1 and PDK3, which is implicated in AD pathology highlighting the imprtance of polyphenols in AD prevention by targeting inhbition of the kinases.

Acknowledgments The authors acknowledge the facilities provided by Jamia Millia Islamia, India, and Ajman University, UAE, for the successful accomplishment.

Conflict of Interest The authors declare no conflict of interest.

References

Abdalla FH, Cardoso AM et al (2013) Neuroprotective effect of quercetin in ectoenzymes and acetylcholinesterase activities in cerebral cortex synaptosomes of cadmium-exposed rats. Mol Cell Biochem 381(1–2):1–8

Abdalla FH, Schmatz R et al (2014) Quercetin protects the impairment of memory and anxiogenic-like behavior in rats exposed to cadmium: possible involvement of the acetylcholinesterase and Na+, K+-ATPase activities. Physiol Behav 135:152–167

Adlercreutz H, Mazur W (1997) Phyto-oestrogens and Western diseases. Ann Med 29(2):95–120

Akiyama S, Katsumata S-I et al (2009) Dietary hesperidin exerts hypoglycemic and hypolipidemic effects in streptozotocin-induced marginal type 1 diabetic rats. J Clin Biochem Nutr 46 (1):87–92

Alok S, Jain SK et al (2014) Herbal antioxidant in clinical practice: a review. Asian Pac J Trop Biomed 4(1):78–84

Anwar S, Shamsi A et al (2020) Rosmarinic acid exhibits anticancer effects via MARK4 inhibition. Sci Rep 10(1):1–13

Aquilano K, Baldelli S et al (2008) Role of nitric oxide synthases in Parkinson's disease: a review on the antioxidant and anti-inflammatory activity of polyphenols. Neurochem Res 33 (12):2416–2426

Arent SM, Senso M et al (2010) The effects of theaflavin-enriched black tea extract on muscle soreness, oxidative stress, inflammation, and endocrine responses to acute anaerobic interval training: a randomized, double-blind, crossover study. J Int Soc Sports Nutr 7(1):1–10

Bahadoran Z, Mirmiran P et al (2013) Dietary polyphenols as potential nutraceuticals in management of diabetes: a review. J Diabetes Metab Disord 12(1):43

Bate-Smith E, Swain T et al (1962) Comparative biochemistry. In: Mason HS, Florkin M (eds) vol 3, p 764

Baum L, Ng A (2004) Curcumin interaction with copper and iron suggests one possible mechanism of action in Alzheimer's disease animal models. J Alzheimers Dis 6(4):367–377

Baur JA, Pearson KJ et al (2006) Resveratrol improves health and survival of mice on a high-calorie diet. Nature 444(7117):337–342

Bieschke J, Russ J et al (2010) EGCG remodels mature α-synuclein and amyloid-β fibrils and reduces cellular toxicity. Proc Natl Acad Sci 107(17):7710–7715

Bogdanski P, Suliburska J et al (2012) Green tea extract reduces blood pressure, inflammatory biomarkers, and oxidative stress and improves parameters associated with insulin resistance in obese, hypertensive patients. Nutr Res 32(6):421–427

Braak H, Braak E et al (1996) Pattern of brain destruction in Parkinson's and Alzheimer's diseases. J Neural Transm 103(4):455–490

Brettschneider J, Del Tredici K et al (2015) Spreading of pathology in neurodegenerative diseases: a focus on human studies. Nat Rev Neurosci 16(2):109–120

Bruno RS, Bomser JA et al (2014) Antioxidant capacity of green tea (Camellia sinensis). Processing and impact on antioxidants in beverages. Elsevier, pp 33–39

Bugg CW, Isas JM et al (2012) Structural features and domain organization of huntingtin fibrils. J Biol Chem 287(38):31739–31746

Caruana M, Cauchi R et al (2016) Putative role of red wine polyphenols against brain pathology in Alzheimer's and Parkinson's disease. Front Nutr 3:31

Cassidy A, Hanley B et al (2000) Isoflavones, lignans and stilbenes–origins, metabolism and potential importance to human health. J Sci Food Agric 80(7):1044–1062

Cheynier V, Comte G et al (2013) Plant phenolics: recent advances on their biosynthesis, genetics, and ecophysiology. Plant Physiol Biochem 72:1–20
Choi Y-T, Jung C-H et al (2001) The green tea polyphenol (−)-epigallocatechin gallate attenuates β-amyloid-induced neurotoxicity in cultured hippocampal neurons. Life Sci 70(5):603–614
Cornejo A, Aguilar Sandoval F et al (2017) Rosmarinic acid prevents fibrillization and diminishes vibrational modes associated to β sheet in tau protein linked to Alzheimer's disease. J Enzyme Inhib Med Chem 32(1):945–953
Costa LG, Garrick JM et al (2016) Mechanisms of neuroprotection by quercetin: counteracting oxidative stress and more. Oxidative Med Cell Longev 2016
da Silva Pinto M (2013) Tea: a new perspective on health benefits. Food Res Int 53(2):558–567
Dahiya R, Mohammad T et al (2019a) Molecular interaction studies on ellagic acid for its anticancer potential targeting pyruvate dehydrogenase kinase 3. RSC Adv 9(40):23302–23315
Dahiya R, Mohammad T et al (2019b) Investigation of inhibitory potential of quercetin to the pyruvate dehydrogenase kinase 3: towards implications in anticancer therapy. Int J Biol Macromol 136:1076–1085
Daniel S, Limson JL et al (2004) Through metal binding, curcumin protects against lead-and cadmium-induced lipid peroxidation in rat brain homogenates and against lead-induced tissue damage in rat brain. J Inorg Biochem 98(2):266–275
Das J, Ramani R et al (2016) Polyphenol compounds and PKC signaling. Biochim Biophys Acta (BBA) Gen Subjects 1860(10):2107–2121
Eid HM, Martineau LC et al (2010) Stimulation of AMP-activated protein kinase and enhancement of basal glucose uptake in muscle cells by quercetin and quercetin glycosides, active principles of the antidiabetic medicinal plant Vaccinium vitis-idaea. Mol Nutr Food Res 54(7):991–1003
Fiala M, Liu PT et al (2007) Innate immunity and transcription of MGAT-III and toll-like receptors in Alzheimer's disease patients are improved by bisdemethoxycurcumin. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 104(31):12849–12854
Figueira I, Garcia G et al (2017) Polyphenols journey through blood-brain barrier towards neuronal protection. Sci Rep 7(1):1–16
Ganguli M, Chandra V et al (2000) Apolipoprotein E polymorphism and Alzheimer disease: the Indo-US cross-national dementia study. Arch Neurol 57(6):824–830
Garcia-Alloza M, Borrelli L et al (2007) Curcumin labels amyloid pathology in vivo, disrupts existing plaques, and partially restores distorted neurites in an Alzheimer mouse model. J Neurochem 102(4):1095–1104
Griffioen G, Duhamel H et al (2006) A yeast-based model of α-synucleinopathy identifies compounds with therapeutic potential. Biochim Biophys Acta (BBA) Mol Basis Dis 1762 (3):312–318
Guo S, Bezard E et al (2005) Protective effect of green tea polyphenols on the SH-SY5Y cells against 6-OHDA induced apoptosis through ROS–NO pathway. Free Radic Biol Med 39 (5):682–695
Gupta A, Vij G et al (2009) Curcumin, a polyphenolic antioxidant, attenuates chronic fatigue syndrome in murine water immersion stress model. Immunobiology 214(1):33–39
Gupta P, Mohammad T et al (2019a) Evaluation of binding and inhibition mechanism of dietary phytochemicals with sphingosine kinase 1: towards targeted anticancer therapy. Sci Rep 9 (1):1–15
Gupta P, Mohammad T et al (2019b) Evaluation of ellagic acid as an inhibitor of sphingosine kinase 1: a targeted approach towards anticancer therapy. Biomed Pharmacother 118:109245
Han X, Shen T et al (2007) Dietary polyphenols and their biological significance. Int J Mol Sci 8 (9):950–988
Haque AM, Hashimoto M et al (2006) Long-term administration of green tea catechins improves spatial cognition learning ability in rats. J Nutr 136(4):1043–1047
Hartman RE, Shah A et al (2006) Pomegranate juice decreases amyloid load and improves behavior in a mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. Neurobiol Dis 24(3):506–515

Hase T, Shishido S et al (2019) Rosmarinic acid suppresses Alzheimer's disease development by reducing amyloid β aggregation by increasing monoamine secretion. Sci Rep 9(1):1–13
Hashemzaei M, Delarami Far A et al (2017) Anticancer and apoptosis-inducing effects of quercetin in vitro and in vivo. Oncol Rep 38(2):819–828
Hewlings SJ, Kalman DS (2017) Curcumin: a review of its' effects on human health. Foods 6 (10):92
Ho L, Chen LH et al (2009) Heterogeneity in red wine polyphenolic contents differentially influences Alzheimer's disease-type neuropathology and cognitive deterioration. J Alzheimers Dis 16(1):59–72
Hu N, Yu J-T et al (2013) Nutrition and the risk of Alzheimer's disease. BioMed Res Int 2013:524820
Imran A, Arshad MU et al (2018) Lipid peroxidation diminishing perspective of isolated theaflavins and thearubigins from black tea in arginine induced renal malfunctional rats. Lipids Health Dis 17(1):157
Iuvone T, De Filippis D et al (2006) The spice sage and its active ingredient rosmarinic acid protect PC12 cells from amyloid-β peptide-induced neurotoxicity. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 317 (3):1143–1149
Jalel A, Soumaya GS et al (2009) Vitiligo treatment with vitamins, minerals and polyphenol supplementation. Indian J Dermatol 54(4):357
Jantan I, Ahmad W et al (2015) Plant-derived immunomodulators: an insight on their preclinical evaluation and clinical trials. Front Plant Sci 6:655
Jiang W, Luo T et al (2016) Quercetin protects against okadaic acid-induced injury via MAPK and PI3K/Akt/GSK3β signaling pathways in HT22 hippocampal neurons. PLoS One 11(4): e0152371
Jiménez-Flores LM, López-Briones S et al (2014) A PPARγ, NF-κB and AMPK-dependent mechanism may be involved in the beneficial effects of curcumin in the diabetic db/db mice liver. Molecules 19(6):8289–8302
Johnston K, Sharp P et al (2005) Dietary polyphenols decrease glucose uptake by human intestinal Caco-2 cells. FEBS Lett 579(7):1653–1657
Joseph JA, Shukitt-Hale B et al (2005) Reversing the deleterious effects of aging on neuronal communication and behavior: beneficial properties of fruit polyphenolic compounds. Am J Clin Nutr 81(1):313S–316S
Kalfon L, Youdim MB et al (2007) Green tea polyphenol (-)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate promotes the rapid protein kinase C-and proteasome-mediated degradation of bad: implications for neuroprotection. J Neurochem 100(4):992–1002
Kaltschmidt B, Uherek M et al (1997) Transcription factor NF-κB is activated in primary neurons by amyloid β peptides and in neurons surrounding early plaques from patients with Alzheimer disease. Proc Natl Acad Sci 94(6):2642–2647
Kaltschmidt B, Uherek M et al (1999) Inhibition of NF-κB potentiates amyloid β-mediated neuronal apoptosis. Proc Natl Acad Sci 96(16):9409–9414
Kaulmann A, Bohn T (2016) Bioactivity of polyphenols: preventive and adjuvant strategies toward reducing inflammatory bowel diseases—promises, perspectives, and pitfalls. Oxidative Med Cell Longev 2016
Kaur T, Hussain K et al (2013) Evaluation of nutritional and antioxidant status of Lepidium latifolium Linn.: a novel phytofood from Ladakh. PLoS One 8(8):e69112
Kennedy MA, Moffat TC et al (2016) A signaling lipid associated with Alzheimer's disease promotes mitochondrial dysfunction. Sci Rep 6:19332
Khan N, Afaq F et al (2006) Targeting multiple signaling pathways by green tea polyphenol (−)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate. Cancer Res 66(5):2500–2505
Khan P, Rahman S et al (2017) Elucidation of dietary polyphenolics as potential inhibitor of microtubule affinity regulating kinase 4: in silico and in vitro studies. Sci Rep 7(1):1–15
Khokhar S, Magnusdottir S (2002) Total phenol, catechin, and caffeine contents of teas commonly consumed in the United Kingdom. J Agric Food Chem 50(3):565–570

Kim G-Y, Kim K-H et al (2005) Curcumin inhibits immunostimulatory function of dendritic cells: MAPKs and translocation of NF-κB as potential targets. J Immunol 174(12):8116–8124
Kim D, Nguyen MD et al (2007) SIRT1 deacetylase protects against neurodegeneration in models for Alzheimer's disease and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. EMBO J 26(13):3169–3179
Kimura Y, Ito H et al (2010) Inhibitory effects of polyphenols on human cytochrome P450 3A4 and 2C9 activity. Food Chem Toxicol 48(1):429–435
Krikorian R, Nash TA et al (2010) Concord grape juice supplementation improves memory function in older adults with mild cognitive impairment. Br J Nutr 103(5):730–734
Kukula-Koch W, Aligiannis N et al (2013) Influence of extraction procedures on phenolic content and antioxidant activity of Cretan barberry herb. Food Chem 138(1):406–413
Kumar S, Pandey AK (2013) Chemistry and biological activities of flavonoids: an overview. Sci World J 2013
Kumar A, Nisha CM et al (2016) Current and novel therapeutic molecules and targets in Alzheimer's disease. J Formos Med Assoc 115(1):3–10
Kunnumakkara AB, Bordoloi D et al (2017) Curcumin mediates anticancer effects by modulating multiple cell signaling pathways. Clin Sci 131(15):1781–1799
Kwiatkowski TJ, Bosco D et al (2009) Mutations in the FUS/TLS gene on chromosome 16 cause familial amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. Science 323(5918):1205–1208
Lagouge M, Argmann C et al (2006) Resveratrol improves mitochondrial function and protects against metabolic disease by activating SIRT1 and PGC-1α. Cell 127(6):1109–1122
Lakhanpal P, Rai DK (2007) Quercetin: a versatile flavonoid. Int J Med Update 2(2):22–37
Lambert JD, Elias RJ (2010) The antioxidant and pro-oxidant activities of green tea polyphenols: a role in cancer prevention. Arch Biochem Biophys 501(1):65–72
Lee M-J, Wang Z-Y et al (1995) Analysis of plasma and urinary tea polyphenols in human subjects. Cancer Epidemiol Prevent Biomark 4(4):393–399
Lee CJ, Wilson L et al (2010) Hesperidin suppressed proliferations of both human breast cancer and androgen-dependent prostate cancer cells. Phytother Res 24(S1):S15–S19
Lee AY, Hwang BR et al (2016) Perilla frutescens var. japonica and rosmarinic acid improve amyloid-β25-35 induced impairment of cognition and memory function. Nutr Res Pract 10 (3):274–281
Lees AJ (2007) Unresolved issues relating to the shaking palsy on the celebration of James Parkinson's 250th birthday. Mov Disord 22(S17):S327–S334
Levites Y, Amit T et al (2003) Neuroprotection and neurorescue against Aβ toxicity and PKC-dependent release of non-amyloidogenic soluble precursor protein by green tea polyphenol (-)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate. FASEB J 17(8):1–23
Lewandowska H, Kalinowska M et al (2016) The role of natural polyphenols in cell signaling and cytoprotection against cancer development. J Nutr Biochem 32:1–19
Lim HJ, Shim SB et al (2013) Green tea catechin leads to global improvement among Alzheimer's disease-related phenotypes in NSE/hAPP-C105 Tg mice. J Nutr Biochem 24(7):1302–1313
Longpré F, Garneau P et al (2006) Protection by EGb 761 against β-amyloid-induced neurotoxicity: involvement of NF-κB, SIRT1, and MAPKs pathways and inhibition of amyloid fibril formation. Free Radic Biol Med 41(12):1781–1794
Maher P, Dargusch R et al (2011) ERK activation by the polyphenols fisetin and resveratrol provides neuroprotection in multiple models of Huntington's disease. Hum Mol Genet 20 (2):261–270
Manach C, Scalbert A et al (2004) Polyphenols: food sources and bioavailability. Am J Clin Nutr 79 (5):727–747
Mandel S, Youdim MB (2004) Catechin polyphenols: neurodegeneration and neuroprotection in neurodegenerative diseases. Free Radic Biol Med 37(3):304–317
Mandel SA, Avramovich-Tirosh Y et al (2005) Multifunctional activities of green tea catechins in neuroprotection. Neurosignals 14(1–2):46–60
Martin JB, Gusella JF (1986) Huntington's disease. N Engl J Med 315(20):1267–1276

Masuda M, Suzuki N et al (2006) Small molecule inhibitors of α-synuclein filament assembly. Biochemistry 45(19):6085–6094

Mazzolani F, Togni S (2013) Oral administration of a curcumin-phospholipid delivery system for the treatment of central serous chorioretinopathy: a 12-month follow-up study. Clin Ophthalmol 7:939

Mishra S, Palanivelu K (2008) The effect of curcumin (turmeric) on Alzheimer's disease: an overview. Ann Indian Acad Neurol 11(1):13

Mishra A, Kumar S et al (2013) Scientific validation of the medicinal efficacy of Tinospora cordifolia. Sci World J 2013

Nanjo F, Goto K et al (1996) Scavenging effects of tea catechins and their derivatives on 1, 1-diphenyl-2-picrylhydrazyl radical. Free Radic Biol Med 21(6):895–902

Narlawar R, Pickhardt M et al (2008) Curcumin-derived pyrazoles and isoxazoles: Swiss army knives or blunt tools for Alzheimer's disease? ChemMedChem 3(1):165–172

Ng T-P, Chiam P-C et al (2006) Curry consumption and cognitive function in the elderly. Am J Epidemiol 164(9):898–906

Nie G, Cao Y et al (2002) Protective effects of green tea polyphenols and their major component, (-)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG), on 6-hydroxydopamine-induced apoptosis in PC12 cells. Redox Rep 7(3):171–177

Nikfarjam BA, Adineh M et al (2017) Treatment with rutin-A therapeutic strategy for neutrophil-mediated inflammatory and autoimmune diseases-anti-inflammatory effects of rutin on neutrophils. J Pharm 20(1):52–56

O'Brien RJ, Wong PC (2011) Amyloid precursor protein processing and Alzheimer's disease. Annu Rev Neurosci 34:185–204

Okello EJ, Leylabi R et al (2012) Inhibition of acetylcholinesterase by green and white tea and their simulated intestinal metabolites. Food Funct 3(6):651–661

Ono K, Yoshiike Y et al (2003) Potent anti-amyloidogenic and fibril-destabilizing effects of polyphenols in vitro: implications for the prevention and therapeutics of Alzheimer's disease. J Neurochem 87(1):172–181

Ono K, Li L et al (2012) Phenolic compounds prevent amyloid β-protein oligomerization and synaptic dysfunction by site-specific binding. J Biol Chem 287(18):14631–14643

Pae M, Wu D (2013) Immunomodulating effects of epigallocatechin-3-gallate from green tea: mechanisms and applications. Food Funct 4(9):1287–1303

Pandey KB, Rizvi SI (2009) Plant polyphenols as dietary antioxidants in human health and disease. Oxidative Med Cell Longev 2

Paris D, Mathura V et al (2011) Flavonoids lower Alzheimer's Aβ production via an NFκB dependent mechanism. Bioinformation 6(6):229

Park S-Y, Kim DS (2002) Discovery of natural products from Curcuma longa that protect cells from beta-amyloid insult: a drug discovery effort against Alzheimer's disease. J Nat Prod 65 (9):1227–1231

Parker-Athill E, Luo D et al (2009) Flavonoids, a prenatal prophylaxis via targeting JAK2/STAT3 signaling to oppose IL-6/MIA associated autism. J Neuroimmunol 217(1–2):20–27

Pasinetti GM, Wang J et al (2015) Roles of resveratrol and other grape-derived polyphenols in Alzheimer's disease prevention and treatment. Biochim Biophys Acta (BBA) Mol Basis Dis 1852(6):1202–1208

Pérez-Jiménez J, Neveu V et al (2010) Identification of the 100 richest dietary sources of polyphenols: an application of the phenol-explorer database. Eur J Clin Nutr 64(3):S112–S120

Perez-Vizcaino F, Duarte J et al (2006) Endothelial function and cardiovascular disease: effects of quercetin and wine polyphenols. Free Radic Res 40(10):1054–1065

Pimpão R (2014) Exploring the bioavailability of (poly) phenols from berries and their potential activities in humans

Potenza MA, Marasciulo FL et al (2007) EGCG, a green tea polyphenol, improves endothelial function and insulin sensitivity, reduces blood pressure, and protects against myocardial I/R injury in SHR. Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab 292(5):E1378–E1387

Prince PSM, Kamalakkannan N (2006) Rutin improves glucose homeostasis in streptozotocin diabetic tissues by altering glycolytic and gluconeogenic enzymes. J Biochem Mol Toxicol 20 (2):96–102

Pu P, Gao D-M et al (2012) Naringin ameliorates metabolic syndrome by activating AMP-activated protein kinase in mice fed a high-fat diet. Arch Biochem Biophys 518(1):61–70

Qin X-Y, Cheng Y et al (2012) Potential protection of green tea polyphenols against intracellular amyloid beta-induced toxicity on primary cultured prefrontal cortical neurons of rats. Neurosci Lett 513(2):170–173

Queen BL, Tollefsbol TO (2010) Polyphenols and aging. Curr Aging Sci 3(1):34–42

Quist A, Doudevski I et al (2005) Amyloid ion channels: a common structural link for protein-misfolding disease. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 102(30):10427–10432

Ramassamy C (2006) Emerging role of polyphenolic compounds in the treatment of neurodegenerative diseases: a review of their intracellular targets. Eur J Pharmacol 545(1):51–64

Ramazzotti M, Melani F et al (2016) Mechanisms for the inhibition of amyloid aggregation by small ligands. Biosci Rep 36(5)

Ranney A, Petro MS (2009) Resveratrol protects spatial learning in middle-aged C57BL/6 mice from effects of ethanol. Behav Pharmacol 20(4):330–336

Regitz C, Wenzel U (2014) Amyloid-beta (Aβ1–42)-induced paralysis in Caenorhabditis elegans is reduced by restricted cholesterol supply. Neurosci Lett 576:93–96

Rezai-Zadeh K, Shytle D et al (2005) Green tea epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG) modulates amyloid precursor protein cleavage and reduces cerebral amyloidosis in Alzheimer transgenic mice. J Neurosci 25(38):8807–8814

Rezai-Zadeh K, Arendash GW et al (2008) Green tea epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG) reduces β-amyloid mediated cognitive impairment and modulates tau pathology in Alzheimer transgenic mice. Brain Res 1214:177–187

Rimando AM, Kalt W et al (2004) Resveratrol, pterostilbene, and piceatannol in vaccinium berries. J Agric Food Chem 52(15):4713–4719

Rocha-González HI, Ambriz-Tututi M et al (2008) Resveratrol: a natural compound with pharmacological potential in neurodegenerative diseases. CNS Neurosci Ther 14(3):234–247

Rosen DR, Siddique T et al (1993) Mutations in Cu/Zn superoxide dismutase gene are associated with familial amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. Nature 362(6415):59–62

Sabogal-Guáqueta AM, Munoz-Manco JI et al (2015) The flavonoid quercetin ameliorates Alzheimer's disease pathology and protects cognitive and emotional function in aged triple transgenic Alzheimer's disease model mice. Neuropharmacology 93:134–145

Sanders TH, McMichael RW et al (2000) Occurrence of resveratrol in edible peanuts. J Agric Food Chem 48(4):1243–1246

Scalbert A, Williamson G (2000) Dietary intake and bioavailability of polyphenols. J Nutr 130 (8):2073S–2085S

Schaffer S, Asseburg H et al (2012) Effects of polyphenols on brain ageing and Alzheimer's disease: focus on mitochondria. Mol Neurobiol 46(1):161–178

Shamsi A, Ahmed A et al (2020a) Understanding the binding between rosmarinic acid and serum albumin: in vitro and in silico insight. J Mol Liq 113348

Shamsi A, Ahmed A et al (2020b) Rosmarinic acid restrains protein glycation and aggregation in human serum albumin: multi spectroscopic and microscopic insight-possible therapeutics targeting diseases. Int J Biol Macromol 161:187–193

Shan Y, Wang D-D et al (2016) Aging as a precipitating factor in chronic restraint stress-induced tau aggregation pathology, and the protective effects of rosmarinic acid. J Alzheimers Dis 49 (3):829–844

Sharma V, Bhattacharya A et al (2007) Health benefits of tea consumption. Trop J Pharm Res 6 (3):785–792

Shen L, Ji H-F (2012) The pharmacology of curcumin: is it the degradation products? Trends Mol Med 18(3):138–144

Shimmyo Y, Kihara T et al (2008) Flavonols and flavones as BACE-1 inhibitors: structure–activity relationship in cell-free, cell-based and in silico studies reveal novel pharmacophore features. Biochim Biophys Acta (BBA) Gen Subjects 1780(5):819–825
Shishodia S, Sethi G et al (2005) Curcumin: getting back to the roots. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1056 (1):206–217
Shults CW (2006) Lewy bodies. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103(6):1661–1668
Silveira AC, Dias JP et al (2019) The action of polyphenols in diabetes mellitus and Alzheimer's disease: a common agent for overlapping pathologies. Curr Neuropharmacol 17(7):590–613
Singh R, Akhtar N et al (2010) Green tea polyphenol epigallocatechi3-gallate: inflammation and arthritis. Life Sci 86(25–26):907–918
Singh NA, Mandal AKA et al (2015) Potential neuroprotective properties of epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG). Nutr J 15(1):60
Skupień K, Oszmiański J et al (2006) In vitro antileukaemic activity of extracts from berry plant leaves against sensitive and multidrug resistant HL60 cells. Cancer Lett 236(2):282–291
Song W, Zhao X et al (2017) Quercetin inhibits angiogenesis-mediated human retinoblastoma growth by targeting vascular endothelial growth factor receptor. Oncol Lett 14(3):3343–3348
Soto C (2003) Unfolding the role of protein misfolding in neurodegenerative diseases. Nat Rev Neurosci 4(1):49–60
Spencer JP (2010) Beyond antioxidants: the cellular and molecular interactions of flavonoids and how these underpin their actions on the brain. Proc Nutr Soc 69(2):244–260
Spencer JP, Abd El Mohsen MM et al (2004) Cellular uptake and metabolism of flavonoids and their metabolites: implications for their bioactivity. Arch Biochem Biophys 423(1):148–161
Spencer JP, Abd El Mohsen MM et al (2008) Biomarkers of the intake of dietary polyphenols: strengths, limitations and application in nutrition research. Br J Nutr 99(1):12–22
Sreedharan J, Blair IP et al (2008) TDP-43 mutations in familial and sporadic amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. Science 319(5870):1668–1672
Surh Y-J, Chun K-S et al (2001) Molecular mechanisms underlying chemopreventive activities of anti-inflammatory phytochemicals: down-regulation of COX-2 and iNOS through suppression of NF-κB activation. Mutat Res 480:243–268
Tsao R (2010) Chemistry and biochemistry of dietary polyphenols. Nutrients 2(12):1231–1246
Tydlacka S, Wang C-E et al (2008) Differential activities of the ubiquitin–proteasome system in neurons versus glia may account for the preferential accumulation of misfolded proteins in neurons. J Neurosci 28(49):13285–13295
Um J-H, Park S-J et al (2010) AMP-activated protein kinase–deficient mice are resistant to the metabolic effects of resveratrol. Diabetes 59(3):554–563
Unno K, Takabayashi F et al (2004) Suppressive effect of green tea catechins on morphologic and functional regression of the brain in aged mice with accelerated senescence (SAMP10). Exp Gerontol 39(7):1027–1034
Unno K, Takabayashi F et al (2007) Daily consumption of green tea catechin delays memory regression in aged mice. Biogerontology 8(2):89–95
Upadhyay S, Dixit M (2015) Role of polyphenols and other phytochemicals on molecular signaling. Oxidative Med Cell Longev 2015
Vance C, Rogelj B et al (2009) Mutations in FUS, an RNA processing protein, cause familial amyotrophic lateral sclerosis type 6. Science 323(5918):1208–1211
Vinciguerra M, Fulco M et al (2010) SirT1 in muscle physiology and disease: lessons from mouse models. Dis Model Mech 3(5–6):298–303
Vingtdeux V, Dreses-Werringloer U et al (2008) Therapeutic potential of resveratrol in Alzheimer's disease. BMC Neurosci 9(S2):S6
Vingtdeux V, Giliberto L et al (2010) AMP-activated protein kinase signaling activation by resveratrol modulates amyloid-β peptide metabolism. J Biol Chem 285(12):9100–9113
Vingtdeux V, Davies P et al (2011) AMPK is abnormally activated in tangle-and pre-tangle-bearing neurons in Alzheimer's disease and other tauopathies. Acta Neuropathol 121(3):337–349
Walker FO (2007) Huntington's disease. Lancet 369(9557):218–228

Wang LM, Wang YJ et al (2013) A dietary polyphenol resveratrol acts to provide neuroprotection in recurrent stroke models by regulating AMPK and SIRT 1 signaling, thereby reducing energy requirements during ischemia. Eur J Neurosci 37(10):1669–1681

Wang D-M, Li S-Q et al (2014) Effects of long-term treatment with quercetin on cognition and mitochondrial function in a mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. Neurochem Res 39 (8):1533–1543

Weinreb O, Mandel S et al (2004) Neurological mechanisms of green tea polyphenols in Alzheimer's and Parkinson's diseases. J Nutr Biochem 15(9):506–516

Williams RJ, Spencer JP et al (2004) Flavonoids: antioxidants or signalling molecules? Free Radic Biol Med 36(7):838–849

Wobst HJ, Sharma A et al (2015) The green tea polyphenol (−)-epigallocatechin gallate prevents the aggregation of tau protein into toxic oligomers at substoichiometric ratios. FEBS Lett 589 (1):77–83

World Health Organization (2018) Dementia. 2017. http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs362/en

Wu D (2016) Green tea EGCG, T-cell function, and T-cell-mediated autoimmune encephalomyelitis. J Investig Med 64(8):1213–1219

Wu Y, Xia Z-Y et al (2017) (-)-Epigallocatechin-3-gallate attenuates myocardial injury induced by ischemia/reperfusion in diabetic rats and in H9c2 cells under hyperglycemic conditions. Int J Mol Med 40(2):389–399

Yang F, Lim GP et al (2005) Curcumin inhibits formation of amyloid β oligomers and fibrils, binds plaques, and reduces amyloid in vivo. J Biol Chem 280(7):5892–5901

Youdim KA, Qaiser MZ et al (2004) Flavonoid permeability across an in situ model of the blood–brain barrier. Free Radic Biol Med 36(5):592–604

Zhang S, Liu X et al (2016) Apigenin attenuates experimental autoimmune myocarditis by modulating Th1/Th2 cytokine balance in mice. Inflammation 39(2):678–686

Zhao J, Li Y et al (2017) Hesperidin inhibits ovarian cancer cell viability through endoplasmic reticulum stress signaling pathways. Oncol Lett 14(5):5569–5574

Zheng Q, Kebede MT et al (2019) Inhibition of the self-assembly of Aβ and of tau by polyphenols: mechanistic studies. Molecules 24(12):2316

Zhou Y, Zheng J et al (2016) Natural polyphenols for prevention and treatment of cancer. Nutrients 8(8):515

Zou J-G, Wang Z-R et al (2003) Effect of red wine and wine polyphenol resveratrol on endothelial function in hypercholesterolemic rabbits. Int J Mol Med 11(3):317–320

Recent Advances in Alzheimer's Disease in Relation to Cholinesterase Inhibitors and NMDA Receptor Antagonists

8

Nazia Nazam, Aisha Farhana, and Sibhghatulla Shaikh

Abstract

Research endeavors toward Alzheimer's disease (AD) treatment target early detection, focusing on improving cognition and slowing down disease progression. The advancements achieved are credited to the increase in understanding AD at the molecular level with the combined efforts of the clinicians, researchers, and the drug industries. Thus, several medications are proven successful in ameliorating the diseased symptoms; however, none could stop or reverse disease progression. Among these, recent developments in AD therapeutics based on the "cholinergic hypothesis" and "amyloid cascade hypothesis" hold enormous treatment potential.

Keywords

Alzheimer's disease · Acetylcholinesterase inhibitors · NMDA receptor antagonist

N. Nazam (✉)
Amity Institute of Molecular Medicine & Stem Cell Research, Amity University, Noida, Uttar Pradesh, India

A. Farhana
Department of Clinical Laboratory Sciences, College of Applied Medical Sciences, Jouf University, Sakaka, Saudi Arabia

S. Shaikh
Department of Medical Biotechnology, Yeungnam University, Gyeongsan, South Korea

G. Md Ashraf, A. Alexiou (eds.), *Autism Spectrum Disorder and Alzheimer's Disease*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-4558-7_8

Abbreviations

τ protein	Tau protein
ACh	Acetylcholine
AChE	Acetylcholinesterase
AChEIs	Acetylcholinesterase inhibitors
AD	Alzheimer's disease
Apo	Apolipoprotein
Aβ peptide	Amyloid-beta peptide
APP	Amyloid precursor protein
BBB	Blood-brain barrier
BuChE	Butyrylcholinesterase
ChEIs	Cholinestrase inhibitors
Hup	Huperzine
MTDL	Multi-target-directed ligand
NFT	Neurofibrillary tangles
NMDA	*N*-methyl-D-aspartic acid
NMDAR	*N*-methyl-D-aspartic acid receptor
PS	Presenilin

8.1 Introduction

Alzheimer's disease progresses through an early synaptic dysfunction associated with an increase in the oligomeric amyloid-beta peptide (Aβ peptide). However, the etiology of AD is multifactorial and complex both in early-onset and late-onset AD, although early-onset AD is better understood to follow through gene mutations in amyloid precursor protein (APP) and presenilin (PS1, PS2) genes, finally causing unwarranted production of Aβ protein. Late-onset AD is poorly understood. The associated risk factors for late-onset AD are considered to be aging, head trauma, vascular conditions, and the presence of apolipoprotein (Apo) E4 genotype (Burns and Iliffe 2009). Pathological changes that distinctly demonstrate AD progress include anatomical lesions in the brain and senile plaques made of Aβ and neurofibrillary tangles (NFT) consisting of hyperphosphorylated tau (τ) protein, substantial loss of synapse and neuronal death, significant oxidative stress, and mitochondrial abnormalities (Perl 2010). The continual upsurge in AD cases, with higher prevalence in the geriatric population, underscores its significance as a medical concern and social burden.

8.2 Biochemical Pathways for AD Pathogenesis

Hundreds of drugs thought to improve cognition in AD efficiently have failed in clinical trials. This is highly expected since multiple biochemical pathways are at fault in AD pathogenesis, strengthening the diseased state. A single drug that could cater to all or most of the pathways would be a promising one. However, this demands an insight into the major pathways to harness essential clinical benefit. The biochemical pathways that are increasingly observed as the possible cause of Alzheimer's disease's pathogenesis align with the cholinergic hypothesis and glutamate signalling. Deterioration of cholinergic neurons and subsequent neurotransmission failure are the dominant causes of the decline in cognitive and behavioural functions observed in AD patients. Treatment strategies based on molecular knowledge of AD are currently under development. Molecular research into AD aids in identifying points of attack for rational drug treatment. Additionally, molecular markers of Alzheimers are in tremendous use comprising a part of early and differential neurochemical diagnostics.

According to the cholinergic hypothesis, a reduction in acetylcholine (ACh) synthesis is an important biochemical event in AD development (Bartus et al. 1982). Therefore, AChE is proven as the most viable therapeutic target for the symptomatic treatment of AD (Fig. 8.1). Though cholinergic drugs increase existing levels of acetylcholine to surviving brain cells, they are not completely successful in preventing neuronal death or disease progression (Raschetti et al. 2007; Forette and Hauw 2008). The reason being these drugs have positive effects for only a shorter period of approximately 1–3 years, and also cannot alter disease progression. Hence, evaluating the potential AD treatments and improving clinical management via different mechanisms are essential.

Substantial evidence favors the role of disrupted glutamate in the pathophysiology of neurodegenerative disorders including AD (Emre et al. 2014; Hynd et al.

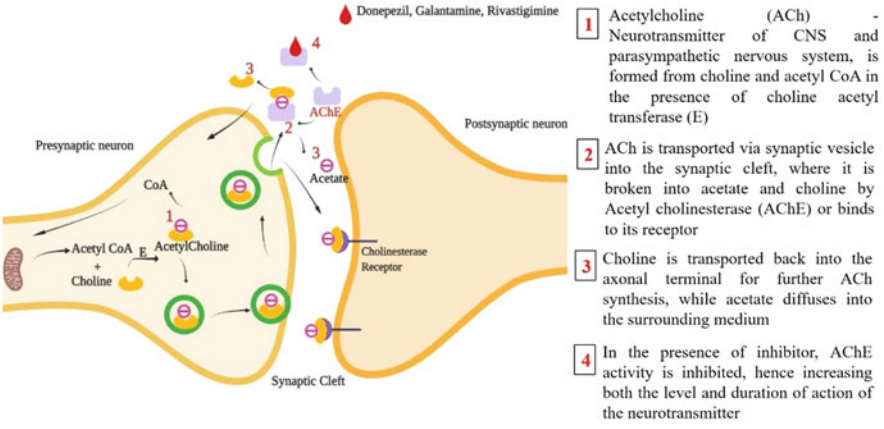


Fig. 8.1 Mechanism of action of acetylcholinesterase inhibitors in Alzheimer's disease

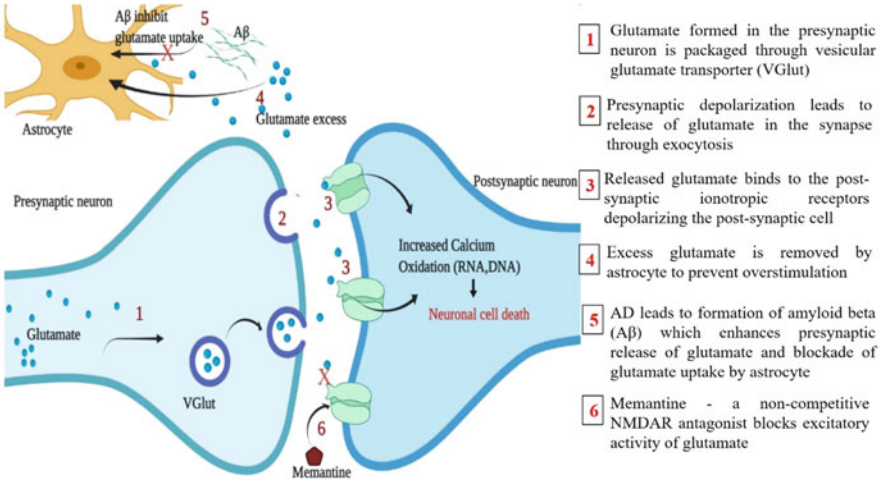


Fig. 8.2 Mechanism of action of NMDA receptor antagonist in Alzheimer's disease

2004). Glutamate is abundantly present in the CNS, as an excitatory neurotransmitter, solely located intracellularly. Extracellular concentrations of glutamate are highly regulated for appropriate signal transmission. Alzheimer's disease is associated with a higher concentration of glutamate, leading to synaptic dysfunction. High glutamate leads to membrane depolarization and opening up of *N*-methyl-D-aspartic acid (NMDA) receptors, which causes an excessive cellular influx of calcium, tilting the balance toward excitotoxicity (Zhang et al. 2016b). NMDA/mGluR-mediated Ca^{2+} influx is a crucial factor that facilitates soluble Aβ-mediated neurotoxicity resulting in amyloid plaques forming in the brain (Ferreira et al. 2015). Thus, glutamate NMDA receptor (NMDAR) antagonists have emerged as crucial therapeutic targets in AD (Fig. 8.2).

Since AD presents as a multifactorial disease, research aims to develop multi-target drugs to impede other factors such as Aβ aggregation, τ aggregation, protein misfolding, mitochondrila dysfunction, deranged metal homeostasis, decreased ACh levels, and associated oxidative stress (Fig. 8.3).

With these many therapies designed for AD, many may delay the disease progression and improve health-related quality of life, with no assurance for cure or reversal of symptoms. Presently, FDA-approved drugs comprising the mainstays for AD treatment include:

1. Cholinesterase (ChE) inhibitors.
2. NMDA glutamate receptor antagonists.

The perplexing cascades of neuronal cell death in Alzheimer's disease point to the need of in-depth investigation of potential drugs. These drugs have received FDA approval since they are a step ahead in the path of developing better treatment strategy. This chapter discusses about the spectrum of ChE inhibitors and

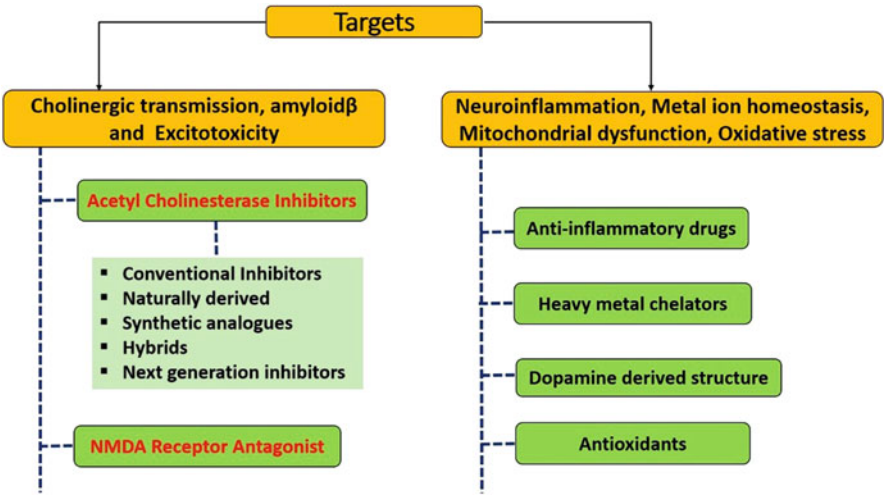


Fig. 8.3 Drugs for targeted treatment in Alzheimer's disease

NMDAR antagonist along with other treatment options used in Alzheimer's therapy. This chapter is in tune with the title of the book, which emphasizes on the recent advancements toward novel frontiers in drug discovery against AD.

8.2.1 Cholinestrase Inhibitors (ChEIs)

The α/β hydrolase is a superfamily of hydrolytic enzymes with catalytic function sharing a common "*α/β hydrolase*" fold. This hydrolase fold comprises proteases, esterases, lipases, peroxidases, epoxide hydrolases, and dehalogenases (David et al. 1992). Among the vertebrates, two types of cholinesterase enzymes are majorly found: *acetylcholinesterase (AChE)* and *butyrylcholinesterase (BuChE)*. The physiological function of both is catalyzing acetylcholine in the synapse and neuromuscular junction, finally leading to the cessation of the nerve impulse. AChE is related to butyrylcholinesterase (EC 3.1.1.8) closely, but they are distinguished from one another based on specificity for substrate, tissue distribution, and sensitivity to inhibitors (Lane et al. 2006).

ChE antagonists, also known as AChE inhibitors (AChEIs) or anticholinesterases, prevent acetylcholine breakdown by inhibiting the AChE enzyme in the cortex and hippocampus regions of the brain, which are the central foci of AD progression. Ample evidence from neuropathological and imaging studies show substantial cholinergic deficits in AD phases (Perry et al. 1993; Shinotoh et al. 2000; Bohnen et al. 2003). Such deficits in cholinergic activity call for the need of AChE inhibitors to treat cognitive and memory impairments (Shinotoh et al. 2000; van Laar et al. 2011). Improvement of cholinergic transmission could excite the cholinergic receptors or prolong ACh availability in the synaptic cleft and improve

Table 8.1 List of acetylcholinesterase inhibitors in clinical and preclinical phases

Conventional	Approved and currently in use	• Donepezil • Galantamine • Rivastigmine
	Use discontinued	• Tacrine • Physostigmine
Naturally derived	• Flavinoid (galangin, quercetin) • Phenolic lipid (cardanol) • Derived from algae and ascidians (anatoxins) • Alkaloid (Huperzine A and B) • ZT-1-A prodrug of Hup-A • Carbamates (physostigmine)	
Synthetic analogue	• Analogues of phenyl-5,6-dimethoxy-1-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-2-indenylmethanone • Tacrine analogue (*N*-alkyl-7-methoxytacrine hydrochlo-ride) • 1*H*-pyrazolo[1,2-*b*]phthalazine-5,10-dione derivatives • Ladostigil (*N*-propargyl-(3R) aminoindan-5yl)-ethyl methyl carbamate) • 1,2,3-triazole-chromenone carboxamide derivatives • 1,2,4-triazine and Chromone scaffolds • Chalcone-based derivatives • Donepezil-based multifunctional inhibitors	
Hybrids	• Donepezil-AP2238 • Donepezil-based dual inhibitors • Tacrine based (tacrine-melatonin, gallamine-tacrine)	
Next generation	• Physostigmine derivatives (phenserine, tolserine, and eseroline) • NS2330 (tesofensine)	

AD-associated symptoms. The inhibition of cholinesterases (both acetyl and butyryl) by cholinesterase inhibitors is a promising strategy. These inhibitors targeting AChE and BuChE are approved as therapeutic strategies to alleviate AD and prevent its progression. These ChE antagonists are documented as safe, well-tolerated, and effective in slowing down cognitive impairment and neurodegeneration that may temporarily alleviate AD symptoms. The capacity of BChE is not understood well but is expected to play a role in some neurodegenerative disorders, including AD. Hence, its inhibitors could be developed in the future for improvement in AD symptoms. Noteworthy is the research focussed on AChE inhibitors, which has scaled up from potent poison (sarin, soman) of war periods to effective medicine (tacrine, donepezil) in the present peaceful days. Nevertheless, pharmacotherapy has significantly evolved, yet few drugs with promising results are presently used to prevent dementia in AD. The acetylcholinesterase inhibitors include (1) *conventional inhibitors*, (2) *naturally derived inhibitors*, (3) *synthetic analogs*, (4) *hybrid inhibitors*, and (5) *next-generation inhibitors* (Table 8.1).

8.2.2 Conventional Inhibitors

This group majorly includes the following drugs: (1) *tacrine* (Cognex: 1993), (2) *donepezil* (Aricept: 1996), (3) *galantamine* (Razadyne: 2001), and (4) *rivastigmine* (Exelon: 2002).

Prior to tacrine, physostigmine—the first classic AChEI—was investigated for AD but was later discontinued due to its poor tolerability (Thal et al. 1983). *Tacrine* (tetrahydroaminoacridine, Cognex), a nonselective, reversible AChEI, was FDA approved in 1993 and the first marketed drug for AD treatment. Its most potent acute effect on cognition is attributed to added pharmacological drug properties that include blockade of potassium channels, inhibition of monoamine uptake, and inhibition of the monoamine oxidase (Wagstaff and McTavish 1994). Tacrine, however, is no longer in clinical use for its narrow therapeutic index, frequent cases of severe hepatotoxicity, and gastrointestinal toxicity. A high incidence of cholinergic side effects, nausea and vomiting, diarrhea, dyspepsia or anorexia, and myalgia also favored its discontinuity in use (Wagstaff and McTavish 1994). Additionally, this drug was required to be administered in multiple doses due to its short half-life.

Donepezil has been used for the treatment of mild-to-moderate AD. The action of donepezil spans molecular and cellular levels to the pathogenesis of AD and not just at the neurotransmitter level. It increases the availability of ACh at the synapses, which enhances cholinergic transmission. It is also effective in inhibiting different forms of glutamate-induced excitotoxicity, lowering inflammatory cytokines, and increasing neuroprotective isoforms of AChE. Overall, donepezil helps alleviate oxidative stress and other side effects (Jia et al. 2020). The structure of donepezil allows for the synchronized inhibition of the active and the peripheral anionic sites of AChE (Kryger et al. 1999). High doses of donepezil cause severe vomiting, muscle weakness, blood pressure, nausea, breathing problems, and sometimes bradycardia (Asiri and Mostafa 2010).

Drug *galantamine* improves cholinergic function in the brain through an increase in synaptic ACh levels (Anand and Singh 2013; Andrieu et al. 2015). It was originally isolated from plants but is now chemically synthesized and is used for the treatment of AD since 2001. It is a specific, competitive, and reversible AChE inhibitor, besides binding to nicotinic cholinergic receptors. Hence, it is effective in treating the cognitive symptoms in AD patients. If administered with a gradual increase in the dosage, it showed good tolerance (Lin et al. 2019). The associated side effects include convulsions, severe nausea, stomach cramps, and vomiting (Mehta et al. 2012). In combination with memantine (a glutamate antagonist), galantamine is followed as a standard of care for AD therapy, which has provided concurrent improvement in patient symptoms (Koola 2020).

The second-generation AChEI has entered the market. Another drug, *rivastigmine tartrate*, is used to treat mild-to-moderate AD. It is proposed to exert its effect by enhancing cholinergic activity through its targets—butyryl- and acetyl-ChE. Chemically a carbamate, rivastigmine tartrate binds to AChE and is cleaved into many phenol derivatives that are rapidly excreted. The carbamate moiety of

rivastigmine binds the ES subunit of AChE with higher affinity than the acetate moiety of ACh. This binding inactivates the enzyme for a short period. Side effects of rivastigmine include stomach pain, diarrhea, nausea and vomiting, and loss of appetite. Overdosing may cause fast or slow breathing, chest pain, and slow or irregular heartbeat (Hirosawa et al. 2020). While rivastigmine and galantamine are efficacious in AD patients with mild-to-moderate symptoms, donepezil benefits are extended in alleviating severe AD symptoms (Feldman et al. 2001; Farlow et al. 2010). Galantamine, together with donepezil, also effectively inhibits AChE (Hirosawa et al. 2020). While rivastigmine is a reversible BChE and AChE inhibitor, donepezil is highly selective for acetyl compared to butyryl-ChE (Hirosawa et al. 2020).

Physostigmine is a tertiary amine carbamate AChE inhibitor, which effectively crosses the blood-brain barrier (BBB) (Hirosawa et al. 2020). However, the drug loses its therapeutic potential owing to its short half-life and adverse side effects. This has also been discontinued like tacrine due to higher side effects than their therapeutic indexes.

Though the past decades witnessed quite a few efficient AChE inhibitors, the efficacy of these drugs has been narrow and could alleviate AD symptoms for a short time (Li et al. 2019). None of them were effective in curtailing the progression of AD (Huisa et al. 2019). Furthermore, the administration of these drugs is associated with varied side effects, especially at higher doses. Innumerable short-term clinical trials; double-blind, randomized controlled trials (placebo); and long-term cohort studies highlight the following: (a) presently used AChEIs (donepezil, rivastigmine, and galantamine) decrease cognitive, functional, and behavioral deterioration in Alzheimer's disease; (b) efficacies of either of them are apparently similar; (c) benefits from them remain with treatment continuation; (d) their benefits are mostly dose-related (until limited by side effects at very high doses); and (e) they are safe and well tolerated.

Currently, natural and synthetic drug molecules are also in use for AD treatment, of which some are in clinical use currently or in clinical trials based on accepted treatment strategies. Naturally derived inhibitors are identified and isolated natural molecules such as polyphenols, carbamates, alkaloids, and anatoxins (from green algae). At the same time, synthetic analogs include indenyl derivatives, ladostigil, and tacrine analogs.

8.2.3 Naturally Derived Inhibitors

Numerous phytochemical studies have identified and isolated natural molecules such as alkaloids, coumarins, terpenes, and polyphenols possessing a wide range of pharmacological activity against cholinesterase enzymes. These natural products also possess antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, anti-amyloidogenic, and neuroprotective activities. Hence, they have been assessed for designing and developing new anti-Alzheimer's drugs (Huang et al. 2014b).

Flavonoids have served as a good candidate as an AD inhibitor due to their free-radical-scavenging characteristics. Many derivatives of flavonoids, such as quercetin and galangin, have shown efficacy in AChE inhibition (Uriarte-Pueyo and Calvo 2011). Similarly, cardanol, a phenolic lipid extracted from cashew nut shells, has shown promising results in inhibiting AChE (Lemes et al. 2016). However, the toxicity and side effects for both compounds have not been evaluated in preclinical or clinical settings. Some cholinesterase inhibitors derived from marine sources such as algae and ascidians have also proven to inhibit AChE activity (Moodie et al. 2019). Recently, honey has been demonstrated in a preliminary study as a source of AChE inhibitors attributed primarily to its flavonoids and phenolic acid content (Baranowska-Wójcik et al. 2020).

The lesser use of Huperzine A (HupA), again a natural AChE inhibitor for AD patients' clinical treatment, is reported. Its property of being a highly selective, reversible, and potent AChE inhibitor gained attention (Wang et al. 2009). HupA when hybridized with donepzil has resulted in lesser effectiveness. While the HupA-tacrine hybrids known as Huprines Y and X are potent in inhibiting AChE in vitro compared to Tacrine (Camps and Munoz-Torrero 2005). HupA alone with its higher oral bioavailability than tacrine and donepezil shows appreciable improvement on working memory than reference memory (Bai 2007). HupA is better in inhibiting AChE activity than tacrine, rivastigmine, and galantamine with the least activity against BuChE (Wang et al. 2009). Huperzine B (HupB) is another natural alkaloid isolated from lycopodium proven effective and a reversible inhibitor of AChE. However, HupB is not that potent and selective like HupA, but it has a greater therapeutic index and other encouraging benefits (Bai 2007).

Nonetheless, the global availability of HupA tossed with greater potency prevents the clinical development of HupB. Yet the clinical use of HupA for AD treatment is lesser because of its sale in the USA as a nutraceutical supplement. This is due to the lack of a proprietary patent, and hence, FDA approval is not being pursued.

8.3 Synthetic Analogs: Indenyl Derivatives, Tacrine Analog, Donepezil-Based Derivatives

Targeted drug analogs such as indenyl derivatives, ladostigil, and tacrine analogs have been used in the treatment regime for AD. Though they bypass the gastrointestinal side effects and hepatotoxicity, they have lower BBB permeability leading to lower efficacy as compared to other types of AChEIs.

Numerous researchers found that analogs of phenyl-5,6-dimethoxy-1-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-2-indenylmethanone show moderate AChE inhibitory effects suggesting the presence of methoxy groups on the phenyl ring plausibly improved the inhibition of AChE (Ali et al. 2009; Gupta and Patil 2020). Tacrine analog *N*-alkyl-7-methoxytacrine hydrochloride has shown enhancement in the AChE-inhibitory potential more than the parent drug tacrine (De La Torre et al. 2012). Another set of synthetic analog, 1*H*-pyrazolo[1,2-*b*]phthalazine-5,10-dione derivatives, has been proposed to treat AD, which showed inhibition of AChE at

nanomolar concentrations (Taslimi et al. 2020). Ladostigil, *N*-propargyl-(3R) aminoindan-5yl)-ethyl methyl carbamate, was evaluated to provide potent inhibition of AChE together with neuroprotective properties (Albertini et al. 2020). The drug combines the neuroprotective effects of rasagiline, a selective monoamine oxidase (MAO)-B inhibitor, used for Parkinson's disease with AChE inhibitory activity of rivastigmine, as a potential AD drug (Yogev-Falach et al. 2006). It is presently in Phase II clinical trials. Also, 1,2,3-triazole-chromenone carboxamide derivatives and 1,2,4-triazine and chromone scaffolds are developed as a multi-target agent for AD treatment (Rastegari et al. 2019; Mohsin et al. 2020). Chalcone-based derivatives have also been evaluated to demonstrate AChE inhibitory properties (Burmaoglu et al. 2020). Donepezil-based multifunctional derivatives are also under evaluations as AChE inhibitors to treat AD (Li et al. 2018).

Multifactorial AD pathogenesis suggests controlling one target as insufficient in AD therapy. This could be overcome with a new emerging strategy named multi-target-directed ligands (MTDLs) (Bolognesi et al. 2008), wherein one compound as a hybrid molecule simultaneously aims diverse targets with close association to AD (Bajda et al. 2011). Numerous researchers have focused on developing donepezil-based multifunctional ChEI for AD treatment due to its dual-site inhibition property (Li et al. 2016, 2018; Cao et al. 2020). Various indinone derivatives have shown anti-cholinesterase properties (Huang et al. 2014a; Guzior et al. 2014).

8.3.1 Hybrid Inhibitors

For a multifactorial disease like AD, the state-of-the-art model is of the "single-ligand, multiple-target" approach. Hybrids combine BBB permeability with drugs targeting multiple receptors, promising dual mode of action and enhanced effectiveness. Donepezil-AP2238 hybrid was the first developed drug with dual binding sites (Piazzi et al. 2003). Though similar in activities, the effect of AP2238 in inhibiting Aβ-mediated toxicity is higher than donepezil (Piazzi et al. 2003). Currently, the side effect profiles in humans for these hybrids are not known. Drugs used to target aggregation of Aβ protein and AChE activity such as donepezil-based dual inhibitors and tacrine hybrids have been used to target both Aβ aggregation and AChE inhibition (Camps et al. 2008; Tang et al. 2011; Zhang et al. 2016a). Other multipotent hybrid inhibitors include novel tacrine-melatonin hybrids, dual inhibitors of AChE and monoamine oxidase or serotonin transporters, potent ChEIs with antioxidant neuroprotective properties, gallamine-tacrine hybrids binding at ChE, and muscarinic receptors (Singh et al. 2016). The curative model of one-ligand one-target followed from so many decades should now move toward single-molecule targeting as many factors or pathways involved in neuronal death.

8.3.2 Next-Generation Inhibitors

The derivatives of physostigmine such as tolserine, eseroline, and phenserine, have been synthesized and tested for its activity on AChE. Tolserine differs from phenserine at the phenylcarbinol moiety, by the presence of a 2-methyl group. This provided tolserine a 200-fold selectivity toward human AChE compared with BChE, which is active at lower concentrations than physostigmine (Kamal et al. 2000). It also showed increased potency toward AChE compared to phenserine or physostigmine (Yu et al. 2010). Another drug, eseroline, a metabolite of physostigmine, was effective against ACE with higher selectivity than BChE (Zhan et al. 2010). However, the drug has not been continued to be used for AD therapy.

A selective, noncompetitive AChE inhibitor, Phenserine, has been shown to improve cognition in AD patients. Phenserine also reduces the APP mRNA, reducing Aβ peptide formation (Zhan et al. 2010). Clinical testing for AD showed only moderate success in initial Phase II clinical trials. Phenserine was considered a promising drug for developing novel strategies for AD treatment because of its dual effects. However, some Phase III clinical trials indicated it as ineffective, while another clinical trial indicated its effectiveness at higher doses (Becker et al. 2018). Nonetheless, clinical investigations with phenserine are still underway (Lecca et al. 2019).

Another new AChE inhibitor—NS2330 (tesofensine)—was observed to enhance acetylcholine function both in in vitro and in vivo studies (Lehr et al. 2007). Promising results were obtained in the Phase IIA trials showing substantial cognitive improvement in patients with mild AD. But, Phase IIB trials revealed restricted activity; hence the trials did not continue beyond 2007 (Lehr et al. 2007).

In a nutshell, AChEIs alter AD's clinical indicators, and the therapy results in a modest but significant cognitive effect in AD. An alternative approach to treating Alzheimer's disease is the inhibition of NMDA glutamate receptors, which is thought to lead to less excitotoxic injury to the brain.

8.4 *N*-Methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) Receptor Antagonist

The single NMDA receptor inhibitor approved for use in Alzheimer's disease is the glutamate antagonist *memantine* (Namenda: 2003). Memantine has been widely used with modest benefits in clinical settings for the symptomatic treatment of moderate-to-severe forms of AD (Agüera-Ortiz 2010). Memantine being one such antagonist modulates the flow of glutamatergic neuronal transmission relying on glutamate as the main excitatory neurotransmitter. During normal physiological functions, memantine ineffectively blocks the low receptor activity levels. While at enhanced glutamate concentrations associated with increased activation of NMDAR, it is found to be appreciably effective (Chen and Lipton 2006) and, hence, blocks the lethal effects of overactive glutamatergic activity such as compromised synaptic plasticity and neuron damage (Danysz and Parsons 2003). Better benefits to the patients were harnessed when memantine is used along with

AChE inhibitors. Notably, memantine being well tolerated in AD, its combination with other therapies could be a valuable and feasible alternative. And in numerous clinical trials, it has displayed statistically significant improvements (Van Dyck et al. 2007). Thus, it is concluded that NMDAR antagonists hold potential in the upcoming treatments of this neurodegenerative disorder.

8.5 Other Treatment Options

Another major drug approach is to target tau protein hyperphosphorylation causing the formation of intracellular neurofibrillary tangles of the microtubule-associated τ protein (Panza et al. 2016; Hashweh et al. 2020). With the discovery of phenothiazines and methylthioninium as τ protein aggregation inhibitors, computational analysis-based drug discovery has speeded up. Many additional small molecule inhibitors have been discovered, and studies were carried out to identify effective inhibitors. Nonetheless, an effective inhibitor should have improved blood-brain barrier permeability and milder side effects. Presently, many clinical trials are being carried out on drugs that target earlier stages of the disease, particularly preclinical AD instead of mild-or-moderate disease (Khoury et al. 2017).

8.6 Future Directions

With the discovery of first acetylcholinesterase inhibitor—physostigmine—numerous studies have been done to gain better and efficient inhibitors (Thal et al. 1983). Compared to the traditional inhibitors, their analogs, naturally derived inhibitors and hybrid of synthetic inhibitors, cause less side effects. They also bear enhanced properties such as improved BBB permeability and better efficacy (Camps et al. 2008). Studies on most of these inhibitors are either on animal models or done in vitro and computational based. Hence, to ascertain their safety, toxicity, and efficacy, future studies are needed in humans. Single drug agent is inefficient in inhibiting disease progression completely, and undoubtedly many of such single target agents have failed in clinical trials. Hence, a multi-target-directed ligand is a wise approach with promising results toward various abnormalities, symptoms, and pathways. For prospective studies, the design of novel MTDLs should bear the characteristics based on available structure-activity relationship studies (Luo et al. 2013; Zhang et al. 2018; Singh et al. 2019).

Nonetheless, extensive randomized studies and more clinical trials of such inhibitors are required to evaluate their potential and confirm their specific role. The choice among drug combinations should be based on safety, drug burden, drug-drug interactions, and a total number of non-overlapping pathways targeted. Clinical trials should test the efficacy and safety of the drug combinations for which promising research and clinical studies are available. Investigations in the future need to correlate patient's response to clinically vital outcomes that can streamline benefits out of these drugs as single agent, combination, or MTDLs.

8.7 Conclusions

Globally accepted anti-Alzheimer drug therapy comprises four acetylcholinesterase inhibitors (tacrine, donepezil, rivastigmine, and galantamine) and one NMDA receptor antagonist (memantine). All of them are more palliative than disease-modifying therapy, and hence, none of them are successful in preventing the final disease outcome. Acetylcholinesterase inhibitor-based investigations and the progress have scaled up from neurotoxins to neuroprotection characterized by cholinergic deficit in AD. The clinical trials in this direction have confirmed appreciable improvements in cognition and activities of daily living with these modulators. Yet not all AD sufferers are benefitted from these existing therapeutics. Currently, existing drug therapies are associated with several side effects; hence developing novel agents with different structures and action modes is needed. Being a multifactorial disease, multi-target inhibitors for Alzheimer's are a promising alternative. Simultaneously addressing many biochemical pathways could stall this multifactorial disease by hindering the cognitive impairment in the first place. Additionally, the impact of treatment on long-term outcomes, including institutionalization, remains unclear. Also, evidence supporting a duration for which these treatments should be given is limited (Glynn-Servedio and Ranola 2017).

The elderly population is enormously expanding, and it is speculated that by 2050, one in three persons will have dementia, mainly due to Alzheimer's disease (Glynn-Servedio and Ranola 2017). This demands developing effective ways for very early diagnosis and efficient disease-modulating therapies to avert and treat AD. Overall, more significant efforts are needed to gain insight into the disease mechanism and discover new scaffolds with novel drug targets, better drug efficacy, safety, and prolonged adequate time. With the advancement in understanding inhibitors and antagonists, preclinical markers and neuropreventive strategies should also be targeted toward "at-risk" patients before the disease's clinical onset.

Conflict of Interest The authors declare no conflict of interest.

References

Agüera-Ortiz LF (2010) Memantine in the pharmacologic treatment of moderately severe to severe Alzheimer's disease in Spain (MEMORY study). Rev Neurol 51:525–534. https://doi.org/10.33588/rn.5109.2010246

Albertini C, Salerno A, Sena Murteira Pinheiro P, Bolognesi ML (2020) From combinations to multitarget-directed ligands: a continuum in Alzheimer's disease polypharmacology. Med Res Rev Med 21699. https://doi.org/10.1002/med.21699

Ali MA, Yar MS, Hasan MZ et al (2009) Design, synthesis and evaluation of novel 5,6-dimethoxy-1-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-2-indenyl-3,4-substituted phenyl methanone analogues. Bioorg Med Chem Lett 19:5075–5077. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bmcl.2009.07.042

Anand P, Singh B (2013) A review on cholinesterase inhibitors for Alzheimer's disease. Arch Pharm Res 36:375–399

Andrieu S, Coley N, Lovestone S et al (2015) Prevention of sporadic Alzheimer's disease: lessons learned from clinical trials and future directions. Lancet Neurol 14:926–944

Asiri YA, Mostafa GAE (2010) Donepezil. In: Profiles of drug substances, excipients and related methodology. Academic Press Inc., pp 117–150

Bai D (2007) Development of huperzine A and B for treatment of Alzheimer's disease. Pure Appl Chem 79:469–479. https://doi.org/10.1351/pac200779040469

Bajda M, Guzior N, Ignasik M, Malawska B (2011) Multi-target-directed ligands in Alzheimer's disease treatment. Curr Med Chem 18:4949–4975. https://doi.org/10.2174/092986711797535245

Baranowska-Wójcik E, Szwajgier D, Winiarska-Mieczan A (2020) Honey as the potential natural source of cholinesterase inhibitors in Alzheimer's disease. Plant Foods Hum Nutr 75:30–32. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11130-019-00791-1

Bartus RT, Dean RL, Beer B, Lippa AS (1982) The cholinergic hypothesis of geriatric memory dysfunction. Science 217:408–417

Becker RE, Greig NH, Lahiri DK et al (2018) (-)-Phenserine and inhibiting pre-programmed cell death: in pursuit of a novel intervention for Alzheimer's disease. Curr Alzheimer Res 15:883–891. https://doi.org/10.2174/1567205015666180110120026

Bohnen NI, Kaufer DI, Ivanco LS et al (2003) Cortical cholinergic function is more severely affected in parkinsonian dementia than in Alzheimer disease: an in vivo positron emission tomographic study. Arch Neurol 60:1745–1748. https://doi.org/10.1001/archneur.60.12.1745

Bolognesi M, Minarini A, Rosini M et al (2008) From dual binding site acetylcholinesterase inhibitors to multi-target-directed ligands (MTDLs): a step forward in the treatment of Alzheimer's disease. Mini-Rev Med Chem 8:960–967. https://doi.org/10.2174/138955708785740652

Burmaoglu S, Kazancioglu EA, Kaya R et al (2020) Synthesis of novel organohalogen chalcone derivatives and screening of their molecular docking study and some enzymes inhibition effects. J Mol Struct 1208:127868. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.molstruc.2020.127868

Burns A, Iliffe S (2009) Alzheimer's disease. BMJ (Online) 338:467–471

Camps P, Munoz-Torrero D (2005) Tacrine-Huperzine a hybrids (Huprines) a new class of highly potent and selective acetylcholinesterase inhibitors of interest for the treatment of Alzheimer disease. Mini-Rev Med Chem 1:163–174. https://doi.org/10.2174/1389557013406972

Camps P, Formosa X, Galdeano C et al (2008) Novel donepezil-based inhibitors of acetyl- and butyrylcholinesterase and acetylcholinesterase-induced β-amyloid aggregation. J Med Chem 51:3588–3598. https://doi.org/10.1021/jm8001313

Cao Y, Qian L, Yu W et al (2020) Donepezil plus memantine versus donepezil alone for treatment of concomitant Alzheimer's disease and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a retrospective observational study. J Int Med Res 48:030006052090289. https://doi.org/10.1177/0300060520902895

Chen HSV, Lipton SA (2006) The chemical biology of clinically tolerated NMDA receptor antagonists. J Neurochem 97:1611–1626

Danysz W, Parsons CG (2003) The NMDA receptor antagonist memantine as a symptomatological and neuroprotective treatment for Alzheimer's disease: preclinical evidence. Int J Geriatr Psychiatry 18(Suppl 1):S23–S32

David L, Cheah E, Cygler M et al (1992) The α/β hydrolase fold. Protein Eng Des Sel 5:197–211. https://doi.org/10.1093/protein/5.3.197

De La Torre P, Saavedra LA, Caballero J et al (2012) A novel class of selective acetylcholinesterase inhibitors: synthesis and evaluation of (E)-2-(benzo[d]thiazol-2-yl)-3-heteroarylacrylonitriles. Molecules 17:12072–12085. https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules171012072

Emre M, Ford PJ, Bilgiç B, Uç EY (2014) Cognitive impairment and dementia in Parkinson's disease: practical issues and management. Mov Disord 29:663–672

Farlow MR, Salloway S, Tariot PN et al (2010) Effectiveness and tolerability of high-dose (23 mg/d) versus standard-dose (10 mg/d) donepezil in moderate to severe Alzheimer's disease: a 24-week, randomized, double-blind study. Clin Ther 32:1234–1251. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.clinthera.2010.06.019

Feldman H, Gauthier S, Hecker J et al (2001) A 24-week, randomized, double-blind study of donepezil in moderate to severe Alzheimer's disease. Neurology 57:613–620. https://doi.org/10.1212/WNL.57.4.613

Ferreira ST, Lourenco MV, Oliveira MM, De Felice FG (2015) Soluble amyloid-β oligomers as synaptotoxins leading to cognitive impairment in Alzheimer's disease. Front Cell Neurosci 9

Forette F, Hauw JJ (2008) Alzheimer's disease: from brain lesions to new drugs. Bull Acad Natl Med 192:363–380. https://doi.org/10.1016/s0001-4079(19)32836-5

Glynn-Servedio BE, Ranola TS (2017) AChE inhibitors and NMDA receptor antagonists in advanced Alzheimer's disease. Consult Pharm 32:511–518

Gupta SP, Patil VM (2020) Recent studies on design and development of drugs against Alzheimer's disease (AD) based on inhibition of BACE-1 and other AD-causative agents. Curr Top Med Chem 20:1195–1213. https://doi.org/10.2174/1568026620666200416091623

Guzior N, Wieckowska A, Panek D, Malawska B (2014) Recent development of multifunctional agents as potential drug candidates for the treatment of Alzheimer's disease. Curr Med Chem 22:373–404. https://doi.org/10.2174/0929867321666141106122628

Hashweh NN, Bartochowski Z, Khoury R, Grossberg GT (2020) An evaluation of hydromethylthionine as a treatment option for Alzheimer's disease. Expert Opin Pharmacother 21:619–627. https://doi.org/10.1080/14656566.2020.1719066

Hirosawa T, Kontani K, Fukai M et al (2020) Different associations between intelligence and social cognition in children with and without autism spectrum disorders. PLoS One 15:1–18. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0235380

Huang L, Miao H, Sun Y et al (2014a) Discovery of indanone derivatives as multi-target-directed ligands against Alzheimer's disease. Eur J Med Chem 87:429–439. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejmech.2014.09.081

Huang L, Su T, Li X (2014b) Natural products as sources of new lead compounds for the treatment of Alzheimer's disease. Curr Top Med Chem 13:1864–1878. https://doi.org/10.2174/1568026613139990142

Huisa BN, Thomas RG, Jin S et al (2019) Memantine and acetylcholinesterase inhibitor use in Alzheimer's disease clinical trials: potential for confounding by indication. J Alzheimers Dis 67:707–713. https://doi.org/10.3233/JAD-180684

Hynd MR, Scott HL, Dodd PR (2004) Glutamate-mediated excitotoxicity and neurodegeneration in Alzheimer's disease. Neurochem Int 45:583–595

Jia J, Wei C, Chen W et al (2020) Safety and efficacy of donepezil 10 mg/day in patients with mild to moderate Alzheimer's disease. J Alzheimers Dis 74:199–211. https://doi.org/10.3233/JAD-190940

Kamal MA, Greig NH, Alhomida AS, Al-Jafari AA (2000) Kinetics of human acetylcholinesterase inhibition by the novel experimental Alzheimer therapeutic agent, tolserine. Biochem Pharmacol 60:561–570. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0006-2952(00)00330-0

Khoury R, Patel K, Gold J et al (2017) Recent progress in the pharmacotherapy of Alzheimer's disease. Drugs Aging 34:811–820. https://doi.org/10.1007/s40266-017-0499-x

Koola MM (2020) Galantamine-memantine combination in the treatment of Alzheimer's disease and beyond. Psychiatry Res 293:113409

Kryger G, Silman I, Sussman JL (1999) Structure of acetylcholinesterase complexed with E2020 (Aricept®): implications for the design of new anti-Alzheimer drugs. Structure 7:297–307. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0969-2126(99)80040-9

Lane RM, Potkin SG, Enz A (2006) Targeting acetylcholinesterase and butyrylcholinesterase in dementia. Int J Neuropsychopharmacol 9:101–124

Lecca D, Bader M, Tweedie D et al (2019) (-)-Phenserine and the prevention of pre-programmed cell death and neuroinflammation in mild traumatic brain injury and Alzheimer's disease challenged mice. Neurobiol Dis 130:104528. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nbd.2019.104528

Lehr T, Staab A, Tillmann C et al (2007) Population pharmacokinetic modelling of NS2330 (tesofensine) and its major metabolite in patients with Alzheimer's disease. Br J Clin Pharmacol 64:36–48. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2125.2007.02855.x

Lemes LFN, De Andrade Ramos G, De Oliveira AS et al (2016) Cardanol-derived AChE inhibitors: towards the development of dual binding derivatives for Alzheimer's disease. Eur J Med Chem 108:687–700. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejmech.2015.12.024

Li F, Wang ZM, Wu JJ et al (2016) Synthesis and pharmacological evaluation of donepezil-based agents as new cholinesterase/monoamine oxidase inhibitors for the potential application against Alzheimer's disease. J Enzyme Inhib Med Chem 31:41–53. https://doi.org/10.1080/14756366.2016.1201814

Li Q, He S, Chen Y et al (2018) Donepezil-based multi-functional cholinesterase inhibitors for treatment of Alzheimer's disease. Eur J Med Chem 158:463–477

Li DD, Zhang YH, Zhang W, Zhao P (2019) Meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials on the efficacy and safety of donepezil, galantamine, rivastigmine, and memantine for the treatment of Alzheimer's disease. Front Neurosci 13. https://doi.org/10.3389/fnins.2019.00472

Lin YT, Chou MC, Wu SJ, Yang YH (2019) Galantamine plasma concentration and cognitive response in Alzheimer's disease. PeerJ. https://doi.org/10.7717/peerj.6887

Luo Z, Sheng J, Sun Y et al (2013) Synthesis and evaluation of multi-target-directed ligands against Alzheimer's disease based on the fusion of donepezil and ebselen. J Med Chem 56:9089–9099. https://doi.org/10.1021/jm401047q

Mehta M, Adem A, Sabbagh M (2012) New acetylcholinesterase inhibitors for Alzheimer's disease. Int J Alzheimers Dis. https://doi.org/10.1155/2012/728983

Mohsin NA, Irfan M, Hassan S, Saleem U (2020) Current strategies in development of new chromone derivatives with diversified pharmacological activities: a review. Pharm Chem J 54:241–257. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11094-020-02187-x

Moodie LWK, Sepcic K, Turk T et al (2019) Natural cholinesterase inhibitors from marine organisms. Nat Prod Rep 36:1053–1092

Panza F, Solfrizzi V, Seripa D et al (2016) Tau-centric targets and drugs in clinical development for the treatment of Alzheimer's disease. Biomed Res Int 2016:3245935

Perl DP (2010) Neuropathology of Alzheimer's disease. Mt Sinai J Med 77:32–42

Perry EK, Irving D, Kerwin JM et al (1993) Cholinergic transmitter and neurotrophic activities in Lewy body dementia: similarity to Parkinson's and distinction from Alzheimer disease. Alzheimer Dis Assoc Disord 7:69–79

Piazzi L, Rampa A, Bisi A et al (2003) 3-(4-{[benzyl(methyl)amino]methyl}-phenyl)-6,7-dimethoxy-2H-2-chromenone (AP2238) inhibits both acetylcholinesterase and acetylcholinesterase-induced β-amyloid aggregation: a dual function lead for Alzheimer's disease therapy. J Med Chem 46:2279–2282. https://doi.org/10.1021/jm0340602

Raschetti R, Albanese E, Vanacore N, Maggini M (2007) Cholinesterase inhibitors in mild cognitive impairment: a systematic review of randomised trials. PLoS Med 4:1818–1828. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pmed.0040338

Rastegari A, Nadri H, Mahdavi M et al (2019) Design, synthesis and anti-Alzheimer's activity of novel 1,2,3-triazole-chromenone carboxamide derivatives. Bioorg Chem 83:391–401. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bioorg.2018.10.065

Shinotoh H, Namba H, Fukushi K et al (2000) Progressive loss of cortical acetylcholinesterase activity in association with cognitive decline in Alzheimer's disease: a positron emission tomography study. Ann Neurol 48:194–200

Singh M, Kaur M, Chadha N, Silakari O (2016) Hybrids: a new paradigm to treat Alzheimer's disease. Mol Divers 20:271–297

Singh H, Singh JV, Bhagat K et al (2019) Rational approaches, design strategies, structure activity relationship and mechanistic insights for therapeutic coumarin hybrids. Bioorgan Med Chem 27:3477–3510

Tang H, Zhao LZ, Zhao HT et al (2011) Hybrids of oxoisoaporphine-tacrine congeners: novel acetylcholinesterase and acetylcholinesterase-induced β-amyloid aggregation inhibitors. Eur J Med Chem 46:4970–4979. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejmech.2011.08.002

Taslimi P, Turhan K, Türkan F et al (2020) Cholinesterases, α-glycosidase, and carbonic anhydrase inhibition properties of 1H-pyrazolo[1,2-b]phthalazine-5,10-dione derivatives: synthetic

analogues for the treatment of Alzheimer's disease and diabetes mellitus. Bioorg Chem 97:103647. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bioorg.2020.103647

Thal LJ, Fuld PA, Masur DM, Sharpless NS (1983) Oral physostigmine and lecithin improve memory in Alzheimer disease. Ann Neurol 13:491–496. https://doi.org/10.1002/ana.410130504

Uriarte-Pueyo I, Calvo M (2011) Flavonoids as acetylcholinesterase inhibitors. Curr Med Chem 18:5289–5302. https://doi.org/10.2174/092986711798184325

Van Dyck CH, Tariot PN, Meyers B, Malca Resnick E (2007) A 24-week randomized, controlled trial of memantine in patients with moderate-to-severe Alzheimer disease. Alzheimer Dis Assoc Disord 21:136–143. https://doi.org/10.1097/WAD.0b013e318065c495

van Laar T, De Deyn PP, Aarsland D et al (2011) Effects of cholinesterase inhibitors in Parkinson's disease dementia: a review of clinical data. CNS Neurosci Ther 17:428–441. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1755-5949.2010.00166.x

Wagstaff AJ, McTavish D (1994) Tacrine: a review of its pharmacodynamic and pharmacokinetic properties, and therapeutic efficacy in Alzheimer's disease. Drugs Aging 4:510–540. https://doi.org/10.2165/00002512-199404060-00006

Wang BS, Wang H, Wei ZH et al (2009) Efficacy and safety of natural acetylcholinesterase inhibitor huperzine A in the treatment of Alzheimer's disease: an updated meta-analysis. J Neural Transm 116:457–465. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00702-009-0189-x

Yogev-Falach M, Bar-Am O, Amit T et al (2006) A multifunctional, neuroprotective drug, ladostigil (TV3326), regulates holo-APP translation and processing. FASEB J 20:2177–2179. https://doi.org/10.1096/fj.05-4910fje

Yu QS, Holloway HW, Luo W et al (2010) Long-acting anticholinesterases for myasthenia gravis: synthesis and activities of quaternary phenylcarbamates of neostigmine, pyridostigmine and physostigmine. Bioorgan Med Chem 18:4687–4693. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bmc.2010.05.022

Zhan ZJ, Bian HL, Wang JW, Shan WG (2010) Synthesis of physostigmine analogues and evaluation of their anticholinesterase activities. Bioorgan Med Chem Lett 20:1532–1534. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bmcl.2010.01.097

Zhang C, Du QY, Di Chen L et al (2016a) Design, synthesis and evaluation of novel tacrine-multialkoxybenzene hybrids as multi-targeted compounds against Alzheimer's disease. Eur J Med Chem 116:200–209. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejmech.2016.03.077

Zhang Y, Li P, Feng J, Wu M (2016b) Dysfunction of NMDA receptors in Alzheimer's disease. Neurol Sci 37:1039–1047

Zhang X, He X, Chen Q et al (2018) A review on the hybrids of hydroxycinnamic acid as multi-target-directed ligands against Alzheimer's disease. Bioorgan Med Chem 26:543–550

Genetic Basis of Psychotic Illnesses: A Comprehensive Overview

9

Md. Abdul Aziz, Tahmina Akter, Md. Abdul Barek, and Mohammad Safiqul Islam

Abstract

Psychotic illness is a major health burden at the present world. Common psychotic disorders like autism spectrum disorders and schizophrenia frequently share clinical manifestations caused by brain dysfunction. However, there is a clear distinction between early- and late-onset psychotic illnesses. Despite appreciable advancement in identifying the genetic risk factors for most psychiatric illnesses, it is still unknown how these genetic variants interact with epigenetic risk factors and environmental factors that predispose risk for these clinically distinct disorders. In this chapter, we tried to trace the clinical features of psychotic illnesses and the relationship between these disorders with genetic insight. Furthermore, we reviewed the common therapeutic targets for these conditions. From the discussion, it is clear that psychotic illnesses share a genetic overlap and the therapeutic target of these abnormalities relies on the same pipeline. Therefore, prospects will be to develop more specific therapies for treating psychotic illnesses.

Keywords

Psychotic illness · Autism spectrum disorders · Schizophrenia · Childhood-onset schizophrenia · Multiplex developmental disorder · Genetic factors · Oxytocin

M. A. Aziz · T. Akter · M. A. Barek · M. S. Islam (✉)
Department of Pharmacy, Noakhali Science and Technology University, Noakhali, Bangladesh

G. Md Ashraf, A. Alexiou (eds.), *Autism Spectrum Disorder and Alzheimer's Disease*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-4558-7_9

9.1 Introduction

Psychotic illness is a combined period of unusual perceptions termed hallucinations and distortions of reality called delusions. The prevalence of psychotic illness is relatively low in the world's general population, comprising a ratio of about 1:100. However, increased research on psychotic disorders has revealed a higher frequency of this disorder. For instance, recent data suggest that psychotic disorder is found in more than 3 in every 100 autistic people, which is almost three times higher than in the general population (Zheng et al. 2018).

There is a substantial overlap between different psychotic conditions describing the relationship between them. The complex relationship of autism spectrum disorder (ASD) and schizophrenia is one such case (King and Lord 2011). However, these disorders may vary considerably in terms of age of onset, with the former usually first seen in childhood and the latter in adolescence or early adulthood. Moreover, people with ASD may present comorbid psychotic conditions, including schizophrenia and bipolar disorder. This ultimately predisposes a person with ASD to a greater risk of experiencing psychotic disorders than the general population (Larson et al. 2017).

The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, Fifth Edition (DSM-5) classified ASD under neurodevelopmental disorders and schizophrenia under schizophrenia spectrum and other psychotic disorders of section II (Regier et al. 2013). According to a previous study performed by Pourcain et al. (2018), the shared genetic causes between various psychiatric illnesses found a slight overlap between ASD and schizophrenia. However, a more significant overlap was observed than adult-onset psychiatric disorders. Mouridsen et al. (2008) reported that the rate is as high as 28%. A population-based study demonstrated that depending on the type of psychotic illnesses, ASD patients with their odds have a comorbid psychotic illness between 5.6 and 5.8 (Selten et al. 2015). Another previous study has also described the epidemiological evidence about the connection between childhood developmental disorders and adulthood psychotic conditions (Khandaker et al. 2014).

In this chapter, we try to trace the clinical features of various psychotic illnesses such as ASD, schizophrenia, and the relationship between these disorders with genetic insight. Furthermore, we overview the common therapeutic targets and provide prospects of these conditions.

9.2 Clinical Features Shared Between Psychotic Disorders

From the very beginning, it has been a common debate in the thought of psychiatric diseases whether or not the association between various disorders exists. Are there any relations among these abnormalities, for example, if autism shares its features with schizophrenia or it is distinct? Suppose we try to get the origin of this debate. In that case, we have to look back to the history of the clinical discoveries and

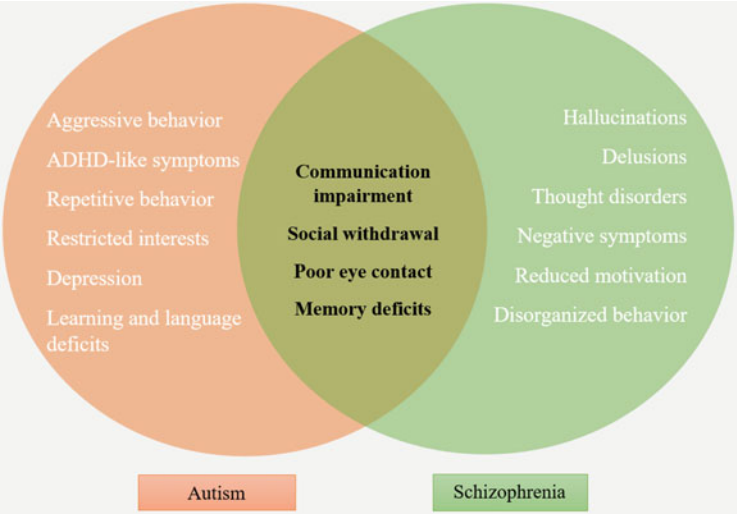


Fig. 9.1 Shared clinical features between ASD and schizophrenia

phenomenological manifestations from the past century of these disorders (Vorstman and Burbach 2014).

However, recent results from thousands of genetic studies have revitalized the concept by providing more recent insights into the genetic risk factors for psychiatric disorders like ASD, schizophrenia, or others (Vorstman and Burbach 2014).

Although psychiatric illnesses are distinct, they share some common clinical characteristics. For instance, impairment of communication, poor eye contact, and social withdrawal faced by ASD patients are almost similar to symptoms (negative) of schizophrenia in youths, as shown in Fig. 9.1 (Posey et al. 2004). From a study by the National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH), it was found that a subset of children (28%) with childhood-onset schizophrenia (COS) have comorbid COS and ASD (Rapoport et al. 2009).

Surprisingly, some experiments have followed ASD individuals forward into adulthood or looked back in schizophrenic adults for consistent ASD history. A study confirms a relatively stronger correlation between ASD and schizophrenia than what is assumed from their respective prevalence. According to earlier reports, around 12% to 50% of individuals with ASD face psychotic disorders (Sverd 2003). Other studies also confirmed subgroup overlapping between psychotic conditions. Konstantareas and Hewitt (2001) reported that all ASD patients with similar criteria as schizophrenia suffered from disorganized subtype, though patients with paranoid schizophrenia experienced ASD.

Moreover, male patients with ASD experienced a higher frequency of negative symptoms than those with schizophrenia, which is related closely to the deficit subtype of schizophrenia. An investigation by Stahlberg et al. (2004) concluded that around 50% of patients from 241 adults with childhood neuropsychiatric

disorders had ASD when they were assessed without exclusion criteria. Among them, 15% of adults met the criteria for psychotic disorders.

Most researchers use different terms to describe psychiatric comorbidities and developmental psychopathology due to mixed or shared clinical features. For example, researchers from Yale Child Study Center named a subgroup of ASD children as "multiplex developmental disorder" (MCDD) (Towbin et al. 1993; Klin et al. 1995), which the researchers of Netherlands further applied to describe children meeting similar criteria for both ASD and disordered thinking and/or affect dysregulation (van der Gaag et al. 1995, 2005; Buitelaar and van der Gaag 1998; de Bruin et al. 2007). A follow-up study by van der Gaag et al. (1995) found that psychotic illness is developed by adulthood in almost 64% of children with MCDD. A similar study compared youths at risk for psychotic disorders and youths with MCDD but found no differences in schizophrenic characteristics, disorganization, or prodromal symptoms.

However, in terms of early development and treatment histories, both groups had apparent differences. The study explicated that most of the children with MCDD are at high risk for the development of psychotic illness in the latter half of their life. Almost 78% of the MCDD group met the criteria for at-risk mental condition (Sprong et al. 2008).

9.3 Genetics Behind Psychotic Disorders

Despite appreciable advancement in identifying the genetic risk factors or etiology for most psychiatric illnesses, it is still unknown how these genetic variants interact with epigenetic risk factors and environmental factors that predispose risk for clinically distinct disorders. Several studies demonstrated that shared genetic factors might underlie a substantial part of cross-disorder expression overlap in individuals (Geschwind and Flint 2015; Gandal et al. 2016; Gandal et al. 2018).

Various studies have reported multiple genes that are associated with ASD as shown in Table 9.1 (Wiśniowiecka-Kowalnik and Nowakowska 2019; Rylaarsdam and Guemez-Gamboa 2019; Matsuzaki et al. 2012) and schizophrenia as shown in Table 9.2 (Lin et al. 2016; Escudero and Johnstone 2014). Notably, many potential candidate genes of ASD are associated with other psychiatric disorders, specifically, schizophrenia, describing a genetic overlap between ASD and schizophrenia (Table 9.3) (Rapoport et al. 2009; Crespi et al. 2010; Kasarpalkar et al. 2014; Lin et al. 2016; Cross-Disorder Group of the Psychiatric Genomics Consortium 2013). This overlap is found not only for schizophrenia but also in other neuropsychiatric disorders such as mental retardation or attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) (Vorstman and Burbach 2014). Researches with polygenic risk scores have consistently shown that mental disorders' prediction improves by including genetic variants that are more weakly associated. This data suggests that thousands of genetic variants are associated with determining the risk for most psychotic illnesses (Wray et al. 2014).

Table 9.1 Candidate gene for autism spectrum disorder (ASD)

Gene	Description	Chromosomal location
ABCA1	ATP binding cassette subfamily A member 1	9q31.1
ADNP	Activity-dependent neuroprotector homeobox	20q13.13
ANK3	Ankyrin 3	10q21.2
ATP10C	ATPase class V type 10C	15q12
CACNA1E	Calcium voltage-gated channel subunit alpha1 E	1q25.3
CADPS2	Ca^{2+}-dependent secretion activator 2	7q31.32
CHD8	Chromodomain helicase DNA binding protein 8	14q11.2
CLCN6	Chloride voltage-gated channel 6	1p36.22
DLX5	Distal-less homeobox 5	7q21.3
EFHC2	EF-hand domain (C-terminal) containing 2	Xp11.3
FMR1	Fragile X mental retardation 1	Xq27.3
FOXP1	Forkhead box P1	3p13
FOXP2	Forkhead box P2	7q31.1
GABRB3	Gamma-aminobutyric acid A receptor, beta 3	15q12
GABRG3	Gamma-aminobutyric acid type A receptor Gamma 3 subunit	15q12
GRIN2B	Glutamate ionotropic receptor NMDA type subunit 2B	12p13.1
HOXA1	Homeobox A1	7p15.2
HTR3A	5-hydroxytryptamine receptor 3A	11q23.2
IMMP2L	IMP2 inner mitochondrial membrane peptidase-like	7q31.1
KATNAL2	Katanin catalytic subunit A1 like 2	18q21.1
KCND2	Potassium voltage-gated channel subfamily D member 2	7q31.31
KCNQ3	Potassium voltage-gated channel subfamily Q members 3	8q24.22
KCNQ5	Potassium voltage-gated channel subfamily Q members 5	6q13
NLGN3	Neuroligin 3	Xq13.1
NRP2	Neuropilin 2	2q33.3
POGZ	Pogo transposable element derived with ZNF domain	1q21.3
RBFOX	RNA binding forkhead box	16p13.3
RIPK2	Receptor interacting serine/threonine kinase 2	8q21.3
SCN2A	Sodium voltage-gated channel alpha subunit 2	2q24.3
SHANK2	SH3 and multiple ankyrin repeat domains 2	11q13.3-q13.4
SHANK3	SH3 and multiple ankyrin repeat domains 3	22q13.33
SLC6A4	Serotonin transporter; solute carrier family 6 member 4	17q11
SNRPN	Small nuclear ribonucleoprotein polypeptide N	15q11.2
SYN1	Synaptic vesicle cycling proteins synapsin-1	Xp11.3-p11.23
SYN2	Synaptic vesicle cycling proteins synapsin-2	3p25.2
SYNGAP1	Synaptic Ras GTPase activating protein 1	6p21.32
TSC2	TSC complex subunit 2	16p13.3
UBE3A	Ubiquitin protein ligase E3A	15q11.2
WNT2	Wingless-type MMTV integration site family member 2	7q31.2

Table 9.2 Candidate genes for schizophrenia

Gene	Description	Chromosomal location
ADD1	Adducin 1	4p16.3
ANK3	Ankyrin 3	10q21.2
CCL22	Chemokine, CC Motif, Ligand 22	16q21
CD14	Cluster of differentiation 14	5q31.3
CD34	Hematopoietic progenitor cell antigen	1q32.2
CSMD1	CUB and Sushi multiple domains 1	8p23.2
CXCL12	Chemokine, CXC Motif, Ligand 12	10q11.21
DOCK4	Dedicator of cytokinesis 4	7q31.1
DPP4	Dipeptidyl peptidase IV	2q24.2
EGR1	Early growth response 1	5q31.2
FGFR1	Fibroblast growth factor receptor 1	8p11.23
FLNA	Filamin A	Xq28
FMR1	FMRP translational regulator 1	Xq27.3
GCA	Grancalcin	2q24.2
GNAL	G protein subunit alpha L	18p11.21
GRIA1	Glutamate ionotropic receptor AMPA type subunit 1	5q33.2
GRIN2A	Glutamate ionotropic receptor NMDA type subunit 2A	16p13.2
GRM3	Glutamate metabotropic receptor 3	7q21.11-q21.12
HBEGF	Heparin-binding egf-like growth factor	5q31.3
HTR3B	5-hydroxytryptamine receptor 3B	11q23.2
LRP1	Low density lipoprotein receptor-related protein 1	12q13.3
MAPK3	Mitogen-activated protein kinase 3	16p11.2
MCL1	Myeloid cell leukemia sequence 1	1q21.2
MIR137	MicroRNA 137	1p21.3
MLC1	Modulator of VRAC current 1	22q13.33
MMP16	Matrix metalloproteinase-16	8q21.3
NEURL	Neuralized E3 ubiquitin protein ligase	10q24.33
NISCH	Nischarin	3p21.1
NMUR2	Neuromedin U receptor 2	5q33.1
OPN1LW	Opsin 1, long-wave-sensitive	Xq28
PAM	Peptidylglycine alpha-amidating mono-oxygenase	5q21.1
PCGEM1	Prostate-specific transcript	2q32.3
PLA2G15	Phospholipase A2 group 15	16q22.1
PRKCD	Protein kinase C, delta	3p21.1
PRKD1	Protein kinase D1	14q12
PRMT1	Protein arginine methyltransferase 1	19q13.33
RAD51	Recombinase	15q15.1
SREBF1	Sterol regulatory element-binding transcription factor 1	17p11.2
SRR	Serine racemase	17p13.3
STAR	Steroidogenic acute regulatory protein	8p11.23
SV2B	Synaptic vesicle glycoprotein 2B	15q26.1

(continued)

Table 9.2 (continued)

Gene	Description	Chromosomal location
TAP1	Transporter, ATP-binding cassette, major histocompatibility complex, 1	6p21.32
TIE1	Tyrosine kinase with immunoglobulin and EGF factor homology domains 1	1p34.2
TPR	Translocated promoter region	1q31.1

Table 9.3 Common genes for ASD and schizophrenia

Gene	Description	Chromosomal location
APBA2	Amyloid-beta A4 precursor protein-binding family A member 2	15q13.1
AS3MT	Arsenic (+3 oxidation state) methyltransferase	10q24.32
BDNF	Brain-derived neurotrophic factor	11p14.1
CACNB2	Calcium voltage-gated channel auxiliary subunit beta 2	10p12.33-p12.31
CASPR2	Contactin-associated protein-like 2	7q35-q36
CNTNAP2	Contactin associated protein-like 2	7q35-q36.1
DAO	D-amino acid oxidase	12q24.11
DISC1	Disrupted in schizophrenia 1	1q42
DRD2	Dopamine receptor D2	11q23.2
GAD1	Glutamate decarboxylase 1	2q31.1
GRIK2	Glutamate Ionotropic Receptor Kainate Type Subunit 2	6q16.3
GSTM1	Glutathione S-transferase, MU-1	1p13.3
HTR2A	5-hydroxytryptamine receptor 2A	13q14.2
ITIH3	Inter-alpha-trypsin inhibitor, heavy chain 3	3p21.1
MAOA	Monoamine oxidase A	Xp11.3
MECP2	Methyl-CpG-binding protein 2	Xq28
MTHFR	Methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase	1p36.22
NLGN4	Neuroligin 4	Xp22.32-p22.31
NRXN1	Neurexin 1	2p16.3
RELN	Reelin	7q22.1
SLC6A3	Solute carrier family 6 member 3	5p15.33
TPH2	Tryptophan hydroxylase 2	12q21.1

The genetic relationship between ASD and schizophrenia is not studied extensively, but evidence suggests shared genetic factors (Carroll and Owen 2009). In most psychiatric illnesses and other common abnormalities, genetic complexity is often compounded by phenotypic complexity. Studies of copy number variant (CNV) and rare allele have reported a correlation between ASD and point and structural mutations in neuroligins, neurexins, and related genes (Rapoport et al. 2009). Several reports have implicated the neurexin gene family in schizophrenia. Again, neuroligins are from the postsynaptic protein family that transsynaptically interact with neurexins (presynaptic proteins) required for excitatory and inhibitory

synapses formation and maturation. This gene accumulates neurodevelopmental imbalance in both excitatory and inhibitory transmission theory for ASD and schizophrenia (Carroll and Owen 2009). Rapoport et al. (2009) showed that COS is preceded by and comorbid with a pervasive developmental disorder (PDD) in 30 to 50% of cases and average intelligence with schizophrenia in 46 patients; criteria for ASD were fulfilled by 52% of subjects, increasing to 60% in the paranoid subgroup (Unenge Hallerback et al. 2012).

Multiple deletions such as 1q21.1, 22q11.2, and 15q13.3 are associated with different psychotic disorders, including ASD, schizophrenia, ADHD, and mental retardation (Carroll and Owen 2009). The rate of ASD is higher in patients with velocardiofacial syndrome (22q11) (Vorstman et al. 2006). Similarly, microdeletions or microduplications of 16p11.2 have been observed in 1% of ASD cases and 2% of NIMH childhood-onset schizophrenia cohort (Walsh et al. 2008; Kumar et al. 2008; Shen et al. 2010). These CNVs increase the risk for a wide variety of neurodevelopmental phenotypes, including ASD and schizophrenia (Carroll and Owen 2009). Although genome-wide association studies have not shown any systemic comparisons of ASD and schizophrenia, few functional correlations have been found at voltage-gated calcium channel genes, which are associated with presynaptic neuronal function as well as neuronal plasticity across different phenotypes (Carroll and Owen 2009). Genetic changes leading to psychotic illnesses are shown in Fig. 9.2.

Almost all types of psychological disorders have shown the possibility to transfer from generation to generation, and the risk of developing a disorder depends on the type of biological relationship to the affected persons suggesting a strong genetic correlation (Gottesman et al. 2010; Rasic et al. 2014). For instance, monozygotic twins can share 100% of their nuclear deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA). They are highly concordant with each psychological abnormality compared with dizygotic twins, who share half of their genetic material. This variation indicates that psychotic illness is mainly attributable to genetic factors. Moreover, there is a gradient contribution of genetics, estimating a more significant inheritance for more severe and less common illnesses like ASD, schizophrenia, and bipolar disorder (Polderman et al. 2015). To be specific, approximately two-thirds of the genetic associations are frequent to these psychotic disorders, and overlap of genetic variants is found to contribute to the risk of ASD, ADHD, and intellectual disabilities (Cross-Disorder Group of the Psychiatric Genomics Consortium 2013).

9.4 Common Therapeutic Targets for Psychotic Disorders

The analysis indicates that common pharmacotherapeutic targets for psychotic disorders such as ASD, schizophrenia, and others will be in the same pipeline. Multiple studies have suggested that the functional imbalance of excitatory-inhibitory transmission in ASD offers great insight into drug development (Gogolla et al. 2009; Krueger and Bear 2011). According to Kehrer et al. (2008), the development of therapeutic targets would be the same neurotransmission system

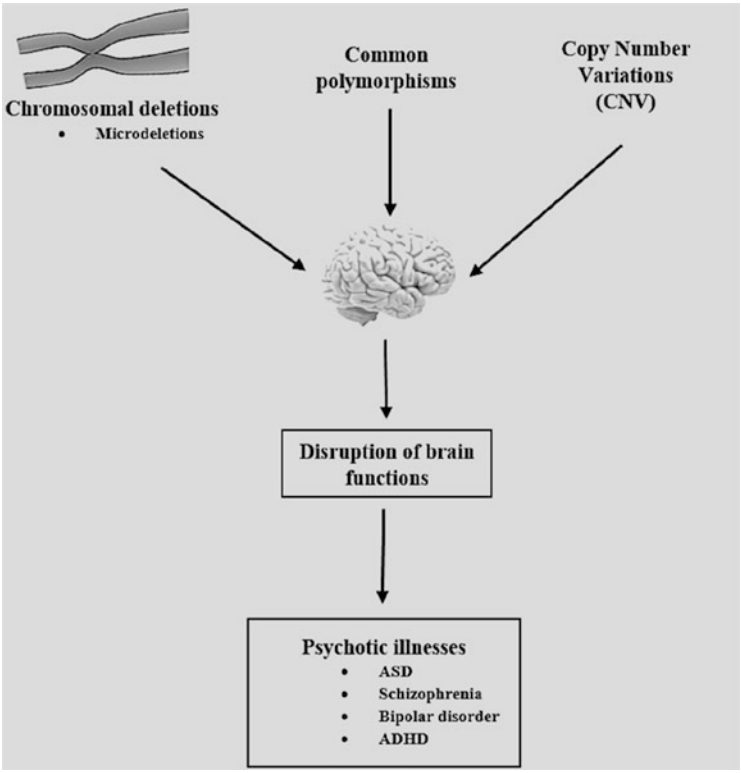


Fig. 9.2 Genetic alterations leading to psychotic illnesses

(excitatory-inhibitory) for schizophrenia. The interest in glutamatergic therapeutics targeting glutamatergic-signaling pathways also increases (King and Bostic 2006; Karam et al. 2010). Therapeutic drugs targeting gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA)-ergic system dysfunctions also get high priority for both ASD and schizophrenia (Chattopadhyaya and Cristo 2012; Coghlan et al. 2012).

Antipsychotic medications have been the major attraction to the researchers due to their highest efficacy in treating psychotic disorders like ASD. Risperidone and aripiprazole are two US Food and Drug Administration (USFDA)-approved drugs to treat significant behavioral disturbance in autism. Surprisingly, these two drugs were initially developed for the treatment of schizophrenia. A study suggested that antipsychotic drugs improve social cognition in schizophrenia patients though the outcomes have not been tested in ASD, where the main focus is to improve behavioral disturbance (Roberts et al. 2010).

Oxytocin (OXT), a neuromodulator, is another shared therapeutic target associated with social behaviors, memory for social information, empathy, and protective silencing of the fetus's cortex at birth. It is important for social bonding and social learning, which takes place during language learning. Both oxytocin

receptor (OXTR) and OXT genetic variations are well established in ASD and schizophrenia (Ebstein et al. 2012; Montag et al. 2012) due to promising response to oxytocin such as psychotic illnesses, decreased repetitive behaviors, negative symptoms, improved recognizing abilities, and social cognitive feature (Hollander et al. 2003; Guastella et al. 2010; MacDonald and Feifel 2012).

9.5 Conclusion

Psychotic illness is a major burden to the present world. Some common psychiatric disorders like ASD and schizophrenia frequently share clinical manifestations caused by brain dysfunction. However, the distinction between early- and late-onset psychotic illnesses in children results in both disorders. Many genetic factors have been identified to be associated with these disorders. From the discussion of this chapter, it is clear that these two disorders also share a genetic overlap. Besides, the therapeutic target of these abnormalities relies on the same pipeline. Therefore, prospects will be to develop more specific therapeutic targets to treat different psychotic illnesses.

Acknowledgment The authors are thankful to the Department of Pharmacy, Noakhali Science and Technology University, Noakhali-3814, Bangladesh.

Conflict of Interest The authors declare no conflict of interest.

Funding The authors did not receive any funding for the work.

References

Buitelaar JK, van der Gaag RJ (1998) Diagnostic rules for children with PDD-NOS and multiple complex developmental disorder. J Child Psychol Psychiatry 39:911–919

Carroll LS, Owen MJ (2009) Genetic overlap between autism, schizophrenia and bipolar disorder. Genome Med 1:102

Chattopadhyaya B, Cristo G (2012) GABAergic circuit dysfunctions in neurodevelopmental disorders. Front Psych 3:1–9

Coghlan S, Horder J, Inkster B et al (2012) GABA system dysfunction in autism and related disorders: from synapse to symptoms. Neurosci Biobehav Rev 36:2044–2055

Crespi B, Stead P, Elliot M (2010) Comparative genomics of autism and schizophrenia. PNAS 107:1736–1741

Cross-Disorder Group of the Psychiatric Genomics Consortium (2013) Identification of risk loci with shared effects on five major psychiatric disorders: a genome-wide analysis. Lancet 381:1371–1379

de Bruin EI, de Nijs PF, Verheij F et al (2007) Multiple complex developmental disorder delineated from PDD-NOS. J Autism Dev Disord 37:1181–1191

Ebstein RP, Knafo A, Mankuta D et al (2012) The contributions of oxytocin and vasopressin pathway genes to human behavior. Horm Behav 61:359–379

Escudero I, Johnstone M (2014) Genetics of schizophrenia. Curr Psychiatry Rep 16:502

Gandal MJ, Leppä V, Won H et al (2016) The road to precision psychiatry: translating genetics into disease mechanisms. Nat Neurosci 19:1397–1407
Gandal MJ, Haney JR, Parikshak NN et al (2018) Shared molecular neuropathology across major psychiatric disorders parallels polygenic overlap. Science 359:693–697
Geschwind DH, Flint J (2015) Genetics and genomics of psychiatric disease. Science 349:1489–1494
Gogolla N, Leblanc JJ, Quast KB et al (2009) Common circuit defect of excitatory-inhibitory balance in mouse models of autism. J Neurodev Disord 1:172–181
Gottesman II, Laursen TM, Bertelsen A et al (2010) Severe mental disorders in offspring with 2 psychiatrically ill parents. Arch Gen Psychiatry 67:252–257
Guastella AJ, Einfeld SL, Gray KM et al (2010) Intranasal oxytocin improves emotion recognition for youth with autism spectrum disorders. Biol Psychiatry 67:692–694
Hollander E, Novotny S, Hanratty M et al (2003) Oxytocin infusion reduces repetitive behaviors in adults with autistic and Asperger's disorders. Neuropsychopharmacology 28:193–198
Karam CS, Ballon JS, Bivens NM et al (2010) Signaling pathways in schizophrenia: emerging targets and therapeutic strategies. Trends Pharmacol Sci 31:381–390
Kasarpalkar NJ, Kothari ST, Dave UP (2014) Brain-derived neurotrophic factor in children with autism spectrum disorder. Ann Neurosci 21:129–133
Kehrer C, Maziashvili N, Dugladze T et al (2008) Altered excitatory-inhibitory balance in the NMDA hypofunction model of schizophrenia. Front Mol Neurosci 1:1–7
Khandaker GM, Stochl J, Zammit S et al (2014) A population-based longitudinal study of childhood neurodevelopmental disorders, IQ and subsequent risk of psychotic experiences in adolescence. Psychol Med 44:3229–3238
King B, Bostic J (2006) An update on pharmacologic treatments for autism spectrum disorders. Child Adolesc Psychiatr Clin N Am 15:161–175
King BH, Lord C (2011) Is schizophrenia on the autism spectrum? Brain Res 1380:34–41
Klin A, Mayes LC, Volkmar FR et al (1995) Multiplex developmental disorder. J Dev Behav Pediatr 16:S7–S11
Konstantareas MM, Hewitt T (2001) Autistic disorder and schizophrenia: diagnostic overlap. J Autism Dev Disord 31:19–28
Krueger D, Bear M (2011) Toward fulfilling the promise of molecular medicine in fragile X syndrome. Annu Rev Med 62:411–429
Kumar RA, KaraMohamed S, Sudi J et al (2008) Recurrent 16p11.2 microdeletions in autism. Hum Mol Genet 17:628–638
Larson FV, Wagner AP, Jones PB et al (2017) Psychosis in autism: comparison of the features of both conditions in a dually affected cohort. Br J Psychiatry 210:269–275
Lin JR, Cai Y, Zhang Q et al (2016) Integrated post-GWAS analysis sheds new light on the disease mechanisms of schizophrenia. Genetics 204:1587–1600
MacDonald K, Feifel D (2012) Oxytocin in schizophrenia: a review of evidence for its therapeutic effects. Acta Neuropsychiatr 24:130–146
Matsuzaki H, Iwata K, Manabe T et al (2012) Triggers for autism: genetic and environmental factors. J Cent Nerv Syst Dis 4:27–36
Montag C, Brockmann EM, Bayerl M et al (2012) Oxytocin and oxytocin receptor gene polymorphisms and risk for schizophrenia: a case-control study. World J Biol Psychiatry 14:500–508
Mouridsen SE, Rich B, Isager T (2008) Psychiatric disorders in adults diagnosed as children with atypical autism. A case control study. J Neural Transm (Vienna) 115:135–138
Polderman TJ, Benyamin B, de Leeuw CA et al (2015) Meta-analysis of the heritability of human traits based on fifty years of twin studies. Nat Genet 47:702–729
Posey DJ, Kem DL, Swiezy NB et al (2004) A pilot study of D-cycloserine in subjects with autistic disorder. Am J Psychiatry 161:2115–2117

Pourcain B, Robinson EB, Anttila V et al (2018) ASD and schizophrenia show distinct developmental profiles in common genetic overlap with population-based social communication difficulties. Mol Psychiatry 23:263–270

Rapoport J, Chavez A, Greenstein D et al (2009) Autism spectrum disorders and childhood-onset schizophrenia: clinical and biological contributions to a relation revisited. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 48:10–18

Rasic D, Hajek T, Alda M et al (2014) Risk of mental illness in offspring of parents with schizophrenia, bipolar disorder, and major depressive disorder: a meta-analysis of family high-risk studies. Schizophr Bull 40:28–38

Regier DA, Kuhl EA, Kupfer DJ (2013) The DSM-5: classification and criteria changes. World Psychiatry 12:92–98

Roberts DL, Penn DL, Corrigan P et al (2010) Antipsychotic medication and social cue recognition in chronic schizophrenia. Psychiatry Res 178:46–50

Rylaarsdam L, Guemez-Gamboa A (2019) Genetic causes and modifiers of autism spectrum disorder. Front Cell Neurosci 13:385

Selten JP, Lundberg M, Rai D, Magnusson C (2015) Risks for nonaffective psychotic disorder and bipolar disorder in young people with autism spectrum disorder: a population-based study. JAMA Psychiat 72:483–489

Shen Y, Dies KA, Holm IA et al (2010) Autism Consortium Clinical Genetics/DNA Diagnostics Collaboration. Clinical genetic testing for patients with autism spectrum disorders. Pediatrics 125:e727–e735

Sprong M, Becker HE, Schothorst PF et al (2008) Pathways to psychosis: a comparison of the pervasive developmental disorder subtype multiple complex developmental disorder and the "at risk mental state". Schizophr Res 99:38–47

Stahlberg O, Soderstrom H, Rastam M et al (2004) Bipolar disorder, schizophrenia, and other psychotic disorders in adults with childhood onset AD/HD and/or autism spectrum disorders. J Neural Transm 111:891–902

Sverd J (2003) Psychiatric disorders in individuals with pervasive developmental disorders. J Psychiatr Pract 9:111–127

Towbin KE, Dykens EM, Pearson GS et al (1993) Conceptualizing "borderline syndrome of childhood" and "childhood schizophrenia" as a developmental disorder. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 32:775–782

Unenge Hallerback M, Lugnegard T, Gillberg C (2012) Is autism spectrum disorder common in schizophrenia? Psychiatry Res 198:12–17

van der Gaag RJ, Buitelaar J, Van den Ban E et al (1995) A controlled multivariate chart review of multiple complex developmental disorder. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 34:1096–1106

van der Gaag RJ, Caplan R, van Engeland H et al (2005) A controlled study of formal thought disorder in children with autism and multiple complex developmental disorders. J Child Adolesc Psychopharmacol 15:465–476

Vorstman JAS, Burbach JPH (2014) Autism and schizophrenia: genetic and phenotypic relationships. pp 1640–1662

Vorstman JA, Morcus ME, Duijff SN et al (2006) The 22q11.2 deletion in children: high rate of autistic disorders and early onset of psychotic symptoms. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 45:1104–1113

Walsh T, McClellan JM, McCarthy SE et al (2008) Rare structural variants disrupt multiple genes in neurodevelopmental pathways in schizophrenia. Science 320:539–543

Wiśniowiecka-Kowalnik B, Nowakowska BA (2019) Genetics and epigenetics of autism spectrum disorder-current evidence in the field. J Appl Genet 60:37–47

Wray NR, Lee SH, Mehta D et al (2014) Research review: polygenic methods and their application to psychiatric traits. J Child Psychol Psychiatry 55:1068–1087

Zheng Z, Zheng P, Zou X (2018) Association between schizophrenia and autism spectrum disorder: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Autism Res 11:1110–1119

RNA Secondary Structures in Neurodegeneration

10

Niraj Kumar Jha, Anna Maria Louka, Christos Tsagkaris, Panagiotis Christoforou, Filia Alexiou, Panagiota Simou, Ioannis Haranas, Ioannis Gkigkitzis, Georgios Zouganelis, Md. Sahab Uddin, Ghulam Md Ashraf, Mohammad A. Kamal, and Athanasios Alexiou

Abstract

RNA is hierarchically organized, and its 3D structure can be described at different levels. Instead of the long helices formed by two perfectly complementary strands of DNA, an RNA chain folds back on itself to form short stretches of helical regions interrupted by bulges, internal loops, hairpin loops, or multi-way

N. K. Jha
Department of Biotechnology, School of Engineering & Technology (SET), Sharda University, Greater Noida, Uttar Pradesh, India
e-mail: niraj.jha@sharda.ac.in

A. M. Louka
Faculty of Medicine, University of Thessaly, Larissa, Greece

Novel Global Community Educational Foundation, Hebersham, NSW, Australia

C. Tsagkaris
Novel Global Community Educational Foundation, Hebersham, NSW, Australia

Faculty of Medicine, University of Crete, Heraklion, Greece

P. Christoforou
Department of Pathophysiology, Medical School, National University of Athens, Athens, Greece

F. Alexiou · P. Simou
Novel Global Community Educational Foundation, Hebersham, NSW, Australia

I. Haranas
Department of Physics and Computer Science, Wilfrid Laurier University, Waterloo, ON, Canada

I. Gkigkitzis
Department of Mathematics, Northern Virginia Community College, Annandale, VA, USA

G. Zouganelis
School of Human Sciences, College of Life and Natural Sciences, University of Derby, Derby, UK

M. S. Uddin
Department of Pharmacy, Southeast University, Dhaka, Bangladesh

G. Md Ashraf, A. Alexiou (eds.), *Autism Spectrum Disorder and Alzheimer's Disease*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-4558-7_10

junctions. While RNA plays a significant role in several biological processes, including translation, catalysis, and gene regulation, the RNA secondary structure's prediction is crucial for the identification and formulation of the RNA functionality. The second level of RNA hierarchical structure is RNA acting as a key factor in the posttranscriptional regulation and the noncoding RNA functions. This chapter reviews the representation, visualization, and mathematical formulation mostly of RNA secondary structures, which can be viewed as steps toward the three-dimensional prediction modeling and their role in neurodegeneration.

Keywords

Complexity · Dynamic programming · lncRNAs · Neurodegeneration · Prediction · RNA secondary structures

10.1 Introduction

The latest RNA secondary structure prediction methods include comparative sequence analysis and folding algorithms (Singh et al. 2019). Several dynamic programming tools (Akutsu 2000) are published that predict RNA secondary structures with pseudoknots or noncanonical base pairs using alternative mathematical and biophysical representations (Nowakowski and Tinoco 1997; Stein and Waterman 1978; Westhof and Fritsch 2000; Nebel 2001; Jiang et al. 2002; Reeder and Giegerich 2004; Do et al. 2006; Parisien and Major 2008; Sato et al. 2009; Schroeder 2009; Bellaousov and Mathews 2010; Reuter and Mathews 2010; Lorenz et al. 2011; Sato et al. 2011; Zakov et al. 2011; zu Siederdissen et al. 2011; Seetin

Pharmakon Neuroscience Research Network, Dhaka, Bangladesh

G. Md Ashraf
Pre-Clinical Research Unit, King Fahd Medical Research Center, King Abdulaziz University, Jeddah, Saudi Arabia

King Fahd Medical Research Center, Department of Medical Laboratory Sciences, Faculty of Applied Medical Sciences, King Abdulaziz University, Jeddah, Saudi Arabia

M. A. Kamal
Novel Global Community Educational Foundation, Hebersham, NSW, Australia

West China School of Nursing/Institutes for Systems Genetics, Frontiers Science Center for Disease-related Molecular Network, West China Hospital, Sichuan University, Chengdu, Sichuan, China

King Fahd Medical Research Center, King Abdulaziz University, Jeddah, Saudi Arabia

Enzymoics, Peterlee Place, Hebersham, NSW, Australia

A. Alexiou (✉)
Department of Science and Engineering, Novel Global Community Educational Foundation, Sydney, Australia

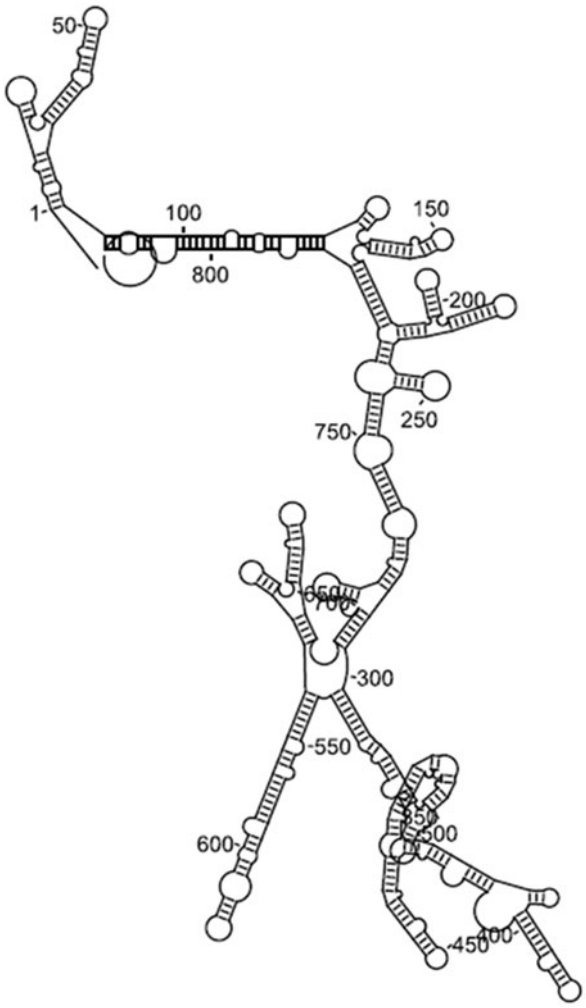


Fig. 10.1 BACE1-AS secondary structure. The correlation of lncRNAs to Alzheimer's disease is already presented in several latest studies modulating Aβ formation or impacting apoptosis and affecting Alzheimer's disease development or progression (Fukumoto et al. 2002; Mus et al. 2007; Parenti et al. 2007; Faghihi et al. 2008a, b, 2010; Modarresi et al. 2011; Ng et al. 2013; Luo and Chen 2016; Kim et al. 2016). (Adapted form Ashraf et al. 2019. This is an Open Access article which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly credited. This is distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License)

and Mathews 2012; Janssen and Giegerich 2014; Xu and Chen 2015; Sloma and Mathews 2017; Jabbari et al. 2018; Ashraf et al. 2019). In a latest study, the DMfold method has been presented to predict RNA secondary structures with pseudoknots based on the deep learning technique and the improved base pair maximization principle (Wang et al. 2019). Additionally, researchers demonstrated the IRIS method (Python-based) for predicting RNA secondary structures based on PARIS (Psoralen Analysis of RNA Interactions and Structures) data (Zhou et al. 2020).

By taking into consideration the latest presentation of the AlphaFold artificial intelligence system for the prediction of a protein 3d structure using the DeepMind platform (Senior et al. 2019, 2020), most of the RNA M-folding algorithms concentrate on the RNA secondary structure. Many computational methods are already published for the prediction of RNA secondary structure (Fig. 10.1) either based on

thermodynamic models that calculate the free energy or using the homologous RNA sequences, such as the free energy-based algorithms, the free energy minimization algorithm, the Sfold algorithm, the expected accuracy maximization algorithm, or the structure profiling experiments (Mathews and Turner 2002; Hofacker 2003; Knudsen and Hein 2003; Zuker 2003; Underwood et al. 2010; Hajiaghayi et al. 2012; Puton et al. 2013; Hamada 2015a, b; Lorenz et al. 2016; Yan et al. 2016; Smola and Weeks 2018; Saus et al. 2018; Yu et al. 2020).

10.2 RNA Secondary Structure: Formalism and Representation

Let us recall the basic definition of secondary structures (Ashraf et al. 2019). A secondary structure S on a sequence s is the set of base pairs (s_i, s_j), where $i < j$ and where s_i represents the nucleotide at a position i on a sequence s that has the following properties:

(i) $$(s_i, s_j) \in S \Rightarrow (s_i, s_j) \in (AU, UA, GC, CG, GU, UG)$$

(ii) $$\big((s_i, s_j) \wedge (s_k, s_l)\big) \in S \wedge (s_i = s_k) \Rightarrow j = l$$

(iii) $$\big((s_i, s_j) \wedge (s_k, s_l)\big) \in S_i < k \Rightarrow l < j \vee j < k$$

Constraint (i) means that only Watson-Crick and wobble base pairs may form. Constraint (ii) states that a nucleotide may be involved in at most 1 base pair, and constraint (iii) implies that all base pairs are nested. While these constraints greatly simplify the folding algorithms, none of the above constraints is biologically relevant (Ashraf et al. 2019). Additionally, a few prediction solutions aim to predict secondary structures, including pseudoknots and non-nested pairs, simultaneously reducing the computational complexity like the programs ConStruct, HotKnots, ILM, NUPACK, PKNOTS, and RNA STAR (Eddy 2004; Schroeder 2009). In literature, RNA secondary structures can be displayed in different representations, including hairpin and interior loops, multi-loops, external loops, pseudoknots, and interior-pseudo-knotted loops (Fig. 10.2). Depending on the use, specific representations are more or less useful (Ashraf et al. 2019), such as the bracket notation, the trees, the arc-annotated sequences, the circles, the mountain plots for large RNAs, and the dot plots.

10.3 Mathematical Representations of Closed RNA Secondary Structures

A secondary structure of size n is closed if there is an h-bond connecting base 1 and n (Doslic and Veljan 2007). For given integers $n \geq 2$, $l \geq 0$, there are $S^{(l)}(n-2)$ secondary structures of size n and rank l, also establishing a bijection between the set of all closed secondary structures $z^{(l)}(n)$ and the set of all plane trees with exactly

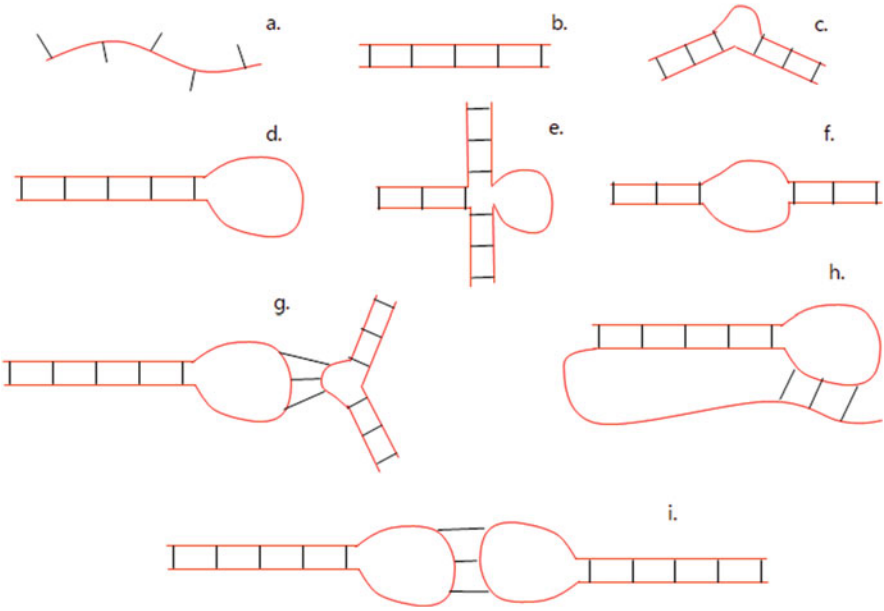


Fig. 10.2 RNA secondary structures elements, predictable by identifying the structure that minimizes the free energy of the folded molecule (Adapted from clcbio Main Workbench educational presentations): (**a**) single-stranded RNA, (**b**) double-stranded RNA helix of stacked based pairs, (**c**) bulge loop, (**d**) stem and loop or hairpin loop, (**e**) junctions or multi-loops, (**f**) interior loop, (**g**) hairpin bulge, (**h**) pseudoknots, (**i**) kissing hairpins

n leaves $T^{(l)}(n)$ (Ashraf et al. 2019). Base pairs like C-G, A-U, and G-U form h-bonds, which cause folding of the molecular backbone into a configuration of minimal energy (Doslic and Veljan 2007; Ashraf et al. 2019).

An alternative definition of closed secondary structures has been given (Rastegari and Condon 2005), through the closed regions of a secondary structure: representing a secondary structure as an arc diagram, in which base indices are shown as vertices on a straight line, ordered from the 5′-end and arcs, indicate base pairs, a region $[i; j]$ will be referred to as weakly closed if it contains at least one base pair and for all base pairs $i' \cdot j'$ of R, $i' \in [i; j]$ if and only if $j' \in [i; j]$ and closed if either $i = 1, j = n$ or if it is weakly closed and for all l with $i < 1 < j$ the regions $[i; 1]$ and $[1; j]$ are not weakly closed.

10.3.1 Closed RNA Representation as a *k*-Non-crossing Set of Partitions

Geometrically, a closed k-non-crossing RNA secondary structure can be represented either as a simple, closed curve or as a system of k such curves as it is already published through the genetic algorithm RnaPredict (Deschenes 2005) and the

parallelized version of this algorithm P-RnaPredict (Hendriks 2005). Besides, Zhan and Guo (2005) proposed a permutation-based genetic algorithm using the Standard Roulette Wheel Selection (STDS) and the KBR strategy. According to these authors, a closed RNA secondary structure is represented as a k-non-crossing set of partitions representing the base and no base pairs, respectively. It should be noted at this point that the combinatorial properties of secondary structures are derived from Waterman's recursion (Waterman 1987) as follows:

$$S_2(n) = S_2(n-1) + \sum_{S=0}^{n-2} S_2(n-2-s)S_2(s),$$

where $S_2(n)$ denotes the number of RNA secondary structures.

Even though the above genetic algorithms have already provided comparable results to the M-folding problem, the current benchmark for closed RNA secondary structure prediction, unfortunately, they have polynomial-time solutions.

10.3.2 Closed RNA Representation as Motzkin Words and Paths

Arc-annotated sequences represent RNA molecules' structural information and have been extensively used for the RNA secondary prediction. As we mentioned before, an arc-annotated sequence is a sequence over a given alphabet together with additional structural information specified by arcs connecting pairs of positions. The arcs determine the way the sequence folds into a three-dimensional space. Arc-annotated sequences can be classified according to the combinatorial structure of their arcs.

Stein and Waterman (1978) proved that the sequences arising in the enumeration of secondary structures that can occur under various reasonable restrictions might be considered as natural generalizations of the Catalan and Motzkin numbers (A001006) (Sloane n.d.). To define the Motzkin word, we recall an equivalent definition for secondary structures introduced by Viennot and Vauchaussade de Chaumont (1985): For $x \in \Sigma$ denoting the number of occurrences of a symbol x in w. Then a word $w \in \Sigma^n$ is a secondary structure of size n if w it satisfies the three following conditions:

1. For every factorization $w = u \cdot v$, $|u|_{(\geq |u|)}$.
2. $|w|_{(=|w|)}$.
3. w has no factor ().

Within this notation, a pair of corresponding brackets within a word w represents two single-stranded nucleic acid bases, which are paired. The symbol | represents an unpaired base. The words Σ^*, which satisfy conditions (1) and (2) of the previous definition, are called Motzkin words. Condition (3) accommodates that a hydrogen bond cannot link together two adjacent bases. Consequently, loops consist of at least

one base within our model, while a realistic assumption would force the loops to consist of at least three bases. Note that Motzkin words abstract from the fact that RNA contains four different nucleotides. Any Motzkin word of length n represents 4^n pairwise different RNA structures. Loads are impossible because of pairing constraints, but this matter is handled in the same manner as impossible loop or stem lengths. As long as all concerned models abstract in the same way, the results obtained on Motzkin words can be transferred to closed RNA secondary structures.

A Motzkin path is a lattice path in the first quadrant beginning at the origin, ending at the x-axis and consisting of the steps $u = (1,1)$ as the up-step, $d = (1,-1)$ as the down-step, and $h = (1,0)$ as the horizontal step. The set of all Motzkin paths of length n has been already enumerated by the n-th Motzkin number $M_n = \sum_{k\geq 0} \binom{n}{2k} C_k$ (Donaghey and Shapiro 1977). It has also been proved that secondary structures are in a simple bijection with Motzkin paths without peaks (Deutsch and Shapiro 2002).

In the general case of the RNA-RNA Interaction Prediction Problem (Tsiamis et al. 2016), it is assumed that there exist two independent RNA sequences K and L of length n and m, respectively. In a specific joint secondary structure of K and L, each nucleotide is paired with at most one nucleotide in the same or the other strand, while these two strands interact in opposite directions. If we assume that the K strand is indexed from 1 to n in $5'$ to $3'$ direction and L is indexed from 1 to m in $3'$ to $5'$ direction, then we refer to the ith nucleotide in K and L by i_K and i_L, respectively, and to any base pair between nucleotides i and j with the notion $i \cdot j$.

There are several methods in the literature for the prediction of a joint structure formed by two interacting RNAs: base pair counting, grammar-based approach to RNA-RNA interaction prediction, stacked pair energy model or loop energy model (Alkan et al. 2006), and RNA interaction structures combinatorics like generating functions, singularity analysis, as well as recurrence relations and asymptotic formulas for the number of joint structures (Li et al. 2008, 2011).

10.4 RNA Secondary Structures in Neurodegeneration

Several research studies focus on the role of specific proteins in neurodegenerative disorders like Alzheimer's disease (AD) and autism spectrum disorders (Alexiou et al. 2018a, b, c, 2019). In a latest study, a computational analysis of lncRNAs and their potential correlation to AD pathologies and lesions have been presented, including the secondary structures of four proteins related to Alzheimer's disease, BACE1, Rad18, GABABR2, and hnRNPQ, targeted from the corresponding lnRNAs BACE1-AS, NAT-Rad18, 17A, and hnRNP Q (Ashraf et al. 2019). In this chapter, we present the secondary structure prediction table (**Appendix**), using the same computational tool (QIAGEN CLC Main Workbench 8.0; QIAGEN CLC Main Workbench Software n.d.) and the identical sequences imported from the

Protein Databank, 6EJ3(BACE1_HUMAN), 4F12(GABABR2_HUMAN), 4UX8 (hnRNPQ_HUMAN), and 2Y43(RAD18_HUMAN).

10.4.1 How Can Pathogenic RNA Structures Cause Neurodegenerative Disease?

Several of the functional secondary structural elements can suddenly appear as pathogenic agents due to point mutations, sequence deletions, and expansions. The newly formed mutated RNA motifs can interfere with normal interaction and initiate the cells' pathologic processes. Some of the widely acknowledged instances of such gain of function comprise dysregulation of site-specific RNA editing by adenosine deaminase acting on RNA (ADAR), sequestration of RNA-binding proteins, the formation of pseudo internal ribosome entry sites (IRES), activation of cryptic splicing sites, and subsequent cap-independent translation, i.e., repeat-associated non-ATG (RAN) translation (Mirkin 2007; Zu et al. 2011). The formation of several peptides in the absence of canonical AUG start codons has been exhibited through broad-scale proteomics and transcriptome studies (Lee et al. 2012; Stern-Ginossar et al. 2012; Slavoff et al. 2013). Hence, the biological implications of understanding RAN translation are not just restricted to pathologic RNA structures.

Pathogenic RNA folding is attributable to various factors. The functional role played by a specific RNA structural motif is revealed by disease pathogenesis. A common cause of abnormal RNA folding is single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNP). The conformational stability of a secondary structure element can change a single nucleobase mutation. This can lead to a downstream pathology and disrupt a fragile equilibrium of RNA-protein interaction networks. MAPT (Tau) mRNA, vide infra being one of the intensely studied instances (Warf and Berglund 2010).

Activation of cryptic splicing sites contributes to the diversity of protein isoform when pre-mRNAs intronic regions undergo retrotransposon insertions. An important role is played by this mechanism in brain development, evolution, and cellular differentiation. However, in most instances, it is also a contributing factor to genetic diseases (Deininger and Batzer 1999; Baillie et al. 2011). For instance, an essential role in the assembly of signal recognition particles (SRPs) is played by the structured retrotransposon Alu element of 7SL RNA. In the human genome, the Alu motif is the most abundant retrotransposon. With more than a million copies, the Alu motif represents almost 11% of the entire genome (Lander et al. 2001). Cryptic exons can be activated when the intronic region's insertion of Alu elements occurs, thereby leading to unnatural protein isoforms being formed (Vervoort et al. 1998; Pagani and Baralle 2004). Large gene fragments deletion can also result from the Alu element-driven abnormal recombination, and propagation of linked pathology is caused by co-migration of the other pathologic RNA fragments (Nakayama et al. 2010; Iida et al. 2012).

In the case of microsatellite repeat expansion disorders, strand slipping during replication, repair, and recombination results from particular DNA oligonucleotide fragments (repeated sequences) that fold into stable hairpins. As a result, there is the

formation and elongation of such repetitive fragments (Gacy et al. 1995; López Castel et al. 2010). The corresponding single-stranded RNA comprises the expanded repeated sequence formed due to transcription. As a result of the presence of additional secondary structural elements, this repeated sequence is folded aberrantly. A high likelihood of expanded repeats is folded in abnormal structures once their stable incorporation in the DNA sequence occurs. This subsequently leads to a gradual augmentation of the pathology with age, and in future generations, it manifests in the form of a phenomenon recognized as repeat instability (Kovtun and McMurray 2008; Liu et al. 2010; López Castel et al. 2010).

10.4.2 lncRNAs and Alzheimer's Disease

Mammalian genomes encode tens of thousands of lncRNAs, and up to 40% of these lncRNAs are explicitly expressed in the brain (Briggs et al. 2015). Several neurodegenerative ailments have been attributed to abnormal lncRNA expression. Significantly, the differential expression of hundreds of lncRNAs has been reported in 3xTg-AD model mice compared to the age-matched control animals. Additionally, in comparison to control animals, 150 lncRNAs are found to be upregulated, and 99 lncRNAs are observed to be downregulated in the hippocampus of APP/PS1 transgenic mice. When transcriptome analyses were conducted on postmortem human brains, it was identified that in the AD patient brains, levels of multiple lncRNAs had been altered substantially. Together, in animal models and AD patients, the differential expression of lncRNAs takes place. Thus, lncRNAs can serve as biomarkers and probable treatment targets for AD (Li et al. 2020). Based on the size, non-coding RNAs (ncRNAs) can be categorized into IncRNAs and short RNAs (<200 nt in length) (Modarresi et al. 2011; Magistri et al. 2012). Lacking an apparent open reading frame, IncRNAs vary in size from 200 nt to more than 100 kb (Derrien et al. 2012; Harrow et al. 2012; Knauss and Sun 2013; Zhu et al. 2013). IncRNAs associated with particular functions are conserved evolutionarily (Hamada 2015a, b; Iwakiri et al. 2016). They localize at particular types of cells and subcellular compartments and regulate dynamically (Knauss and Sun 2013; Washietl et al. 2014; Wilk et al. 2016). At various levels, gene expression is regulated by IncRNAs (Melissari and Grote 2016). In line with epigenetic regulations' primary function, the bulk of the IncRNAs are present in the nucleus (Knauss and Sun 2013; Zeng et al. 2015). Though IncRNAs are not regarded as a "dark matter" instead, they have extremely important roles for controlling the translation and transcription along with, during chromatin modification regulation of the cell cycle, genome rearrangement, genetic imprinting, messenger RNA (mRNA) decay, splicing, transcription, and translation (Derrien et al. 2011; Zhu et al. 2013; Iwakiri et al. 2016). Investigations into the genetic factors and pathomechanism of AD have been ongoing for over a century. While the research continues, several studies have depicted that IncRNA dysregulation has a role to play in epilepsy, cancer, and neurodegenerative, cardiovascular, and genetic diseases. Some studies have also indicated that IncRNAs also have a substantial role in AD (Kraus et al. 2015; Sun et al. 2016; Melissari and Grote

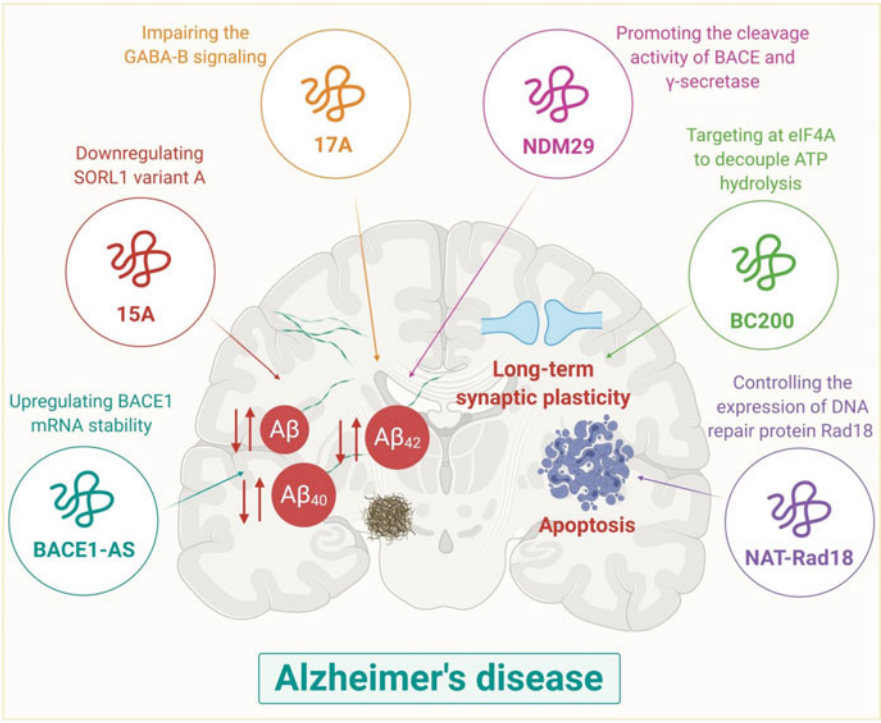


Fig. 10.3 Schematic diagram showing dysregulated lncRNAs in AD. BACE1-AS, 51A, 17A, and NDM29 directly/indirectly enhance Aβ formation and/or the Aβx-42/Aβx-40 ratio. To maintain long-term synaptic plasticity, BC200 regulates local protein synthesis. NAT-Rad18 has a major role in apoptosis. Abbreviations: Aβ, amyloid β peptide; NDM29, neuroblastoma differentiation marker 29; BACE1, β-site AβPP cleaving enzyme-1; eIF4A, eukaryotic initiation factor 4A; BC200, brain cytoplasmic 200 RNA; SORL1, sortilin-related receptor gene; mRNA, messenger RNA

2016) (Fig. 10.3 and Table 10.1). Regardless of the role of IncRNAs in AD pathology, several factors such as hypoxia/ischemia (Jha et al. 2018), mitochondrial dysfunction (Jha et al. 2017a, b), impaired NF-κβ signaling (Jha et al. 2019a, b), altered IDE and NEP expression (Jha et al. 2015), ABC transporter dysfunction (Jha et al. 2019a, b), altered ion channels (Kumar et al. 2016), and HIV infections (Jha et al. 2020) have also been reported to be associated with AD progression (Jha et al. 2017a, b; Kumar et al. 2015). Further, the linkage between various IncRNAs and AD has been discussed in succeeding sections.

10.4.3 BACE1-AS

β-site amyloid precursor protein cleaving enzyme-1 antisense transcript (BACE1-AS) is a well-conserved RNA transcribed from the positive strand of chromosome 11 on the parallel strand of the BACE1 locus (11q 23.3) (Faghihi et al. 2008a, b;

Table 10.1 The role of dysregulated lncRNAs and their associated target in Alzheimer's disease

lncRNAs	Target(s)	Function(s)	Reference(s)
51A	Downregulates SORL1 variant A	Aβ↑	Ciarlo et al. (2013), Ma et al. (2009)
BACE1-AS	Upregulates BACE1 mRNA stability	Aβ↑	Faghihi et al. (2008a, b)
17A	GABA B signaling impairment	Aβx-42/Aβx-40↑, Aβ↑	Massone et al. (2011), Gavazzo et al. (2013)
BC200	Decouples ATP hydrolysis via targeting at eIF4A	Acts as a regulator of local protein synthesis to maintain the long-term synaptic plasticity	Lin et al. (2008)
NAT-Rad18	Modulates Rad18 expression	Making the neuron more sensitive to apoptosis	Iacoangeli et al. (2010)
NDM29	Promotes BACE and γ-secretase activity	Aβx-42/Aβx-40↑, Aβ↑	Massone et al. (2012)

Modarresi et al. 2011). At the mRNA level as well as protein levels, regulation of BACE1 expression is performed by BACE1-AS. In toxic Aβ, a vital role is played by BACE1 (Mulder et al. 2010; Dash et al. 2014). In several varied cell stressors, the implication of AD pathogenesis has taken place. On exposure to increased temperature, staurosporine, serum starvation, Aβ1–42, high glucose, and both BACE1-AS and BACE1 mRNA are upregulated. This indicates that alteration of BACE1-AS expression and thereafter BACE1 enzyme activity can be caused by cell stressors (Faghihi et al. 2008a, b; Liu et al. 2014). Irrespective of whether BACE1-AS is overexpressed or knocked down, parallel regulation of BACE1 protein and BACE1 mRNA takes place, subsequently resulting in reduced Aβ production and plaque deposition (Faghihi et al. 2008a, b; Liu et al. 2014; Modarresi et al. 2011). In animals, several physiological and behavioral deficits result from loss of BACE1, including emotional deficits, memory loss, peripheral myelination defects, and reduced synaptic plasticity (Ma et al. 2007; Laird et al. 2005; Hu et al. 2006; Decourt and Sabbagh 2011; Borghi et al. 2007; Stockley and O'Neill 2008; Vassar and Kandalepas 2011). The complicated pathologic and physiologic boundaries indicate tighter regulation of the BACE1 expression (Vassar and Kandalepas 2011; Faghihi et al. 2008a, b). In summary, BACE1-AS levels are increased due to cell stress; this, in turn, results in simulation of the BACE1 expression, which has the potential of further enhancing AβPP processing and Aβ1–42 production. Overexpression of BACE1-AS can be further promoted through elevated Aβ1–42 levels along with the AβPP processing cascade in a feedforward manner (Faghihi et al. 2008a, b; Liu et al. 2014; Dislich and Lichtenthaler 2012). BACE1-AS increases the stability of the BACE1 mRNA through the formation of a RNA duplex (Yuan et al. 2013; Wan et al. 2017; Liu et al. 2014). Hence, both BACE1-AS and BACE1 can be potential biomarkers and treatment targets for AD (Evin and Hince 2013; Perneczky and Alexopoulos 2014; Dislich and Lichtenthaler 2012; Decourt and Sabbagh 2011).

10.4.4 51A

For a long time, it has been hypothesized that the neuronal sortilin-related receptor gene (SORL1, also known as SORLA and LR11) is involved in the pathogenesis of AD (Jacobsen et al. 1996; Yamazaki et al. 1997; Lee et al. 2008; Rogaeva et al. 2007). As per suggestions from recent studies, as a sorting receptor for AβPP holoprotein, SORL1 interacts with AβPP in endosomes and trans-Golgi networks, affecting trafficking and proteolytic processing (Ciarlo et al. 2013). Shifting of AβPP from the retromer recycling pathway to β-secretase cleavage pathway can be facilitated by the reduced SORL1 expression. This, in turn, results in Aβ formation due to increased secreted AβPP production (Ciarlo et al. 2013; Khvotchev and Sudhof 2004). 51A is a novel ncRNA that maps in an antisense configuration to intron 1 of the SORL1 gene, whose synthesis fosters the expression of SORL1 variants spliced alternatively. It must be noted that in the in vitro model and the AD brain, 51A is overexpressed. One probable mechanism through which 51A increases AD susceptibility is an increase in amyloid formation through downregulation of SORL1 variant A via alternative splicing (Ciarlo et al. 2013; Ma et al. 2009).

10.4.5 17A

17A is a 159-nt lncRNA that is synthesized by RNA polymerase III. 17A maps in intron 3 of G-protein-coupled receptor 51 gene (GPR51), endures alternative splicing, and increases the volume of GABA B2 receptor isoforms. Through activation of particular potassium channels and regulation of intracellular 3′–5′-cyclic adenosine monophosphate accumulation, GABA B's biological functions might be affected by GABA B R2 splice variant B. As a result of these events, GABA B signaling impairment increases Aβ secretion, and enhancement in the Aβx-42/Aβx-40 ratio occurs. When compared with control tissues, 17A RNA is upregulated in AD, indicating that there could be direct or indirect involvement with the AD mechanism (Massone et al. 2011; Gavazzo et al. 2013; Wan et al. 2017).

10.4.6 NDM29

Neuroblastoma differentiation marker 29 (NDM29) is an RNA polymerase III-transcribed ncRNA. NDM29 synthesis is induced by inflammatory stimulation in a dose-dependent manner. Altered AβPP modulation accompanies the upregulation of NDM29 RNA. In the meantime, it can also stimulate the BACE cleavage activities, resulting in the generation of an increased amount of AβPP C-terminal fragments. The fragments are meant for further processing by the γ-secretase cleavage complex increasing the Aβx-42/Aβx-40 ratio as well as the Aβ formation (Vella et al. 2015; Gavazzo et al. 2013; Massone et al. 2012).

10.4.7 BC200

Brain cytoplasmic 200 RNA (BC200) is a translational regulator that targets eukaryotic initiation factor 4A. It, in turn, assists with modulating local protein synthesis in postsynaptic dendritic microdomains, decoupling adenosine triphosphate hydrolysis from RNA duplex unwinding, and contributing to the maintenance of long-term synaptic plasticity (Lin et al. 2008). As per a postmortem study, there is a reduction of 60% in the BC200 RNA levels in cortical areas in individuals between the age of 49 and 86 years. There is a substantial upregulation in a BC200 RNA in an AD brain compared with a normal brain that has been age-matched. Along with an increase in disease progression, the comparative BC200 RNA levels increase in AD-involved brain areas. Still, BC200 downregulation was reported by at least one study (Mus et al. 2007). The contradiction between the studies can be attributed to the varying severity of the disease and variations in the brain regions, but atypical BC200 RNA expression is a distinct possibility (Wu et al. 2013). In somata, the comparative BC200 RNA levels increase, while they decrease in dendrites. As a result of this varying expression, there is an effect on microtubule-dependent transport, subsequently contributing to dendritic and axonal blockage, indicating early events in AD. Subsequently, it can contribute to local Aβ generation, followed by amyloid deposition (Iacoangeli et al. 2010; Zhou and Xu 2015). Findings from another group indicate that there is no effect on BC200 RNA under apoptotic conditions in vitro. The findings also hypothesized that BC200 is involved in necrosis instead of apoptosis (Liu et al. 2015).

10.4.8 NAT-Rad18

One of the primary forms of programmed death of a cell is apoptosis. Progressive cell loss resulting from excessive apoptosis contributes to various neurodegenerative ailments, including AD. Rad18 is a member of the Rad6 epistasis group that handles the responsibility for post-replication repair. By encoding a spectrum of DNA-damaging agents, NAT-Rad18 genes encode for natural antisense transcripts against Rad18. In the protein and mRNA levels, the relationship between NAT-Rad18 and Rad18 is Rad18 showcases counter-balanced, wherein low expression level. Following exposure to Aβ, there is a differentially upregulated expression of NAT-Rad18 in the brain tissues, especially the cortical neurons. When considered in its entirety, there are indications from this evidence that through its effects on the DNA repair system, AD may have involvement of NAT-Rad18 (Parenti et al. 2007). Further, the summary of all these IncRNAs and their target with respect to AD has been addressed in Table 10.1.

10.5 Conclusion

This chapter has comprehensively addressed the representation, visualization, and mathematical formulation of RNA secondary structures, which can be viewed as steps toward the three-dimensional prediction modeling and their role in neurodegeneration, especially in AD. Almost all AD-related lncRNAs have been listed in this chapter, but the investigation into this field is very early. We still need to elucidate how lncRNAs operate at the molecular and cellular levels as the lncRNA field continues to develop. Most recent studies advocate that lncRNAs are potential candidates in the ongoing quest for AD biomarkers and could facilitate identification of rational therapeutic strategies. A deep understanding of lncRNA biology could unlock more avenues to early AD diagnosis and treatment.

Appendix: Secondary Structure Prediction

Sequence	Start	End	Region name
UBE2A_HUMAN	4	16	Alpha helix
UBE2A_HUMAN	33	41	Beta strand
UBE2A_HUMAN	53	59	Beta strand
UBE2A_HUMAN	70	74	Beta strand
UBE2A_HUMAN	82	82	Beta strand
UBE2A_HUMAN	87	88	Beta strand
UBE2A_HUMAN	89	93	Alpha helix
UBE2A_HUMAN	102	112	Alpha helix
UBE2A_HUMAN	124	148	Alpha helix
RAD18_HUMAN	4	6	Alpha helix
RAD18_HUMAN	13	24	Alpha helix
RAD18_HUMAN	27	38	Beta strand
RAD18_HUMAN	48	55	Alpha helix
RAD18_HUMAN	63	67	Beta strand
RAD18_HUMAN	75	97	Alpha helix
RAD18_HUMAN	113	117	Beta strand
RAD18_HUMAN	123	128	Alpha helix
RAD18_HUMAN	130	141	Alpha helix
RAD18_HUMAN	146	152	Alpha helix
RAD18_HUMAN	160	162	Alpha helix
RAD18_HUMAN	166	168	Alpha helix
RAD18_HUMAN	175	178	Alpha helix
RAD18_HUMAN	183	185	Alpha helix
RAD18_HUMAN	196	200	Alpha helix
RAD18_HUMAN	214	223	Alpha helix
RAD18_HUMAN	226	238	Alpha helix
RAD18_HUMAN	246	250	Alpha helix

(continued)

Sequence	Start	End	Region name
RAD18_HUMAN	253	263	Alpha helix
RAD18_HUMAN	271	291	Alpha helix
RAD18_HUMAN	295	318	Alpha helix
RAD18_HUMAN	322	324	Alpha helix
RAD18_HUMAN	325	326	Beta strand
RAD18_HUMAN	332	365	Alpha helix
RAD18_HUMAN	372	374	Beta strand
RAD18_HUMAN	381	387	Alpha helix
RAD18_HUMAN	410	413	Alpha helix
RAD18_HUMAN	425	432	Alpha helix
RAD18_HUMAN	444	460	Alpha helix
RAD18_HUMAN	473	485	Alpha helix
HNRPQ_HUMAN	19	22	Alpha helix
HNRPQ_HUMAN	27	33	Alpha helix
HNRPQ_HUMAN	36	54	Alpha helix
HNRPQ_HUMAN	58	68	Alpha helix
HNRPQ_HUMAN	70	80	Alpha helix
HNRPQ_HUMAN	85	89	Alpha helix
HNRPQ_HUMAN	91	106	Alpha helix
HNRPQ_HUMAN	112	112	Beta strand
HNRPQ_HUMAN	121	130	Alpha helix
HNRPQ_HUMAN	135	135	Beta strand
HNRPQ_HUMAN	137	137	Beta strand
HNRPQ_HUMAN	163	166	Beta strand
HNRPQ_HUMAN	171	184	Alpha helix
HNRPQ_HUMAN	191	193	Alpha helix
HNRPQ_HUMAN	205	210	Beta strand
HNRPQ_HUMAN	213	223	Alpha helix
HNRPQ_HUMAN	234	240	Beta strand
HNRPQ_HUMAN	245	247	Beta strand
HNRPQ_HUMAN	256	273	Alpha helix
HNRPQ_HUMAN	274	276	Beta strand
HNRPQ_HUMAN	288	292	Beta strand
HNRPQ_HUMAN	297	307	Alpha helix
HNRPQ_HUMAN	311	314	Beta strand
HNRPQ_HUMAN	320	322	Beta strand
HNRPQ_HUMAN	331	375	Alpha helix
HNRPQ_HUMAN	382	391	Alpha helix
HNRPQ_HUMAN	401	405	Beta strand
HNRPQ_HUMAN	412	432	Alpha helix
HNRPQ_HUMAN	611	617	Alpha helix
GDNF_HUMAN	4	15	Beta strand
GDNF_HUMAN	59	76	Alpha helix
GDNF_HUMAN	81	85	Alpha helix

(continued)

Sequence	Start	End	Region name
GDNF_HUMAN	89	91	Alpha helix
GDNF_HUMAN	93	97	Alpha helix
GDNF_HUMAN	118	127	Beta strand
GDNF_HUMAN	137	143	Alpha helix
GDNF_HUMAN	144	144	Beta strand
GDNF_HUMAN	150	164	Alpha helix
GDNF_HUMAN	167	170	Alpha helix
GDNF_HUMAN	188	190	Alpha helix
GDNF_HUMAN	193	202	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	21	32	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	66	70	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	78	94	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	96	103	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	111	122	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	128	131	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	139	146	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	151	156	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	171	175	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	184	198	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	200	216	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	218	219	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	224	226	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	240	243	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	248	252	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	257	265	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	268	270	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	277	281	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	289	296	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	300	312	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	325	329	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	335	342	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	362	378	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	382	386	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	396	402	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	411	411	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	414	418	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	426	429	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	437	438	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	442	458	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	467	478	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	481	498	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	499	502	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	510	513	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	522	525	Beta strand

(continued)

Sequence	Start	End	Region name
GABR2_HUMAN	529	537	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	543	544	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	549	566	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	571	572	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	575	583	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	590	592	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	596	601	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	604	618	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	624	627	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	639	641	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	653	664	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	666	677	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	681	682	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	691	692	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	694	713	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	719	741	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	743	748	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	753	755	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	760	761	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	777	777	Beta strand
GABR2_HUMAN	786	794	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	796	816	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	824	828	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	831	840	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	851	856	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	885	895	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	898	901	Alpha helix
GABR2_HUMAN	935	938	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	7	9	Alpha helix
BACE1_HUMAN	10	11	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	26	27	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	60	64	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	75	81	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	88	92	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	109	118	Alpha helix
BACE1_HUMAN	120	124	Alpha helix
BACE1_HUMAN	128	130	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	145	147	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	154	158	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	160	163	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	169	171	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	177	186	Alpha helix
BACE1_HUMAN	187	187	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	201	203	Alpha helix

(continued)

Sequence	Start	End	Region name
BACE1_HUMAN	213	215	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	226	229	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	235	237	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	244	245	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	249	251	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	256	269	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	287	288	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	299	312	Alpha helix
BACE1_HUMAN	323	323	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	327	332	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	340	341	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	343	348	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	351	352	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	357	361	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	366	366	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	373	373	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	382	385	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	393	400	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	402	406	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	412	422	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	427	429	Alpha helix
BACE1_HUMAN	435	438	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	452	469	Alpha helix
BACE1_HUMAN	474	478	Beta strand
BACE1_HUMAN	479	499	Alpha helix

References

Akutsu T (2000) Dynamic programming algorithms for RNA secondary structure with pseudoknots. Discrete Appl Math 104:45–62

Alexiou A, Nizami B, Khan FI, Soursou G, Vairaktarakis C, Chatzichronis S, Tsiamis V, Manztavinos V, Yarla NS, Ashraf GM (2018a) Mitochondrial dynamics and proteins related to neurodegenerative diseases. Curr Protein Pept Sci 19:850

Alexiou A, Soursou G, Chatzichronis S, Gasparatos E, Kamal MA, Yarla NS, Perveen A, Barreto G, Ashraf GM (2018b) GTPases role in the regulation of mitochondrial dynamics in Alzheimer's disease and CNS related disorders. Mol Neurobiol 56(6):4530–4538

Alexiou A, Soursou G, Yarla NS, Ashraf GM (2018c) Proteins commonly linked to autism spectrum disorder and Alzheimer's disease. Curr Protein Pept Sci 19:876

Alexiou A, Chatzichronis S, Asma P, Abdul H, Ashraf GM (2019) Algorithmic and stochastic representations of gene regulatory networks and protein-protein interactions. Curr Top Med Chem 19:1

Alkan C, Karakoc E, Nadeau J, Sahinalp S, Zhang K (2006) RNA-RNA interaction prediction and antisense RNA target search. J Comput Biol 13(2):267–282

Ashraf GM, Ganash M, Alexiou A (2019) Computational analysis of non-coding RNAs in Alzheimer's disease. Bioinformation 15(5):351–357

Baillie JK, Barnett MW, Upton KR, Gerhardt DJ, Richmond TA, De Sapio F, Brennan PM, Rizzu P, Smith S, Fell M et al (2011) Somatic retrotransposition alters the genetic landscape of the human brain. Nature 479:534–537

Bellaousov S, Mathews DH (2010) ProbKnot: fast prediction of RNA secondary structure including pseudoknots. RNA 16:1870–1880

Borghi R, Patriarca S, Traverso N et al (2007) The increased activity of BACE1 correlates with oxidative stress in Alzheimer's disease. Neurobiol Aging 28(7):1009–1014

Briggs JA, Wolvetang EJ, Mattick JS et al (2015) Mechanisms of long non-coding RNAs in mammalian nervous system development, plasticity, disease, and evolution. Neuron 88 (5):861–877

Ciarlo E, Massone S, Penna I et al (2013) An intronic ncRNA-dependent regulation of SORL1 expression affecting Abeta formation is upregulated in post-mortem Alzheimer's disease brain samples. Dis Model Mech 6(2):424–433

Dash R, Emran TB, Uddin MM, Islam A, Junaid M (2014) Molecular docking of fisetin with AD associated AChE, ABAD and BACE1 proteins. Bioinformation 10(9):562–568

Decourt B, Sabbagh MN (2011) BACE1 as a potential biomarker for Alzheimer's disease. J Alzheimers Dis 24(Suppl 2):53–59

Deininger PL, Batzer MA (1999) Alu repeats and human disease. Mol Genet Metab 67:183–193

Derrien T, Guigo R, Johnson R (2011) The long non-coding RNAs: a new (P)layer in the "Dark Matter". Front Genet 2:107

Derrien T, Johnson R, Bussotti G et al (2012) The GENCODE v7 catalog of human long non-coding RNAs: analysis of their gene structure, evolution, and expression. Genome Res 22(9):1775–1789

Deschenes A (2005) A genetic algorithm for RNA secondary structure prediction using stacking energy thermodynamic models. Master's Thesis, Simon Fraser University, Burnaby, British Columbia, Canada

Deutsch E, Shapiro L (2002) A bijection between ordered trees and 2-Motzkin paths and its many consequences. Discrete Math 256:655–670

Dislich B, Lichtenthaler SF (2012) The membrane-bound aspartyl protease BACE1: molecular and functional properties in Alzheimer's disease and beyond. Front Physiol 3:8

Do CB, Woods DA, Batzoglou S (2006) CONTRAfold: RNA secondary structure prediction without physics-based models. Bioinformatics 22:e90–e98

Donaghey R, Shapiro LW (1977) Motzkin numbers. J Combin Theory A 23:291–301

Doslic T, Veljan D (2007) Secondary structures, plane trees and Motzkin numbers. Math Commun 12:163–169

Eddy S (2004) How do RNA folding algorithms work? Nat Biotechnol 22:1457–1458. https://doi.org/10.1038/nbt1104-1457

Evin G, Hince C (2013) BACE1 as a therapeutic target in Alzheimer's disease: rationale and current status. Drugs Aging 30(10):755–764

Faghihi MA, Modarresi F, Khalil AM et al (2008a) Expression of a non-coding RNA is elevated in Alzheimer's disease and drives rapid feedforward regulation of beta-secretase. Nat Med 14 (7):723–730

Faghihi MA, Modarresi F, Khalil AM, Wood DE, Sahagan BG, Morgan TE, Finch CE, Laurent GS, Kenny PJ, Wahlestedt C (2008b) Expression of a non-coding RNA is elevated in Alzheimer's disease and drives rapid feedforward regulation of beta-secretase. Nat Med 14:723–730

Faghihi MA, Zhang M, Huang J, Modarresi F, Van der Brug MP, Nalls MA, Cookson MR, St-Laurent G, Wahlestedt C (2010) Evidence for natural antisense transcript-mediated inhibition of microRNA function. Genome Biol 11

Fukumoto H, Cheung BS, Hyman BT, Irizarry MC (2002) Beta-secretase protein and activity are increased in the neocortex in Alzheimer disease. Arch Neurol 59:1381–1389

Gacy AM, Goellner G, Juranić N, Macura S, McMurray CT (1995) Trinucleotide repeats that expand in human disease form hairpin structures in vitro. Cell 81:533–540

Gavazzo P, Vassalli M, Costa D, Pagano A (2013) Novel ncRNAs transcribed by Pol III and elucidation of their functional relevance by biophysical approaches. Front Cell Neurosci 7:203
Hajiaghayi M, Condon A, Hoos HH (2012) Analysis of energy-based algorithms for RNA secondary structure prediction. BMC Bioinformatics 13:22
Hamada M (2015a) RNA secondary structure prediction from multi-aligned sequences. Methods Mol Biol 1269:17–38
Hamada M (2015b) RNA secondary structure prediction from multi-aligned sequences. In: Picardi E (ed) RNA bioinformatics. Humana Press Inc., Totowa, pp 17–38
Harrow J, Frankish A, Gonzalez JM et al (2012) GENCODE: the reference human genome annotation for the ENCODE Project. Genome Res 22(9):1760–1774
Hendriks A (2005) A parallel evolutionary algorithm for RNA secondary structure prediction. Simon Fraser University, Burnaby
Hofacker IL (2003) Vienna RNA secondary structure server. Nucleic Acids Res 31(13):3429–3431.
Hu X, Hicks CW, He W et al (2006) Bace1 modulates myelination in the central and peripheral nervous system. Nat Neurosci 9(12):1520–1525
Iacoangeli A, Bianchi R, Tiedge H (2010) Regulatory RNAs in brain function and disorders. Brain Res 1338:36–47
Iida A, Hosono N, Sano M, Kamei T, Oshima S, Tokuda T, Nakajima M, Kubo M, Nakamura Y, Ikegawa S (2012) Novel deletion mutations of OPTN in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis in Japanese. Neurobiol Aging 33:1843.e19–e1843.e24
Iwakiri J, Hamada M, Asai K (2016) Bioinformatics tools for lncRNA research. Biochim Biophys Acta 1859(1):23–30
Jabbari H, Wark I, Montemagno C, Will S (2018) Knotty: efficient and accurate prediction of complex RNA pseudoknot structures. Bioinformatics 34:3849–3856
Jacobsen L, Madsen P, Moestrup SK et al (1996) Molecular characterization of a novel human hybrid-type receptor that binds the alpha2-macroglobulin receptor-associated protein. J Biol Chem 271(49):31379–31383
Janssen S, Giegerich R (2014) The RNA shapes studio. Bioinformatics 31:423–425
Jha NK, Jha SK, Kumar D, Kejriwal N, Sharma R, Ambasta RK, Kumar P (2015) Impact of insulin degrading enzyme and neprilysin in Alzheimer's disease biology: characterization of putative cognates for therapeutic applications. J Alzheimers Dis 48(4):891–917
Jha SK, Jha NK, Kumar D, Ambasta RK, Kumar P (2017a) Linking mitochondrial dysfunction, metabolic syndrome and stress signaling in Neurodegeneration. Biochim Biophys Acta Mol Basis Dis 1863(5):1132–1146
Jha SK, Jha NK, Kumar D, Sharma R, Shrivastava A, Ambasta RK, Kumar P (2017b) Stress-induced synaptic dysfunction and neurotransmitter release in Alzheimer's disease: can neurotransmitters and neuromodulators be potential therapeutic targets? J Alzheimers Dis 57 (4):1017–1039
Jha NK, Jha SK, Sharma R, Kumar D, Ambasta RK, Kumar P (2018) Hypoxia-induced signaling activation in neurodegenerative diseases: targets for new therapeutic strategies. J Alzheimers Dis 62(1):15–38
Jha NK, Jha SK, Kar R, Nand P, Swati K, Goswami VK (2019a) Nuclear factor-kappa β as a therapeutic target for Alzheimer's disease. J Neurochem 150(2):113–137
Jha NK, Kar R, Niranjan R (2019b) ABC transporters in neurological disorders: an important gateway for botanical compounds mediated neuro-therapeutics. Curr Top Med Chem 19 (10):795–811
Jha NK, Sharma A, Jha SK, Ojha S, Chellappan DK, Gupta G, Kesari KK, Bhardwaj S, Shukla SD, Tambuwala MM, Ruokolainen J, Dua K, Singh SK (2020) Alzheimer's disease-like perturbations in HIV-mediated neuronal dysfunctions: understanding mechanisms and developing therapeutic strategies. Open Biol 10(12):200286
Jiang T, Lin GH, Ma B, Zhang K (2002) A general edit distance between RNA structures. J Comput Biol 9(2):371–388

Khvotchev M, Sudhof TC (2004) Proteolytic processing of amyloid-beta precursor protein by secretases does not require cell surface transport. J Biol Chem 279(45):47101–47108
Kim J, Kim KM, Noh JH, Yoon J-H, Abdelmohsen K, Gorospe M (2016) Long non-coding RNAs in diseases of aging. Biochim Biophys Acta 1859(1):209–221. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbagrm.2015.06.013
Knauss JL, Sun T (2013) Regulatory mechanisms of long non-coding RNAs in vertebrate central nervous system development and function. Neuroscience 235:200–214
Knudsen B, Hein J (2003) Pfold: RNA secondary structure prediction using stochastic context-free grammars. Nucleic Acids Res 31:3423–3428
Kovtun IV, McMurray CT (2008) Features of trinucleotide repeat instability in vivo. Cell Res 18:198–213
Kraus TF, Greiner A, Guibourt V, Lisec K, Kretzschmar HA (2015) Identification of stably expressed incRNAs as valid endogenous controls for profiling of human glioma. J Cancer 6 (2):111–119
Kumar P, Jha NK, Jha SK, Ramani K, Ambasta RK (2015) Tau phosphorylation, molecular chaperones, and ubiquitin E3 ligase: clinical relevance in Alzheimer's disease. J Alzheimers Dis 43(2):341–361
Kumar P, Kumar D, Jha SK, Jha NK, Ambasta RK (2016) Ion channels in neurological disorders. Adv Protein Chem Struct Biol 103:97–136
Laird FM, Cai H, Savonenko AV et al (2005) BACE1, a major determinant of selective vulnerability of the brain to amyloid-beta amyloidogenesis, is essential for cognitive, emotional, and synaptic functions. J Neurosci 25(50):11693–11709
Lander ES, Linton LM, Birren B, Nusbaum C, Zody MC, Baldwin J, Devon K, Dewar K, Doyle M, FitzHugh W et al (2001) Initial sequencing and analysis of the human genome. Nature 409:860–921
Lee JH, Barral S, Reitz C (2008) The neuronal sortilin-related receptor gene SORL1 and late-onset Alzheimer's disease. Curr Neurol Neurosci Rep 8(5):384–391
Lee S, Liu B, Lee S, Huang SX, Shen B, Qian SB (2012) Global mapping of translation initiation sites in mammalian cells at single-nucleotide resolution. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 109:E2424–E2432
Li K, Rahman R, Gupta A, Siddavatam P, Gribskov M (2008) Pattern matching in RNA structures. Springer, ISBRA 2008. LNBI 4983:317–330
Li AX, Qin J, Marz M, Reidys CM (2011) RNA–RNA interaction prediction based on multiple sequence alignments. Bioinformatics 27(4):456–463. https://doi.org/10.1093/bioinformatics/btq659
Li D, Zhang J, Li X, Chen Y, Yu F, Liu Q (2020) Insights into lncRNAs in Alzheimer's disease mechanisms. RNA Biol 14:1–11
Lin D, Pestova TV, Hellen CU, Tiedge H (2008) Translational control by a small RNA: dendritic BC1 RNA targets the eukaryotic initiation factor 4A helicase mechanism. Mol Cell Biol 28 (9):3008–3019
Liu G, Chen X, Bissler JJ, Sinden RR, Leffak M (2010) Replication-dependent instability at (CTG)·(CAG) repeat hairpins in human cells. Nat Chem Biol 6:652–659
Liu T, Huang Y, Chen J et al (2014) Attenuated ability of BACE1 to cleave the amyloid precursor protein via silencing long non-coding RNA BACE1AS expression. Mol Med Rep 10 (3):1275–1281
Liu Q, Sun S, Yu W et al (2015) Altered expression of long non-coding RNAs during genotoxic stress-induced cell death in human glioma cells. J Neurooncol 122(2):283–292
López Castel A, Cleary JD, Pearson CE (2010) Repeat instability as the basis for human diseases and as a potential target for therapy. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 11:165–170
Lorenz R et al (2011) Vienna RNA package 2.0. algorithms. Mol Biol 6:26
Lorenz R, Wolfinger MT, Tanzer A, Hofacker IL (2016) Predicting RNA secondary structures from sequence and probing data. Methods 103:86–98

Luo Q, Chen Y (2016) Long non-coding RNAs and Alzheimer's disease. Clin Interv Aging 11:867–872. https://doi.org/10.2147/CIA.S107037
Ma H, Lesne S, Kotilinek L et al (2007) Involvement of beta-site APP cleaving enzyme 1 (BACE1) in amyloid precursor protein-mediated enhancement of memory and activity-dependent synaptic plasticity. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 104(19):8167–8172
Ma QL, Galasko DR, Ringman JM et al (2009) Reduction of SorLA/LR11, a sorting protein limiting beta-amyloid production, in Alzheimer disease cerebrospinal fluid. Arch Neurol 66 (4):448–457
Magistri M, Faghihi MA, St Laurent G III, Wahlestedt C (2012) Regulation of chromatin structure by long non-coding RNAs: focus on natural antisense transcripts. Trends Genet 28(8):389–396
Massone S, Vassallo I, Fiorino G et al (2011) 17A, a novel non-coding RNA, regulates GABA B alternative splicing and signaling in response to inflammatory stimuli and in Alzheimer disease. Neurobiol Dis 41(2):308–317
Massone S, Ciarlo E, Vella S et al (2012) NDM29, a RNA polymerase III-dependent non coding RNA, promotes amyloidogenic processing of APP and amyloid beta secretion. Biochim Biophys Acta 1823(7):1170–1177
Mathews DH, Turner DH (2002) Dynalign: an algorithm for finding the secondary structure common to two RNA sequences. J Mol Biol 317:191–203
Melissari MT, Grote P (2016) Roles for long non-coding RNAs in physiology and disease. Pflugers Arch. Epub 2016 Mar 5
Mirkin SM (2007) Expandable DNA repeats and human disease. Nature 447:932–940
Modarresi F, Faghihi MA, Patel NS, Sahagan BG, Wahlestedt C, Lopez-Toledano MA (2011) Knockdown of BACE1-AS nonprotein-coding transcript modulates beta-amyloid-related hippocampal neurogenesis. Int J Alzheimers Dis 2011:929042
Mulder SD, van der Flier WM, Verheijen JH et al (2010) BACE1 activity in cerebrospinal fluid and its relation to markers of AD pathology. J Alzheimer's Dis 20(1):253–260
Mus E, Hof PR, Tiedge H (2007) Dendritic BC200 RNA in aging and in Alzheimer's disease. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 104(25):10679–10684
Nakayama T, Ogiwara I, Ito K, Kaneda M, Mazaki E, Osaka H, Ohtani H, Inoue Y, Fujiwara T, Uematsu M et al (2010) Deletions of SCN1A 5′ genomic region with promoter activity in Dravet syndrome. Hum Mutat 31:820–829
Nebel ME (2001) Combinatorial properties of RNA secondary structures. J Comput Biol 9:541–573
Ng S-Y, Lin L, Soh BS et al (2013) Long non-coding RNAs in development and disease of the central nervous system. Trends Genet 29:461–468
Nowakowski J, Tinoco I (1997) RNA structure and stability. Semin Virol 8:153–165
Pagani F, Baralle FE (2004) Genomic variants in exons and introns: identifying the splicing spoilers. Nat Rev Genet 5:389–396
Parenti R, Paratore S, Torrisi A, Cavallaro S (2007) A natural antisense transcript against Rad18, specifically expressed in neurons and upregulated during beta-amyloid-induced apoptosis. Eur J Neurosci 26(9):2444–2457
Parisien M, Major F (2008) The MC-fold and MC-sym pipeline infers RNA structure from sequence data. Nature 452:51–55
Perneczky R, Alexopoulos P (2014) Cerebrospinal fluid BACE1 activity and markers of amyloid precursor protein metabolism and axonal degeneration in Alzheimer's disease. Alzheimer's Dement 10(5 Suppl):S425–S429.e421
Puton T, Kozlowski LP, Rother KM, Bujnicki JM (2013) CompaRNA: a server for continuous benchmarking of automated methods for RNA secondary structure prediction. Nucleic Acids Res 41:4307–4323
QIAGEN CLC Main Workbench Software (n.d.). clcbio.com
Rastegari B, Condon A (2005) Linear time algorithm for parsing RNA secondary structure. Springer WABI 2005(3692):341–352

Reeder J, Giegerich R (2004) Design, implementation and evaluation of a practical pseudoknot folding algorithm based on thermodynamics. BMC Bioinformatics 5:104
Reuter JS, Mathews DH (2010) RNA structure: software for RNA secondary structure prediction and analysis. BMC Bioinformatics 11:129
Rogaeva E, Meng Y, Lee JH et al (2007) The neuronal sortilin-related receptor SORL1 is genetically associated with Alzheimer disease. Nat Genet 39(2):168–177
Sato K, Hamada M, Asai K, Mituyama T (2009) CentroidFold: a web server for RNA secondary structure prediction. Nucleic Acids Res 37:W277–W280
Sato K, Kato Y, Hamada M, Akutsu T, Asai K (2011) IPknot: fast and accurate prediction of RNA secondary structures with pseudoknots using integer programming. Bioinformatics 27:i85–i93
Saus E, Willis JR, Pryszcz LP, Hafez A, Llorens C, Himmelbauer H, Gabaldn T (2018) nextPARS: parallel probing of RNA structures in Illumina. RNA 24:609–619
Schroeder SJ (2009) Advances in RNA structure prediction from sequence: new tools for generating hypotheses about viral RNA structure-function relationships. J f Virol 83 (13):6326–6334. https://doi.org/10.1128/JVI.00251-09
Seetin MG, Mathews DH (2012) RNA structure prediction: an overview of methods. In: Keiler KC (ed) Bacterial regulatory RNA: methods and protocols. Humana Press, Totowa, NJ, pp 99–122. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-61779-949-5_8
Senior A, Evans R, Jumper J, Kirkpatrick J, Sifre L, Green T, Qin C, Žídek A, Nelson A, Bridgland A, Penedones H, Petersen S, Simonyan K, Crossan S, Kohli P, Jones D, Silver D, Kavukcuoglu K, Hassabis D (2019) Protein structure prediction using multiple deep neural networks in CASP13. Proteins 87. https://doi.org/10.1002/prot.25834
Senior AW, Evans R, Jumper J et al (2020) Improved protein structure prediction using potentials from deep learning. Nature 577:706–710. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41586-019-1923-7
Singh J, Hanson J, Paliwal K et al (2019) RNA secondary structure prediction using an ensemble of two-dimensional deep neural networks and transfer learning. Nat Commun 10:5407. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41467-019-13395-9
Slavoff SA, Mitchell AJ, Schwaid AG, Cabili MN, Ma J, Levin JZ, Karger AD, Budnik BA, Rinn JL, Saghatelian A (2013) Peptidomic discovery of short open reading frame-encoded peptides in human cells. Nat Chem Biol 9:59–64
Sloane N (n.d.) The online-encyclopedia of integer sequences, published electronically at www.research.att.com/~njas/sequences/
Sloma MF, Mathews DH (2017) Base pair probability estimates improve the prediction accuracy of RNA non-canonical base pairs. PLoS Comput Biol 13:1–23
Smola MJ, Weeks KM (2018) In-cell RNA structure probing with SHAPE-MaP. Nat Protoc 13:1181–1195
Stein PR, Waterman MS (1978) On some new sequences generalizing the Catalan and Motzkin numbers. Discrete Math 26:261–272
Stern-Ginossar N, Weisburd B, Michalski A, Le VTK, Hein MY, Huang SX, Ma M, Shen B, Qian SB, Hengel H et al (2012) Decoding human cytomegalovirus. Science 338:1088–1093
Stockley JH, O'Neill C (2008) Understanding BACE1: essential protease for amyloid-beta production in Alzheimer's disease. Cell Mol Life Sci 65(20):3265–3289
Sun M, Nie FQ, Wang ZX, De W (2016) Involvement of incRNA dysregulation in gastric cancer. Histol Histopathol 31(1):33–39
Tsiamis V, Vairaktarakis M, Alexiou A, Ashraf GM (2016) Protein-protein interaction (PPI) network: recent advances in drug discovery. Curr Drug Metabol 18(1):5–10
Underwood JG, Uzilov AV, Katzman S, Onodera CS, Mainzer JE, Mathews DH, Lowe TM, Salama SR, Haussler D (2010) FragSeq: transcriptome-wide RNA structure probing using high-throughput sequencing. Nat Methods 7:995–1001
Vassar R, Kandalepas PC (2011) The beta-secretase enzyme BACE1 as a therapeutic target for Alzheimer's disease. Alzheimer's Res Ther 3(3):20

Vella S, Penna I, Longo L et al (2015) Perhexiline maleate enhances antitumor efficacy of cisplatin in neuroblastoma by inducing over-expression of NDM29 ncRNA. Sci Rep 5:18144
Vervoort R, Gitzelmann R, Lissens W, Liebaers I (1998) A mutation (IVS8+0.6kbdelTC) creating a new donor splice site activates a cryptic exon in an Alu-element in intron 8 of the human β-glucuronidase gene. Hum Genet 103:686–693
Viennot G, Vauchaussade de Chaumont M (1985) Enumeration of RNA secondary structures by complexity. Math Med Biol Lecture Notes Biomath 57:360–365
Wan P, Su W, Zhuo Y (2017) The role of long non-coding RNAs in neurodegenerative diseases. Mol Neurobiol 54(3):2012–2021. Epub 2016 Feb 24
Wang L, Liu Y, Zhong X, Liu H, Lu C, Li C, Zhang H (2019) DMfold: a novel method to predict RNA secondary structure with pseudoknots based on deep learning and improved base pair maximization principle. Front Genet 10:143. https://doi.org/10.3389/fgene.2019.00143
Warf MB, Berglund JA (2010) Role of RNA structure in regulating pre-mRNA splicing. Trends Biochem Sci 35:169–178
Washietl S, Kellis M, Garber M (2014) Evolutionary dynamics and tissue specificity of human long non-coding RNAs in six mammals. Genome Res 24(4):616–628
Waterman MS (1987) Secondary structure of single-stranded nucleic acids. Adv Math 1 (Suppl):167–212
Westhof E, Fritsch V (2000) RNA folding: beyond Watson-Crick pairs. Structure 8:R55–R65
Wilk R, Hu J, Blotsky D, Krause HM (2016) Diverse and pervasive subcellular distributions for both coding and long non-coding RNAs. Genes Dev 30(5):594–609
Wu P, Zuo X, Deng H, Liu X, Liu L, Ji A (2013) Roles of long non-coding RNAs in brain development, functional diversification and neurodegenerative diseases. Brain Res Bull 97:69–80
Xu X, Chen S-J (2015) Physics-based RNA structure prediction. Biophys Rep 1:2–13
Yamazaki H, Bujo H, Saito Y (1997) A novel member of the LDL receptor gene family with eleven binding repeats is structurally related to neural adhesion molecules and a yeast vacuolar protein sorting receptor. J Atheroscler Thromb 4(1):20–26
Yan K, Arfat Y, Li D, Zhao F, Chen Z, Yin C, Sun Y, Hu L, Yang T, Qian A (2016) Structure prediction: new insights into decrypting long non-coding RNAs. Int J Mol Sci 17:132
Yu B, Lu Y, Zhang QC et al (2020) Prediction and differential analysis of RNA secondary structure. Quant Biol 8:109–118. https://doi.org/10.1007/s40484-020-0205-6
Yuan J, Venkatraman S, Zheng Y, McKeever BM, Dillard LW, Singh SB (2013) Structure-based design of beta-site APP cleaving enzyme 1 (BACE1) inhibitors for the treatment of Alzheimer's disease. J Med Chem 56(11):4156–4180
Zakov S, Goldberg Y, Elhadad M, Ziv-ukelson M (2011) Rich parameterization improves RNA structure prediction. J Comput Biol 18:1525–1542
Zeng C, Yu X, Lai J, Yang L, Chen S, Li Y (2015) Overexpression of the long non-coding RNA PVT1 is correlated with leukemic cell proliferation in acute promyelocytic leukemia. J Hematol Oncol 8(1):126
Zhan Y, Guo M (2005) A permutation-based genetic algorithm for predicting RNA secondary structure-a practicable approach, vol 13. Springer, Berlin, pp 861–864
Zhou X, Xu J (2015) Identification of Alzheimer's disease-associated long non-coding RNAs. Neurobiol Aging 36(11):2925–2931
Zhou J, Li P, Zeng W et al (2020) IRIS: a method for predicting in vivo RNA secondary structures using PARIS data. Quant Biol. https://doi.org/10.1007/s40484-020-0223-4

Zhu J, Fu H, Wu Y, Zheng X (2013) Function of lncRNAs and approaches to lncRNA-protein interactions. Sci China Life Sci 56(10):876–885

zu Siederdissen CH, Bernhart SH, Stadler PF, Hofacker IL (2011) A folding algorithm for extended RNA secondary structures. Bioinformatics 27:i129–i136

Zu T, Gibbens B, Doty NS, Gomes-Pereira M, Huguet A, Stone MD, Margolis J, Peterson M, Markowski TW, Ingram MAC et al (2011) Non-ATG-initiated translation directed by microsatellite expansions. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108:260–265

Zuker M (2003) Mfold web server for nucleic acid folding and hybridization prediction. Nucleic Acids Res. 31:3406–3415

Immunotherapy: An Approach to Treat Alzheimer's Disease and Autism Spectrum Disorder

11

Farah Ma'arfi, Ziaul Hasan, Afreen Khanam, Arbab Husain, Mohammad Haroon Rasheed Khan, and Mohd Yasir Khan

Abstract

Since the late 1980s, Alzheimer's disease (AD) and autism spectrum disorder (ASD) had spread rapidly, and still, it persists in growing numbers. According to recent statistics, around 50 million people globally live with AD, and 1 out of 54 children have ASD, reaching an epidemic scale. Both diseases are thought to be the resultant of the build-up of abnormal proteins plaque/fibrils in the brain; the major cause of the difference is age. Though several kinds of research have been made, the detailed understanding of the mechanism behind the disease etiology, progression, early diagnosis, and other genetic factors is yet to be explored. In the past few years, only a few Alzheimer's patients were given proper medication using current drug therapeutics. Still, it gave only short relief and reverted in one form or the other, probably due to unblocked cognitive decline progression. For decades, the development of potential therapies for AD and ASD pathogenesis revolves around the aggregated proteins in neurodegenerative diseases. The emerging and expanding field of immunotherapy directs the clearing of these proteins which are responsible for cognitive impairment. Here, particular emphasis will be placed on the current immune therapeutics that have reached clinical trials. We also intend to divulge the connection between AD and ASD by

F. Ma'arfi
Department of Biotechnology, Shibli National College, Azamgarh, Uttar Pradesh, India

Z. Hasan
Department of Biosciences, Jamia Millia Islamia, New Delhi, India

A. Khanam · A. Husain
Department of Biosciences, Integral University, Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh, India

M. H. R. Khan
Independent Researcher, Ghaziabad, Uttar Pradesh, India

M. Y. Khan (✉)
Department of Biotechnology, Baba Farid Institute of Technology, Dehradun, Uttarakhand, India

G. Md Ashraf, A. Alexiou (eds.), *Autism Spectrum Disorder and Alzheimer's Disease*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-4558-7_11

deciphering the connecting mechanisms involved in the aggregated/toxic proteins, such as amyloid-β peptide (Aβ), Aβ precursor protein (APP), tau, α-synuclein, and apolipoproteins.

Keywords

Immunotherapy · Alzheimer's · Autism · Amyloid-β peptide (Aβ) · Aβ precursor protein (APP) · Apolipoproteins

Abbreviations

AD	Alzheimer's disease
APOE	Apolipoprotein E
APP	Amyloid precursor protein
ASD	Autism spectrum disorder
CAA	Cerebral amyloid angiopathy
ChAT	Acetylcholinesterase
CNTNAP2	Contactin-associated protein-like 2
DLBs	Lewy bodies
FHR1	Complement factor H-related protein
FN1	Fibronectin 1
IL	Interleukins
LPO	Lipid peroxidation
ROS	Reactive oxygen species
BBB	Blood-brain barrier

11.1 Introduction

Autism spectrum disorder (ASD) and Alzheimer's disease (AD) are two clinical syndromes that are distinct and uncommon by the concept; however, some similarities are apparent. Both AD and ASD are neurodegenerative and neurodevelopmental complex disorders, respectively, involve brain development primarily, and are also quite often associated with abnormalities of immune responses with devastating effects not only on the individual but also on society (Khan et al. 2016). AD, like many other acute and chronic neurodegenerative diseases, is associated with local inflammation clinically manifested by progressive dementia (Moya-Alvarado et al. 2016). AD's pathological characteristics are deposition of distinctive extracellular plaques of amyloid-b and tau neurofibrillary tangles associated with cognitive and mental dysfunction and cerebral amyloid angiopathy (CAA) in arterial walls (Serrano-pozo et al. 2011). On the other hand, ASD is characterized by social communication or interaction and restricted and repetitive behaviors. One of the studies of autism disease stated that autism and cancer share

several similarities at the level of cellular and molecular signal transduction, the involvement of the immune system, and the microbiota. Lymph stagnation in the brain may lead to neuroinflammation that is responsible for autism symptoms (Antonucci et al. 2019). Disease-related genes and their products make the background of common associations like memory deficits, demyelination, cognition changes, oxidative stress, and inflammation, as an integral part of both AD and ASD (Khan et al. 2016).

The systemic administration of steroidal or nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug treatments also failed to affect disease progression, leaving the scientific community with the question of what had been missed in understanding the disease (Schwartz et al. 2020).

More recently, it was found that brain-immune crosstalk is impaired in aging and neurodegenerative diseases. Thus, a fundamental mechanism of maintenance and support might be lost that could be amenable to restoration by rejuvenating the immune system (Scheiblich et al. 2020).

It would not be surprising enough that clinical immunotherapeutic approaches for other manifestations like cancer might be a suitable and fruitful therapy in the field of AD and ASD. By the use of clinical immunotherapeutic approaches in empowering the peripheral immune system, it might be possible to overcome the difficulties of co-ordinately targeting multiple factors that contribute to disease escalation and cognitive impairment, which may differ between patients, and at different phases along with the course of the disease (Alsharoqi et al. 2020). Therefore, in general, immunotherapy could serve as a means to harness the immune system to fight diseases like AD and ASD.

11.2 Common AD and ASD Manifestations

11.2.1 Common Recognizable Symptoms of AD and ASD

Significant fall in motor skills thought and behavioral coordination, apraxia, significant fall of expected chronological age with stereotyped repetitive movements including body shaking and clapping, inability to position parts of the body in space, and problems in changing clothes are the major characteristic features of ASD. All this can result in loss of independence as manifested by the incapability to perform routine jobs of performing daily ablutions, washing, dressing up, cooking, and eating. In case of AD progression from the mild to the moderate stages, alterations of the motor cortex, over-excitation, language problem, difficulties in judgment, unseemly behavior, disinhibition, difficulties to troubleshoot task persistence, restriction to verbal memory, alterations with the gamma-aminobutyric acid, and cholinergic pathways and impairments in the frontal lobe were reported (Nagata et al. 2010). Language circumlocution, dysfluent aphasia, difficulties in spontaneous speech, and frequent tip-of-the-tongue experiences are common symptoms of the two diseases. Early-stage symptoms specifically include dysfunctions in the non-linguistic areas of attention and executive memory. Simultaneously, stereotyped

communication is observed only on the progression of the disease; lowered semantic vocabulary, hindered search activities, poor language scores, and the progression in language impairment have been shown to correlate with clinical progression of AD. AD patients' facial recognition defects are due to their semantic nature. Moreover, patients of AD and ASD found difficulties in naming the person in question than in recognition and perception. These deficits affect most individuals and may vary from benign problems to more severe cognitive changes; nevertheless, the deficits were more pronounced when patients were imposed with demanding tasks (Hodges et al. 1993).

11.2.2 Genetics Association and Pathogenesis of AD and ASD

Numerous genes are highly active during nervous system development and are critical for the proper formation of any impairment that leads to ASD and AD pathogenesis (Blaker-Lee et al. 2012). ASD is a multigenic and highly heterogeneous group of disease that often coexist with other comorbidities caused by both inheritable and de novo gene variations. To distinguish which genes truly have overlapping risk is a considerable task to discuss common phenotypes. Generally, proteins responsible for energy metabolism, myelination, and synaptic vesicle are reported to be dysregulated in the brain of ASD patients. Apolipoprotein (apo) B-100, complement factor H-related protein (FHR1), complement C1q, and fibronectin 1 (FN1) are the common dysregulated proteins reported in the serum of individuals with ASD (Pichitpunpong et al. 2019). The most causative genes that lead to AD pathogenesis are β- amyloid, amyloid-β (Aβ)-mediated plaque formation, different conformations of Aβ, amyloid precursor protein (APP), presenilin 1 (PS1) and presenilin 2 (PS2) genes, and α-synuclein (Alzheimer's Association 2021).

α-synuclein association with many neurodegenerative diseases is collectively termed as synucleinopathies. These disorders include cognitive impairment, AD, ASD, PD, and dementia with Lewy bodies (DLBs). Misfolding and overexpression of α-synuclein lead to its aggregation and the formation of amyloid-like fibril in DLB region (Zhang et al. 2018).

α-synuclein via GSK3β (glycogen synthase kinase 3 beta) mediates phosphorylation of tau protein, leading to more Aβ production and accumulation, GSK3β activation, and intra-cellular dysfunctioning. Moreover, Aβ-associated α-synuclein aggregation in the limbic regions of AD patients facilitates more stable oligomers and hence disease pathogenesis (Crews et al. 2009; Twohig and Nielsen 2019).

The plethora of studies also reported the presence of α-synuclein in the CSF and plasma. α-synuclein plasma levels were found to be higher in ASD patients than in normal control. Besides, the involvement of α-synuclein in the regulation of synaptic plasticity leads to synaptic dysfunctioning, dopamine homeostasis imbalance, neurotransmitter disturbances, and sometimes neuronal death. Thus, these synucleinopathies and pathway disturbance might be strongly associated with ASD pathogenesis (Al-Mazidi and Al-Ayadhi 2021).

Other risk factors and genetic variations associated with AD and ASD are tabulated in Table 11.1 (Fu et al. 2010; Caramelli et al. 1999; Sokol et al. 2011; Crehan and Lemere 2016, Westmark and Malter 2007; Stigler et al. 2009; Rylaarsdam and Guemez Gamboa 2019; Bowers and Konopka 2012; Chen et al. 2020; Griciuc and Tanzi 2021).

Apart from the direct role of several genes in AD and ASD pathogenesis, lipid peroxidation (LPO), the end product of reactive oxygen species (8-isoprostane F2 α) attack, is another marker of ASD (Ming et al. 2005). Due to the lack of glutathione-producing ability of neuronal cells, the brain's capacity to detoxify ROS is decreased (Erden-İnal et al. 2002; Ono et al. 2001). Evidence has shown that extensive oxidative stress is a characteristic of AD brains and autistic children, in addition to the established pathology of senile plaques and neurofibrillary tangles in AD (Pratico 2008). Oxidative stress has been regarded as one of the contributing factors toward the pathogenesis of AD. Biopsies from AD brains have shown a significant reduction in mitochondria, while the mitochondrial DNA and proteins were seen increased in the cytoplasm and the vacuoles of brain cells. This suggests the degradation of brain cells due to oxidative stress (Hirai et al. 2001). Failure to resolve the inflammatory responses could lead to chronic inflammation and damage to the brain tissue, as observed in AD and ASD (Wang et al. 2015a).

11.2.3 Neuroimmune Dysfunctioning Associated with AD and ASD

Over the last few decades, understanding the underlying connection between the brain and immune function has undergone dramatic changes in perception of neurological degenerative diseases, mental disability, and several other related neuropathology comorbidities. A plethora of research defines the optimal functionality of the brain concerning the immune system, provided that the circulating immune and its response are needed to be tightly controlled, to understand the brain pathologies and the optimal effect that are directly or indirectly dependent on their type, location, activity, and other possible factors (Schwartz et al. 2020). Approximately one out of six brains of autistic patients show signs of immune cell infiltration in postmortem studies (Bailey et al. 1998).

Several in vivo model studies show an abnormal behavioral expression of natural killer cells/cytokines and its development in the blood plasma of AD and ASD patients especially interleukins (IL-1, IL-2, IL-4, IL-6, IL-8, IL-12, IL-13, IL-15, IL-1β, and CD8 antigen; Wang et al. 2015a, b; Ashwood et al. 2011; Stigler et al. 2009; Singh 1996; Lahiri et al. 2021). Lee et al. (2006) reported that the proportions of both CD4+ and CD8+ T-cells that associate with the production of interferon (IFN)-g and IL-2 were found to be significantly reduced; on the other side, CD4+ and CD8+ T-cells that produce IL-4 were significantly elevated in 20 ASD children in comparison to normal (Lee et al. 2006). Alteration in cytokine level is directly or indirectly associated with the dysfunction in the blood-brain barrier (BBB) system of the CNS (Noriega and Savelkoul 2014). Elevated ChAT activity and the presence of microglial cells in the basal forebrain and the immature CNS are potent markers of

Table 11.1 Genes implicated in AD and ASD

Gene	Source product	Function	Major diseases
APOE	Apolipoprotein E	Cholesterol trafficking	AD, ASD, CVDs
APP	β-Amyloid precursor protein	Neurite outgrowth and cell adhesion	AD, ASD
C4B	Complement cascade gene 4	Provides defense against foreign pathogens, autoimmunity	ASD, AD, dementia
FN1	Fibronectin 1	Blood clotting, wound healing	ASD, AD
NFTs	Neurofibrillary tangles	Microtubule stabilization	AD, tauopathies
Low plasma ApoA1	Apolipoprotein A1	Cholesterol removal	AD, CVDs
apoB-100	Apolipoprotein B100	Cholesterol efflux	ASD, diabetes
BDNF	Brain-derived neurotrophic factor	Neurotrophin, neuropreservation	Mental retardation syndrome, late-onset AD, ASD
COMT	Catechol-O-methyltransferase	Degrades catecholamines such as dopamine, epinephrine, and norepinephrine	Parkinson, ASD, AD
FHR1	Complement factor H-related protein	Complement activation	Uremic syndrome, autoimmune diseases, ASD, AD
FMR1	Fragile X mental retardation protein (FMRP)	Regulation of mRNA translation	AD, fragile X syndrome
HLA-A	Major histocompatibility complex, class I, A	Part of the major histocompatibility gene complex	AD, autoimmune diseases, rheumatoid arthritis, etc.
PTEN	Phosphatase and tensin homolog	Tumor suppressor phosphatase, regulation of neuron	Cancer, ASD
RELN	Reelin	Regulates neuronal migration and neuroplasticity in the brain	Cerebellar hypoplasia, AD, ASD
SLC6A4	Solute carrier family 6 (neurotransmitter transporter, serotonin), member 4, HTTP	Intracellular serotonin transport	AD, ASD,
CLU,	Clusterin	Protein folding	Neurodegenerative diseases, cancer, AD, ASD, aging
TREM2,	Triggering receptor expressed on myeloid cells 2	Scaffold folding, signal transduction, regulation of interleukin-6 production	AD, ASD, dementia

(continued)

Table 11.1 (continued)

Gene	Source product	Function	Major diseases
PICALM,	Phosphatidylinositol-binding clathrin assembly protein	Protein coding and folding	Leukemia, AD
TNF	Tumor necrosis factor	Immune activation	Cancer, AD, ASD
PS-1 and 2	Presenilin 1 and 2	Generation β-amyloid, APP,	AD, ASD, cancer
NLGN-1,	Neuroligins	Amyloid β binding, an integral component of membrane	AD, ASD
SYN-1 and 2	Synaptic vesicle cycling proteins synapsin-1 and 2	Transporter activity, regulation of neurotransmitter secretion	Rett syndrome, AD, ASD
SCN2A	Sodium voltage-gated channel alpha subunit 2	Encode ion-exchange channel	Epilepsy, AD, ASD
CACNA1S	Calcium voltage-gated channel subunit alpha1 S	Provides instruction for making calcium channel	Epilepsy, AD, ASD
CACNB-2	Calcium voltage-gated channel auxiliary subunit beta 2	Encodes auxiliary calcium channel, trafficking to the plasma membrane	Brugada syndrome, epilepsy, AD, ASD
KCNQ-3 and *5*	Potassium voltage-gated channel subfamily Q members 3 and 5	Provides instruction in the making of potassium channel	AD, ASD, benign familial neonatal epilepsy
SHANK-3	Multiple ankyrin repeat domains 3	Protein folding, scaffold protein binding, regulate synaptic depression, synapse formation	AD, ASD, schizophrenia
FOXP2	Forkhead box P2 located on 7q31 chromosome expressed during mid-gestation (a critical time point in brain development)	Associated with language, speech, motor behavior during speech. Forced expression of FOXP2 in human neuronal cells and the human fetal neural progenitor cells resulted in concomitant repression of CNTNAP2, MET mRNA, and protein. (Bowers and Konopka 2012)	Pathophysiology of ASD

ASD (Hagberg et al. 2012; Pratt et al. 2013). Apart from this, genome-wide association studies (GWAS) reveal microglia and cytokines influence the expression of several genes known to be linked with AD pathologies (Ji et al. 2019; Villegas-Llerena et al. 2016; Karch and Goate 2015). Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors (PPARα, β, or δ) stimulate inhibitory proteins such as nuclear factor-kappa β implicated in the expression of pro-inflammatory cytokines and chemokines promoting AD progression (Delerive et al. 2000; Lawrence 2009). Deficits of transforming growth factor beta-1 (TGF beta-1) could significantly contribute to

neuroinflammation and immune deregulation in ASD and AD (Ashwood et al. 2011). In a study by Shaftel et al. (2007), overexpression of IL-1 promotes Aβ plaques in AD patients.

11.2.4 Immunotherapy Associated with AD and ASD

Dysfunctioning in the immune system which is the underlying cause of AD and ASD led researchers to investigate immune-based therapies. As the immune-privileged organ, the brain posits a huge challenge for ASD and AD in the field of immunotherapy. Recently, several immune therapies mainly focus on the clearance of plaque deposited due to β amyloid (Aβ) employing several mechanisms. The transfer factor is a leukocyte lysate that stimulates an immune response against foreign bodies such as bacteria, fungi, and viruses. Several reports manifest the leukocytes mediated transfer factor (TF) based immunotherapy. In a study person infected with congenital CMV and ASD showed improved motor skills such as social behavior and interaction upon treatment with TF (Stubbs and Magenis 1980). A similar study was also reported by Singh et al. (1988) where 8 autistic patients were treated with TF. Six out of eight patients showed improvement in sleep, speech, and attention (Singh et al. 1988). In a subsequent study to ascertain TF's role, 10 (45%) out of 22 patients showed behavioral changes and improved IQ upon treatment with TF (Fudenberg 1996) after undergoing the Symptom Severity Score Average (SSSA) test.

Choroid plexus (CP) epithelial cells help in selective accession of immune cell access; leukocyte trafficking is found to be impaired in animal brain models and AD. Several independent in vivo studies have shown that the circulating monocyte and immune-regulatory leukocytes can remove misfolded or unfolded protein (Aβ plaques, tau proteins) hence maintaining the inflammatory milieu and synaptic neuron structure and reducing gliosis (Schwartz et al. 2019).

11.2.4.1 Immunotherapeutic-Based Drug Considered for Clinical Application in Autism.

11.2.4.1.1 Intravenous Immune Globulin

Intravenous immune globulin (IVIG)-based ASD treatment showed striking behavioral improvement in several studies. In a study out of 19 autistic children, one had markedly improved, four had adequately improved, while five showed minimal change (Gupta 1996). These patients have better vision, improved socio-vocabulary behavior, echolalia damage, and enhanced articulation (DelGiudice-Asch et al. 1999).

In an alternative study, four of the eight with regressive ASD treated with IVIG-based treatment showed modest progression in hyperactivity and attention, although the main symptoms showed no change. Simultaneously, a child with severe regressive ASD demonstrated a substantial enhancement in core autistic symptoms (Plioplys 1998). An oral human immunoglobulin study conducted on 12 youth

with ASD showed a better behavioral response after 8 weeks of treatment in 6 of 12 (50%) patients (Woods 2012).

11.2.4.1.2 Prednisone

Prednisone is a synthetic glucocorticoid used to treat autoimmune and inflammatory conditions due to its immunosuppressive effect. An open-label study examined 12 subjects with a pervasive developmental disorder for 16 weeks to use prednisone to treat the pervasive developmental disorder. However, six subjects showed progress in language abilities, with parents and teachers reporting subjective improvements in attention, purposefully directed behavior, and receptive emotional abilities (Stigler et al. 2009).

11.2.4.1.3 Naltrexone

Positive effects of steroid treatment were observed in the case of autism (Chez and Guido-Estrada 2010). Considering the effects that endogenous opioids have on immune function, 12 autistic children were treated with 12 antagonist naltrexone using a double-blind, placebo-controlled, crossover design. Patients on naltrexone demonstrated significant improvement in behavioral symptoms. No changes among naltrexone and placebo were found on the Childhood Autism Rating Scale. Seven children with the maximum noticeable enhancement were considered "respondents." A decrease in the suppressor (CD4 CD8 +) subset, with an increase in the sub-number of T-helper (CD4 + CD8) and normalization of the CD4/CD8 ratio after naltrexone treatment, was found in respondents. The responses exhibit beta-endorphin levels associated with the dispersal of the NK cell population during NACX cell treatment (Scifo et al. 1996).

11.2.4.1.4 Pentoxifylline

Pentoxifylline, an immune modulator, has been studied as a possible treatment for autism (Stigler et al. 2009). The drug prevents the production of certain cytokines, such as TNF-α and IFN-γ. Pentoxifylline was found to be successful in treating autism in many studies (Marchezan et al. 2018).

11.2.4.1.5 Vancomycin

Recently, antibiotic therapy in autism has been investigated. Several reports suggest that after repeated broad-spectrum antibiotic usage, the intestinal clostridial species may be responsible for developing autism in children. An open-label study with oral vancomycin was performed on 11 children with diarrhea and retrograde-onset autism. A study therapist completed the behavioral and communication rating scales on the respective child. Eight (80%) out of ten children treated showed improvement. All children's ratings returned to baseline soon after cessation of vancomycin treatment (Kang et al. 2017).

11.2.4.1.6 Vasopressin

The arginine vasopressin (AVP) signaling pathway is the most common pathway for the treatment of autism spectrum disorder (ASD). Various preclinical studies stated

the importance of AVP physiology, related to social functioning in many mammalian species. Research suggests that AVP signaling is associated with social impairment in children with ASD. The human gene for AVP-neurophysin II (NPII) is mapped to chromosome 20p13; multiple genetic loci within the AVP region can affect the progression of ASD, including childhood aggression (Hendaus et al. 2019).

11.2.4.1.7 Selective Serotonin Receptor Inhibitors (SSRIs)

Reports suggest that 21–32% of ASD children and adolescents with SSRIs were on prescribed medication is inconclusive evidence for SSRIs efficacy. The efficacy of four SSRIs (fluvoxamine, fluoxetine, citalopram, and fenfluramine) was investigated for ASD. Nine randomized clinical trials involving 320 participants were evaluated, reporting 17 different outcomes. Most of the data were unsuitable for meta-analysis, except for the proportion of improvements on the Clinical Global Impression-Improvement Scale for 2 trials of fluoxetine and fluvoxamine in adults who underwent SSRI placebo (relative risk, 12.58; 995% CI, 1.77–89.33). One of these studies also showed improvement in aggressive behavior measures, and another small study of adults showed improvement in anxiety. Citalopram confirmed no positive effect on the largest high-quality test in children. The benefits of SSRIs for ASD in children and adults was not restricted. Currently, SSRIs are prescribed "off-label" to treat children with autism (Posey et al. 2006).

11.2.4.2 Immunotherapeutic-Based Drug Considered for Clinical Application in the Case of Alzheimer's

11.2.4.2.1 Bapineuzumab

Bapineuzumab is a humanized monoclonal antibody that reduces brain fibrillar amyloid in AD patients (Sperling et al. 2012). However, it was associated with a risk of vasogenic edema and microhemorrhage (ARIA). The 3D6 is the murine precursor of humanized bapineuzumab, which has been reported to enter the transgenic mice model's brain, decorate the plaques, and induce Fc receptor-mediated phagocytosis (Bard et al. 2000). Several clinical studies have been conducted which indicate a reduction in fibrillar amyloids in the brain of AD patients. A meta-analysis based on clinical studies suggests a lack of bapineuzumab's clinical efficacy and its association with adverse effects (Abushouk et al. 2017). Therefore, the use of bapineuzumab to treat AD patients is not recommended and can only be reconsidered after re-evaluating its efficacy in a combinatorial formula.

11.2.4.2.2 Solanezumab

Solanezumab, another humanized IgG1 mAb, recognizes and targets a middle region (residues 16–26) amyloid peptide epitope (Farlow et al. 2012; Siemers et al. 2016). The murine precursor (m266) of the antibody binds tightly to monomeric amyloid peptides but not to aggregates or fibrils (DeMattos et al. 2001, 2002). Solanezumab effectively reduces amyloid in transgenic mice and does not carry the risk of ARIA

like the bapineuzumab. Here, the proposed mechanism of action is the peripheral sequestration of a monomeric amyloid peptide, i.e., peripheral sink effect.

11.2.4.2.3 Crenezumab

Similar to solanezumab, crenezumab is another humanized mAb that recognizes and targets a midsequence (residues 13–24) amyloid peptide epitope. However, it differs from solanezumab in that it possesses an IgG4 backbone. The IgG4 isotype helps microglial phagocytic activity without raising cytokine storm (Adolfsson et al. 2012) which contributes to neurotoxicity as well as ARIA (Ultsch et al. 2016). In vitro studies report that crenezumab efficiently binds to amyloid fibrils and oligomers but to a lower extent to monomers (Adolfsson et al. 2012). The epitopes recognized by solanezumab and crenezumab overlap and therefore exhibit crossreactivity. Aβ residues 21–26 adopt α-helical structure when bound to solanezumab, whereas residues 21–24 exhibit random coil structure when bound to crenezumab. The occurrence of α-helical epitope only in monomeric forms of Aβ but not in aggregates explains solanezumab's preference to bind monomer.

11.2.4.2.4 Gantenerumab

Gantenerumab, the first fully human IgG1 anti-Aβ mAb, can bind to conformational epitopes that encompass both the N-terminus (residues 3–12) and midsequence (residues 8–27) epitopes and show high affinity for fibrils. Early studies based on PET (positron emission tomography) demonstrated that gantenerumab significantly reduced brain amyloid plaques by recruiting microglial cells (Bohrmann et al. 2012). Similarly, SAR228810 is also a humanized antibody that recognizes a particular conformational epitope that allows specific binding to protofibrils and fibrils.

11.2.4.2.5 Ponezumab

Ponezumab is a human IgG2 mAb that targets the Aβ C-terminus (residues 30–40) (La Porte et al. 2012). The IgG2 isotype has lower immune potential (Landen et al. 2013) limiting their clinical efficacy; therefore, ponezumab production was discontinued after a few trials.

11.2.4.2.6 BAN2401

BAN2401, a humanized IgG1 mAb, specifically binds to soluble Aβ protofibrils. This antibody was developed by E22G arctic mutation in the APP and has shown an efficient reduction of Aβ protofibrils in the brain and CSF of tg-ArcSwe mice (Tucker et al. 2015). Multiple clinical trials are going on, and BAN2401 has been reported to show no ARIA cases, the significant limitations of bapineuzumab (Lannfelt et al. 2014).

11.2.4.2.7 Aducanumab

Aducanumab, a human IgG1 mAb, selectively targets Aβ aggregates, including soluble oligomers and insoluble fibrils (Sevigny et al. 2016). It targets the N-terminus (residues 3–6), which forms a conformational epitope absent in monomers. Analogs of this mAb exhibited the potential to cross BBB, bind

parenchymal Aβ, and reduce soluble as well as insoluble Aβ (Sevigny et al. 2016). So far, several clinical trials have been conducted using mAbs. Still, these mAbs persist in limitations regarding their production, lower tissue penetration, and adverse effects associated with inflammatory reactions and CAA-associated microhemorrhage (Racke et al. 2005). The lack of specificity to the toxic pathological Aβ oligomers is the major limitation of these passive therapies. Therefore, it can be carefully contended that passive therapeutic approaches have limited efficacy in symptomatic AD.

11.2.4.2.8 Antibody Fragments

Different formats of recombinant antibody fragments, such as single-chain fragment variable (ScFv), fragment antigen-binding (Fab), single-domain antibody fragments (VHH or sdAbs), bispecific antibodies (BsAb), gamma bodies, and intrabodies, are currently being investigated as therapeutics for AD. These are preferred over conventional full-length mAbs owing to their great specificity, higher affinity, stability, solubility, and reduced immunogenicity (Manoutcharian et al. 2017).

The ScFvs

The ScFvs are the smallest antibody fragments (VH and VL linked with a linker). These antibody fragments show increased stability as well as affinity (Frenkel et al. 2000; Malone and Sullivan 1996). ScFv can be delivered and distributed all over the brain via intracerebral, intranasal, or virus-mediated routes (Campana et al. 2009; Donofrio et al. 2005; Federoff 2009; Filesi et al. 2007). They are packaged in small viral vectors like recombinant adeno-associated virus (rAAV) and injected into the CNS. The first ScFv-based anti-Aβ antibody, 508F (Fv), was derived from the monoclonal IgM 508 antibody. This fragment demonstrated efficient disaggregation of Aβ fibrils and also reduced toxicity in cultured PC-12 cells. Similarly, N- and C-terminal binding ScFvs were produced and selected using naive human ScFv phage library with Aβ1–28 and Aβ1–40, respectively (Liu et al. 2004; Robert et al. 2008). Only the ScFv against N-terminal could inhibit Aβ aggregation in vitro (Liu et al. 2004). Other novel fragments called catabodies have been developed. These catabodies are ScFv fragments generated by affinity maturation of the corresponding parent mAb with improved catalytic activity. They catalyze the proteolysis of Aβ and reduce the accumulation of toxic amyloid in the brain. The first catabody, Asec-1A, inhibited the aggregation of Aβ and reduced Aβ toxicity on human neuroblastoma cells (Kasturirangan et al. 2010). Similarly, a bispecific tandem ScFv produced by combining iBSEC1 and Asec-1A showed inhibition of amyloidogenic APP processing and enhanced Aβ proteolysis (Boddapati et al. 2012).

Fab Fragments

Fab fragments contain one heavy and one light chain with binding avidity lower than IgG but affinity parallel to it. These are small in size and also stable when compared to ScFvs. Tammer et al. (2002) produced a recombinant Fab (rFab) against the central region of Aβ derived from the parent hybridoma 1E8. This rFab was an efficient binder of amyloid plaques. This rFab retained the ability to inhibit fibril

formation and associated toxicity with a strong affinity (Kd-6 nm) for Aβ, determined by surface plasmon resonance measurements (Robert et al. 2008, 2010).

Bispecific Antibodies (BsAbs)

A highly innovative approach, the molecular Trojan horse technology (Pardridge 2008) has been employed to generate fusion proteins called BsAbs against AD. These BsAbs contained binding sites for Aβ peptide and for the insulin/transferrin receptor (IR/TfR), which are highly expressed on the BBB. The central part of the BsAb comprising CH2–CH3 domain of the mAb provides the binding site for the FcRn receptor expressed on the BBB (Robert and Wark 2012).

Gamma Bodies

Gamma bodies are grafted amyloid-motif antibodies. They are designed based on the principle that the amyloidogenic motifs of one Aβ peptide interact with identical motifs of adjacent Aβ monomers forming stacks of parallel β sheets (Lührs et al. 2005; Perchiacca et al. 2012). This homotypic interaction between peptide motifs induces Aβ fibrillation, and this phenomenon has been exploited for antibody engineering to recognize specific Aβ oligomers and fibrils. A small amyloidogenic peptide (6–10 residues) from Aβ-42 is grafted into the complementarity determining regions (CDRs) of the VH domain that can recognize soluble Aβ oligomers and fibrils. The gamma bodies which display the Aβ motif (18VFFA21) react with Aβ fibrils. The central hydrophobic segment 18VFFA21 form β sheets during the formation of fibrils from soluble Aβ oligomers (Lührs et al. 2005; Malone and Sullivan 1996). Gamma bodies specific to fragments Aβ12–21, Aβ15–24, and Aβ18–27 can readily recognize the Aβ18–21 motif present in β sheet but not insoluble Aβ oligomers. Therefore, the β sheet development by the Aβ18–21 motifs is the crucial structural modification during fibril formation from Aβ oligomers (Perchiacca et al. 2012). However, gamma bodies displaying C-terminal motif (34LMVGGVVIA42) recognize and bind both the oligomer and fibrils but weakly with Aβ monomers (Ahmed et al. 2010; Zhang et al. 2013). Consequently, these gamma bodies neutralize toxicity associated with both the conformers.

Intrabodies

Intrabodies are the intracellularly expressed antibody fragments that recognize and bind molecules within the cell (Cardinale and Biocca 2008; Miller and Messer 2005). The intrabody ScFv-β1 developed to recognize the N-terminal region near the β-secretase cleavage site demonstrated a significant reduction in Aβ generation in APP overexpressing human embryonic kidney cells (Paganetti et al. 2005). This was further improved when the KDEL sequence was incorporated which facilitated expression specifically in the endoplasmic reticulum. ScFv-β1 acts by shielding the cleavage site for β-secretase which facilitates the inoffensive α-secretase-induced cleavage of APP (Sudol et al. 2009). In AD, the Fc region of antibody plays a significant role in eliciting adverse reactions which include meningoencephalitis and cerebral hemorrhages. Strategies that help lower the affinity of Fc to the Fc receptor (FcγR) present on immune cells and inhibit complement activation through c1q

binding are being worked upon. Point mutation for deglycosylation of the asparagine at 297th position to alanine or glutamine, or replacing leucine with alanine in the lower hinge region (L234 and L235), helped lower the Fc-FcγR interactions (Alegre et al. 1994).

11.2.5 Immunotherapy-Based Common Medication for AD and ASD

Despite bundles of promising research from several decades, no effective medication for AD and ASD exists. This might be due to the huge interconnection and complex interplay of several genes/proteins in defining and staging AD and ASD. Drugs like risperidone, thioridazine, risperidone, olanzapine, valproate, and serotonin are widely used in treating AD patients (Lauterbach et al. 2010). Several ongoing AD medications are currently being used to treat ASD such as rivastigmine, donepezil, tacrine, galantamine, and memantine. Although FDA has not solely approved its use in the treatment of ASD, these drugs show improvement in overall ASD behavior like motor skills, expression, receptive language, social interaction, eye contact, and many more (Rossignol and Frye 2014) with minor and long-term side effects. This demands second-generation research that offers significant advantages in terms of decreased cognitive and neurological impairment and reduced short- or long-term side-effects (Table 11.2).

11.3 Dissimilarity in Alzheimer's Disease and Autism

In the previous sections, much has been discussed, highlighting the features expected in AD and ASD. Both conditions involve the build-up of proteins in the brain and fueled by infectious waste, including neurotoxins causing the ultimate neurological dysfunction. Several similarities among the two diseases are also considered as twin similarities (https://alzheimerdisease.tv/diagnosis/autism/).

However, when the turn of differences between the two comes, the most popular aspect we consider is the age factor, which is undoubtedly the biggest difference. ASD is a neurodevelopment disease in kids, while AD is a neurodegenerative disease of elderly people. Due to this crucial difference, ASD is often called AD of a child, and AD is known as ASD of mature adults (Nasrat et al. 2017b).

Not discussed much, but there are still other notable differences between them, which makes us say the twin similarity is not identical. These differences include:

1. Autism is a brain deformity that controls a person's potential to correlate, communicate, and relate to other people. On the other hand, Alzheimer's disease is a chronic, progressive, and prevalent most common age-related neurodegenerative disease (Nasrat et al. 2017b).
2. Autism is identified by a decrease in cognitive and social functions associated with loss of already developed skills, while Alzheimer's is a progressive disease

Table 11.2 The common conventional drugs used in the treatment of AD show an effective response in ASD

Conventional drugs	Administration	Response	Side effects	References
Haloperidol	Oral, nasal spray, intramuscular, intravenous	Reduction in stereotypies, behavioral improvement	Pyramidal side effects, blurred vision (long-term effect)	Campbell et al. (1990)
Risperidone	Oral, deep intramuscular	Reductions in repetitive behavior, aggression, anxiety/nervousness, and depression	Weight gain, nausea, restlessness, vomiting	McDougle et al. (1998)
Olanzapine	Oral, intramuscular	Reductions in repetitive behavior, aggression, anxiety/nervousness, and depression	Weight gain, restlessness	Potenza et al. (1999)
Selective serotonin reuptake Inhibitors	Oral, intramuscular	Disabling anxiety, obsessional and repetitive behavior, and the tendency of self-injury	Weight loss, dizziness, headache, etc.	Fatemi et al. (1998)
Opiate antagonists – Naltrexone	Oral, nasal spray, intramuscular, intravenous	Reducing overactivity, promotes social engagement, and decreases self-injurious behavior	Trouble sleeping, dizziness, joint pain, etc.	Willemsen-Swinkels et al. (1995)
Aripiprazole	Intramuscular	Reduces irritability	Nausea, vomiting, light-headedness, blurred vision, weight gain	Elbe and Lalani (2012)

hallmarked by cognitive disorders associated with loss of memory functions (Li and Zhou 2016; Plassman et al. 2007).

3. Alzheimer's is more prevalent in females than males, while autism is more frequent in boys than girls (Hestvik et al. 2010; Leandro et al. 2005).
4. Alzheimer's could take some years to develop, while autistic disorder could have a fast onset to grow. Autism is a neurodevelopmental disorder occupying the critical period of development of centers responsible for skills during early childhood (Nasrat et al. 2017c); toxins could compromise these developing centers in a short duration, affecting their development faster. While Alzheimer's is a neurodegenerative disease targeting already developed brain centers among old-age people (Nasrat et al. 2017a), degeneration of these centers is a delayed process needing, therefore, some years to exert its effect.

11.4 Future Prospects Based on Lipoprotein-Based Immunotherapy for AD and ASD

Studies in humans and in vivo and in vitro models support the hypothesis that circulating HDL has vasoprotective properties, provides resilience to cerebrovascular dysfunction in AD, removes Aβ plaque from the brain endothelial cells via active (Montañola et al. 2016), and reverses cholesterol transport mechanism by involving various receptors such as p-glycoprotein, LDL receptor-related protein (LRP1), and LDLR. Several studies show that the low level of apoA1, the major component of HDL (Zuliani et al. 2010), elevated total cholesterol, and LDL/apoB levels correspond to increased neuritic plaque density associated with a more severe form of AD (Merched et al. 2000; Saczynski et al. 2007; Bates et al. 2009). Several cross-sectional studies reported overexpressed apoB in neuronal degenerated cells/tissue of transgenic mice (Bereczki et al. 2008, Caramelli et al. 1999) and lower serum apo-A1 and HDL-C levels in AD (Jansen et al. 2019; Kunkle et al. 2019). Other studies also reported dysregulation of cholesterol metabolism-associated genes, higher triglycerides (TG), lower HDL, and LDL/HDL ratio in ASD patients (Kim et al. 2010; Tierney et al. 2006; Hu et al. 2009). Smith-Lemli-Opitz syndrome (SLOS) is an inborn decrease in cholesterol synthesis associated with ASD symptoms (Aneja and Tierney 2008; Sikora et al. 2006).

Smith-Lemli-Opitz syndrome (SLOS), an inborn decrease of cholesterol synthesis associated with ASD, improves rapidly after cholesterol supplementation (Tierney et al. 2006). Besides, the expression level of apoB100 and apoA4 was found to be elevated in high- versus low-functioning ASD (Corbett et al. 2007). Lipoprotein-associated phospholipase A_2 (Lp-PLA_2) mediates vascular inflammation through the regulation of lipid metabolism in the blood. Lp-PLA_2 inhibition showed promising therapeutic effects in Alzheimer's disease. Darapladib, a selective and orally effective Lp-PLA_2 inhibitor, has beneficial effects on the functional integrity of the BBB (Huang et al. 2020) and reduced the influx of plasma components into the brain tissue (Acharya et al. 2013). A phase II trial demonstrated that Lp-PLA_2 inhibition could benefit AD progression (Huang et al. 2020).

Rilapladib, another potent Lp-PLA_2 inhibitor, resulted in low levels of plasma CSF neurodegenerative markers, including albumin quotient (AlbQ), total tau (T-tau), P-tau181, and neurofilament light chain (NFL). Lp-PLA_2 inhibitors might result from preventing BBB breakdown in cerebral amyloidosis in an independent manner. Both darapladib and rilapladib were reported to be well tolerated with no major side effects observed (Shaddinger et al. 2014).

Furthermore, lipoprotein (HDL) ability to modulate cholesterol bioavailability and microdomains-enriched-glycosphingolipids is conserved evolutionarily, which affects the landscape of the cell involved in the innate/adaptive immune system, inflammation, and antigen presentation in several macrophages, cytokines, receptors, B and T cell activation, and their complex pathways (Norata et al. 2012). In reflection of the possible important role of lipoprotein and cholesterol in ASD and AD patients, large-scale clinical studies that manifest cholesterol supplementation need to be initiated. There are considerable shreds of evidence that define

HDL-based therapeutics' safety in clinical trials against ASD and AD. Such as in the prevention of AD-related neuroinflammation in mouse models and 3D bioengineered human arteries, HDL molecules due to their small size and penetration tendency have also been used as a drug carrier to overcome the issue of BBB penetrance during drug delivery. Reconstituted HDL carrying an Aβ-targeting drug enters efficiently in the brain of AD mice, reduces amyloidosis, and improves memory (Button et al. 2019). Thus, modulating ASD and AD-related neuroinflammation based on the lipoprotein-mediated immunotherapy approach could be an effective strategy to prevent damage to the CNS.

11.5 Conclusions

Immunotherapy is proving increasingly important for treating AD and ASD, but it should be approached cautiously. Clinical trials and experimental systems have demonstrated that cellular and humoral immune responses can be effective in amyloid-β clearing. The attraction of immunotherapy for AD and ASD lies in its ability to immunize large areas of the aging population to treat or prevent these common neurological disorders' dreadful effects. In inference, there is considerable and robust evidence to recommend that active immunotherapy has the potential to treat AD and ASD.

References

Abushouk AI, Elmaraezy A, Aglan A, Salama R, Fouda S, Fouda R, AlSafadi AM (2017) Bapineuzumab for mild to moderate Alzheimer's disease: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. BMC Neurol 17:66

Acharya NK, Levin EC, Clifford PM, Han M, Tourtellotte R, Chamberlain D, DeMarshall C (2013) Diabetes and hypercholesterolemia increase blood-brain barrier permeability and brain amyloid deposition: beneficial effects of the LpPLA2 inhibitor darapladib. J Alzheimers Dis 35 (1):179–198

Adolfsson O, Pihlgren M, Toni N, Varisco Y, Buccarello AL, Antoniello K, Lohmann S, Piorkowska K, Gafner V, Atwal JK (2012) An effector-reduced anti-β-amyloid (Aβ) antibody with unique aβ binding properties promotes neuroprotection and glial engulfment of Aβ. J Neurosci 32:9677–9689

Ahmed M, Davis J, Aucoin D, Sato T, Ahuja S, Aimoto S, Elliott JI, Van Nostrand WE, Smith SO (2010) Structural conversion of neurotoxic amyloid-β 1–42 oligomers to fibrils. Nat Struct Mol Biol 17:561

Alegre M-L, Peterson LJ, Xu D, Sattar HA, Jeyarajah DR, Kowalkowski K, Thistlethwaite JR, Zivin RA, Jolliffe L, Bluestone JA (1994) A non-activating "humanized" anti-CD3 monoclonal antibody retains immunosuppressive properties in vivo. Transplantation 57:1537–1543

Al-Mazidi S, Al-Ayadhi LY (2021) Plasma levels of alpha and gamma synucleins in autism spectrum disorder: an indicator of severity. Med Princ Pract 30(2):160–167

AlSharoqi IA, Aljumah M, Bohlega S, Boz C, Daif A, El-Koussa S, Sahraian MA (2020) Immune reconstitution therapy or continuous immunosuppression for the management of active relapsing–remitting multiple sclerosis patients? A narrative review. Neurol Ther 9(1):55

Alzheimer's Association (2021) 2021 Alzheimer's disease facts and figures. Alzheimers Dement 17 (3):327–406

Aneja A, Tierney E (2008) Autism: the role of cholesterol in treatment. Int Rev Psychiatry 20 (2):165–170

Antonucci N, Pacini S, Ruggiero M (2019) Clinical experience of integrative autism treatment with a novel type of immunotherapy. Madridge J Vaccines 3:71–76

Ashwood P, Krakowiak P, Hertz-Picciotto I, Hansen R, Pessah I, Van de Water J (2011) Elevated plasma cytokines in autism spectrum disorders provide evidence of immune dysfunction and are associated with impaired behavioral outcome. Brain Behav Immun 25(1):40–45

Bailey A, Luthert P, Dean A, Harding B, Janota I, Montgomery M, Lantos P (1998) A clinico-pathological study of autism. Brain 121(5):889–905

Bard F, Cannon C, Barbour R, Burke R-L, Games D, Grajeda H, Guido T, Hu K, Huang J, Johnson-Wood K (2000) Peripherally administered antibodies against amyloid β-peptide enter the central nervous system and reduce pathology in a mouse model of Alzheimer disease. Nat Med 6:916

Bates KA, Sohrabi HR, Rodrigues M, Beilby J, Dhaliwal SS, Taddei K, Paton A (2009) Association of cardiovascular factors and Alzheimer's disease plasma amyloid-β protein in subjective memory complainers. J Alzheimers Dis 17(2):305–318

Bereczki E, Bernát G, Csont T, Ferdinandy P, Scheich H, Sántha M (2008) Overexpression of human apolipoprotein B-100 induces severe neurodegeneration in transgenic mice. J Proteome Res 7(6):2246–2252

Blaker-Lee A, Gupta S, McCammon JM, DeRienzo G, Sive H (2012) Zebrafish homologs of 16p11. 2, a genomic region associated with brain disorders, are active during brain development, and include two deletion dosage sensor genes. Dis Model Mech

Boddapati S, Levites Y, Suryadi V, Kasturirangan S, Sierks MR (2012) Bispecific tandem single chain antibody simultaneously inhibits β-secretase and promotes α-secretase processing of AβPP. J Alzheimers Dis 28:961–969

Bohrmann B, Baumann K, Benz J, Gerber F, Huber W, Knoflach F, Messer J, Oroszlan K, Rauchenberger R, Richter WF (2012) Gantenerumab: a novel human anti-Aβ antibody demonstrates sustained cerebral amyloid-β binding and elicits cell-mediated removal of human amyloid-β. J Alzheimers Dis 28:49–69

Bowers JM, Konopka G (2012) The role of the FOXP family of transcription factors in ASD. Dis Markers 33(5):251–260

Button EB, Robert J, Caffrey TM, Fan J, Zhao W, Wellington CL (2019) HDL from an Alzheimer's disease perspective. Curr Opin Lipidol 30(3):224

Campana V, Zentilin L, Mirabile I, Kranjc A, Casanova P, Giacca M, Prusiner SB, Legname G, Zurzolo C (2009) Development of antibody fragments for immunotherapy of prion diseases. Biochem J 418:507–515

Campbell M, Locascio JJ, Choroco MC, Spencer EK, Malone RP, Kafantaris V, Overall JE (1990) Stereotypies and tardive dyskinesia: abnormal movements in autistic children. Psychopharmacol Bull

Caramelli P, Nitrini R, Maranhao R, Lourenço ACG, Damasceno MC, Vinagre C, Caramelli B (1999) Increased apolipoprotein B serum concentration in Alzheimer's disease. Acta Neurol Scand 100(1):61–63

Cardinale A, Biocca S (2008) The potential of intracellular antibodies for therapeutic targeting of protein-misfolding diseases. Trends Mol Med 14:373–380

Chen P, Li Z, Li Y, Ahmad SS, Kamal MA, Huo X (2020) The language development via FOXP2 in autism spectrum disorder: a review. Curr Pharm Des

Chez MG, Guido-Estrada N (2010) Immune therapy in autism: historical experience and future directions with immunomodulatory therapy. Neurotherapeutics 7(3):293–301

Corbett BA, Kantor AB, Schulman H, Walker WL, Lit L, Ashwood P, Sharp FR (2007) A proteomic study of serum from children with autism showing differential expression of apolipoproteins and complement proteins. Mol Psychiatry 12(3):292–306

Crehan H, Lemere CA (2016) Anti-amyloid-β immunotherapy for Alzheimer's disease. In: Developing therapeutics for Alzheimer's disease. Academic Press, pp 193–226

Crews L, Tsigelny I, Hashimoto M, Masliah E (2009) Role of synucleins in Alzheimer's disease. Neurotox Res 16(3):306–317

Delerive P, Gervois P, Fruchart JC, Staels B (2000) Induction of IκBα expression as a mechanism contributing to the anti-inflammatory activities of peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-α activators. J Biol Chem 275(47):36703–36707

DelGiudice-Asch G, Simon L, Schmeidler J, Cunningham-Rundles C, Hollander E (1999) Brief report: a pilot open clinical trial of intravenous immunoglobulin in childhood autism. J Autism Dev Disord 29(2):157–160

DeMattos RB, Bales KR, Cummins DJ, Dodart J-C, Paul SM, Holtzman DM (2001) Peripheral anti-Aβ antibody alters CNS and plasma Aβ clearance and decreases brain Aβ burden in a mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. Proc Natl Acad Sci 98:8850–8855

DeMattos RB, Bales KR, Cummins DJ, Paul SM, Holtzman DM (2002) Brain to plasma amyloid-β efflux: a measure of brain amyloid burden in a mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. Science 295:2264–2267

Donofrio G, Heppner FL, Polymenidou M, Musahl C, Aguzzi A (2005) Paracrine inhibition of prion propagation by anti-PrP single-chain Fv miniantibodies. J Virol 79:8330–8338

Elbe D, Lalani Z (2012) Review of the pharmacotherapy of irritability of autism. J Can Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 21(2):130

Erden-İnal M, Sunal E, Kanbak G (2002) Age-related changes in the glutathione redox system. Cell Biochem Funct 20(1):61–66

Farlow M, Arnold SE, Van Dyck CH, Aisen PS, Snider BJ, Porsteinsson AP, Friedrich S, Dean RA, Gonzales C, Sethuraman G (2012) Safety and biomarker effects of solanezumab in patients with Alzheimer's disease. Alzheimers Dement 8:261–271

Fatemi SH, Realmuto GM, Khan L, Thuras P (1998) Fluoxetine in treatment of adolescent patients with autism: a longitudinal open trial. J Autism Dev Disord 28(4):303–307

Federoff HJ (2009) Development of vaccination approaches for the treatment of neurological diseases. J Comp Neurol 515:4–14

Filesi I, Cardinale A, Mattei S, Biocca S (2007) Selective re-routing of prion protein to proteasomes and alteration of its vesicular secretion prevent PrPSc formation. J Neurochem 101:1516–1526

Frenkel D, Solomon B, Benhar I (2000) Modulation of Alzheimer's β-amyloid neurotoxicity by site-directed single-chain antibody. J Neuroimmunol 106:23–31

Fu HJ, Liu B, Frost JL, Lemere CA (2010) Amyloid-β immunotherapy for Alzheimer's disease. CNS Neurol Disord Drug Targets 9(2):197–206

Fudenberg HH (1996) Dialysable lymphocyte extract (DLyE) in infantile onset autism: a pilot study. Biotherapy 9(1–3):143–147

Griciuc A, Tanzi RE (2021) The role of innate immune genes in Alzheimer's disease. Curr Opin Neurol 34(2):228

Gupta S (1996) Brief report: dysregulated immune system in children with autism: beneficial effects of intravenous immune globulin on autistic characteristics. J Autism Dev Disord 26(4):439–452

Hagberg H, Gressens P, Mallard C (2012) Inflammation during fetal and neonatal life: implications for neurologic and neuropsychiatric disease in children and adults. Ann Neurol 71(4):444–457

Hendaus MA, Jomha FA, Alhammadi AH (2019) Vasopressin in the amelioration of social functioning in autism spectrum disorder. J Clin Med 8(7):1061

Hestvik E, Tylleskar T, Kaddu-Mulindwa DH, Ndeezi G, Grahnquist L, Olafsdottir E, Tumwine JK (2010) Helicobacter pylori in apparently healthy children aged 0-12 years in urban Kampala, Uganda: a community-based cross sectional survey. BMC Gastroenterol 10(1):62

Hirai K, Aliev G, Nunomura A, Fujioka H, Russell RL, Atwood CS, Shimohama S (2001) Mitochondrial abnormalities in Alzheimer's disease. J Neurosci 21(9):3017–3023

Hodges JR, Salmon DP, Butters N (1993) Recognition and naming of famous faces in Alzheimer's disease: a cognitive analysis. Neuropsychologia 31(8):775–788

Hu VW, Nguyen A, Kim KS, Steinberg ME, Sarachana T, Scully MA, Lee NH (2009) Gene expression profiling of lymphoblasts from autistic and nonaffected sib pairs: altered pathways in neuronal development and steroid biosynthesis. PLoS One 4(6):e5775

Huang F, Wang K, Shen J (2020) Lipoprotein-associated phospholipase A2: the story continues. Med Res Rev 40(1):79–134

Jansen IE, Savage JE, Watanabe K, Bryois J, Williams DM, Steinberg S, Voyle N (2019) Genome-wide meta-analysis identifies new loci and functional pathways influencing Alzheimer's disease risk. Nat Genet 51(3):404–413

Ji Y, Wang X, Kalicki C, Menta BW, Baumgardner M, Koppel SJ, Swerdlow RH (2019) Effects of microglial cytokines on Alzheimer's disease-related phenomena. J Alzheimers Dis 67 (3):1021–1034

Kang DW, Adams JB, Gregory AC, Borody T, Chittick L, Fasano A, Pollard EL (2017) Microbiota transfer therapy alters gut ecosystem and improves gastrointestinal and autism symptoms: an open-label study. Microbiome 5(1):10

Karch CM, Goate AM (2015) Alzheimer's disease risk genes and mechanisms of disease pathogenesis. Biol Psychiatry 77(1):43–51

Kasturirangan S, Boddapati S, Sierks MR (2010) Engineered proteolytic nanobodies reduce Aβ burden and ameliorate Aβ-induced cytotoxicity. Biochemistry 49:4501–4508

Khan SA, Khan SA, Narendra AR, Mushtaq G, Zahran SA, Khan S, Kamal MA (2016) Alzheimer's disease and autistic Spectrum disorder: is there any association? CNS Neurol Disord Drug Targets 15(4):390–402

Kim EK, Neggers YH, Shin CS, Kim E, Kim EM (2010) Alterations in lipid profile of autistic boys: a case control study. Nutr Res 30(4):255–260

Kunkle BW, Grenier-Boley B, Sims R, Bis JC, Damotte V, Naj AC, Bellenguez C (2019) Genetic meta-analysis of diagnosed Alzheimer's disease identifies new risk loci and implicates Aβ, tau, immunity and lipid processing. Nat Genet 51(3):414–430

La Porte SL, Bollini SS, Lanz TA, Abdiche YN, Rusnak AS, Ho W-H, Kobayashi D, Harrabi O, Pappas D, Mina EW (2012) Structural basis of C-terminal β-amyloid peptide binding by the antibody ponezumab for the treatment of Alzheimer's disease. J Mol Biol 421:525–536

Lahiri DK, Maloney B, Wang R, Sokol DK, Rogers JT, Westmark CJ (2021) How autism and Alzheimer's disease are TrAPPed. Mol Psychiatry 26(1):26–29

Landen JW, Zhao Q, Cohen S, Borrie M, Woodward M, Billing CB Jr, Bales K, Alvey C, McCush F, Yang J (2013) Safety and pharmacology of a single intravenous dose of ponezumab in subjects with mild-to-moderate Alzheimer disease: a phase I, randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind, dose-escalation study. Clin Neuropharmacol 36:14–23

Lannfelt L, Möller C, Basun H, Osswald G, Sehlin D, Satlin A, Logovinsky V, Gellerfors P (2014) Perspectives on future Alzheimer therapies: amyloid-β protofibrils—a new target for immunotherapy with BAN2401 in Alzheimer's disease. Alzheimers Res Ther 6:16

Lauterbach EC, Victoroff J, Coburn KL, Shillcutt SD, Doonan SM, Mendez MF (2010) Psychopharmacological neuroprotection in neurodegenerative disease: assessing the preclinical data. J Neuropsychiatry Clin Neurosci 22(1):8–18

Lawrence T (2009) The nuclear factor NF-κB pathway in inflammation. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol 1(6):a001651

Leandro SL, Hernández MG, Torroba LA, Sánchez FM, Leandro SC, Gómez AA, Chueca PR (2005) Helicobacter pylori infection in the child population in Spain: prevalence, related factors and influence on growth. An Pediatr (Barc Spain; 2003) 63(6):489–494

Lee LC, Zachary AA, Leffell MS, Newschaffer CJ, Matteson KJ, Tyler JD, Zimmerman AW (2006) HLA-DR4 in families with autism. Pediatr Neurol 35(5):303–307

Li Q, Zhou JM (2016) The microbiota–gut–brain axis and its potential therapeutic role in autism spectrum disorder. Neuroscience 324:131–139

Liu R, Yuan B, Emadi S, Zameer A, Schulz P, McAllister C, Lyubchenko Y, Goud G, Sierks MR (2004) Single chain variable fragments against β-amyloid (Aβ) can inhibit Aβ aggregation and prevent Aβ-induced neurotoxicity. Biochemistry 43:6959–6967

Lührs T, Ritter C, Adrian M, Riek-Loher D, Bohrmann B, Döbeli H, Schubert D, Riek R (2005) 3D structure of Alzheimer's amyloid-β (1–42) fibrils. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 102:17342–17347

Malone J, Sullivan MA (1996) Analysis of antibody selection by phage display utilizing antiphenobarbital antibodies. J Mol Recognit 9:738–745

Manoutcharian K, Perez-Garmendia R, Gevorkian G (2017) Recombinant antibody fragments for neurodegenerative diseases. Curr Neuropharmacol 15:779–788

Marchezan J, dos Santos EGAW, Deckmann I, dos Santos RR (2018) Immunological dysfunction in autism spectrum disorder: a potential target for therapy. Neuroimmunomodulation 25 (5–6):300–319

McDougle CJ, Holmes JP, Carlson DC, Pelton GH, Cohen DJ, Price LH (1998) A double-blind, placebo-controlled study of risperidone in adults with autistic disorder and other pervasive developmental disorders. Arch Gen Psychiatry 55(7):633–641

Merched A, Xia Y, Visvikis S, Serot JM, Siest G (2000) Decreased high-density lipoprotein cholesterol and serum apolipoprotein AI concentrations are highly correlated with the severity of Alzheimer's disease☆. Neurobiol Aging 21(1):27–30

Miller TW, Messer A (2005) Intrabody applications in neurological disorders: progress and future prospects. Mol Ther 12(3):394–401.

Ming X, Stein TP, Brimacombe M, Johnson WG, Lambert GH, Wagner GC (2005) Increased excretion of a lipid peroxidation biomarker in autism. Prostaglandins Leukot Essent Fatty Acids 73(5):379–384

Montañola A, de Retana SF, López-Rueda A, Merino-Zamorano C, Penalba A, Fernández-Álvarez P, Hernández-Guillamon M (2016) ApoA1, ApoJ and ApoE plasma levels and genotype frequencies in cerebral amyloid angiopathy. NeuroMolecular Med 18(1):99–108

Moya-Alvarado G, Gershoni-Emek N, Perlson E, Bronfman FC (2016) Neurodegeneration and Alzheimer's disease (AD). What can proteomics tell us about the Alzheimer's brain? Mol Cell Proteomics 15(2):409–425

Nagata T, Shinagawa S, Ochiai Y, Kada H, Kasahara H, Nukariya K, Nakayama K (2010) Relationship of frontal lobe dysfunction and aberrant motor behaviors in patients with Alzheimer's disease. Int Psychogeriatr 22(3):463–469

Nasrat AM, Nasrat RM, Nasrat MM (2017a) Alzheimer and Helicobacter pylori; should we fight and kill or save H. pylori!! We should save H. pylori. Am J Med Med Sci 7(5):221–228

Nasrat AM, Nasrat RM, Nasrat MM (2017b) Autism and Alzheimer; the etiopathologic twins. Am J Med Med Sci 7(6):277–280

Nasrat AM, Nasrat RM, Nasrat MM (2017c) Autism; an approach for definite etiology and definitive etiologic management. Am J Med Med Sci 7(3):108–118

Norata GD, Pirillo A, Ammirati E, Catapano AL (2012) Emerging role of high density lipoproteins as a player in the immune system. Atherosclerosis 220(1):11–21

Noriega DB, Savelkoul HF (2014) Immune dysregulation in autism spectrum disorder. Eur J Pediatr 173(1):33–43

Ono H, Sakamoto A, Sakura N (2001) Plasma total glutathione concentrations in healthy pediatric and adult subjects. Clin Chim Acta 312(1–2):227–229

Paganetti P, Calanca V, Galli C, Stefani M, Molinari M (2005) β-Site specific intrabodies to decrease and prevent generation of Alzheimer's Aβ peptide. J Cell Biol 168:863–868

Pardridge WM (2008) Re-engineering biopharmaceuticals for delivery to brain with molecular Trojan horses. Bioconjug Chem 312(1):227–229

Perchiacca JM, Ladiwala AR, Bhattacharya M, Tessier PM (2012) Structure-based design of conformation- and sequence-specific antibodies against amyloid β. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 109:84–89

Pichitpunpong C, Thongkorn S, Kanlayaprasit S, Yuwattana W, Plaingam W, Sangsuthum S, Sarachana T (2019) Phenotypic subgrouping and multi-omics analyses reveal reduced diazepam-binding inhibitor (DBI) protein levels in autism spectrum disorder with severe language impairment. PLoS One 14(3):e0214198

Plassman BL, Langa KM, Fisher GG, Heeringa SG, Weir DR, Ofstedal MB, Steffens DC (2007) Prevalence of dementia in the United States: the aging, demographics, and memory study. Neuroepidemiology 29(1–2):125–132

Plioplys AV (1998) Intravenous immunoglobulin treatment of children with autism. J Child Neurol 13(2):79–82
Posey DJ, Erickson CA, Stigler KA, McDougle CJ (2006) The use of selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors in autism and related disorders. J Child Adolesc Psychopharmacol 16(1–2):181–186
Potenza MN, Holmes JP, Kanes SJ, McDougle CJ (1999) Olanzapine treatment of children adolescents, and adults with pervasive developmental disorders: an open-label pilot study. J Clin Psychopharmacol 19(1):37–44
Pratico D (2008) Oxidative stress hypothesis in Alzheimer's disease: a reappraisal. Trends Pharmacol Sci 29(12):609–615
Pratt L, Ni L, Ponzio NM, Jonakait GM (2013) Maternal inflammation promotes fetal microglial activation and increased cholinergic expression in the fetal basal forebrain: role of interleukin-6. Pediatr Res 74(4):393–401
Racke MM, Boone LI, Hepburn DL, Parsadainian M, Bryan MT, Ness DK, Piroozi KS, Jordan WH, Brown DD, Hoffman WP (2005) Exacerbation of cerebral amyloid angiopathy associated microhemorrhage in amyloid precursor protein transgenic mice by immunotherapy is dependent on antibody recognition of deposited forms of amyloid β. J Neurosci 25:629–636
Robert R, Wark KL (2012) Engineered antibody approaches for Alzheimer's disease immunotherapy. Arch Biochem Biophys 526:132–138
Robert R, Dolezal O, Waddington L, Hattarki MK, Cappai R, Masters CL, Hudson PJ, Wark KL (2008) Engineered antibody intervention strategies for Alzheimer's disease and related dementias by targeting amyloid and toxic oligomers. Protein Eng Des Sel 22:199–208
Robert R, Lefranc M-P, Ghochikyan A, Agadjanyan MG, Cribbs DH, Van Nostrand WE, Wark KL, Dolezal O (2010) Restricted V gene usage and VH/VL pairing of mouse humoral response against the N-terminal immunodominant epitope of the amyloid β peptide. Mol Immunol 48:59–72
Rossignol DA, Frye RE (2014) The use of medications approved for Alzheimer's disease in autism spectrum disorder: a systematic review. Front Pediatr 2:87
Rylaarsdam LE, Guemez Gamboa A (2019) Genetic causes and modifiers in autism spectrum disorder. Front Cell Neurosci 13:385
Saczynski JS, White L, Peila RL, Rodriguez BL, Launer LJ (2007) The relation between apolipoprotein AI and dementia: the Honolulu-Asia aging study. Am J Epidemiol 165(9):985–992
Scheiblich H, Trombly M, Ramirez A, Heneka MT (2020) Neuroimmune connections in aging and neurodegenerative diseases. Trends Immunol 41(4):300–312
Schwartz M, Arad M, Ben-Yehuda H (2019) Potential immunotherapy for Alzheimer disease and age-related dementia. Dialogues Clin Neurosci 21(1):21
Schwartz M, Ramos JMP, Ben-Yehuda H (2020) A 20-year journey from axonal injury to neurodegenerative diseases and the prospect of immunotherapy for combating Alzheimer's disease. J Immunol 204(2):243–250
Scifo R, Cioni M, Nicolosi A, Batticane N, Tirolo C, Testa N, Marchetti B (1996) Opioid-immune interactions in autism: behavioural and immunological assessment during a double-blind treatment with naltrexone. Ann Ist Super Sanita 32(3):351–359
Serrano-Pozo A, Frosch MP, Masliah E, Hyman BT (2011) Neuropathological alterations in Alzheimer disease. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med 1(1):a006189
Sevigny J, Chiao P, Bussière T, Weinreb PH, Williams L, Maier M, Dunstan R, Salloway S, Chen T, Ling Y (2016) The antibody aducanumab reduces Aβ plaques in Alzheimer's disease. Nature 537:50–56
Shaddinger BC, Xu Y, Roger JH, Macphee CH, Handel M, Baidoo CA, Sprecher DL (2014) Platelet aggregation unchanged by lipoprotein-associated phospholipase A 2 inhibition: results from an in vitro study and two randomized phase I trials. PLoS One 9(1):e83094
Shaftel SS, Kyrkanides S, Olschowka JA, Jen-nie HM, Johnson RE, O'Banion MK (2007) Sustained hippocampal IL-1β overexpression mediates chronic neuroinflammation and ameliorates Alzheimer plaque pathology. J Clin Invest 117(6):1595–1604

Siemers ER, Sundell KL, Carlson C, Case M, Sethuraman G, Liu-Seifert H, Dowsett SA, Pontecorvo MJ, Dean RA, Demattos R (2016) Phase 3 solanezumab trials: secondary outcomes in mild Alzheimer's disease patients. Alzheimers Dement 12:110–120

Sikora DM, Pettit-Kekel K, Penfield J, Merkens LS, Steiner RD (2006) The near universal presence of autism spectrum disorders in children with Smith–Lemli–Opitz syndrome. Am J Med Genet A 140(14):1511–1518

Singh VK (1996) Plasma increase of interleukin-12 and interferon-gamma. Pathological significance in autism. J Neuroimmunol 66(1–2):143–145

Singh VK, Fudenberg HH, Emerson D, Coleman M (1988) Immunodiagnosis and immunotherapy in autistic children. Ann N Y Acad Sci 540(1):602–604

Sokol DK, Maloney B, Long JM, Ray B, Lahiri DK (2011) Autism, Alzheimer disease, and fragile X: APP, FMRP, and mGluR5 are molecular links. Neurology 76(15):1344–1352

Sperling R, Salloway S, Brooks DJ, Tampieri D, Barakos J, Fox NC, Raskind M, Sabbagh M, Honig LS, Porsteinsson AP (2012) Amyloid-related imaging abnormalities in patients with Alzheimer's disease treated with bapineuzumab: a retrospective analysis. Lancet Neurol 11:241–249

Stigler KA, Sweeten TL, Posey DJ, McDougle CJ (2009) Autism and immune factors: a comprehensive review. Res Autism Spectr Disord 3(4):840–860

Stubbs EG, Magenis RE (1980) HLA and autism. J Autism Dev Disord 10(1):15–19

Sudol KL, Mastrangelo MA, Narrow WC, Frazer ME, Levites YR, Golde TE, Federoff HJ, Bowers WJ (2009) Generating differentially targeted amyloid-β specific intrabodies as a passive vaccination strategy for Alzheimer's disease. Mol Ther 17:2031–2040

Tammer AH, Coia G, Cappai R, Fuller S, Masters CL, Hudson P, Underwood JR (2002) Generation of a recombinant Fab antibody reactive with the Alzheimer's disease-related Aβ peptide. Clin Exp Immunol 129:453–463

Tierney E, Bukelis I, Thompson RE, Ahmed K, Aneja A, Kratz L, Kelley RI (2006) Abnormalities of cholesterol metabolism in autism spectrum disorders. Am J Med Genet B Neuropsychiatr Genet 141(6):666–668

Tucker S, Möller C, Tegerstedt K, Lord A, Laudon H, Sjödahl J, Söderberg L, Spens E, Sahlin C, Waara ER (2015) The murine version of BAN2401 (mAb158) selectively reduces amyloid-β protofibrils in brain and cerebrospinal fluid of tg-ArcSwe mice. J Alzheimers Dis 43:575–588

Twohig D, Nielsen HM (2019) α-Synuclein in the pathophysiology of Alzheimer's disease. Mol Neurodegener 14(1):1–19

Ultsch M, Li B, Maurer T, Mathieu M, Adolfsson O, Muhs A, Pfeifer A, Pihlgren M, Bainbridge TW, Reichelt M (2016) Structure of crenezumab complex with Aβ shows loss of β-hairpin. Sci Rep 6:39374

Villegas-Llerena C, Phillips A, Garcia-Reitboeck P, Hardy J, Pocock JM (2016) Microglial genes regulating neuroinflammation in the progression of Alzheimer's disease. Curr Opin Neurobiol 36:74–81

Wang WY, Tan MS, Yu JT, Tan L (2015a) Role of pro-inflammatory cytokines released from microglia in Alzheimer's disease. Ann Transl Med 3(10)

Wang X, Zhu M, Hjorth E, Cortés-Toro V, Eyjolfsdottir H, Graff C, Fitzgerald JM (2015b) Resolution of inflammation is altered in Alzheimer's disease. Alzheimers Dement 11(1):40–50

Websites (n.d.) Alzheimer's diseases. https://alzheimerdisease.tv/diagnosis/autism/

Westmark CJ, Malter JS (2007) FMRP mediates mGluR 5-dependent translation of amyloid precursor protein. PLoS Biol 5(3):e52

Willemsen-Swinkels SH, Buitelaar JK, Weijnen FG, van Engeland H (1995) Placebo-controlled acute dosage naltrexone study in young autistic children. Psychiatry Res 58(3):203–215

Woods R (2012) The effects of persistent organic pollutant exposure on neurodevelopment. University of California, Davis

Zhang C, Gao C, Mu J, Qiu Z, Li L (2013) Spectroscopic studies on unfolding processes of aponeuroglobin induced by guanidine hydrochloride and urea. Biomed Res Int 2013:349542

Zhang G, Xia Y, Wan F, Ma K, Guo X, Kou L et al (2018) New perspectives on roles of alpha-synuclein in Parkinson's disease. Front Aging Neurosci 10:370

Zuliani G, Cavalieri M, Galvani M, Volpato S, Cherubini A, Bandinelli S, Ferrucci L (2010) Relationship between low levels of high-density lipoprotein cholesterol and dementia in the elderly. The InChianti study. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci 65(5):559–564

Alzheimer's Disease (AD): Physiological Barriers for Therapy and Nanotechnological Applications in Treatment

12

Mohd Ahmar Rauf, Katyayani Tatiparti, and Arun K. Iyer

Abstract

Neurodegenerative diseases are becoming more common in the people of old age. Numerous complications have occurred in the treatment of neurodegenerative diseases, some of which are multi-systemic in nature. Since the structure, efflux pumps, and expression of the blood-brain barrier's (BBB) metabolism are limited, traditional drug delivery systems are ineffective for treating neurodegenerative disorders. Nanotechnology has the potential to significantly improve neurodegenerative disease treatment by bioengineered systems that interact with biological systems on a molecular level. This chapter discusses the applications of nanoparticles in the treatment of Alzheimer's disease.

Keywords

Alzheimer's disease (AD) · Blood-brain barrier (BBB) · Nanoparticles (NPs) · Liposomes · Therapeutics

Mohd Ahmar Rauf and Katyayani Tatiparti contributed equally to this work.

M. A. Rauf · K. Tatiparti
Department of Pharmaceutical Sciences, Use-inspired Biomaterials & Integrated Nano Delivery (U-BiND) Systems Laboratory, Eugene Applebaum College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Wayne State University, Detroit, MI, USA

A. K. Iyer (✉)
Department of Pharmaceutical Sciences, Use-inspired Biomaterials & Integrated Nano Delivery (U-BiND) Systems Laboratory, Eugene Applebaum College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Wayne State University, Detroit, MI, USA

Molecular Therapeutics Program, Barbara Ann Karmanos Cancer Institute, Wayne State University School of Medicine, Detroit, MI, USA
e-mail: arun.iyer@wayne.edu

G. Md Ashraf, A. Alexiou (eds.), *Autism Spectrum Disorder and Alzheimer's Disease*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-4558-7_12

12.1 Introduction

The brain accounts for approximately 2% of body weight and consumes approximately 20% of coronary blood supply and 25% of total oxygen and glucose supply (Zlokovic 2011). The presence of 100 billion capillaries and a complex network of intercellular communications through the release of neurotransmitters and neuromodulators in cohort with the synaptic potentials is responsible for brain functioning (Abbott et al. 2006; Pardridge 2003). These brain activities require continuous movement of ions and other molecules across the blood-brain barrier (BBB). BBB is a selectively permeable membrane that protects the brain and maintains the integrity of its functions. It separates the blood and brain tissue. An intact BBB is vital to keep the brain tissue in a healthy state. It is often found disrupted in most of the central nervous system (CNS) pathologies such as Alzheimer's disease (AD), brain cancers such as glioblastoma multiforme (GBM), Parkinson's disease (PD), multiple sclerosis (MS), or amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS) (Krol et al. 2013) which contribute to almost 12–15% of deaths globally. Successful treatment of these conditions depends on the extent of crossing BBB by the therapeutics. However, most of the noninvasive therapeutics for these conditions have failed at the preclinical and clinical trials. This is because the brain allows only a tiny percentage (2–3%) of small molecules across the BBB (these, in turn, show very low absorption by brain parenchyma), while large molecules are all excluded (Pardridge 2007) because of their insignificant penetration across BBB.

The unique protective ability of the BBB can be attributed to its anatomical structure, physiological functions, and enzymatic and immunological activities. These are discussed briefly below. A thorough state-of-the-art understanding of these aspects of the brain and BBB will equip scientists worldwide to better target the nanotherapeutics to the brain for successful treatment of CNS conditions.

12.2 Anatomy and Physiology of the Brain

The brain consists of a unique composition of its blood-brain parenchyma barrier that is different from other parts of the body because of three specialized, tightly regulated vascular barriers (Chen and Liu 2012). These barriers can be categorized as follows: (1) arachnoid barrier; (2) blood-cerebrospinal fluid barrier; and (3) blood-brain barrier (Abbott 2004). A diagrammatic representation of these barriers is shown in Fig. 12.1.

12.2.1 Arachnoid Barrier

The brain is made up of three layers of protection composed of connective tissue called the meninges. They are called the dura mater, arachnoid mater, and pia mater. Their primary function is protecting the brain and containment of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) (Furtado et al. 2018). The cells forming the arachnoid mater are epithelial and

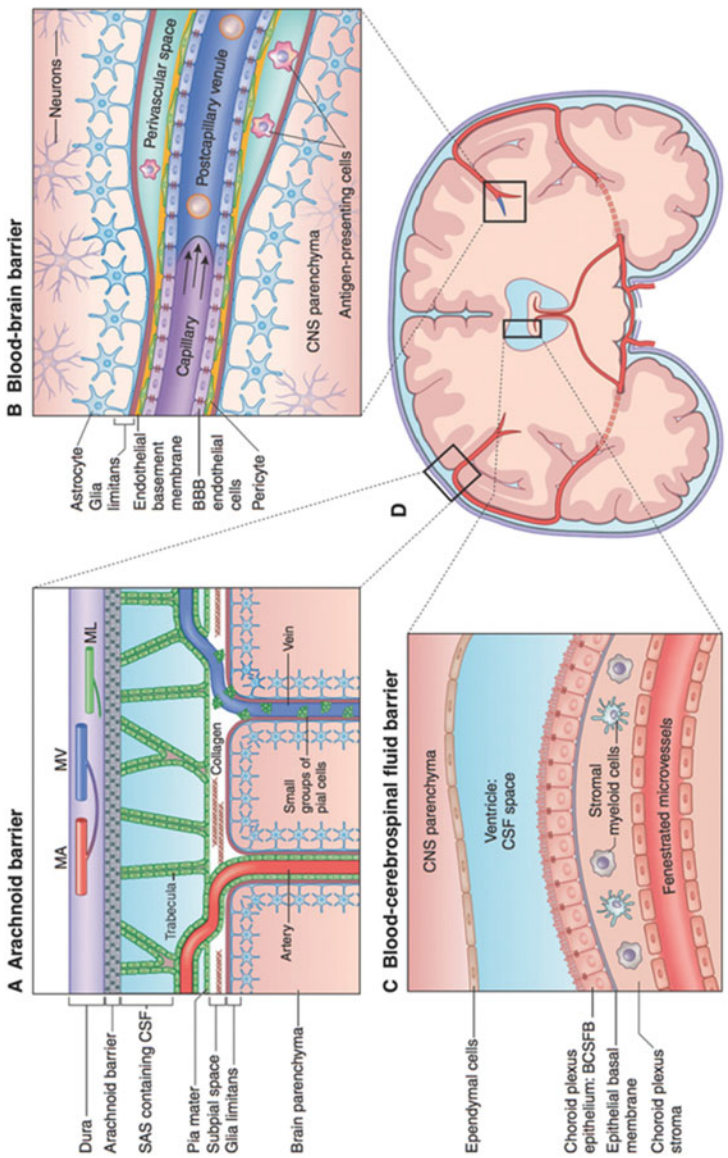


Fig. 12.1 The barriers in the brain: (**a**) arachnoid barrier; (**b**) BBB; (**c**) blood-cerebrospinal fluid barrier; (**d**) brain section. BBB is the closest to the neuronal tissue and is the best target for delivering therapeutics. (Adapted with permission from Engelhardt et al. (2017))

form the arachnoid barrier. This barrier is relatively avascular and has a low surface area of the total BBB. For therapeutics delivery, this barrier is not approachable because of the low surface area.

12.2.2 Blood-Cerebrospinal Fluid Barrier

This membrane separates the brain from the cerebrospinal fluid. CSF is developed in the choroid plexus of the brain's lateral ventricles. The epithelial cells forming the choroid plexus forms this barrier. Since the CSF is replenished every 4–5 h, the brain flushes out any medication delivered through this barrier. Hence, it cannot present itself as a good target for therapeutics.

12.2.3 Blood-Brain Barrier

This barrier is the closest to the neurons. It consists of a very intricate network of capillaries. BBB is comprised of the brain microvessel endothelial cells (BMEC or BMVEC or BEC). BMEC separates the blood compartment from the interstitial fluid (ISF) of the brain. The isotonicity and composition of the ISF are maintained by transport of various molecules and ions across BBB for the brain's optimal functioning. It is responsible for the transport of nutrients to the brain. It is characterized by its very efficient efflux pumps that eliminate wastes out of the brain. It also has a role in regulating and maintaining neurotransmitters at the periphery of the brain, immune surveillance of the brain, and the inflammatory responses to the brain's invasion (Abbott et al. 2010). Hence, it is a dynamic barrier that protects the brain aggressively. The BBB function is due to a collective action of BMEC and other cells such as astrocytes, pericytes, microglia, vascular smooth muscles, oligodendrocytes, and so on, which communicate with each other constantly in complex pathways, thus regulating its permeability (Banks 2016; Neuwelt et al. 2011). This cohort of cells is called the neurovascular unit (NVU). Many of these complex communicative pathways of the NVU are yet to be understood.

12.3 Blood-Brain Barrier (BBB)

The blood-brain barrier can be described in detail by defining the composition of NVU and the physical structure as follows (Fig. 12.2).

12.3.1 Composition of the Neurovascular Unit (NVU)

12.3.1.1 Vascular Smooth Muscles

These muscles make up the arteries, arterioles, and veins of the brain and regulate blood vessel functions. They often take up the role of pericytes.

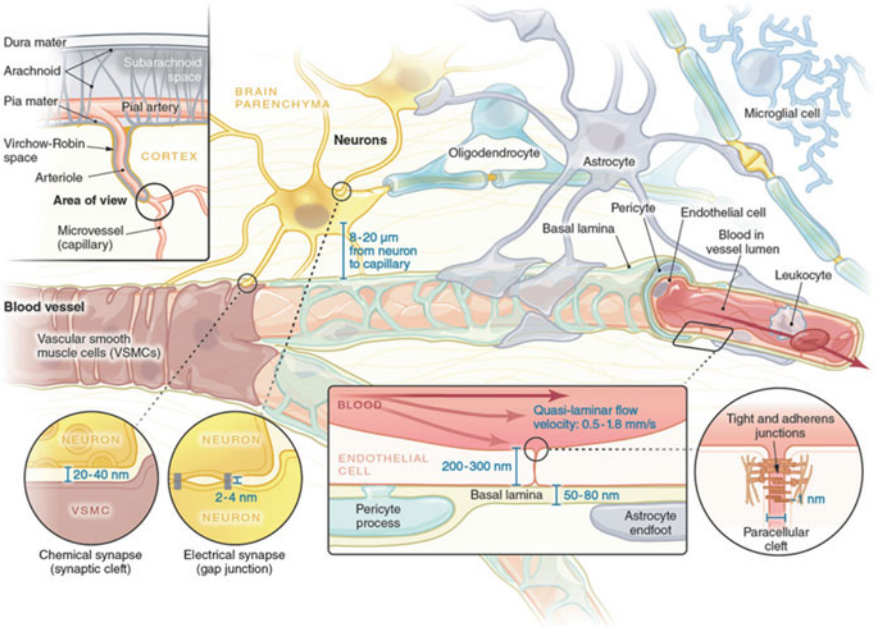


Fig. 12.2 The neurovascular unit of the blood-brain barrier. A crosstalk between various cells in the BBB elicits a highly protective and selective function of the BBB. (Adapted with permission from Furtado et al. (2018))

12.3.1.2 Pericytes

These cells surround the BMEC and enclose the brain's capillaries in the basal lamina of BBB, maintaining its integrity, homeostasis, and blood supply alongside regulating macrophages (Abbott 2013). They have an important role in maintaining tight junctions of the brain.

12.3.1.3 Astrocytes

These are star-shaped cells with perivascular end feet that support the BMEC (Ransohoff et al. 2003). They have a role in the permeability of the BBB. Astrocytes also express AQP4 water channels and the ion channels that maintain water and ion homeostasis in the brain. Apart from supporting the neurons, astrocytes also insulate the neurons, provide nutrition, and have a role in cytokine-mediated inflammatory responses (Zlokovic 2008).

12.3.1.4 Microglia

These cells represent the macrophages in the brain originating from the perivascular macrophages that cross BBB in the event of infection (Williams et al. 2001). Their main function is phagocytosis of the dead and diseased neural tissue. They produce pro-inflammatory factors such as lipopolysaccharide (LPS), tumor necrosis factor-α

(TNF-α), interleukin-1ß (IL-1ß), and reactive oxygen species (ROS) that can disrupt the BBB and its permeability (Didier et al. 2003).

12.3.2 Physical Structure of the BBB

BBB presents particular BBB properties attributed to the highly protective and selective nature of its functions. These prioperties include the following.

12.3.2.1 Tight Junctions

Tight junctions are composed of transmembranous intercalated particles formed by cytoplasmic proteins (such as claudins, occludins, and junctional adhesion molecules) and function as gates between BMECs. They have a pore size of approximately 1.4–1.8 nm (Zhang et al. 2016). Figure 12.3 illustrates the close junctions. Their function is to prevent different molecules from traveling paracellularly and to restrict their movement across the BBB to passive transport of molecules with a diameter of less than 1 nm (Sarin 2010). Each stimulus recycles these close junctions (Deli 2009). Claudin proteins are one of the primary cytoplasmic proteins involved in the formation of close junctions. The tight junctions formed

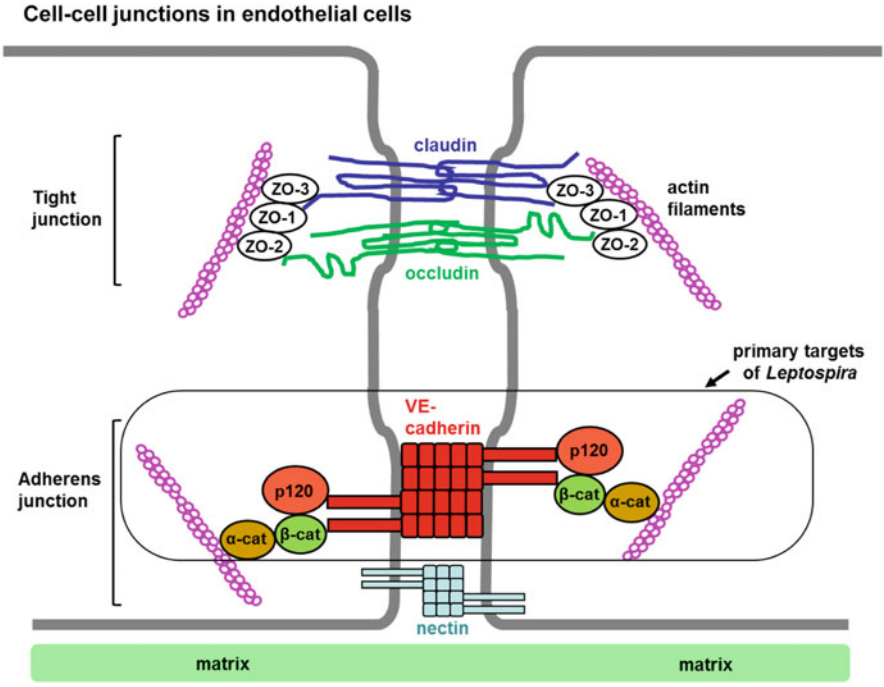


Fig. 12.3 The tight junctions and adherens junctions consisting of claudin, occludin, and intracellular zonula occludins (ZO) proteins. (Adapted with permission from Sato and Coburn (2017))

by claudins provide the BBB with a high transendothelial electrical resistance (TEER) of approximately 1500–2000 cm^2. Occludins and junctional adhesion molecules (JAM-A, B, C) are proteins that help maintain and promote the close junction and leukocyte movement across the blood-brain barrier (BBB) (Kooij et al. 2005). Tight junctions cooperate with cytoskeletal proteins such as actin and cytoplasmic proteins such as calcium-dependent serine protein kinase (CASK), zonula occludins proteins (ZO-1, ZO-2, ZO-3), and cingulin. Cytoplasmic proteins are categorized into first- and second-order adaptor proteins based on their ability to strengthen the connections between close junctions and the endothelial cell cytoskeleton.

12.3.2.2 Adherens Junction

These junctions are found closely placed near the tight junctions. They are composed of glycoproteins of the class calcium-dependent cadherins, primarily vascular endothelial cadherin (cadherin-5 or VE-cadherin) that adhere to the cytoskeleton of the BMECs via linker molecules such as platelet-endothelial cell adhesion molecule (PECAM), the catenins (α-, ß-, and γ-catenin), desmoplakin, and p120 catenin (Bhowmik et al. 2015). They mainly have a role in regulating intercellular interactions and paracellular permeability and microvascular integrity.

12.3.2.3 Apicobasal Polarity

The differences in the composition of the proteins of the tight junctions and adherens junctions, the distribution of the target receptors, secretions from the cells, and responses to stimuli between the luminal and abluminal sides of the membrane constituting BBB create a polarity on it that has an important role in maintaining the integrity of the BBB (Worzfeld and Schwaninger 2016).

12.3.2.4 Luminal Surface-Bound Glycocalyx

Glycocalyx is a carbohydrate-rich enclosure of the BMEC bound to it by glycoproteins and proteoglycans. It maintains the integrity of BBB due to the sialic acid component of the glycocalyx. It is responsible for the protection of BBB and regulating the movement of molecules across it (Yokel 2016).

12.4 Enzymatic Role of BBB

The BBB is described by an enzymatic activity that protects the brain from different molecules that pass through it by metabolizing them in endothelial cells (Pardridge 2005). These enzymes include monoamine oxidases and cytochrome P450 that can inactivate toxic substances. Apart from the BMECs, pericytes and astrocytes also possess enzymatic activity from peptidases, cholinesterases, and other such enzymes that protect the brain (Yi et al. 2014).

12.5 Immunological Activity of BBB

The immunological activity of the brain is very selective and unique (Ransohoff et al. 2003). There is very little presence of lymphatic vessels in the brain. It also lacks antigen-presenting cells (APCs) native to the region that elicit immune responses by identifying inflammatory molecules such as dT-cells (Wekerle 2002). Major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class II is expressed in certain microglia in the brain (Matsushima et al. 1994). Leukocytes, in the form of T-cells, are also extremely scarce in the brain. Thus, the brain's immunity is preserved mainly by the actions of BMECs, perivascular macrophages, microglia, brain T cells, and mast cells. Further, chemokines elicit the immune responses in the brain by recruiting T-cells during infections. These pro-inflammatory immune reactions, in turn, trigger the immunosuppressive mechanisms in the brain (Furtado et al. 2018).

12.6 Transport Mechanisms in BBB

As previously mentioned, endothelial transport is the primary route for molecules to enter the brain. It occurs through endocytosis into endothelial cells as well as transcytosis into the BBB's luminal and abluminal membranes. The BBB transports nutrients from the blood to the brain, including glucose, galactose, amino acids and monocarboxylic acids, nucleosides, amines, and vitamins, as well as growth factors, enzymes, and plasma proteins. The constant flow of ions and other solutes through the BBB maintains the brain's pH. Additionally, BBB efflux pathways are used to remove radioactive waste and metabolites. Due to the close junctions, the BBB allows for very little paracellular transport. There are very unique mechanisms that enable molecules and nutrients to pass through the BBB. The majority of these processes operate in a bidirectional fashion, bringing information into and out of the brain. However, some of these processes are constrained by the particle size requirements. A clever design of therapeutic delivery systems that exploit BBB mechanisms can be an effective strategy for increasing drug bioavailability. The different processes at work will be briefly discussed here (Fig. 12.4).

12.6.1 Types of Transport Pathways Across the BBB

12.6.1.1 Paracellular Transport

This mechanism occurs very low through pores in the BMECs upon stimulation in pathological conditions (Smith et al. 2016).

12.6.1.2 Passive Diffusion

This mechanism transports only lipophilic compounds. It is highly restrictive based on the molecular size (<500 Da) and the number of hydrogen bonds (9–10) (Lipinski et al. 2012).

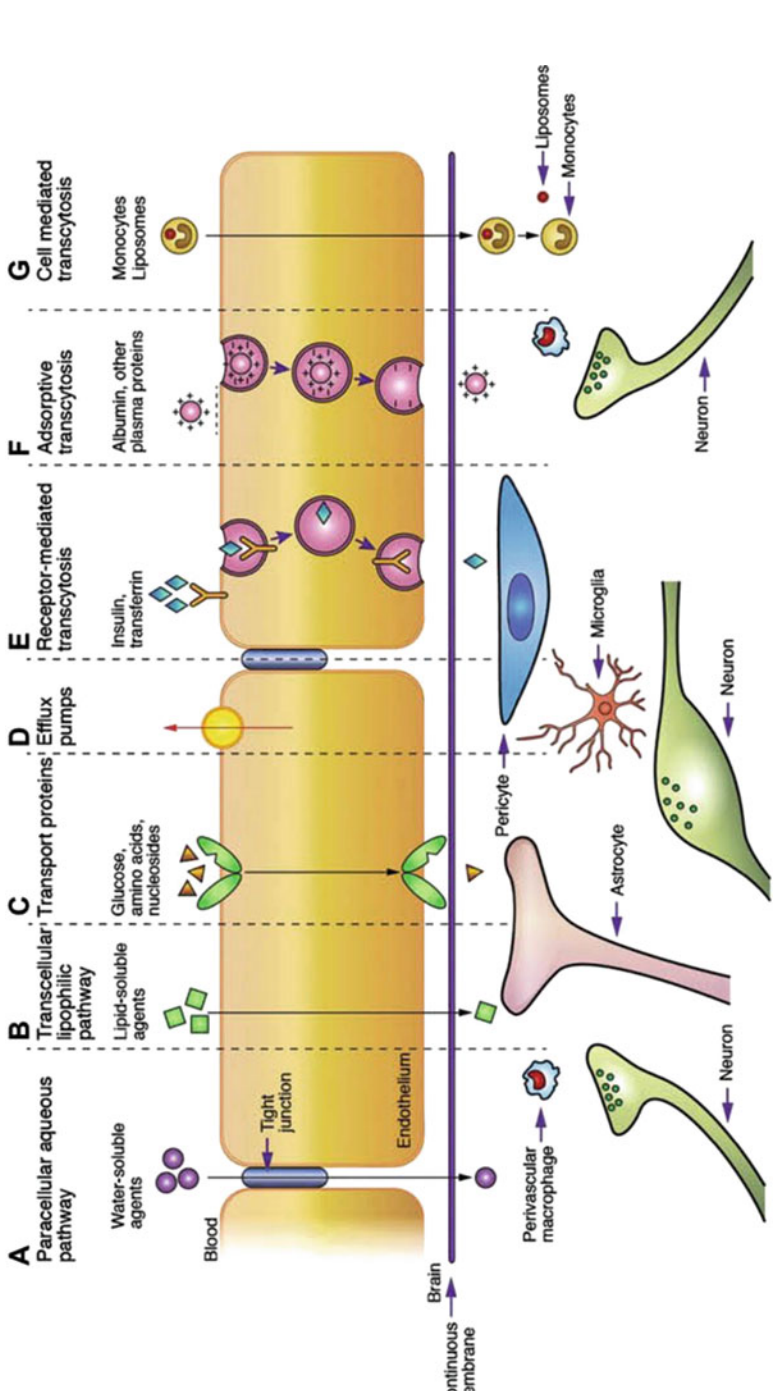


Fig. 12.4 The mechanisms of transport of various molecules across the BBB and the efflux pump. (**a**) Paracellular pathway—for transport of water-soluble molecules; (**b**) Transcellular pathway—for passive transport of lipid-soluble molecules; (**c**) Transport proteins—for bidirectional transport of endogenous molecules; (**d**) Efflux pumps—for removal of lipid-soluble molecules out of brain; (**e**) Receptor-mediated transcytosis—for transport of molecules through specific receptors; (**f**) Adsorptive transcytosis—for transport of molecules via electrostatic interactions of ligands with the cell membrane; (**g**) Cell-mediated transcytosis—for transport of molecules using endogenous cells such as monocytes. (Adapted with permission from Chen and Liu (2012) and Herda et al. (2014))

12.6.1.3 Carrier-Mediated Transport

This mechanism is responsible for endogenous molecule transport through specific transporters. The molecules' movement is determined by the concentration gradient and is accomplished by the use of assisted diffusion transporters (in the gradient's direction) or active transporters (against the concentration gradient). Glucose transporter 1 (GLUT1), excitatory amino acid transporter 1 (EAAT1), monocarboxylate transporter 1 (MCT1), and massive neutral amino acid transporter 1 (LAT1) have been identified as some of the most highly expressed transporters in the brain that are involved in the transport of glucose, amino acids, and other nutrients (Smith 2005; Ohtsuki and Terasaki 2007; Pardridge 1998).

12.6.1.4 Receptor-Mediated Transport

This mechanism facilitates macromolecule uptake through clathrin- or caveolin-mediated endocytosis. The macromolecules serve as ligands for unique receptors on the surface of the cells, forming the BBB such as LRP1, LRP2, and LDLR. Following this, BMECs form vesicles and endosomes, which release the contents of the vesicles into the brain. Intracellular proteins such as amphiphysin, endophilin, and various adaptins, dynamins, and rab proteins guide the transport of vesicles inside the cell (Bareford and Swaan 2007; Villaseñor et al. 2017). The clathrin-mediated endocytosis is responsible for the uptake of molecules with a diameter of 200 nm, while the caveolin-mediated endocytosis is responsible for the uptake of molecules with a diameter of up to 500 nm (Wohlfart et al. 2012).

12.6.1.5 Adsorptive-Mediated Transport

BBB is negatively charged because of the proteoglycans, which impedes some of the macromolecules' transport due to electrostatic interactions. Such molecules are endocytosed by adsorptive-mediated transport. The affinity of macromolecules to this pathway is much less, and hence the transport via this way is much less compared to receptor-mediated transport (Hervé et al. 2008). However, the vesicles formed in this path are much larger and can transport a higher number of macromolecules across the BBB.

12.6.1.6 Cell-Mediated Transport

This mechanism is particularly successful at transporting molecules across the BBB by immune cells such as macrophages and monocytes (Batrakova et al. 2011). This mechanism is sometimes referred to as a "Trojan horse" technique because it utilizes natural processes such as chemotaxis and diapedesis to recruit immune cells to deliver therapeutic agents to the site of action. The benefit of this pathway is that it can carry molecules as big as 1.2μm to the brain.

12.7 Efflux Mechanisms of the BBB

Efflux processes aid in the elimination of waste and other potentially toxic substances from the brain. Efflux transporters protect the brain's interstitial fluid (ISF) from adulteration. These transporters are found on both the luminal and abluminal BBB membranes. They are extremely active and can rapidly expel foreign particles from the brain. The ATP-binding cassette (ABC) superfamily, which includes P-glycoprotein (P-gp) or multidrug resistance protein 1 (MDR1), has been identified as the primary efflux transporter (Banks 2016). Several additional MDR proteins have been identified, including MRP1, MRP2, MRP4, and MRP5, and breast cancer-related protein (BRCP) (Uchida et al. 2011), which is regulated by P-gp.

12.8 Changes in the BBB in Pathological Conditions

A complex interdependent functioning of the BMECs, pericytes, astrocytes, and other NVU components is responsible for the protection of the brain. They together perform additional functions such as regulating permeability, blood flow, angiogenesis, neurogenesis, and so on. In pathological conditions, these interactions are highly disrupted, making the brain susceptible to serious injury. The components of the NVU are sensitive to the immunological responses upregulated in the disease state. These responses include the higher levels of pro-inflammatory cytokines such as IL-1ß, IL-6, TNF-α, and interferon-γ (IFN-γ). The other substances that disrupt the BBB integrity include ROS, free radicals, prostaglandins, histamines, intra- and extracellular ionic compounds, and infective agents such as bacteria, fungi, viruses, and other pathogens. These agents trigger neuroinflammation that leads to disruption of the physiology and functions of the BBB.

Neurodegenerative disease results in the loss of a protein called agrin, a part of the proteoglycans in the BMECs (Krol 2012). Matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs) degrade occluding, fibronectin, laminin, and heparan sulfate that compose the BBB. A change in pericyte number can affect the amount of claudin 5 occludin, resulting in the weakening of the tight and adherens junctions (Bell et al. 2010). These BBB composition changes due to changes in the proteins trigger neuroinflammation by activating the immune cells of the brain. A downstream result of these is the disruption of the transporters on the BBB such as GLUT1, LRP, LDLR, and so on in very specific areas of the brain where the injury is located. Neuroinflammation also upregulates the vascular cell adhesion molecule-1 (VCAM-1) that further enhances the immune cell movement toward the action (Reijerkerk et al. 2008; Floris et al. 2004), thus damaging the BBB. The heightened immune cell response in pathological conditions may also trigger the natural immunosuppression mechanism mediated by cells such as regulatory T-cells (T-reg) or the myeloid suppressor cells (MSCs). This, too, is detrimental to the integrity of the BBB (Moliné-Velázquez et al. 2011).

A better understanding of the BBB's composition and the processes underlying the transport of molecules through the BBB will aid in the development of more precise and targeted nanoparticles for the effective treatment of neurodegenerative diseases such as tumors, Alzheimer's disease, Parkinson's disease, and multiple sclerosis.

12.9 Employment of Nanotechnology for the Treatment of Alzheimer's Disease

Nanoparticles (NPs) are materials with a diameter between 1 and 100 nm. Organic and inorganic materials may be used to synthesize NPs. There are NPs that are often used as nanocarriers, owing to their superior properties such as increased water solubility, biocompatibility, and biodegradability. The majority of AD therapeutics have low bioavailability and are unable to cross the BBB. NPs are the best candidates for the delivery of brain drugs because they can improve the medication's bioavailability and half-life even at low doses. NPs also improve therapeutic effectiveness by increasing the target specificities by reducing acute tolerance (Zhang et al. 2008; Lu et al. 2014; Rauf et al. 2019). There are different kinds of nanoparticles employed in the studies of AD. The most common researched are liposomes, dendrimers, and polymer-based NPs. The present section of the chapter focuses on the role of NPs in different AD pathogenesis (Table 12.1 and Fig. 12.5).

12.9.1 Liposomes

Liposomes were first used as a carrier for nanoparticles in 1965 as liposomal NPs. Liposomes are spherical vesicles with a single or bilayered lipid membrane, an aqueous nucleus, and an aqueous exterior (Wechsler et al. 2019; Wei et al. 2015). Liposomes are amphiphilic because phospholipid molecules in lipid vesicles are amphiphilic. The remarkable fact is that not all nanoscale mixtures of lipids and phospholipids contain liposomes. Certain nanoscale combinations of phospholipids exhibit properties that are distinct from liposomal properties, in which liposomal NPs are found exclusively in vesicle spheres such as hexagonal, micellular, or cubic phases. Liposomes are extremely biodegradable, nontoxic, and non-immunogenic. Liposomal NPs have a thickness of approximately 10 nm–10 μm. Liposomes allowed the delivery of both hydrophilic and hydrophobic agents through their hydrophilic cores and hydrophobic membranes. The adaptable liposomal NP structure enables the loading of samples (siRNA, dye, etc.) or therapeutic agents, thereby facilitating BBB penetration (Vieira and Gamarra 2016; Hu et al. 2010; Leonor Pinzon-Daza et al. 2013).

Liposomes used to treat Alzheimer's disease were designed to specifically target A peptides, thus preventing plaque formation. Few studies have shown that liposomes containing phosphatidic acid and cardiolipin enhance in vitro interaction with A oligomers. Additionally, several experiments indicated that PEG-coated

Table 12.1 Summary of nanocarriers used for Alzheimer's disease

Nanoparticle	Modifications	Therapeutic agents	Model animals	Results
Liposome	PEG coating	Beta-amyloid monoclonal antibodies	Postmortem Alzheimer's disease brain samples	Significant binding of the liposomes to amyloid-beta monomers
	CPPs modification	Rivastigmine	Mouse brain microvascular endothelial cells model	Increased drug transport across the blood-brain barrier
Dendrimer	PAMAM dendrimers	*N*-acetyl-L-cysteine	Rabbit cerebral palsy model	Reduced neuroinflammation and oxidative stress
	Cysteine dendrimer	KLVFF peptide	Fibrillar samples	Disrupted amyloid-beta peptide aggregation
Polymeric	Polyabsorbate	Nerve growth factor	Mouse scopolamine-induced amnesia model	Increased nerve growth factor levels in the brain, as well as improved recognition and memory functions
	Polyabsorbate 80 coated PBCA	Anti-amyloid abs	Rat Alzheimer's disease model	Increased drug transport across the blood-brain barrier
	PEG-PLGA	Fibroblast growth factor	Rat Alzheimer's disease model	Increased brain levels of basic fibroblast growth factor and enhanced spatial learning and memory

liposomes were used to operate on monoclonal anti-A antibodies. Apart from liposomes binding to A deposition in postmortem Alzheimer's disease brain samples, significant liposome binding to A monomers has been observed in vitro (Canovi et al. 2011; Karthivashan et al. 2018). Natural compounds such as curcumin and quercetin have anti-inflammatory, antioxidant, and anticancer effects. These anti-inflammatory properties are used to treat and protect against Alzheimer's disease. Several studies on curcumin-loaded liposomes have shown anti-amyloidal activity to fibrillation of Aβ under in vitro conditions.

By contrast, intranasal administration of quercetin liposomes significantly reduced hippocampal neuronal degradation in a rat model of Alzheimer's disease. These results raise the prospect of liposomal delivery of naturally occurring compounds to treat Alzheimer's disease. As a result, liposomal NPs are an excellent candidate for use in AD pharmaceutical systems (Tiwari et al. 2014; Hamaguchi et al. 2010; Ansari et al. 2009).

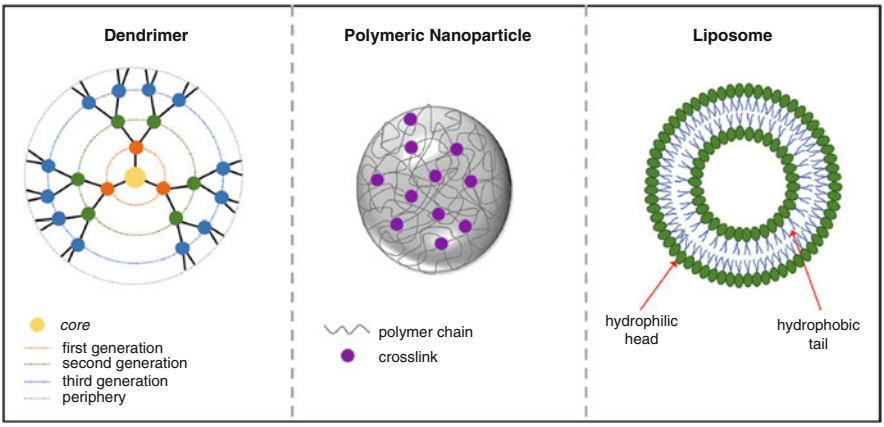


Fig. 12.5 Nanoparticles used to deliver treatment for Alzheimer's disease. Polymer nanoparticles, dendrimers, and liposomes are all examples of nanocarriers used to deliver therapeutic agents through the blood-brain barrier to treat Alzheimer's disease. The optimal particle diameter for crossing the blood-brain barrier has been determined to be between 5 and 200 nm. (Figure adapted from Wechsler et al. (2019))

12.9.2 Polymeric Nanoparticles

Polymeric nanoparticles measure between 1 and 1000 nm in size and are extremely flexible and tunable structures. Polymers have a particular combination of properties, which, unlike many other materials, enables them to be used in various drug delivery applications. These materials provide opportunities to monitor and modulate particle stability, loading performance, kinetic release, and surface modification ability (Pardridge 2007; Smith et al. 2016; Wohlfart et al. 2012; Chang et al. 2009; Ren et al. 2012). Polymers employed for the drug delivery system in the central nervous system include polysaccharides, poly(ethylenimines), poly(alkylcyanoacrylates), poly(methylidene malonates), and polyesters.

Polybutylcyanoacrylate (PBCA) was the first polymer-based nanoparticle to deliver the central nervous system with therapeutic compounds. The emulsion polymerization of polyalkylcyanoacrylate summarizes PBCA's nanoparticles. In this study, polysorbate 80-coated PBCA nanoparticles containing dalargin (an opioid peptide) were administered intravenously (Tween 80). The primary goal of this study was to achieve therapeutic amounts of dalargin in the central nervous system, which would illustrate the medicinal product's passage through the BBB. Subsequent studies discovered that when radioactive dalargin-loaded PBCA nanoparticles were used in the absence of polysorbate 80 coating nanoparticles, the amount of nanoparticles crossing the blood-brain barrier decreased. This and several other studies have shown that polysorbate 80 enhances the penetration of polymeric nanoparticles through the BBB (Begley 2004; Lockman et al. 2004; Kreuter et al. 2003; Schroeder et al. 1998; Das and Lin 2005).

In the bloodstream, nanoparticles are most readily collected through opsonization by the reticuloendothelial system. Reduced particle size and adsorption of surfactants (e.g., polysorbate 80) have been shown to benefit the residence time of nanoparticles in circulation. Adsorption of nanoparticles of the surfactant polysorbate 80 seemed to have been demonstrated in part by a decrease in nanoparticle removal by the reticuloendothelial network. Additionally, using small molecules and growth factors, PBCA nanoparticles coated with polysorbate 80 have been used to diagnose Alzheimer's disease. Rivastigmine is an acetylcholinesterase inhibitor that is currently being used to treat Alzheimer's disease. Previously published research demonstrated that rivastigmine-loaded PBCA nanoparticles coated in polysorbate 80 were superior to uncoated nanoparticles and free rivastigmine. In comparison to filled nanoparticles, PBCA-loaded rivastigmine nanoparticles coated with polysorbate 80 accumulated more readily in the brain than nanoparticles without coating or free rivastigmine. Additionally, the polysorbate 80 coating of the nanoparticles has been shown to minimize liver accumulation; administration of growth factors naturally found in the brain has also been shown to improve the pathophysiology of Alzheimer's disease in animal models as compared to uncoated nanoparticles (Khemariya and Khemariya 2016; Anand and Singh 2013; Bullock et al. 2005; Costantino et al. 2005).

Poly(lactic acid) (PLA), poly(glycolic acid) (PGA), and poly(lactic-co-glycolic acid) (PLGA) are all examples of polymer nanoparticles that are used to deliver pharmaceuticals into the central nervous system. These nanoparticles were designed for intranasal administration in order to circumvent the blood-brain barrier. Due to its large surface area, proximity to the brain, and high capillary density, an intranasal injection is an appropriate route of nanoparticle administration. The addition of PEG to the surface of PLGA further improved their ability to act as a carrier for drug delivery. Specifically, *Solanum tuberosum* lectin was used to selectively conjugate the PEGPLGA nanoparticles to the nasal epithelial membrane's *N*-acetylglucosamine for transmission to the brain. Intranasal administration of lectin-modified nanoparticles to rats with Alzheimer's disease resulted in a rise in basic fibroblast growth factor levels in the brain compared to control rats. Improvements in rats' spatial learning and memory abilities were observed (Loureiro et al. 2016; Sirelkhatim et al. 2015; Hanson and Frey 2008; Sánchez-López et al. 2018).

Utilization of organic, biodegradable, and biocompatible polysaccharides, such as chitosan, is one such example. Previously published research established the use of chitosan nanoparticles for the intranasal delivery of estradiol, resulting in increased estradiol levels in the central nervous system. However, systemic administration of chitosan nanoparticles was used to deliver amyloid peptides, dopamine, and caspase inhibitors to the central nervous system. In general, the ability of polymeric nanoparticles to cross the blood-brain barrier is highly dependent on surface modifications. The presence of surfactants or ligands causes the receptor to undergo endocytosis. These and many other considerations must be considered when developing nanoparticle-based drug delivery systems that cross the blood-brain barrier for the clinical treatment of Alzheimer's disease and other neurodegenerative diseases (Jia et al. 2016; Elnaggar et al. 2015; Wilson et al. 2010).

12.9.3 Dendrimers

Dendrimers have shown promise for diagnosing and treating neurodegenerative diseases. Dendrimers are complex three-dimensional polymers with tightly controlled mass, scale, form, and surface chemistry. Numerous technologies based on dendrimers have been developed to aid in the modification of dendrimers' suitability as drug delivery vehicles. This involves the possibility of maintaining therapeutically effective drug levels, increasing the distribution of active agents for a longer half-life, enhancing drug transport and stability, and improving medicinal efficacy (Costantino et al. 2005; Loureiro et al. 2016; Sirelkhatim et al. 2015). Additionally, the dendrimer surface versatility allows biomolecules to bind to internal cavities with strong drug-loading capacities. Dendrimers have been shown to bind to proteins, lipids, and nucleic acids with high affinity. Numerous dendrimers have been investigated for drug administration, imaging, and theranostics. This include the following: Due to their chemical properties, PAMAM dendrimers were one of the most extensively studied structures. This PAMAM dendrimer capability enables the carriers to be used in a wide range of applications. Dendrimers have been used to treat Alzheimer's disease as anti-amyloidogenic agents. For example, PPI maltose (PPI-G4-Mal) glycodendrimers of the fourth generation and PPI maltose (PPI-G5-Mal) glycodendrimers of the fifth generation have demonstrated the ability to disrupt the amyloid-(A) peptide's A(140) fibrillation. Each of these systems employs a unique mechanism to prevent A from fibrillating. While PPIG4-Mal forms clumped fibrils and high-value amorphous aggregates at low-dendrimer-peptide ratios, the fifth generation of fibril dendrimers prevents the formation of grain-based non-fibril amorphous aggregates. These studies demonstrate that preventing fibril clumping can be an effective way to slow the progression of Alzheimer's disease. The use of cationic phosphorus dendrimers has shown promise (CPD). To be more precise, CPDs (generation 3 and 4) demonstrated anti-inflammatory properties by preventing the inhibition of acetylcholine hydrolysis and exhibiting antioxidant properties. CPDs also shown that the right levels of acetylcholinesterase inhibitor therapy are not antagonistic when used in conjunction with traditional pharmacological treatments for Alzheimer's disease (Klajnert et al. 2006; Luo et al. 2002; Kalomiraki et al. 2016; Aliev et al. 2019; Wang et al. 2014).

Dendrimers were also used to transport antioxidants and anti-inflammatory medications through the blood-brain barrier. Although the combination of neuroinflammatory and oxidative stress is correlated with a variety of neurodegenerative disorders, not just Alzheimer's disease, it is worthwhile to investigate dendrimers' ability to deliver neurotherapeutics across the blood-brain barrier. Moscariello et al. conducted research on the neuroinflammatory properties of dendrimers (Moscariello et al. 2018; Agrahari et al. 2019). Kannan et al. used PAMAM dendrimers to deliver *N*-acetyl-L-cysteine, an antioxidant and anti-inflammatory agent. PAMAM dendrimers were paired with a streptavidin adapter in Moscariello et al.'s research to investigate their absorption mechanisms and transportation through the blood-brain barrier using in vitro vivo models (Moscariello et al. 2018; Menjoge et al. 2010) (Fig. 12.6).

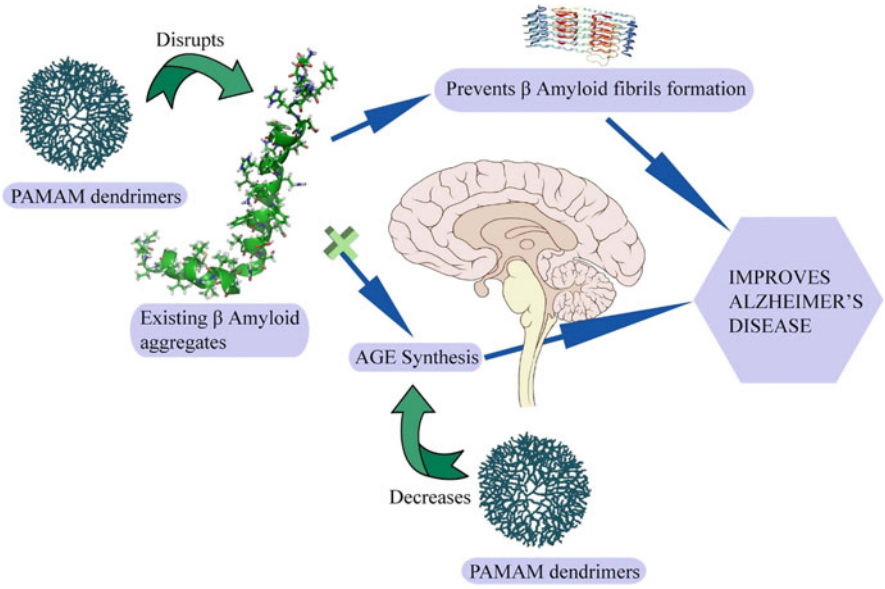


Fig. 12.6 Dendrimer-mediated delivery of drug for the disruption of beta amyloids. (Figure adapted from Harilal et al. (2019))

Dendrimers have also been used to gain a deeper understanding of the processes underlying Alzheimer's disease. Dendrimers were initially used to study the formation of amyloid plates, which is a characteristic of the onset and progression of Alzheimer's disease. For example, the KLVFF sequence, which is required for the formation of sheet structures, is one of the important peptide sequences involved in the formation of amyloid aggregates. Chafekar et al. formed a dendrimer scaffold that functions in KLVFF and inhibits aggregation A(142). Additionally, these constructions demonstrated the ability to disassemble preexisting amyloid. In sum, these results are important for a more complete understanding of tuned dendrimer chemistry and formulations for the effective diagnosis and treatment of Alzheimer's disease and other neurodegenerative diseases (Klajnert et al. 2006; Luo et al. 2002).

12.9.4 Gold Nanoparticles (GNPs)

GNPs have been extensively studied in several biomedical applications, including AD therapy, to deliver drugs and theranostics. A study by Kogan et al. employed GNPs to remove amyloid aggregates in a low microwave fields (Guerrero et al. 2010). GNPs dissolved aggregates of Aβ peptide and inhibited additional aggregations of Aβ peptide by producing local thermal energy (Guerrero et al. 2010). Another study by Liao et al. developed negative charged GNPs and showed that GNPs inhibited Aβ fibrillation and redirected Aβ into spherical oligomers and

fragmented fibril (Peng et al. 2014). Similar results were seen when GNPs were modified with a carboxyl group. In this effect, the negative surface potential of GNPs is significant. Prades et al. modified the GNPs with CLPFFD and THRPPMWSPVWP peptide sequence. They showed that due to the presence of transferrin receptor in the BBB endothelial cells, it leads to increased brain permeability under in vitro and in vivo conditions (Guerrero et al. 2010; Sivanesan and Rajeshkumar 2019).

12.10 Future Direction

Regarding AD treatment, notable studies demonstrating the importance of nanotechnological technologies for therapeutic delivery and AD theragnostic have been carried out. Nonetheless, most of the research is preclinically focused. The findings suggest that the clinical trials and nanotechnology-based treatment in AD will increase therapeutic outcomes shortly. Many new technologies and nanotechnology-based approaches have demonstrated promise in processing drug/biomolecules and/or imaging agents in the BBB for AD therapy. These nanotechnological strategies may help enhance the efficiency without problems of the NP-mediated CNS delivery.

12.11 Conclusion

Alzheimer's disease is a complex condition of progressive dementia that is very difficult to treat because of the impenetrable blood-brain barrier. Though it is disrupted in AD, it is still challenging for delivering drugs across BBB. Nanoparticles allow the design of clever therapeutic carriers, which can simultaneously cross the BBB and carry payloads to the specific targets. In addition, substantial research was carried out in nanoparticles that allowed for the brain's imaging to detect early biomarkers with high sensitivity in AD. Working in this field is promising but not sufficiently good to bring such technology in AD therapy from bench to bed. Several key aspects, including pharmacokinetics, metabolism, and toxicity issues, are still adequately addressed with many nanomaterials, mainly inorganic nanoparticles (significantly used in imaging studies). Finally, most nanoparticles examined for AD therapy demonstrated their action, mostly in preclinical studies.

References

Abbott NJ (2004) Evidence for bulk flow of brain interstitial fluid: significance for physiology and pathology. Neurochem Int 45:545–552. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neuint.2003.11.006

Abbott NJ (2013) Blood-brain barrier structure and function and the challenges for CNS drug delivery. J Inherit Metab Dis 36:437–449. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10545-013-9608-0

Abbott NJ, Rönnbäck L, Hansson E (2006) Astrocyte-endothelial interactions at the blood-brain barrier. Nat Rev Neurosci 7:41–53. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrn1824

Abbott NJ, Patabendige AAK, Dolman DEM, Yusof SR, Begley DJ (2010) Structure and function of the blood-brain barrier. Neurobiol Dis 37:13–25. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nbd.2009.07.030

Agrahari V, Burnouf P-A, Burnouf T, Agrahari V (2019) Nanoformulation properties, characterization, and behavior in complex biological matrices: challenges and opportunities for brain-targeted drug delivery applications and enhanced translational potential. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 148:146–180

Aliev G, Ashraf GM, Tarasov VV, Chubarev VN, Leszek J, Gasiorowski K et al (2019) Alzheimer's disease–future therapy based on dendrimers. Curr Neuropharmacol 17:288–294

Anand P, Singh B (2013) A review on cholinesterase inhibitors for Alzheimer's disease. Arch Pharm Res 36:375–399. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12272-013-0036-3

Ansari MA, Abdul HM, Joshi G, Opii WO, Butterfield DA (2009) Protective effect of quercetin in primary neurons against Aβ (1–42): relevance to Alzheimer's disease. J Nutr Biochem 20:269–275

Banks WA (2016) From blood-brain barrier to blood-brain interface: new opportunities for CNS drug delivery. Nat Rev Drug Discov 15:275–292. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrd.2015.21

Bareford LM, Swaan PW (2007) Endocyic mechanisms for targeted drug delivery. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 59:748–758. https://doi.org/10.1038/jid.2014.371

Batrakova EV, Gendelman HE, Kabanov AV (2011) Cell-mediated drug delivery. Expert Opin Drug Deliv 8:415–433. https://doi.org/10.1517/17425247.2011.559457

Begley DJ (2004) Delivery of therapeutic agents to the central nervous system: the problems and the possibilities. Pharmacol Ther 104:29–45

Bell RD, Winkler EA, Sagare AP, Singh I, LaRue B, Deane R et al (2010) Pericytes control key neurovascular functions and neuronal phenotype in the adult brain and during brain aging. Neuron 68:409–427. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neuron.2010.09.043

Bhowmik A, Khan R, Ghosh MK (2015) Blood brain barrier: a challenge for effectual therapy of brain tumors. Biomed Res Int 2015:320941. https://doi.org/10.1155/2015/320941

Bullock R, Touchon J, Bergman H, Gambina G, He Y, Rapatz G et al (2005) Rivastigmine and donepezil treatment in moderate to moderately-severe Alzheimer's disease over a 2-year period. Curr Med Res Opin 21:1317–1327. https://doi.org/10.1185/030079905X56565

Canovi M, Markoutsa E, Lazar AN, Pampalakis G, Clemente C, Re F et al (2011) The binding affinity of anti-Aβ1-42 MAb-decorated nanoliposomes to Aβ1-42 peptides in vitro and to amyloid deposits in postmortem tissue. Biomaterials 32:5489–5497

Chang J, Jallouli Y, Kroubi M, Yuan X, Feng W, Kang C et al (2009) Characterization of endocytosis of transferrin-coated PLGA nanoparticles by the blood–brain barrier. Int J Pharm 379:285–292

Chen Y, Liu L (2012) Modern methods for delivery of drugs across the blood-brain barrier. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 64:640–665. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.addr.2011.11.010

Costantino L, Gandolfi F, Tosi G, Rivasi F, Vandelli MA, Forni F (2005) Peptide-derivatized biodegradable nanoparticles able to cross the blood–brain barrier. J Control Release 108:84–96

Das D, Lin S (2005) Double-coated poly (butylcynanoacrylate) nanoparticulate delivery systems for brain targeting of dalargin via oral administration. J Pharm Sci 94:1343–1353

Deli MA (2009) Potential use of tight junction modulators to reversibly open membranous barriers and improve drug delivery. Biochim Biophys Acta Biomembr 1788:892–910. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbamem.2008.09.016

Didier N, Romero IA, Créminon C, Wijkhuisen A, Grassi J, Mabondzo A (2003) Secretion of interleukin-1β by astrocytes mediates endothelin-1 and tumour necrosis factor-α effects on human brain microvascular endothelial cell permeability. J Neurochem 86:246–254. https://doi.org/10.1046/j.1471-4159.2003.01829.x

Elnaggar YSR, Etman SM, Abdelmonsif DA, Abdallah OY (2015) Intranasal piperine-loaded chitosan nanoparticles as brain-targeted therapy in Alzheimer's disease: optimization, biological efficacy, and potential toxicity. J Pharm Sci 104:3544–3556

Engelhardt B, Vajkoczy P, Weller RO (2017) The movers and shapers in immune privilege of the CNS. Nat Immunol 18:123–131. https://doi.org/10.1038/ni.3666

Floris S, Blezer ELA, Schreibelt G, Döpp E, Van Der Pol SMA, Schadee-Eestermans IL et al (2004) Blood-brain barrier permeability and monocyte infiltration in experimental allergic encephalomyelitis: a quantitative MRI study. Brain 127:616–627. https://doi.org/10.1093/brain/awh068

Furtado D, Bjornmalm A, Ayton S, Bush A, Kempe K, Caruso F (2018) Overcoming the blood–brain barrier: the role of nanomaterials in treating neurological diseases. Adv Mater 30(46): e1801362. https://doi.org/10.1002/adma.201801362

Guerrero S, Araya E, Fiedler JL, Arias JI, Adura C, Albericio F et al (2010) Improving the brain delivery of gold nanoparticles by conjugation with an amphipathic peptide. Nanomedicine 5:897–913

Hamaguchi T, Ono K, Yamada M (2010) Curcumin and Alzheimer's disease. CNS Neurosci Ther 16:285–297. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1755-5949.2010.00147.x

Hanson LR, Frey WH (2008) Intranasal delivery bypasses the blood-brain barrier to target therapeutic agents to the central nervous system and treat neurodegenerative disease. BMC Neurosci 9:S5

Harilal S, Jose J, Parambi DGT, Kumar R, Mathew GE, Uddin MS et al (2019) Advancements in nanotherapeutics for Alzheimer's disease: current perspectives. J Pharm Pharmacol 71:1370–1383

Herda LM, Polo E, Kelly PM, Rocks L, Hudecz D, Dawson KA (2014) Designing the future of nanomedicine: current barriers to targeted brain therapeutics. Eur J Nanomed 6:127–139. https://doi.org/10.1515/ejnm-2014-0022

Hervé F, Ghinea N, Scherrmann JM (2008) CNS delivery via adsorptive transcytosis. AAPS J 10:455–472. https://doi.org/10.1208/s12248-008-9055-2

Hu Y, Li K, Wang L, Yin S, Zhang Z, Zhang Y (2010) Pegylated immuno-lipopolyplexes: a novel non-viral gene delivery system for liver cancer therapy. J Control Release 144:75–81

Jia S, Lu Z, Gao Z, An J, Wu X, Li X et al (2016) Chitosan oligosaccharides alleviate cognitive deficits in an amyloid-β1–42-induced rat model of Alzheimer's disease. Int J Biol Macromol 83:416–425

Kalomiraki M, Thermos K, Chaniotakis NA (2016) Dendrimers as tunable vectors of drug delivery systems and biomedical and ocular applications. Int J Nanomedicine 11:1

Karthivashan G, Ganesan P, Park S-Y, Kim J-S, Choi D-K (2018) Therapeutic strategies and nano-drug delivery applications in management of ageing Alzheimer's disease. Drug Deliv 25:307–320

Khemariya RP, Khemariya PS (2016) New-fangled approach in the management of Alzheimer by formulation of polysorbate 80 coated chitosan nanoparticles of rivastigmine for brain delivery and their in vivo evaluation. Int J Curr Res Med Sci 2:18–29

Klajnert B, Cortijo-Arellano M, Bryszewska M, Cladera J (2006) Influence of heparin and dendrimers on the aggregation of two amyloid peptides related to Alzheimer's and prion diseases. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 339:577–582

Kooij G, Van Horssen J, De Vries E (2005) Tight junctions of the blood-brain barrier. Blood-Brain Barrier Microenviron Basic Physiol Neurol Dis 38:47–69. https://doi.org/10.1016/s1537-1891(02)00200-8

Kreuter J, Ramge P, Petrov V, Hamm S, Gelperina SE, Engelhardt B et al (2003) Direct evidence that polysorbate-80-coated poly (butylcyanoacrylate) nanoparticles deliver drugs to the CNS via specific mechanisms requiring prior binding of drug to the nanoparticles. Pharm Res 20:409–416

Krol S (2012) Challenges in drug delivery to the brain: nature is against us. J Control Release 164:145–155. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jconrel.2012.04.044

Krol S, Macrez R, Docagne F, Defer G, Laurent S, Rahman M et al (2013) Therapeutic benefits from nanoparticles: the potential significance of nanoscience in diseases with compromise to the blood brain barrier. Chem Rev 113:1877–1903. https://doi.org/10.1021/cr200472g

Leonor Pinzon-Daza M, Campia I, Kopecka J, Garzón R, Ghigo D, Rigant C (2013) Nanoparticle- and liposome-carried drugs: new strategies for active targeting and drug delivery across blood-brain barrier. Curr Drug Metab 14:625–640

Lipinski CA, Lombardo F, Dominy BW, Feeney PJ (2012) Experimental and computational approaches to estimate solubility and permeability in drug discovery and development settings. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 64:4–17. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.addr.2012.09.019

Lockman PR, Koziara JM, Mumper RJ, Allen DD (2004) Nanoparticle surface charges alter blood–brain barrier integrity and permeability. J Drug Target 12:635–641

Loureiro JA, Gomes B, Fricker G, Coelho MAN, Rocha S, Pereira MC (2016) Cellular uptake of PLGA nanoparticles targeted with anti-amyloid and anti-transferrin receptor antibodies for Alzheimer's disease treatment. Colloids Surfaces B Biointerfaces 145:8–13

Lu C-T, Zhao Y-Z, Wong HL, Cai J, Peng L, Tian X-Q (2014) Current approaches to enhance CNS delivery of drugs across the brain barriers. Int J Nanomedicine 9:2241

Luo D, Haverstick K, Belcheva N, Han E, Saltzman WM (2002) Poly (ethylene glycol)-conjugated PAMAM dendrimer for biocompatible, high-efficiency DNA delivery. Macromolecules 35:3456–3462

Matsushima GK, Taniike M, Glimcher LH, Grusby MJ, Frelinger JA, Suzuki K et al (1994) Absence of MHC class ii molecules reduces CNS demyelination, microglial/macrophage infiltration, and twitching in murine globoid cell leukodystrophy. Cell 78:645–656. https://doi.org/10.1016/0092-8674(94)90529-0

Menjoge AR, Kannan RM, Tomalia DA (2010) Dendrimer-based drug and imaging conjugates: design considerations for nanomedical applications. Drug Discov Today 15:171–185

Moliné-Velázquez V, Cuervo H, Vila-Del Sol V, Ortega MC, Clemente D, De Castro F (2011) Myeloid-derived suppressor cells limit the inflammation by promoting T lymphocyte apoptosis in the spinal cord of a murine model of multiple sclerosis. Brain Pathol 21:678–691. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1750-3639.2011.00495.x

Moscariello P, Ng DYW, Jansen M, Weil T, Luhmann HJ, Hedrich J (2018) Brain delivery of multifunctional dendrimer protein bioconjugates. Adv Sci 5:1700897

Neuwelt EA, Bauer B, Fahlke C, Fricker G, Iadecola C, Janigro D et al (2011) Engaging neuroscience to advance translational research in brain barrier biology. Nat Rev Neurosci 12:169–182. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrn2995.Engaging

Ohtsuki S, Terasaki T (2007) Contribution of carrier-mediated transport systems to the blood-brain barrier as a supporting and protecting interface for the brain; importance for CNS drug discovery and development. Pharm Res 24:1745–1758. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11095-007-9374-5

Pardridge WM (1998) Blood-brain barrier carrier-mediated transport and brain metabolism of amino acids. Neurochem Res 23:635–644. https://doi.org/10.1023/A:1022482604276

Pardridge WM (2003) Blood-brain barrier drug targeting: the future of brain drug development. Mol Interv 3. https://doi.org/10.1124/mi.3.2.90

Pardridge WM (2005) Molecular biology of the blood-brain barrier. Mol Biotechnol 30:57–69. https://doi.org/10.1385/mb:30:1:057

Pardridge WM (2007) Blood-brain barrier delivery. Drug Discov Today 12:54–61. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.drudis.2006.10.013

Peng J, Weng J, Ren L, Sun L-P (2014) Interactions between gold nanoparticles and amyloid β 25–35 peptide. IET Nanobiotechnol 8:295–303

Ransohoff RM, Kivisäkk P, Kidd G (2003) Three or more routes for leukocyte migration into the central nervous system. Nat Rev Immunol 3:569–581. https://doi.org/10.1038/nri1130

Rauf MA, Rehman FU, Zheng M, Shi B (2019) The strategies of nanomaterials for traversing blood-brain barrier BT. In: Xue X (ed) Nanomedicine in brain diseases: principles and application. Springer, Singapore, pp 29–57. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-13-8731-9_2

Reijerkerk A, Kooij G, van der Pol SMA, Leyen T, van het Hof B, Couraud P-O et al (2008) Tissue-type plasminogen activator is a regulator of monocyte diapedesis through the brain endothelial barrier. J Immunol 181:3567–3574. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.181.5.3567

Ren J, Shen S, Wang D, Xi Z, Guo L, Pang Z et al (2012) The targeted delivery of anticancer drugs to brain glioma by PEGylated oxidized multi-walled carbon nanotubes modified with angiopep-2. Biomaterials 33:3324–3333

Sánchez-López E, Ettcheto M, Egea MA, Espina M, Cano A, Calpena AC et al (2018) Memantine loaded PLGA PEGylated nanoparticles for Alzheimer's disease: in vitro and in vivo characterization. J Nanobiotechnol 16:32

Sarin H (2010) Physiologic upper limits of pore size of different blood capillary types and another perspective on the dual pore theory of microvascular permeability. J Angiogenes Res 2:1–19. https://doi.org/10.1186/2040-2384-2-14

Sato H, Coburn J (2017) Leptospira interrogans causes quantitative and morphological disturbances in adherens junctions and other biological groups of proteins in human endothelial cells. PLoS Negl Trop Dis 11:1–27. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pntd.0005830

Schroeder U, Sommerfeld P, Sabel BA (1998) Efficacy of oral dalargin-loaded nanoparticle delivery across the blood–brain barrier. Peptides 19:777–780

Sirelkhatim A, Mahmud S, Seeni A, Kaus NHM, Ann LC, Bakhori SKM et al (2015) Review on zinc oxide nanoparticles: antibacterial activity and toxicity mechanism. Nano-Micro Lett 7:219–242. https://doi.org/10.1007/s40820-015-0040-x

Sivanesan S, Rajeshkumar S (2019) Gold nanoparticles in diagnosis and treatment of Alzheimer's disease. In: Nanobiotechnology in neurodegenerative diseases. Springer, pp 289–306

Smith QR (2005) Carrier-mediated transport to enhance drug delivery to brain. Int Congr Ser 1277:63–74. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ics.2005.02.012

Smith NM, Gachulincova I, Ho D, Bailey C, Bartlett CA, Norret M et al (2016) An unexpected transient breakdown of the blood brain barrier triggers passage of large intravenously administered nanoparticles. Sci Rep 6:1–9. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep22595

Tiwari SK, Agarwal S, Seth B, Yadav A, Nair S, Bhatnagar P et al (2014) Curcumin-loaded nanoparticles potently induce adult neurogenesis and reverse cognitive deficits in Alzheimer's disease model via canonical Wnt/β-catenin pathway. ACS Nano 8:76–103. https://doi.org/10.1021/nn405077y

Uchida Y, Ohtsuki S, Katsukura Y, Ikeda C, Suzuki T, Kamiie J et al (2011) Quantitative targeted absolute proteomics of human blood-brain barrier transporters and receptors. J Neurochem 117:333–345. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1471-4159.2011.07208.x

Vieira DB, Gamarra LF (2016) Getting into the brain: liposome-based strategies for effective drug delivery across the blood–brain barrier. Int J Nanomedicine 11:5381–5414. https://doi.org/10.2147/IJN.S117210

Villaseñor R, Schilling M, Sundaresan J, Lutz Y, Collin L (2017) Sorting tubules regulate blood-brain barrier transcytosis. Cell Rep 21:3256–3270. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.celrep.2017.11.055

Wang M, Liu H, Li L, Cheng Y (2014) A fluorinated dendrimer achieves excellent gene transfection efficacy at extremely low nitrogen to phosphorus ratios. Nat Commun 5:3053

Wechsler ME, Vela Ramirez JE, Peppas NA (2019) 110th Anniversary: nanoparticle mediated drug delivery for the treatment of Alzheimer's disease: crossing the blood–brain barrier. Ind Eng Chem Res 58:15079–15087

Wei X, Gao J, Zhan C, Xie C, Chai Z, Ran D et al (2015) Liposome-based glioma targeted drug delivery enabled by stable peptide ligands. J Control Release 218:13–21. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jconrel.2015.09.059

Wekerle H (2002) Immune protection of the brain—efficient and delicate. J Infect Dis 186:S140–S144. https://doi.org/10.1086/344937

Williams K, Alvarez X, Lackner AA (2001) Central nervous system perivascular cells are immunoregulatory cells that connect the CNS with the peripheral immune system. Glia 36:156–164. https://doi.org/10.1002/glia.1105

Wilson B, Samanta MK, Santhi K, Kumar KPS, Ramasamy M, Suresh B (2010) Chitosan nanoparticles as a new delivery system for the anti-Alzheimer drug tacrine. Nanomed Nanotechnol Biol Med 6:144–152

Wohlfart S, Gelperina S, Kreuter J (2012) Transport of drugs across the blood-brain barrier by nanoparticles. J Control Release 161:264–273. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jconrel.2011.08.017

Worzfeld T, Schwaninger M (2016) Apicobasal polarity of brain endothelial cells. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 36:340–362. https://doi.org/10.1177/0271678X15608644

Yi X, Manickam DS, Brynskikh A, Kabanov AV (2014) Agile delivery of protein therapeutics to CNS. J Control Release 190:637–663. https://doi.org/10.1038/jid.2014.371

Yokel RA (2016) Physicochemical properties of engineered nanomaterials that influence their nervous system distribution and effects. Nanomed Nanotechnol Biol Med 12:2081–2093. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nano.2016.05.007

Zhang L, Gu FX, Chan JM, Wang AZ, Langer RS, Farokhzad OC (2008) Nanoparticles in medicine: therapeutic applications and developments. Clin Pharmacol Ther 83:761–769

Zhang TT, Li W, Meng G, Wang P, Liao W (2016) Strategies for transporting nanoparticles across the blood-brain barrier. Biomater Sci 4:219–229. https://doi.org/10.1039/c5bm00383k

Zlokovic BV (2008) The blood-brain barrier in health and chronic neurodegenerative disorders. Neuron 57:178–201

Zlokovic BV (2011) Neurovascular pathways to neurodegeneration in Alzheimer's disease and other disorders. Nat Rev Neurosci 12:723–738. https://doi.org/10.1038/jid.2014.371

Role of Impaired ABC Transporters in Alzheimer's Disease

13

Mahin Haque, Gulzar Ahmed Rather, Ehraz Mehmood Siddiqui, Sadaf Jahan, Andleeb Khan, Hafiz Antar Makeen, Athanasios Alexiou, and Ghulam Md Ashraf

Abstract

The ATP-binding cassette (ABC) superfamily groups are membrane proteins that serve as active efflux pumps for many substances, together with therapeutics. ABC transporters comprise of a highly conserved "cassette-like" domain that

M. Haque
ICAR-National Bureau of plant Genetic Resources, New Delhi, India

G. A. Rather
Sathyabama Institute of Science & Technology, deemed to be University, Chennai, Tamil Nadu, India

E. M. Siddiqui
Department of Pharmacology, Buddha Institute of Pharmacy, Sahjanwa, GIDA, Uttar Pradesh, India

S. Jahan
Medical Laboratories Department, College of Applied Medical Sciences, Majmaah University, Majmaah, Saudi Arabia

A. Khan (✉)
Department of Pharmacology and Toxicology, College of Pharmacy, Jazan University, Jazan, Saudi Arabia

H. A. Makeen
Department of Clinical Pharmacy, College of Pharmacy, Jazan University, Jazan, Saudi Arabia

A. Alexiou
Department of Science and Engineering, Novel Global Community Educational Foundation, Sydney, Australia

G. Md Ashraf
Pre-Clinical Research Unit, King Fahd Medical Research Center, King Abdulaziz University, Jeddah, Saudi Arabia

King Fahd Medical Research Center, Department of Medical Laboratory Sciences, Faculty of Applied Medical Sciences, King Abdulaziz University, Jeddah, Saudi Arabia

G. Md Ashraf, A. Alexiou (eds.), *Autism Spectrum Disorder and Alzheimer's Disease*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-4558-7_13

catalyzes the ATP hydrolysis providing the energy needed for the transport of substances against a concentration gradient. They actively transport both the endogenous and exogenous substances and implicated in the absorption, distribution, and excretion of several xenobiotics. They exhibit ubiquitous expression throughout the human body, with a special relevance in barrier tissues like the blood-brain barrier (BBB). At this level, they play a physiological role in tissue protection by reducing or limiting brain accumulation of neurotoxins. Furthermore, dysfunction of ABC transporters, at expression and/or activity level, has been associated with many diseases. Alzheimer's disease (AD) is a progressive neurodegenerative disease and the most common form of age-related dementia that starts with memory loss and progresses to include severe cognitive impairment. In recent years, it has been shown that inadequate Aβ, which are physiologically assisted by the superfamily ABC transporters at the brain barrier, are important in the imitation and the progression of the disease. This book chapter highlights the significance of this alternative approach as a novel in AD, to provide the researchers an opportunity to evaluate the potential aspects of ABC transporters in AD treatment.

Keywords

ATP-binding cassette transporters · Central nervous system · Alzheimer's disease

13.1 Introduction

ABC transporters are one of the main super families of transporter proteins (Thomas and Tampé 2020). ABC transporters are transmembrane proteins localized on cells as well as organelles and are extensively expressed in all organisms. In humans, ABC transporters are predominantly expressed in cancer cells as well as lipo-processing cells, for example, macrophages (Nedeljković et al. 2021). The ABC transporter family contains 48 genes (for humans) spanning the gene codes *abca* to *abcg*. The most common researched of these are P-glycoprotein or PGP (abcb1; MDRI), "breast cancer resistance protein" or BCRP (abcg2), as well as the "multi-drug resistance-associated proteins" or MRPs ($abcc_s$). These transporters are identified to exist at barriers between the blood and the CNS (Ek et al. 2010; Møllgård et al. 2017) as well as between the blood and CSF (Kratzer et al. 2013; Møllgård et al. 2017) and the CSF and the CNS. The superfamily of ATP-binding cassette (ABC) transporters controls drug distribution, metabolism, as well as bioavailability in cells and the extracellular matrix; the transporter thus plays a very significant role by limiting the accumulation of drug in the tissues, also with drug resistance (Linton 2007). At present, only few members are recognized as members of neural stem/progenitor cells as well (NSPC) (Broccardo et al. 2006; Mohan et al. 2006. The superfamily is composed of many transporters belonging among the seven subfamilies of ABC A and ABC G. In the blood-brain barrier (BBB), these subfamilies include ABCB subfamily consequent to P-glycoprotein

(P-gp) which mediates multidrug resistance (MDR), the subfamily ABCC of multidrug resistance-related proteins (MRP), and the subfamily ABCG (breast cancer resistance protein, BCRP (Leslie et al. 2005). The broad and partly overlapping specificity of substrate on several hydrophobic compounds is common to multidrug transporters. They are exclusively dispersed in organs with secretive or barrier functions, together with the intestine, renal, liver, and lungs, as well at the BBB and the choroid plexus, chiefly for neurodegenerative disease. They are categorized into the apical membrane faced with the luminal surface of the tubes, tubuli, and canaculi or to the basolateral membrane in epithelia or endothelium. This functionality and polarization at the cell membrane allow guided transport across these cellular obstacles (Leslie et al. 2005); therefore, ABC transporters help in fulfilling the important function in excreting various peptides and compounds. Such barrier plays a prominent role in linking the cellular-intracellular intra-compartment and intracellular environment with the systemic outer bloodstream, especially in diseases with compartmental organ associations. Because this role may also play a part in the pathophysiology of neurodegenerative disorders, the brain is considered one of the largest compartments surrounded by barriers. Over the past 10 years, the focus of a recent AD research area has been on blood-brain barrier transporters in the ATP-binding cassette (ABC) and in other CNS cells. In order to move substrates across the cells, tissues and organelle's membranes, ABC transporters utilities the ATP. There are different types of molecules, substances, compounds, and drugs which act as substrates for ABC transporters; among them are cholesterol, peptides, lipids, toxins, and certain groups of drugs; therefore, ABC transporters become very core part of many biochemical and physiological reactions in maintaining the homeostasis of the body by metabolism extrusion and restricting drug absorption. Researchers recently found that ABC transporters play an important role even in diseases, where pathways and processes involving ABC transporters are changed. For some types of ABC transporters with role in AD and CNS like BCRP, MRP1, P-gp, ABCA1, and ABCA2 are associated with high concentrations of Aβ brain levels. It is still unclear how, and if accurately, ABC transporters add to AD pathophysiology. This lack of comprehension offers new insights, particularly with the promise of untying disease data and identifying targets that could help develop new therapeutic strategies for AB. This lack of understanding provides the opportunity which is discussed in this chapter.

13.2 ABC Transporter Superfamily

The largest family of transmembrane protein represents the ABC genes. By binding to ATP, these proteins use energy all the way through the cell membrane for the purpose to drive the transport of different molecules (Dean and Allikmets 1995). Depending on the organization and sequence of their ATP-binding domains, proteins are designated as ABC transporters, known as nucleotide-binding folds (NBF). Generally, the functional protein comprises two NBFs and two domains of the transmembrane (TM). There are 6–11 membrane-spanning helices in the TM

domains which provide substrate specificity. In the cytoplasm, NBFs are located and transmit the energy to carry the substrate throughout the membrane. They are mainly involved in the importation of essential substances into bacteria that cannot be obtained via diffusion (e.g., carbohydrates, vitamins, metal ions, etc.). The shuttling of hydrophobic compounds either inside the cell as part of metabolic processes or outside the cell for transport to other organs, secretion from the body, is the major known function of eukaryotic ABC transporters. Eukaryotic ABC genes are organized either as full transporters or as half transporters containing two TMs and two NBFs. The latter has to form homodimers or heterodimers to act as functional transporter. In eukaryotic genomes, ABC transporters are widely diffused and highly conserved across the species, indicating that majority of these genes have been present since the eukaryotic origin. Depending on the similarities in gene structure (half versus complete transporters), domain order, and on sequence homology in the NBF and TM domains, the genes can be cut into subfamilies. Seven subfamilies of the mammalian ABC gene exist, five of which are found in the genome of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. One of the major superfamilies of proteins, which are well distributed in all animals, from prokaryotes to humans, is ATP-binding cassette transporters (ABC transporter). These proteins are categorized according to their ABC domains(s) sequence and organization (Pohl et al. 2005). In eukaryotes, the transporters of ABC are expressed in intracellular compartments such as plasma membrane, Golgi, endosomes, multivesicular bodies, endoplasmic reticulum, peroxisomes, and mitochondria (Dean and Annilo 2005). In humans, around 48 ABC transporters have been identified so far, divided according to their structural characteristics into seven families (called ABC A–G). ABC proteins are primarily involved in the transport of vitamins, lipids (i.e., cholesterol, phospholipids, glycolipids, etc.), bile salts, steroids, toxins, and medicine and metabolisms via biological membrane through molecular processes (Molday et al. 2009). Accumulating evidences support the fact that the subfamily-A of the ABC transporter has the key role in human physiology, and when mutated or altered, they cause different diseases (Peelman et al. 2003). Tangier (ABCA1), Alzheimer's (ABCA2/ABC7), Stargardt's (ABCR/ABCA4), and Harlequin ichthyosis (ABCA12) (Tarling et al. 2013) are examples of ABC A subfamily disorders.

13.2.1 ABCA (ABC1)

This subfamily contains 12 set of transporters that are classified into two subgroups based on their phylogenetic and intron structure. The first group consists of around seven genes dispersed on six chromosomes (ABCA1, ABCA2, ABCA3, ABCA4, ABCA7, ABCA12, and ABCA13), while in the second group, it contains only five genes (ABCA5, ABCA6, ABCA8, ABCA9, and ABCA10) located on chromosome 17q24 as a cluster. Some of the largest ABC genes are located in the ABCA subfamily, most of which are >2100 amino acids. The ABCA1 and ABCA4 (ABCR) proteins, only two members of this subfamily, have been thoroughly studied. As per the role of ABC1 protein, it is involved in cholesterol transport

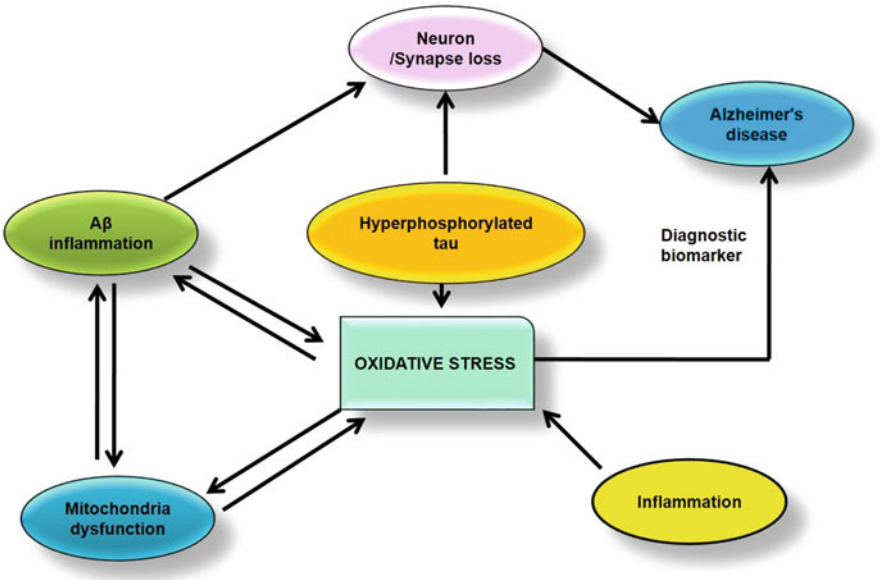


Fig. 13.1 Oxidative stress in Alzheimer's disease. The schematic diagram shows how oxidative stress can be induced by mitochondrial dysfunction, inflammation, hyperphosphorylated tau, and Aβ accumulation in AD

and high-density lipoprotein (HDL) biosynthesis disorders. In the outer segments of the photoreceptor cell, the ABCA4 protein is linked to the transport of vitamin A derivative and ultimately plays an important role in visual cycle (Fig. 13.1).

13.2.2 MDR/Tap (ABCB)

ABCB subfamily is one of the unique families as it includes both full and half transporters. As members of this subfamily, seven half and four full vans are currently listed. ABCB1 (MDR/PGY1) is one of the first human ABC transporters that has been cloned and characterized by its capability to present a phenotype of multidrug resistance to cancer cells. The blood-brain barrier and the liver include the functional sites of ABCB1. Proteins like ABCB4 and ABCD11 are excessively found in the liver in order to assist in bile secretion. ABCB2 and ABCB3(TAP) genes are among the half transporters that form a heterodimer in order to carry peptides introduced as antigens toward the ER. The ABCB9 half transporters are the closest homology of the TAPs which were localized to lysosomes. The remaining four half transporters are restricted in the mitochondria, ABCB6, ABCB6, ABCB8, and ABCB10, where they act in the metabolism of iron and the transport of precursors of Fe/S proteins.

13.2.3 ABCC (MRP/CFTR)

The next subfamily of ABCC generally comprises about 12 different transporters with huge functional range that includes cell surface receptors, ion transporter, and secretion of toxins. The protein CFTR is a type of ion chloride channel that has a major role nearly in the exocrine secretions, and cystic fibrosis is caused by mutations in CFTR (Quinton 1999). Proteins ABCC8 and ABCC9 bind to sulfonylurea and control the channels of potassium involved in insulin secretion modulation. Nine MRP-associated genes make up the majority of the subfamily. Of these, drug conjugates are transported into glutathione and other organic anions by ABCC1, ABCC2, and ABCC3. Proteins ABCCA4, ABCC5, ABCC11, and ABCC12 are very small in size than other genes, but similar to MRP1 and lack an amino-terminal domain that is not necessary for the purpose of transport (Bakos et al. 2000). Proteins ABCC4 and ABCC5 impart resistance, including PMEA and purine analogs, to nucleosides.

13.2.4 ALD (ABCD)

The human genome in the ABCD subfamily contains four genes, with two in the yeast and *Drosophila* genome, respectively. The yeast genome, PXA1 and PXA2 after dimerization forms a functional transporter and is incorporated in peroxisomes for oxidation of long chain fatty acids (Shani and Valle 1998). The half-transporters which can function as either homo- or heterodimers in the regulation of very-long-chain transport of fatty acids were encoded by all the genes.

13.2.5 ABCE (OABP) and GCN20 (ABCF)

The genes with an ATP-binding domain, such as ABCE and ABCF subfamilies, which are derived from ABC transporters, do not have a TM domain and are thought to be useful in membrane transport. The ABCE subfamily only contains oligo-adenylate binding protein, a substrate that recognizes oligo-adenylate which is formed in some viruses at the time of infection. This gene is present, but not in yeast, in multicellular eukaryotes, indicating that it is part of innate immunity. A pair of NBFs is included in each ABCF gene. The GCN20 cerevisiae gene promotes activation of eIF-2 kinase (Marton et al. 1997) and ribosome-associated human homolog, ABCFI, which is likely to have a similar function (Tyzack et al. 2000).

13.2.6 ABCG (White)

This subfamily ABCG is considered to consist of having six half transporters and NBF at the amino side and TM domain at the carboxyl side. The ABCGI mammalian gene is involved in the transport of cholesterol control (Klucken et al. 2000). Among

Table 13.1 Members of the ABC transporter family

Subfamily name	Former name	Members	Linked diseases in humans	Number of genes	Number of pseudogenes
ABCA	ABC1	ABCA1, AB, A3, A4, A5, A6, A7, A8, A9, A10, A12, A13	Tangier disease	12	5
ABCB	MDR	ABCB1, B2, B3, B4, B5, B6, B7, B8, B9, B10, B11	Bare lymphocyte syndrome	11	4
ABCC	MRP	ABCC1, C2, C3, C4, C5, C6, C7, C8, C9, C10, C11, C12, C13	Dubin-Johnson syndrome	13	2
ABCD	ALD	ABCD1, D2, D3, D4	Adrenoleukodystrophy	4	4
ABCE	OABP	ABCE1		1	2
ABCF	CGN20	ABCF1, F2, F3		3	2
ABCG	White	ABCG1, G2, G4, G5, G8	Sitosterolemia	5	2

the other different genes of ABCG are ABCG2, a gene involved in drug resistance; ABCG5 and ABCG8 which help in sterol transport both in the liver and intestine; ABCG3, a gene which has been found mostly in rodents; and lastly ABCG4 which is found to be expressed in the liver. There is no literature available that explains the roles of the last two genes (Table 13.1).

13.3 Role of ABC Transporters in CNS

13.3.1 ABC A Family

ABC A1, a member of the ABC A family, has been studied as the most common transporter in the CNS and has been detected in choroid plexus epithelial cells, microglia, brain capillary, neurons, and endothelial cells at the protein or molecular level. ABCA has also been found in the brain capillary endothelial and abluminal membrane in cell line TR-CSFB3 belonging to rats (Panzenboeck et al. 2002; Fujiyoshi et al. 2007). The other members of ABCA together with ABCA2–9 are also found in epithelial cells of choroid plexus neurons, microglia, capillary endothelial cells, oligodendrocytes, and astrocytes of the mouse, rat, and human brain at the protein or mRNA levels (Bhongsatiern et al. 2005; Kim et al. 2006; Gosselet et al. 2009). ABCA family transporters are involved in apolipoprotein-dependent cholesterol efflux, sterol homeostasis, and lipid metabolism (Gosselet et al. 2009).

The role of these transporters in the CNS is, however, little understood. ABCA1 is found to be upregulated by ethanol in a recent research discussing the impact of alcohol on the fetal brain in mouse astrocytes in vivo as well as in fetal human astrocytes (Guizzetti et al. 2007). Cholesterol plays an important role in brain growth. Ethanol caused an increase in cholesterol efflux and a significant reduction in the level of intracellular cholesterol and induced a disturbance in cholesterol homeostasis but did not impair cellular cholesterol synthesis. Alcohol has a deleterious effect on the fetus as ethanol disturbs cholesterol homeostasis which affects the development of the brain. Moreover, ABCA1 has been shown to contribute in apoE-dependent cholesterol efflux in neurons as well as brain capillary endothelial cells.

Consistent with this, cholesterol efflux from ABCA1-deficient mice has reduced in microglia and astrocytes, resulting in cellular cholesterol accumulation and reduced removal of apoE (Hirsch-Reinshagen et al. 2004). This is an important discovery in that decreased levels of lapidated apoE decrease the proteolytic breakdown of amyloids (Jiang et al. 2008) which raises the chances of Alzheimer's disease. This forms a potential correlation between Alzheimer's disease and ABCA1 (Wahrle et al. 2004).

13.3.2 ABC B Family

One of the best-studied transporters of the ABC B family in CNS is ABCB1 (P-glycoprotein, P-gp, and ABCB1/MDR1). Very few studies have been conducted on other ABC B members in the brain. mRNA for phosphatidylcholine transporters, ABCB4 (Pglycoprotein3, PGY3) and mitochondrial transporters, ABCB7, ABCB8, (MABC), ABCB10 (mitochondrial ABC transporter 2, MTABCT2 and ABCB6 (mitochondrial ABC transporters3, MTABC3) have been found in capillary endothelial cells of pigs, rats, cows, humans and mice. Additionally, ABCB4 as well as ABCB11 (BSEP, bile export pump) mRNA has been identified in the choroid plexus in humans and rats; the protein level of ABCB2–11 has not been observed in the CNS.

13.3.2.1 ABCB1 (P-Gp, MDRI, P-Glycoprotein)

13.3.2.1.1 ABCB1 Speech, Localization, and Function

Juliano and Ling in 1976 explained the phenomenon of drug resistance in tumors by discovering ABCB1 drug resistance cell line. In the normal barrier and also in excretory tissues like the liver and intestine, ABCB1 was observed to be physiologically expressed. In 1989, the ABCB1 protein was found to be present in the capillary endothelial cells of the human brain (Thiebaut et al. 1989; Cordon-Cardo et al. 1989). The mRNA, protein, as well as function of ABCB1 were recognized a few years later in cow, pig, rat, mouse, dogfish, and killifish capillaries of the brain, as well as the monkey, dog, and cat endothelial cells (Miller et al. 2002; Pekcec et al. 2011). It has become apparent over the last 15 years that ABCB1 plays a significant role in the operation of the blood-brain barrier. Four factors make ABCB1 a crucial

obstacle to the entry into the brain of a huge quantity of xenobiotics which include CNS drugs as well as toxins, expression, localization, potency, and multi-specificity (Begley 2004). Firstly, in brain capillary membranes, ABCB1 is strongly expressed. Studies have also reported considerably higher ABCB1 protein levels in plasma membranes sequestered from the capillaries of the brain of mice or rat in comparison to any other tissue tested for plasma membranes (Miller et al. 2008). Secondly, the localization of endothelial capillary cells is incessant with ABCB1 acting as a drug outflow pump as well as a blockade in the CNS for entry. There is a set of evidence relating to the acceptance of ABCB1 plasma membrane lumen (Roberts et al. 2008; Hartz et al. 2010a, b). On the other hand, it is still the role and degree of abluminal and intracellular ABCB1. Thirdly, the substances that prevented from crossing the endothelium capillary of the brain by ATP-driven efflux transport. In accordance with this, the findings of the in vivo laboratory indicated that loperamide, an ABCB1 substrate as well as an opioid that does not have central analgesic effects and also cannot traverse the blood-brain barrier, exert considerable antinociception when cyclosporine was first administered with ABCB1 inhibitor in mice. Fourthly, ABCB1 has a surprisingly wide range of substrate compounds with a large structure variety that ranges from tiny molecules, for example, loperamide (MW 285–477 Da) and verapamil and morphine for amyloid (MW4200 Da) (Kuhnke et al. 2007; Hartz et al. 2010a, b). Additionally, different groups of xenobiotics, for example, HIV protease inhibitors, antibiotics, opioids, chemotherapy, etc., can be controlled by ABCB1 (Bauer et al. 2005). CNS is shielded from potential destructive toxins by a perfect "gatekeeper," ABCB1 in the brain capillary endothelium. On the other hand, ABCB1 functions as a drug barrier. Two studies in the Netherlands from the Schinkel Laboratory best exemplify this "double-edged" sword feature of ABCB1. CNS-protective role of ABCB1 was first identified in ABCB1-deficient MDR-1 knockout mice with ivermectin, an anthelmintic drug as a standard parasite control measure. Although this is usually harmless technique and remained unaffected by wild type mice, all MDR-1 knockout mice died. Subsequent experiments showed that the absence of blood-brain barrier ABCB1 results in higher brain absorption for neurotoxic ivermectin, which usually cannot cross the endothelial brain capillary into the CNS. In vivo follow-up dosing experiment supported these results and showed an increase 5–50-fold inside the plasma to the brain; the proportion of drugs which are substrates, in addition, do not pass the brain in MDR1-knockout mice (Schinkel et al. 1996). The physiological significance of ABCB1 in shielding the brain and the difficulty of delivering therapeutic drugs into the CNS is illustrated in these examples. Whereas the most information presented on the ABCB1 in the CNS is from the endothelial cells of brain capillary, the mRNA, protein, and functional levels of ABCB1 are also expressed in other human brain cells (Daood et al. 2008) and monkey, sheep (Bougoin et al. 2008), rat (Niehof and Borlak 2009), and mouse cells (Wu et al. 2009). The location of the transporter was in the cytoplasmic vesicles as well as the plasma membrane as revealed by electron microscopy in pericytes from human brain sections (Bendayan et al. 2006). There

were no recorded functional studies of ABCB1 in pericytes. ABCB1 is found inside the astrocytes in the caveolae, nuclear envelope plasma membrane, astrocytic foot, and coated vesicles. It has also been suggested to play a role in the nucleotide's efflux (Ronaldson et al. 2004; Wu et al. 2009). MLS-9 cell line of rat microglia also contains ABCB1 located along the nuclear envelope as well as the plasma membrane (Ballerini et al. 2005). Functional tests of ABCB1 in this cell line revealed efflux of saquinavir, indinavir, and HIV protease from cell (Scott Kim et al. 2009). The expression of ABCB1 has been observed in the plasma membrane of progenitor cells as well as neural stem cells of the human fetus (Daood et al. 2008). More tests of ABCB1 in the choroid plexus have been performed. ABCB1 transport of 99mTc-sestamibi from human, rat, and mouse intact choroid plexus tissue indicates apical localization and transport of substrate to cerebrospinal fluid. In isolated choroid plexus epithelial cells of sheep, the expression of ABCB1 protein was expressed (Bougoin et al. 2008). In comparison, the experiments in the choroid plexus epithelial cell of pig as well as rat experiments showed the localization of ABCB1 in the sub-apical vesicles; in these studies, transport via ABCB1 was not spotted (Daood et al. 2008; Niehof and Borlak 2009).

13.3.2.1.2 Control on ABCB1

ABCB1 regulation has been observed mainly in endothelial cells of brain capillary as well as to a smaller extent in the choroid plexus in the CNS and astrocytes. During the last 5 years, many pathways of signaling have been mapped that control ABCB1 in the brain. Here, we briefly summarize the findings of inflammatory mediators, oxidative stress, and nuclear receptors on ABCB1 control.

13.3.2.1.3 Control of ABCB1 in Inflammation

The first regulatory study conducted on ABCB1 regarding endothelial capillary cells of the brain dealt with the cause of transporter inflammation. In a research, the exposure of low levels of ET-1, TNF-alpha, or LPS to isolated brain capillaries of rats (Hartz et al. 2006; Bauer et al. 2007) resulted in a reversible and fast decrease in transport activity of ABCB1 but the expression of the protein showed no improvement (Hartz et al. 2004). Binding of ligand to the TLR4, TNF-R1, ETB, TNF-R1, and TLR4 receptors and activation of PKC and NOS were involved in the signaling process, resulting in rapid membrane recovery of ABCB1 and a decrease in ABCB1-mediated transport (Hartz et al. 2006). For a longer time frame (hours), exposure of ET-1 or TNF-α to the brain capillaries for a longer period of time has increased the expression as well as transport activity of ABCB1 proteins (Bauer et al. 2007). Such a continuing consequence was facilitated by a similar signaling mechanism like the abovementioned short-term effect. The other studies based on in vitro cultures of capillary endothelial cells in the pig or human brain, higher levels of mRNA and ABCB1 protein were subsequently found by the treatment with TNF (Poller et al. 2010), but the function of ABCB1 showed no effect. On the other hand, IL-1 and IL-6 have decreased ABCB1 mRNA and protein, respectively (Poller et al. 2010). The conflicting results were also produced through in vivo studies. Seelbach et al.

(2007) in a study conducted on a rat model of peripheral inflammation and higher expression protein ABCB1 inside the brain capillaries found a decreased brain uptake of morphine as well as ABCB1 substrate, and, in addition, decreased morphine antinociception was observed, suggesting that the overexpression of ABCB1 excluded morphine from the brain. Goralski et al. (2003) found intraventricular LPS injection-facilitated brain inflammation decreased overall brain ABCB1 mRNA expression in rats, and ABCB1 substrate digoxin mRNA increased brain absorption.

In in vitro cultures of rat astrocytes, ABCB1 protein expression was increased by TNF-α and IL-1β, while gp 120 and IL-6, an envelope glycoprotein of HI virus has resulted in decrease in ABCB1 expression. The transport efficacy was also decreased by IL-6, and gp120 (Ronaldson and Bendayan 2006). Another study showed upregulation of ABCB1 protein by CT1, IFN- γ, CNTF, IL-6, and LIF while working on mouse astrocyte cell cultures and CNT-knockout mice, based on CNTF effect (Monville et al. 2002). The other variation seen in these findings can be elucidated via the concept that the inflammation is a multifaceted phenomenon, and the inflammation response is dependent on model, context, time, and also dose. Even so, based on these studies, it is obvious that the moderators of inflammation have an intense reaction to ABCB1 in the brain. The exact mechanism is accountable for transport switches to be illuminated.

13.3.2.1.4 Regulation of ABCB1 by Oxidative Stress

Oxidative stress like ROS (reactive oxygen species), and CNS inflammation are linked to various CNS disease, for example, multiple sclerosis, brain tumors stroke, epilepsy, brain trauma, multiple, Alzheimer's as well as Parkinson's disease. ABCB1 mRNA along the vincristine transport as well as protein expression is increased during the in vitro exposure of endothelial cells of rat brain capillary with hydrogen peroxide for about 24–48 h (Felix and Barrand 2002). Hydrogen mediates signaling via NF-kB, PKC, c-jun, Akt, and ERK 1/2 which switched on ABCB1 transcription (Nwaozuzu et al. 2003). In vitro exhaustion of GSH in rat brain endothelial cells is associated with increased ABCB1 mRNA in addition to the expression of proteins; however, N-acetylcysteine, a ROS scavenger, eliminated this effect (Hong et al. 2006). These studies suggest an adequate sense of balance among cellular ROS and GSH, and the exhaustion of GSH has increased ROS, resulting in an increased ABCB1. In addition, these results may be significant in stroke research, as most of these signals have been seen in animal stroke models as well. On one side of CNS disease, it is obvious that the toxins and pollutants can also lead to the generation and production of ROS. In this concern, excess expression of isolated rat brain capillaries exposed to diesel particles which act as one of the environmental pollutants leads to the expression of ABCB1 protein and transport activity with the help of NADPH oxidase, a membrane linked enzyme complex that produces superoxide (Hartz et al. 2008). The increased oxidative leads to the TNF-α also TNF-R1 and c-jun signaling. These data include the involvement of environmental toxins in CNS disease.

13.3.2.1.5 Regulation of ABCB1 by Nuclear Receptors

The nuclear receptors function as transcription factors by binding to their ligands and cause their target genes to be transcribed. Some of the nuclear receptors, like aryl hydrocarbon receptor (AhR), PXR (pregnane X receptor), or CAR (constitutive androstane receptor), are activated by drugs as well as regulate ABC transporter transcription which comprises ABCC1, ABCC2, and ABCC3 apart from metabolizing enzymes (Geick et al. 2001). These nuclear receptors have clinical importance as well, because they can affect the pharmacokinetics of many drugs. We detected mRNA of PXR and protein expression in brain capillaries of pigs, rats, and mice; it was found that the activated PXR along with hyperforin, PCN, dexamethanose, or hyperforin has improved the expression of ABCB1 protein as well as transport action (Ott et al. 2009). Narang et al. (2008) have demonstrated that the dexamethasone-induced induction of ABCB1 is expected to be involved in the glucocorticoid receptor in endothelial cells of the rat brain capillary. In transgenic mice, the expressed human PXR have shown the upregulation of ABCB1, which has reduced the antinociceptive impact of methadone, a kind of CNS-active opioid, and ABCB1 substrate resulting in PXR activation of ABCB1, in the blood-brain barrier, has potential entailment for the release of CNS drugs (Theodoulou et al. 2006).

In this regard, treatment of HIV by means of a protease inhibitor is considered in which concentration of virus in the periphery is effectively lowered beneath the limits of detection; however, a load of virus in the brain is unchanged as the entry of protease inhibitor in the brain is restricted by ABCB1 and, therefore, changes the CNS as a store for HIV virus. To make matters worse, PXR ligands operate as protease inhibitors and may cause ABCB1 to contract even more, creating a barrier to HIV treatment in the CNS (Perloff et al. 2007). ABC transporters controlled by the nuclear receptors are still there situated within the human blood-brain barrier. Dauchy et al. (2008) revealed the expression of mRNA, of CAR (constitutive androstane receptor), PXR, AhR (aryl hydrocarbon receptor) of brain microvessels extracted from human brain biopsies. This regulatory system in the brain's capillary endothelium gets activated by and regulates ABC entry for transporters and may have significant medical consequences for CNS pharmacotherapy.

13.3.3 ABC C Family

There are 13 members of the ABC C family; out of these 13, 9 are transporters (ABCC1–6 and ABCC10–12); among them, information on ABCC12 in CNS is not available. Also ABCC6 and ABCC10 were detected in the CNS at the mRNA stage only. Specifically, ABCC6 (MRP6) mRNA was contained in capillaries of the bovine brain and endothelial cell cultures of humans, cows, pigs, rats, and mouse (Warren et al. 2009), microglia cell cultures of rats, and whole choroid plexus tissue cultures of humans and rats (Berezowski et al. 2004). In bovine brain capillary endothelial cell cultures, the mRNA of ABCC10 (MRP7) has been identified (Warren et al. 2009); on the other hand, the mRNA of ABCC1 (MRP8) has been

identified as well as protein in the neurons of the human brain sections (Bortfeld et al. 2000).

13.3.3.1 ABCC1

13.3.3.1.1 Function, Expression, and Localization of ABCC1

In 1992, Cole et al. first discovered ABCC1 in human cell H69AR. The presence of ABCC1 in CNS was first of all reported by Regina et al. in 1998. The authors showed in vitro mRNA and protein expression as well as transport function of ABCC1 in microvessel endothelial rat brain cell cultures. Later pig, human, mouse, cow, and rat endothelial cell cultures have shown the mRNA and protein expressions of ABCC1 (Ohtsuki et al. 2007; Roberts et al. 2008; Warren et al. 2009). At the blood-brain barrier level, the localization of ABCC1 is debatable. Although few reports showed ABCC1 expression in the albuminal membrane of capillaries of pieces of mouse brain (Kilic et al. 2008; Soontornmalai et al. 2006), apical localization of ABCC1 is seen in capillary endothelial cell cultures of the bovine brain and capillaries of sections of the human brain in other reports (Zhang et al. 2004; Nies et al. 2004). Roberts et al. (2008) in a recent study involving rat brain capillary immune stained isolates determined the location of ABCC1 which is predominantly in the abluminal membrane; however, a low level of the transporter is present in the luminal membrane as well. It's also questionable if data from functional studies can be used to evaluate the ABCC1 function. Through brain perfusion studies, it has been shown there are no differences in the ABCC1 substrate and 17 β-estradiol-D-17-β-glucuronide uptake in the brain in case of wild type in contrast to ABCC1 knockout mice, demonstrating that ABCC1 is non-operational or is present or absent in the case of luminal membrane (Cisternino et al. 2003).

For experiments involving wild type and ABCC1 knockout mice, intracerebral microinjection of 17-estradiol ID-17—glucuronide drastically reduced efflux in the brain of mice lacking ABCC1. This indicates that the endothelial capillaries contain functioning ABCC1 in the lumen of the membrane. From these observations, localization of ABCC1 in brain capillaries is uncertain and could depend on model, species, and study. Provided LTC4 is transported by ABCC1in both luminal and abluminal, it can possibly be localized considering that the boundary between the blood and the brain is the brain capillary endothelium responsible for communication in both directions, such as in inflammation. ABCC1 expression, as well as function, is well-known in choroid plexus, astrocytes, and microglia (Poller et al. 2010). ABCC1 mRNA and protein were found in astrocytes of rat brain compartments (Mercier et al. 2004), in rat astrocyte culture (Chen et al. 2009), astrocytoma cultures of humans (Spiegl-Kreinecker et al. 2002), and also astrocytes of human brain parts (Zhou et al. 2001). The transport function in astrocytes cultures of the rat was recognized, where the GSH release was induced by ABCC1 from cells in the way of oxidative stress (Hirrlinger et al. 2001, 2002). In other studies involving the cultured astrocytes of ABCC1 knockout mice as well as wild-type mice, ABCC1 is totally responsible and accounts for 60% of GSH export (Minich et al. 2006). The ABCC1 protein and mRNA have been detected in primary

microglia rat cell cultures as well as in MLS-9 microglia rat cell line (Dallas et al. 2003; Hirrlinger et al. 2002); apart from this, ABCC1 localization was also found in plasma membrane (Dallas et al. 2004). Furthermore, in rat, mouse and human choroid plexus tissues, ABCC1 protein and mRNA have been highly expressed (Gazzin et al. 2008; Saito et al. 2001) in Z310 and TR-CSFB (Hosoya et al. 2004; Shi et al. 2008). The rat and mouse choroid plexus studies have shown the localization of ABCC1 in the basolateral compartment (Sugiyama et al. 1999; Soontornmalai et al. 2006). With consistent localization in basolateral compartment, the choroid plexus transport was mediated by ABCC1 directly to the blood from epithelium of choroid plexus (de Lange 2004; Kusuhara and Sugiyama 2004). In addition to that, ABCC1 protein and mRNA were found to be also in bovine pericyte cultures in addition to pericyte isolated from rat brain (Berezowski et al. 2004; Shimizu et al. 2008), in nerve cell from human brain, as well as from the oligodendrocytes of rat cultures (Daood et al. 2008; Hirrlinger et al. 2002). Useful studies in these cells for ABCC1 have not been conducted yet.

13.3.3.1.2 Regulation of ABCC1

Some signaling mechanisms associated with ABCC1 in the CNS have been identified. The most excellent ones are the pathways that address the impact of HIV in the neurovascular unit transporters. In this sense, protein expression in addition to transport activity of ABCB1 and ABCC1 has shown to be increased in bovine capillary endothelial cells and in astrocyte cultures of rat and mouse by HIV proteins tat and gp120 (Hayashi et al. 2006; Ronaldson and Bendayan 2008). Inflammatory component in signaling involves NF-kB, TNF α, JNK, and MAPK. These findings are important considering that HIV virus is reserved in microglia and the CNS; astroglia are one of the main cellular targets of the virus inside the CNS. The other pathways of ABCC1 regulation have been set in the primary mouse astrocyte cell line (Ronaldson et al. 2010). The unconjugated bilirubin has shown to increase ABCC1 and facilitates its trafficking to the plasma membrane from the golgi apparatus (Hayashi et al. 2005). This leads to the protective mechanism where bilirubin is increased in disease states like hepatitis, selfprotecting its own toxicity. The mechanism by which bilirubin increases ABCC1 is uncertain, but a possible explanation is the activation of nuclear receptors.

13.3.3.2 ABCC2 (Associated Protein 2 or Multidrug Resistance, MRP2)

13.3.3.2.1 ABCC2: Localization, Expression, and Function

Detection of ABCC2 in 1996 by Paulusma et al. in rat hepatocytes resulted in a debate about expression of ABCC2 in the blood-brain barrier (Paulusma et al. 1996). In a study, Miller et al. (2000), immunolocalised ABCC2 to the luminal plasma membrane of brain capillaries of killifish, rat and pig (Jetté and Béliveau 1993). From the findings, there was no immunoreactivity reported in brain capillaries among TRcontrolled rats which are devoid of ABCC2 (Jetté and Béliveau 1993).

In comparison, different other groups could not notice ABCC2 protein or mRNA in brain capillary endothelial cultures, in samples of brain capillaries, and in total

brain samples of human, mouse, cow, or rat (Zhang et al. 2000; Sugiyama et al. 2003). From these observations, ABCC2 signal was absent in Western blot results carried out in whole-brain homogenate, brain capillary lysates, and even capillary-depleted brain homogenate in rats (Zhang et al. 2004; Johnson et al. 2006). ABCC2 is, however, an integral protein of the plasma membrane. ABCC2 protein was merely present in enriched plasma membrane from isolated brain capillaries of mouse and rat, and immunoreactive ABCC2 was found in isolated capillaries of the luminal membrane transported by ABCC2 (Bauer et al. 2008). By using ABCC2-null TR-control rats, these results were experimentally verified. According to Soontornmalai et al., the inconsistency about blood brain barrier expression of ABCC2 in different studies is because of species in addition to strain differences (Soontornmalai et al. 2006). Furthermore, ABCC2 mRNA, endothelial brain capillaries, and also protein expression have been monitored in rat and mouse choroid plexus (Choudhuri et al. 2003). ABCC2 localization in the choroid plexus has been confirmed as yet, but functional research on ABCC2 is missing. ABCC2 has not been studied in any other brain cells.

13.3.3.2.2 Regulation of ABCC2

Regarding the regulation of ABCC2, near the blood-brain barrier, only two studies have been conducted. In one study, there has been higher ABCC2 protein expression and transport rate in case of rat brain capillaries following PCN as well as dexamethasone exposure in vitro and in vivo (Bauer et al. 2008). Narang et al. (2008) demonstrated upregulation of ABCC2 mRNA as well as protein via dexamethasone in the next study, with cultured rat brain endothelial capillary cells by a way that is independent from GR activation (Narang et al. 2008). There are no other studies conducted or even published related to the ABCC2 regulation in the CNS.

13.3.3.3 ABCC3 (Multidrug-Associated Protein 3 Resistance, MRP3)

Concerning ABCC3 in the CNS, there is very less literature available. The mRNA expression of ABCC3 has been seen in rat, pig, human, as well as mouse brain capillary endothelial cell cultures, (Warren et al. 2009) in cultured rat astrocytes, microglia, and neurons, of choroid plexus tissues of rat as well as in humans (Niehof and Borlak 2009; Choudhuri et al. 2003). In immunostained brain capillaries of human brain parts and in choroid plexus of mouse, the ABCC3 protein has also been detected (Niehof and Borlak 2009; Soontornmalai et al. 2006). In human brain capillary endothelial cell line, hCME/D33, the transport of methotrexate by ABCC3 was found (Poller et al. 2008). The regulation of ABCC3 in the CNS has not been published yet.

13.3.3.4 ABCC4 (Multidrug-Associated Protein 4 Resistance, MRP4)

ABCC4 is one of the new family members of multidrug resistance-associated protein and is structurally very much similar to the ABCB1 in contrast to other ABC C family transporters (Belinsky et al. 1998). For the very first time, Leggas et al. have found the ABCC4 protein expression of ABCC4 of mouse cerebral vasculature brain parts and confined the transporter at the luminal membrane of the brain capillaries

(Leggas et al. 2004). These types of results were confirmed by studies carried on human, rat, and cow brain capillaries apart from the cell cultures of brain endothelial capillaries (Roberts et al. 2008; Ohtsuki et al. 2007). The localization of ABCC4 was described by Zhang et al. in luminal as well as in abluminal membrane of bovine brain capillary in endothelial cell cultures along with brain capillaries of rat (Zhang et al. 2000, 2004). There are no studies conducted and published on the transport activity of ABCC4 in the brain capillary endothelium or in endothelial cells of capillary. However, ABCC4 has proved to assist efflux transport of nucleoside analogs, organic ions, sulfate, and glutathione glucuronate-conjugated drugs, and prostaglandins (Zhou et al. 2008). Moreover, thiopurines, methotrexate, and topotecan are transported by ABCC4 (Adachi et al. 2002; Chen et al. 2002) proving that ABCC4 can perhaps assist blood-brain function in the blood-brain barrier by protecting the brain from xenobiotics as well as inducing resistance to some therapeutic drugs. On the other hand, the significance of ABCC4 on efflux transport toward the brain-blood barrier is not clear. The mRNA of ABCC4 is expressed in human and as well as in rat choroid plexus (Niehof and Borlak 2009; Choudhuri et al. 2003) but the protein expression of ABCC4 was observed only in the choroid plexus of the rat (Roberts et al. 2008). Studies conducted on rat and mouse choroid plexus have shown that the ABCC4 is localized in the choroid plexus epithelium basolateral membrane (Roberts et al. 2008; Leggas et al. 2004). In line with this, experiments showed the restriction of topotecan penetration by ABCC4 via choroid plexus epithelium into the cerebrospinal fluid in wild as well as knockout mice, suggesting protective role of ABCC4 (Leggas et al. 2004). Lastly, in other brain cells, the expression of ABCC4 has also been seen. The ABCC4 protein was also found in some parts of human brain astrocytes (Nies et al. 2004), and in rat astrocyte cell cultures, the ABCC4 mRNA was found there (Hirrlinger et al. 2002; Ballerini et al. 2002). In addition to this, the ABCC4 mRNA and its protein were found in rat microglia cell cultures (Ballerini et al. 2005; Dallas et al. 2004), but in rat nerve cell cultures, there was only ABCC4 mRNA and no protein (Hirrlinger et al. 2002). There are no studies available relating about the function of ABCC4 together with microglia, astrocytes, and neurons.

13.3.3.5 ABCC5 (or MRP5)

ABCC5 is mostly placed near the blood-brain barrier in the CNS and has been found as expressed at the mRNA degree in cow, pig, rat, mouse, and human brain cultured capillaries or endothelial brain cell capillaries (Wijnholds 1999; Zhang et al. 2000). ABCC5 has been located in the brain capillaries of mouse, where it was observed to be localized in the lumen of plasma membrane (Soontornmalai et al. 2006). The ABCC5 has been demonstrated in human brain capillaries as well as in bovine capillary endothelial cell cultures (Zhang et al. 2004; Nies et al. 2004). In the endothelial cell line hCME/D3 of human brain capillaries, the transport of methotrexate was confirmed via ABCC5 (Poller et al. 2008); extra functional studies on the blood-brain barrier of ABCC5 have not been carried out. In rat astrocyte cultures, ABCC5 mRNA has been extensively found; in addition to that, ABCC5 protein and mRNA were also observed in astrocytes of human brain slices and microglia of

cultured rats (Calatozzolo et al. 2005; Dallas et al. 2004). The mRNA of ABCC5 has been observed in rat nerve cells (Hirrlinger et al. 2002), and ABCC5 protein expression has been detected in the nerve cells of human brain slices (Nies et al. 2004). The mRNA of ABCC5 has been detected in choroid plexus of rat and humans, in addition to cultured rat oligodendrocytes (Niehof and Borlak 2009; Choudhuri et al. 2003). At present, the transport function of ABCC5 has not been identified in CNS cells.

13.3.4 ABCD Family

The family of ABCD transporters has been found in the peroxisomal membrane, where the metabolic breakdown of fatty acids, for the purpose of transport in peroxisomes, takes place (Theodoulou et al. 2006). ABC D is in charge of transporting fatty acyl-CoAs and long-chain fatty acids in this regard (Cartier et al. 1995). As a half transporter, ABCD1 gets dimerized with ABCD2 or even 3 so as to form a complete as well as functional active transport protein transporter, because it is a half-transporter (Liu et al. 1999). Protein and mRNA of ABCD1 have been found in endothelial cells of mouse brain capillary (Berger et al. 1999) as well as astrocytes, oligodendrocytes, and microglia both from the mouse brain and postmortem fractions of human brain (protein (Fouquet et al. 1997). The mRNA of ABCD-4 has been detected in mouse brain endothelial cells (Berger et al. 1999). In pericytes, neurons, and choroid, there is no information available about ABCD transport expression. The mutational defects of ABD1 gene in CNS have been found as the main reason of adrenoleukodystrophy, one of the lethal demyelinating recessive diseases in the CNS which is inherited progressively (Aubourg et al. 1993). Because of ABCD1 mutational defects, only few or no functioning protein transporting long chain fatty acids in peroxisomes for metabolic degradation are available. This enhances fatty acid accumulation in different body parts, especially in the white matter of the brain, where fatty acid breaks down the blood-brain barrier as well as resulting in a progressive destabilization of the axon myelin sheaths, which ultimately leads to severe injury to the brain and finally death (Kumar et al. 2008; Moser et al. 1995).

13.3.5 ABCG Family

ABCG1 (White1), ABCG4 (White 2), ABCG5 (White-3, sterolin-1) and ABCG8 (sterolin-2) are cholesterol and sterol transporters and responsible for the sterol as well as cholesterol homeostasis (Wang et al. 2008). In CNS, ABCG1 has been responsible in bovine brain capillary endothelial cells (mRNA, (Gosselet et al. 2009), astrocytes of the primary cell cultures of the mouse (mRNA, protein (Tarr and Edwards 2008), in neuron cultures of humans (mRNA), in mouse brain parts of nerve cells (Wang et al. 2008), in rat choroid plexus epithelial cell line,TR-CSFG3 (protein, (Fujiyoshi et al. 2007), in the whole choroid plexus of rat (mRNA),

(Fujiyoshi et al. 2007),where it is found to be present in the cell membrane (Fujiyoshi et al. 2007). ABCG4 has also been found in choroid plexus of rat (mRNA) (Wang et al. 2008). ABCG5 and ABCG8 have been found in tissues of rat choroid plexus. Further, other relevant studies have demonstrated that the brain uptake of plant sterols was highly increased in mice deficient of ABCG5 or ABCG8 (Cronican et al. 2010), demonstrating the presence of these two transporters inside the lumen of brain capillary endothelium. There are no other sources of information presently available to support these findings.

13.3.5.1 ABCG2 (Breast Cancer Resistance Protein, BCRP)

13.3.5.1.1 ABCG2 Expression, Localization, and Function

The ABCCG2 transporter has been discovered in human breast cancer cell line MFC-7 in 1998 by Doyle et al. with increased mitoxantrone resistance, but negative for both ABCB1 and ABCC transporters (Doyle et al. 1998). In the CNS, the expression of ABCG2 has been observed in stem cells (protein, (Islam et al. 2005), MLS-9 cell line of microglia (Lee et al. 2007), primary cultures of astrocyte (protein, mRNA) (Lee et al. 2007), in pericyte cell line (protein, (Shimizu et al. 2008) as well as in progenitor human cultures. The ABCG2 has been localized in the plasma membrane of human neural stem cells, where it has shown to promote the transport of prazosin indicating that neural stem cells are shielded by ABCG2 from xenobiotic insults (Islam et al. 2005). However, at the brain barrier, maximum analysis on ABCG2 in the CNS was carried out. By conducting differential screening of subtracted cDNA library in 2002, Eiseblatter et al. discovered ABCG2 at the blood-brain barrier and have found 2.1 kb of mRNA overexpression in porcine brain capillary endothelial cells treated with hydrocortisone (Eisenblätter and Galla 2002). By Northern blot technique, it was found that this type of mRNA was extensively present in endothelial cells isolated from pig brain capillaries. This encodes 656 amino acid proteins from ABC transporter that is largely similar to mouse and human ABCG2. Cooray et al. reported mRNA as well as protein expression of ABCG2 in microvessels from parts of the human brain shortly after this study (Cooray et al. 2002). ABCG2 protein and mRNA have also been found in cultured capillary endothelial cells, brain slices, or brain capillaries from mouse, rat, and cow (Lee et al. 2007; Hartz et al. 2010a, b; Aronica et al. 2005). The two main ABC transporters were identified by Dauchy et al., and they demonstrated that the ABCB1 and ABCG2 were extensively expressed in brain capillaries of isolated human biopsies, with a 20–25 times enhancement of each transporter in capillaries versus mRNA-based cortex as well as protein levels. As per ABCG2 blood-brain barrier tests, its localization was expressed in the luminal membrane of human and rat capillaries or endothelial cell cultures (Eisenblätter et al. 2003; Hori et al. 2004). Further, the functional studies conducted in endothelial capillary cell cultures of pig brain have revealed the efflux transport of daunorubicin (Eisenblätter et al. 2003) as well as from brain perfusion experiments in wild type with ABCB1 deficient mice with ABCB1/ABCG2 inhibitor, GF120918, as well as the ABCB1 inhibitor, PSC833, showed transport of prazosin beside mitoxantrone by ABCB1 (Cisternino

et al. 2004). More notably, several chemotherapy medications, including lapatinib, imatinib, and dasatinib, have also been shown to regulate the blood-brain barrier transporter ABCG2 (Shukla et al. 2009; Zhou et al. 2009; Breedveld et al. 2006) which makes it a severe task in the treatment of brain tumors, especially glioblastoma.

13.3.5.1.2 Regulation of ABCG2

Mainly three areas in the blood brain barrier have been thoroughly analyzed in ABCG2 regulation. First is steroid regulation of ABCG2. The brain capillary endothelial cell culture of rat was subjected to dexamethasone for about 24 h to visualization function and upregulation of ABCG2 at mRNA and protein level (Narang et al. 2008). The effect of dexamethasone on ABCG2 was aided by a mechanism based on GR. Recently, the transport activity of ABCG2 was reduced quickly due to the effect of 17-β-estradiol (E2) on the brain capillaries of rat and mouse (Hartz et al. 2010a, b). The effect of E2 was observed to be fully reversible within no time; it does not involve transcription, translation, or proteasomal degradation, representing a non genetic mechanism of signaling. Second regulation of ABCG2 was observed in inflammation. Exposure of 72-h IL-6, IL-1β and TNF-α pro-inflammatory mediators has reduced mRNA and protein expression of ABCG2, in the endothelial cell line of human brain hCME/D3 (Poller et al. 2010). In primary cultures of porcine brain capillary endothelial cells, Wedel-parlow et al. (Poller et al. 2010) confirmed these findings. In these experiments, exposure to both the IL-6 and TNF-α decreased the ABCG2 mRNA for 6 h, while IL-1β decreased ABCG2 protein. By comparison, ABCG2 protein was induced by ET-1. Last is the regulation of ABCG2 in brain cancer. Bleau et al. (2009) showed that in glioma progenitor cells, signaling via PTEN/PI3K/AKT controls the ABCG2 activity. These results were significant because they can potentially be used against brain tumors or brain tumor cells to target ABCG2 to improve brain cancer care.

13.4 Function of ABC Transporters in Alzheimer's Disease

Alzheimer's disease (AD) affects more than 25 million people worldwide, and this figure is estimated to increase to fourfold over 100 million patients by 2050. This rise would increase the cost of global health sector to unimaginable proportions. AD is a debilitating illness, aside from the cost factor. Mentally and physically, AD patients decline and turn performance of human beings to helpless dependents, thus vanishing out existence. There are limited FDA-approved drugs available in the market. Only patients with mild to intermediate AD showed response to these medications but they cause serious side effects. In addition to this, a large number of patients respond to therapy inadequately or not at all. Consequently, new treatments that are directed to the underlying problem causing AD symptoms reverse are today's need.

However, AD is still a mystery, amid decades of scientific efforts; millions of patients with safe and successful treatments remain unavailable. The hallmark

signatures of AD are two proteins, amyloid-β (Aβ) and tau. Aβ's physiological role is still uncertain, but Aβ brain levels are poor in healthy people, while Aβ proportion can be accelerated as many as 100 times in the brain of AD patients, where it becomes cluster of plaques. The proteins associated with microtubules and that interact with tubulin are the tau proteins; they mediate their incorporation into microtubules, thus modulating axonal microtubule stability and flexibility. However, tau phosphorylation leads to cause a disturbance in the organization and structure of the microtubule, and AD hyperphosphorylation of tau protein leads to microtubular collapse and ultimately results in neurofibrillary tangles within the neurons. The hallmark of AD pathology is both Aβ plaques and neurofibrillary tau tangles and is suspected to cause dementia and neurodegeneration. With an emphasis on ATP-binding cassette (ABC) transporters near the blood-brain barrier and in CNS cells, a new AD research area has developed over the last 10 years. ABC carriers use ATP to transfer their substrates through organelles, cells, and tissue membranes. Peptides, lipids, sterols, xenobiotics, and cholesterol, as well as certain toxins and vast group of therapeutic drugs, are the substrates of ABC transporters involved with AD. ABC transporters are considered as an integral element of many physiological as well as biochemical pathways, thus playing a significant role in preserving the homeostasis of the body by extruding metabolites and reducing xenobiotic absorption. Recently, researchers have found that ABC transporters have also played a critical role in diseases where ABC transporter processes and pathways are altered. This role is emerging for some ABC transporters, such as ABCA1, ABCA2, P-gp, MRP1, and BCRP, in AD and other CNS disorders associated with high brain levels of Aβ (Fig. 13.2).

13.4.1 ABCB1

ABCB1 is extensively expressed in excretory as well as barrier tissues, also known as P-gp, which provides good protection against harmful nonpolar therapeutic drugs in addition to xenobiotics. It was discovered in 1989 on human BBB vascular endothelial surfaces (Cordon-Cardo et al. 1989). Accordingly, ABCB1 is also expressed in choroid plexus, neuron, pericytes, and astrocytes (Bernstein et al. 2014). The BBB's ABCB1 facilitates AD (Pahnke et al. 2014) occurrence as well as onset (Pahnke et al. 2014). Different findings have revealed that expression of ABCB1 via BBB has influenced the encephalon transport of endo-xenobiotics (Potschka et al. 2002). Aβ was first reported to interact with ABCB1 by the use of ABCB1-overexpressing HEK293 cells in 2001; this provides solid proof that ABCB1 is an Aβ transporter (Lam et al. 2001). In addition, a clinical discovery showed that the activity of ABCB1, which can be tested in vivo using (R)-[11C] positron emission tomography (PET) and verapamil, is lower in Alzheimer's disease patients as compared to age-related healthy controls (Van Assema et al. 2012). Similarly, ABCB1 insufficiency near the BBB has led to Aβ deposition in P-gp-deficient null mouse in vivo. Additionally, the levels of brain Aβ accumulation were increased in P-gp-deficient null mice relative to P-gp wild-type mice, showing a

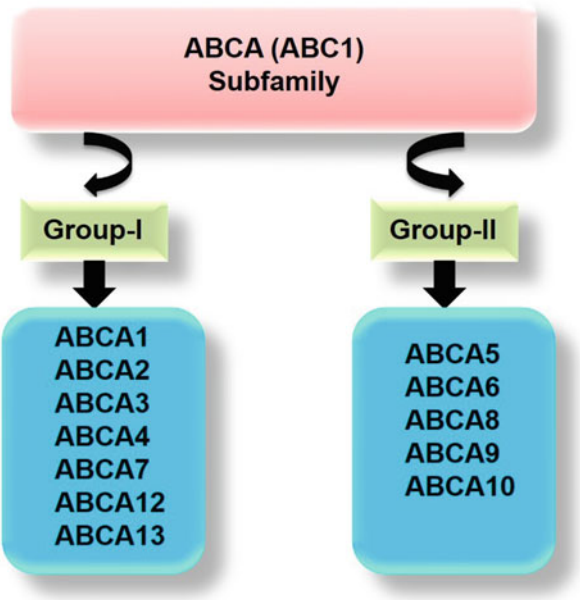


Fig. 13.2 Classification of ABCA subfamily

direct correlation between in vivo Pgp as well as Aβ metabolism (Cirrito et al. 2005). In addition, a substantial decrease in Aβ intensities was observed in APP/PS+/− P-gp wt mice relative to APP/PS+/− P-gp mice which indicates that upregulation P-gp could be a legitimate method to reducing brain Aβ expression (Bruckmann et al. 2017). Deposition of Aβ in the vessel walls was observed in 243 non-demented human brain tissues of blood vessels with very less protein expression of ABCB1 by immunohistochemistry (IHC) techniques in medical temporal lobe, whereas those with higher ABCB1 protein expression displayed lower Aβ deposition, signifying that P-gp might impact the removal of Aβ from the brain (Vogelgesang et al. 2002). Conversely, βABCB1 protein expression as well as ABCB1 action was significantly decreased in endothelial cells of porcine brain treated with Aβ42 for 48 h (Shubbar and Penny 2018). Furthermore, studies have shown that levels of ABCB1 protein decrease during normal ageing at BBB, which is positively associated with Aβ accumulation in AD (Silverberg et al. 2010). Pro-inflammatory cytokines have been found in Aβ-induced AD models, including TNF-alpha, IL-1β, and IFN-γ, and these cytokines will downregulate the levels of mRNA of ABCB1 as well as protein, intruding the unconstructive feedback loop between Aβ and ABCB1 (Alasmari et al. 2018). It has been shown that oxidative stress (OS) in endothelial primary cultured rat cells has accelerated ABCB1 expression as well as activity near the BBB endothelium (Sita et al. 2017). However, there is conflicting information regarding the involvement of ABCB1 to the clearance of Aβ. Likewise, pretreatment of rats with inhibitors of ABCB1 (quinidine and/or verapamil) showed no improvement in the amount of Aβ crossing the BBB in rats (Ito et al. 2006). Collectively, in

the above studies and animal models, the paradoxical findings can be described by using different cell lines, presenting that certain physiological changes can impact Aβ buildup. To treat AD, investigators have discovered a novel therapeutic treatment or medication targeting ABCB1. In vivo studies have revealed that treatment with ibuprofen can reinstate reduced mRNA as well as protein expression of ABCB1 in APP/PS1 mice (Zhang et al. 2018). In another study, it was found that a substrate of P-gp is Huperzine A (HupA) which is an effective inhibitor of acetylcholinesterase (AChE), isolated from *Huperzia serrata*. HupA has been used to target central nicotinic and muscarinic receptors in the treatment of AD and pose neuroprotective properties by inducing strong anti-inflammatory effects (Damar et al. 2016). The brain versus plasma concentration of Huperzine A was considerably improved in Abcb1-deficient mice. Furthermore, the findings indicated that P-gp would mediate the distribution of Huperzine A in brain distribution (Li et al. 2017). Similarly, 1,1-(1,1′-biphenyl]-4–4-diyl) bis(3-(piperidin-1-yl) propan-1-1-one) dihydrochloride (DL0410), a new artificial dual AChE/butylcholinesterase (BuChe) inhibitor for AD cure, presented multidrug properties for AD treatment, for example, refining cognitive deficits, improving synapse loss, inhibiting the activity of cholinesterase, as well as reversing the plaque load produced by Aβ (Zhou et al. 2016; Yang et al. 2015; Lian et al. 2017). P-gp regulated the transport of DL0410 in Caco-2 and MDCK-MDR1 cells, indicating that additional effectiveness along with safety in drug versus drug interactions in AD treatment should be considered (Dodacki et al. 2017).

13.4.2 ABCG2

ABCG2 also called breast cancer (BCRP) protein is found in endothelial cells of BBB and has a defensive role in preventing xenobiotic absorption (Mao 2005). Mounting evidence has shown that in brain endothelial cells, ABCG2 mediates Aβ transport. In vitro studies have shown that the HEK293 cells steadily transfected with human ABCG2 can mediate cellular inflow of Aβ40. In addition, the study also found that GF12918 (a dual inhibitor of ABCB1 and ABCG2) can be blocked by Aβ uptake in ABCB1-deficient mice by means of an in situ brain perfusion procedure, indicating that ABCG2 is also expressed in BBB as well as involved in transport of Aβ40 (Do et al. 2012). In addition, Aβ deposition increased significantly in ABCG2-deficient mice relative after intravenous Aβ injection in wild-type mice, indicating that ABCG2 can inhibit Aβ from entering the brain (Shen et al. 2010). Gene and protein levels of ABCG2 have been increased in the cerebral vessels of patients with AD and mouse models of AD, in comparison to ABCB1 levels (Xiong et al. 2009). The authors proposed that ABCG2 increase could serve as a vascular pathology biomarker for cerebral amyloid angiopathy (CAA). Additionally, after genome-wide analysis it was shown that absence or presence of ABCG2 C/C genotype along with apoE (APOE) is the potent factor for AD pathogenesis (Fehér et al. 2013). The brain endothelium, mediated by ABCG2 (Zhou et al. 2017), can be penetrate certain compounds that prevent Aβ accumulation in AD models.

13.4.3 ABCG4

ABCG4 are half transporter which (Cserepes et al. 2004) often dimerizes with ABCG1 to become stable. ABCG4 is excessively found in endothelial primary cells, glial cells, as well as brain neurons in order to facilitate cholesterol efflux to produce lipoprotein comprising of apoE (Tarr and Edwards 2008; Dodacki et al. 2017). Several studies have found, to the best of our knowledge, that ABCG4 can influence the development and clearance of Aβ. In comparison with ABCG4-KM, a class of walker A lysine mutant of ABCG4, Sano et al. (2016) observed that the elevated APP levels tend to increase in HEK/APPsw cells rapidly transfected with ABCG4. In addition, the author showed that the decreased secretion of Aβ was caused by altered distribution of γ-secretase. They also showed that Aβ secretion was raised during the inhibition of ABCG1 and ABCG4 by SH-SY5Y cells. These researchers argued that ABCG4 could suppress the development of Aβ and the formation of Aβ plaque (Sano et al. 2016). The impact of ABCG4 on the clearance of Aβ from BBB has been documented in studies. In HEK293 cells, stably transfected with mouse ABCG4, mediated the cellular inflow of Aβ. In addition, probucol fully inhibits Aβ efflux from HEK293-ABCG4 cells (Do et al. 2012). Similarly, the authors demonstrated that ABCG4 acts at the luminal surface of endothelial capillary cells in mouse and can transport both Aβ and cholesterol by using an ABCG4-deficient mouse model. The author associated impaired sterol metabolism with competitive inhibition of Aβ efflux as well as progression of AD (Dodacki et al. 2017).

In addition, the study showed that in microglial cells, levels of ABCG4 are considerably increased and could lead to Aβ degradation by phagocytosis (Uehara et al. 2008). There is a need for further studies to investigate the role of ABCG4 in AD pathology which may increase clearance speed of Aβ for AD pathogenesis.

13.4.4 ABCA1

ABCA1, known as the regulatory protein of cholesterol efflux (CERP), is commonly distributed in brain tissues and can induce cholesterol and phospholipid efflux to ApoE. A significant risk factor in AD pathogenesis is cholesterol metabolism impairment in the brain since cholesterol levels are known to increase Aβ development by disturbing BACE1 (Fernández-Pérez et al. 2018). As ABCA1 levels are expressed in the endothelial cells along with neurons of the brain, they do not specifically transport Aβ (Akanuma et al. 2008). ABCA1 can affect the development and degradation of Aβ rather than the efflux in the BBB. The study presented that high level of ABCA1 gene as well as protein induced by LXR ligands might upregulate the concentration of secreted Aβ and might be reversed using the RNAi method by blocking ABCA1 expression (Fukumoto et al. 2002). In addition, homeostasis of cholesterol in BBB models is controlled in vitro by ABCA1 and ABCG1. Bexarotene (an RXR agonist) stimulates the expression of ABCA1, facilitates the exchange of cholesterol amid the blood as well as the brain, and

reduces the inflow of Aβ through the BBB (Kuntz et al. 2015). Furthermore, current study has observed that increase of glucose decreases the expression of ABCA1 and in addition increases the amount of intracellular cholesterol, which controls the localization of LXR alpha/ABCA1 in the lipid raft as well as trigger BACE1 in SK-N-MC cells (Lee et al. 2016). These findings indicate that ABCA1 facilitates lipid and cholesterol rafts in BACE1 APP processing. ABCA1 controls the levels of ApoE as well as lipidation of ApoE, whereas ApoE is known to be a chaperone for Aβ, influencing both its clearance and its aggregation (Holtzman et al. 2012). The Aβ level was discovered to be significantly greater in 12-month PDAPP Abca1−/− mice than in PDAPP Abca1−/− mice without interfering the processing of APP and carbonate-insoluble ApoE co-localized along with Aβ plaques, suggesting that defectively lapidated ApoE co-deposits with insoluble Aβ (Wahrle et al. 2005). The author also found overexpression of ABCA1 in the mouse brain escalates lipidation of ApoE and reduces deposition of Aβ (Wahrle et al. 2008). Similarly, microRNA-33 over expression-induced ABCA1 reduction raises cellular cholesterol as well asthioflavin a type of S- positive plaques, leading to amyloidogenesis (Wijesekara et al. 2016). In the hippocampal area of patients with AD, however, mRNA expression of ABCA1optimistically related with the severity of dementia (Akram et al. 2010). Hence, it can be used as a therapeutic target to aid and assist apoE/Aβ interactions inside the brain by influencing ABCA1 expression and its activity. The current research discovered CS-6253, which could activate directly ABCA1 (ABCA1 agonist), in vitro increase apoE lipidation, and reverse the accumulation of apoE4-driven Aβ and tau hyperphosphorylation. The cause of late-onset AD may be certain environmental and genetic variables. In H4-AβPPs cells, dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane (DDT) affects the role of ABCA1 which then increases the amount of Aβ (Li et al. 2015). In the general population, ABCA1 N1800H, a functional mutation observed in 0.2% of individuals, was linked with an increased possibility of AD (Nordestgaard et al. 2015). In addition, in three genetic models, ABCA1 rs2422493 (C-477-T) polymorphism is statistically significantly related with an increased threat of AD (Chen et al. 2016). The ABCA1rs2230806 polymorphism reacted well to the treatment of donepezil (DNP) in Han Chinese patients with AD, a drug used to enhance cognition of patients with AD (Lu et al. 2018). Similarly, in AD patients in northern China, the ABCA1 R219 K allele caused a decrease in ABCA1 (Ya and Lu 2017). The small molecular inducer P2X7 was observed to increase ABCA1 as well as ApoE lacking direct activation of the LXR pathway on the basis of the above findings (Fan et al. 2018).

13.4.5 ABCA7

Another CERP, ABCA7, shares a 54 percent sequence similarity with ABCA1 also expressed in endothelial cells of the microglia, neurons, and brain (Kim et al. 2006; Gosselet et al. 2009). ABCA7 facilitates transition of phospholipids as well as cholesterol to lipid-poor apolipoprotein acceptor through cell membranes (Chan et al. 2008). Several groups have shown that ABCA7 can control homeostasis of

Aβ and pathology of Aβ. Research has revealed that ABCA7 acts in the processing of APP, resulting in increased secretion of Aβ that can possibly be related to the action of endocytosis in microglia (Satoh et al. 2015). ABCA7 could also substantially inhibit Aβ secretion in stably expressing APP Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cells without influencing the activities of alpha- and β-secretases (Chan et al. 2008). ABCA7 deficiency in APP/PS1 mice raises Aβ levels and, in addition, intensifies the burden of amyloid plaque (Sakae et al. 2016). In transgenic mice, ABCA7 deficiency can exacerbate the burden of amyloid in the brain, consistent with these findings (Kim et al. 2013). In microglia, ABCA7 is also active in Aβ clearance. The phagocytic Aβ clearance in microglia in Abca7−/− mice was observed to be significantly decreased in comparison to that in wild-type mice (Fu et al. 2016). In addition, the absence of ABCA7 endothelial cells of mouse induces a decrease in basolateral-to-apical transport of Aβ peptides (Lamartinière et al. 2018). The author has shown that, not directly but in the presence of ApoI-J, ABCA7 affects Aβ transport. Records from multiple genome-wide association studies (GWAS) have revealed that ABCA7 is a risk factor for late-onset AD, the only ABC transporter reported by GWAS (May et al. 2018; Efthymiou and Goate 2017). GWAS has identified several gene variants, for example, ApoE, apolipoprotein J (ApoJ, clusterin), and phosphatidylinositol-binding clathrin assembly protein (PICALM) (Lambert et al. 2009; Harold et al. 2009), which are thought to be known as risk factors for AD. Aβ clearance can be affected by both ApoE and ApoJ. Bell et al. showed that Aβ clearance in the BBB increased when ApoE was bound by LRP1-mediated transport to Aβ, while ApoJ was bound by LRP2-mediated transport to Aβ (Zlokovic et al. 1996; Bell et al. 2007). The ABCA7 SNP rs3764650 sequence was involved in the incidence of AD and is related with a moderate decrease in the expression of ABCA7 (Zhao et al. 2016; Vasquez et al. 2017). In addition, the ABCA7 SNP (rs3764650) is also correlated with the risk of AD in the Chinese population, although its risk may be increased by age and ApoE4 status (Liu et al. 2014). In African Americans, ABCA7 rs3764647 and ABCA7 rs115550680 were associated with risk of AD (Reitz et al. 2013; Logue et al. 2011). In the Spanish population, ABCA7 rs4147929 is correlated with LOAD (Moreno-Grau et al. 2018).

13.4.6 ABCC1

In pericytes, astrocytes, and capillary endothelial cells (Wolf et al. 2012), ABCC1, a strong efflux pump at the BBB, is located on both sides of the brain (Gazzin et al. 2008). The role of ABCC1 in AD has been shown by several studies (Ballerini et al. 2002). In vivo experiments have shown that transgenic mice lacking ABCC1, Aβ40, and Aβ42 levels were elevated in APP/PS1 compared to ABCC1-positive controls (Krohn et al. 2011). Furthermore, scientists discovered that thiethylperazine, an ABCC1 activator, might decrease Aβ load in transgenic APP/PS1 mice (Krohn et al. 2011). These findings indicate that extracts of St. John's wort may be a medicinal medication for AD treatment, which needs more study.

13.5 Potential Alzheimer's Therapeutic Goals

13.5.1 ABCA1 and ABCA2

While ABCA1 and ABCA2 belong to the same subfamily of ABC transporters, their physiological roles and possible involvement in AD pathophysiology are distinct. For proper lipidation of proteins, ABCA1 is essential in the CNS. Reduced levels of ABCA1 protein produce lipid-poor ApoE that tends to escalate the aggregation of Aβ. In AD mouse models, several studies have shown that LXR-mediated upregulation of ABCA1 increases ApoE levels, decreases Aβ brain levels, and has beneficial effects on cognition (Koldamova et al. 2005; Burns et al. 2006; Lefterov et al. 2007; Riddell et al. 2007; Jiang et al. 2008; Donkin et al. 2010). Since there are various compounds available to activate LXR, this strategy may be a possible AD therapeutic strategy. In addition to ABCA1 upregulation, however, activating LXR also raises the level of expression of ABCG1, another ABC superfamily lipid transporter, and ApoE. This is significant as both ABCG1 and ApoE have also been involved in AD (Wollmer et al. 2007). As a result, the useful effects of LXR may be due to the upregulation of fewer types of proteins and may involve other proteins that regulate transport as well as lipid metabolism, for example, Cyp7a1 or the transfer protein of cholesterol ester (Honzumi et al. 2010). Therefore, it is difficult to interpret the findings of the study due the complexity of the LXR regulatory network, and further research is needed to conduct to distinguish the functions of ABCBA1, ABCG1, and ApoE, along with further proteins in AD. Comparative to ABCA1, ABCA2 over expression increases the synthesis of APP, and boosts brain levels of Aβ (Chen et al. 2004; Davis 2010). It means that decrease of ABCA2 can likely decrease brain levels of Aβ and have a beneficial impact on cognition. Till today, there is no research which clarifies the role of ABCA2 as a therapeutic strategy in AD under physiological as well as pathophysiological circumstances.

13.5.2 P-Glycoprotein

P-gp can theoretically be utilized as an AD therapeutic target, given its crucial position in the neurovascular Aβ clearance mechanism. As described above, a novel strategy has been proposed to stimulate PXR, the nuclear receptor to reestablish the blood-brain barrier P-gp, and therefore to minimize Aβ brain load as well as slow cognitive loss (Hartz et al. 2010a, b). Loeb et al. (2004) found that in this respect, patients treated with antibiotics doxycycline and rifampicin having slight-to-moderate AD every day for 3 months in a randomized, triple-blind, and controlled clinical trial substantially slowed cognitive deterioration compared with control group patients. Interestingly, PXR is activated by both doxycycline and rifampicin (Yasuda et al. 2008). Thus, one potential reason for these patients' gradual cognitive deterioration is that rifampicin and doxycycline turn on PXR, which amplified the levels of the blood-brain barrier P-gp, which in turn may have improved the

clearance of Aβ in the brain, dropped the levels of Aβ in the brain, and thus decreased the progressive decline in cognition. However, this theory remains to be confirmed. An alternative technique is to undo the underlying mechanism which decreases the levels of expression and functional activity of the blood-brain barrier P-gp in AD. Awareness of this process could help establish goals for protecting P-gp, maintaining brain clearance of Aβ, preventing slow accumulation of Aβ in the brain, and preventing or delaying AD. In a recent review, the impact of Aβ on blood-brain barrier P-gp as well as expression of LRP in mice was investigated by Brenn et al. Aβ40 and Aβ42 were re-administered for 24 h via an ALZET Mini-Osmotic pump implanted subcutaneously. Researchers found that only Aβ42 significantly reduced the levels of mRNA expression of ABCB1 along with LRP1 in vivo, but no variations were seen at the protein level (Brenn et al. 2011). But rather than prescribing Aβ to the brain, this may have been attributed to peripheral Aβ administration, which would have imitated AD pathology more closely. Further research are not available that discuss the mechanism which reduce P-gp near the blood-brain barrier in AD. Studies undoubtedly show that restoring expression of P-gp as well as function may be effective in improving brain clearance of Aβ and decreasing brain levels of Aβ (Cirrito et al. 2005; Hartz et al. 2010a, b). Though, it is now important to critically evaluate the hypothesis that restore that P-gp at the blood-brain barrier may function as a legitimate therapeutic approach to minimize Aβ brain burden, decreasing cognitive impairment, and delay in advancement of AD.

13.5.3 MRP1

Krohn et al.'s (2011) research is currently the first single proof which indicates a potentially significant function for MRP1 in the in vivo removal of Aβ from mouse brain. More specifically, scientists offer proof of concept of a possible novel therapeutic method for the treatment of AD. There are three crucial points to be discussed. First, it is important to explain the comprehensive miniature mechanism through which thiethylperazine influence MRP1 and probably other mouse (and ultimately human) transporters. Such understanding is important because thiethylperazine tends to activate MRP1 while simultaneously inhibiting P-gp. Furthermore, although the dose of thiethylperazine reduced Aβ brain load, the direct impact on in vivo barrier in blood to brain MRP1 expression and/or functional activity resides indistinct. Second, there is debate about MRP1 place near the blood-brain barrier in humans as well as in rodents. Although few researches indicate that MRP1 is located in the luminal part of the cell membrane, other studies have established expression of MRP1 in the cell membrane (Nies et al. 2004; Zhang et al. 2004; Soontornmalai et al. 2006; Kilic et al. 2008). A current research, though, by Roberts et al. (2008) shows that rat MRP1 is expressed in the brain capillary endothelium on both the luminal and abluminal membranes. Based on this result, the transport of Aβ mediated by MRP1 might occur in one or two directions: (1) by luminal MRP1 into the brain and (2) by luminal MRP1 out of brain into the capillary lumen. Last, there is direct proof that Aβ is transported near the blood-brain barrier

via P-gp; however, for MRP1, such straight proof is unavailable till now. Together, further research is needed to validate existing records to demonstrate clearly MRP1 is highly intricate in Aβ brain clearance as well as a legitimate AD treatment target.

13.5.4 BCRP

Quickly after the first researches were reported on P-gp as well AD, investigators proposed that Aβ is also transported by BRCP and contributes to clearance of Aβ in the brain. The existing information, however, is contradictory, and the role of BRCP in AD is inconsistent as well as inadequate at this point. Although some study shows that Aβ is transported by BCRP (Tai et al. 2009; Xiong et al. 2009), further research indicate that BCRP is not transported via Aβ (Hartz et al. 2010a, b; Krohn et al. 2011). There is also contradictory evidence from AD patient brain samples: BCRP protein levels have been documented to be unchanged at the blood-brain barrier (Wijesuriya et al. 2010); however, other research shows an increase in BCRP expression (Xiong et al. 2009). The conclusion is incompatible to what one can imagine if BRCP led to blood brain clearance of Aβ. One reason for BRCP in AD is that it can serve as a gatekeeper to prevent Aβ from inward the brain at the blood-brain barrier (Xiong et al. 2009). This however varies with the present knowledge of AD etiology, which puts forward that Aβ accumulation in the brain is not due to increased Aβ uptake but rather to decreased brain Aβ clearance. Several problems may lead to these contradictory results. Changes in the expression and/or behavior of transport could, for instance, rest as per AD model, patient or image, and/or inter-individual dissimilarities between patients and research animals.

13.6 Conclusion

ABC transporters are essential factors for the smooth function of the blood-brain barrier. ABC transporters provide protection via efflux and influx mechanism. The transporters efflux the toxic endogenous material out of the cell and thus also provide protection to the CNS and neurons. Going through all the ABC transporters, the involvement of transporters with Alzheimer's disease (AD) is clear. However, researchers are still working for the exact role of ABC to elicit the neurological complications including AD. However, researchers must investigate the immediate effect and signaling in order to discover a therapeutic approach for healthy ABC transporter functions. The effect of genetic heterogeneity, which is a risk factor for the production of AD, needs to be investigated in relation to the loss of neuroprotective function and amyloid beta clearance efficiency of the whole BBB. Aβ oligomers are important in the pathogenesis of Alzheimer's disease. Although it has been shown that impaired clearance increases the amount of Aβ in the brain and increases the likelihood of Aβ oligomer forming, further study on the function of the ABC transporter in clearing Aβ oligomers is needed. Understanding the mechanisms by which ABC transporters regulate and control the development and clearance of

Aβ can show not only the disease-regulating role of transporters but also the pathogenesis of transport disorders in the neurodegenerative phase seen in Alzheimer's disease. The findings in this chapter clearly suggest that the ABC transporter prevents Aβ deposition by regulating the processing or removal of Aβ, thereby protecting the brain, and thus is likely to counteract the progression of Alzheimer's disease. As a result, in the process of developing drugs against these two transporters, further clarification of these transporters, especially ABCB1 and ABCA1, is critical. The two transporters are the most researched, with clear data tying them to the pathology of Alzheimer's disease. Despite some contradictory outcomes from the above text, the findings favor their upregulation as a therapy to improve, heal, or deter disease development.

Henceforth, when regulating ABC transporters, long-term consequences should be considered, such as decreased brain clearance and drug tolerance under transporter induction/activation conditions. Understanding the specific signaling mechanisms that control these transporters could lead to better drug distribution to the brain, which could have a significant effect on the prevention and treatment of brain diseases.

The role of ABC transporters in preserving brain physiology and homeostasis (including regulating Aβ levels) is highlighted in the chapter by their involvement and subcellular and cellular distribution in the brain parenchyma and BBB.

References

Adachi M, Reid G, Schuetz JD (2002) Therapeutic and biological importance of getting nucleotides out of cells: a case for the ABC transporters, MRP4 and 5. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 54 (10):1333–1342. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0169-409X(02)00166-7

Akanuma SI, Ohtsuki S, Doi Y, Tachikawa M, Ito S, Hori S, Asashima T, Hashimoto T, Yamada K, Ueda K, Iwatsubo T (2008) ATP-binding cassette transporter A1 (ABCA1) deficiency does not attenuate the brain-to-blood efflux transport of human amyloid-β peptide (1–40) at the blood–brain barrier. Neurochem Int 52(6):956–961. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neuint.2007.12.002

Akram A, Schmeidler J, Katsel P, Hof PR, Haroutunian V (2010) Increased expression of cholesterol transporter ABCA1 is highly correlated with severity of dementia in AD hippocampus. Brain Res 1318:167–177. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.brainres.2010.01.006

Alasmari F, Ashby CR Jr, Hall FS, Sari Y, Tiwari AK (2018) Modulation of the ATP-binding cassette B1 transporter by neuro-inflammatory cytokines: role in the pathogenesis of Alzheimer's disease. Front Pharmacol 9:658. https://doi.org/10.3389/fphar.2018.00658

Aronica E, Gorter JA, Redeker S, Van Vliet EA, Ramkema M, Scheffer GL, Scheper RJ, Van Der Valk P, Leenstra S, Baayen JC, Spliet WG (2005) Localization of breast cancer resistance protein (BCRP) in microvessel endothelium of human control and epileptic brain. Epilepsia 46 (6):849–857. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1528-1167.2005.66604.x

Aubourg P, Mosser J, Douar AM, Sarde CO, Lopez J, Mandel JL (1993) Adrenoleukodystrophy gene: unexpected homology to a protein involved in peroxisome biogenesis. Biochimie 75 (3–4):293–302. https://doi.org/10.1016/0300-9084(93)90089-B

Bakos É, Evers R, Sinkó E, Váradi A, Borst P, Sarkadi B (2000) Interactions of the human multidrug resistance proteins MRP1 and MRP2 with organic anions. Mol Pharmacol 57 (4):760–768. https://doi.org/10.1124/mol.57.4.760

Ballerini P, Di Iorio P, Ciccarelli R, Nargi E, D'Alimonte I, Traversa U, Rathbone MP, Caciagli F (2002) Glial cells express multiple ATP binding cassette proteins which are involved in ATP release. Neuroreport 13(14):1789–1792. https://doi.org/10.1177/039463200501800208

Ballerini P, Di Iorio P, Ciccarelli R, Caciagli F, Polp A, Beraudi A, Buccella S, D'Alimonte I, D'Auro M, Nargi E, Patricelli P (2005) P2Y1 and cysteinyl leukotriene receptors mediate purine and cysteinyl leukotriene co-release in primary cultures of rat microglia. Int J Immunopathol Pharmacol 18(2):255–268. https://doi.org/10.1177/039463200501800208

Bauer B, Hartz AM, Fricker G, Miller DS (2005) Modulation of p-glycoprotein transport function at the blood-brain barrier. Exp Biol Med 230(2):118–127. https://doi.org/10.1177/153537020523000206

Bauer B, Hartz AM, Miller DS (2007) Tumor necrosis factor α and endothelin-1 increase p-glycoprotein expression and transport activity at the blood-brain barrier. Mol Pharmacol 71 (3):667–675. https://doi.org/10.1124/mol.106.029512

Bauer B, Hartz AM, Lucking JR, Yang X, Pollack GM, Miller DS (2008) Coordinated nuclear receptor regulation of the efflux transporter, Mrp2, and the phase-II metabolizing enzyme, GSTπ, at the blood—brain barrier. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 28(6):1222–1234. https://doi.org/10.1038/jcbfm.2008.16

Begley DJ (2004) ABC transporters and the blood-brain barrier. Curr Pharm Des 10 (12):1295–1312. https://doi.org/10.2174/1381612043384844

Belinsky MG, Bain LJ, Balsara BB, Testa JR, Kruh GD (1998) Characterization of MOAT-C and MOAT-D, new members of the MRP/cMOAT subfamily of transporter proteins. J Natl Cancer Inst 90(22):1735–1741. https://doi.org/10.1093/jnci/90.22.1735

Bell RD, Sagare AP, Friedman AE, Bedi GS, Holtzman DM, Deane R, Zlokovic BV (2007) Transport pathways for clearance of human Alzheimer's amyloid β-peptide and apolipoproteins E and J in the mouse central nervous system. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 27(5):909–918. https://doi.org/10.1038/sj.jcbfm.9600419

Bendayan R, Ronaldson PT, Gingras D, Bendayan M (2006) In situ localization of P-glycoprotein (ABCB1) in human and rat brain. J Histochem Cytochem 54(10):1159–1167. https://doi.org/10.1369/jhc.5A6870.2006

Berezowski V, Landry C, Dehouck MP, Cecchelli R, Fenart L (2004) Contribution of glial cells and pericytes to the mRNA profiles of P-glycoprotein and multidrug resistance-associated proteins in an in vitro model of the blood–brain barrier. Brain Res 1018(1):1–9. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.brainres.2004.05.092

Berger J, Albet S, Bentejac M, Netik A, Holzinger A, Roscher AA, Bugaut M, Forss-Petter S (1999) The four murine peroxisomal ABC-transporter genes differ in constitutive, inducible and developmental expression. Eur J Biochem 265(2):719–727. https://doi.org/10.1046/j.1432-1327.1999.00772.x

Bernstein HG, Hölzl G, Dobrowolny H, Hildebrandt J, Trübner K, Krohn M, Bogerts B, Pahnke J (2014) Vascular and extravascular distribution of the ATP-binding cassette transporters ABCB1 and ABCC1 in aged human brain and pituitary. Mech Ageing Dev 141:12–21. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mad.2014.08.003

Bhongsatiern J, Ohtsuki S, Tachikawa M, Hori S, Terasaki T (2005) Retinal-specific ATP-binding cassette transporter (ABCR/ABCA4) is expressed at the choroid plexus in rat brain. J Neurochem 92(5):1277–1280. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1471-4159.2004.02941.x

Bleau AM, Hambardzumyan D, Ozawa T, Fomchenko EI, Huse JT, Brennan CW, Holland EC (2009) PTEN/PI3K/Akt pathway regulates the side population phenotype and ABCG2 activity in glioma tumor stem-like cells. Cell Stem Cell 4(3):226–235. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.stem.2009.01.007

Bortfeld M, Rius M, König J, Herold-Mende C, Nies AT, Keppler D (2000) Human multidrug resistance protein 8 (MRP8/ABCC11), an apical efflux pump for steroid sulfates, is an axonal protein of the CNS and peripheral nervous system. Neuroscience 137(4):1247–1257. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neuroscience.2005.10.025

Bougoin S, Lomet D, Kerboeuf D, Vern YL, Malpaux B, Thiery JC (2008) Evidence that the choroids plexus in female sheep express P-glycoprotein. Neuroendocrinol Lett 29(4):438

Breedveld P, Beijnen JH, Schellens JH (2006) Use of P-glycoprotein and BCRP inhibitors to improve oral bioavailability and CNS penetration of anticancer drugs. Trends Pharmacol Sci 27 (1):17–24. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tips.2005.11.009

Brenn A, Grube M, Peters M, Fischer A, Jedlitschky G, Kroemer HK, Warzok RW, Vogelgesang S (2011) Beta-amyloid downregulates MDR1-P-glycoprotein (Abcb1) expression at the blood-brain barrier in mice. Int J Alzheimer's Dis 2011. https://doi.org/10.4061/2011/690121

Broccardo C, Nieoullon V, Amin R, Masmejean F, Carta S, Tassi S, Pophillat M, Rubartelli A, Pierres M, Rougon G, Nieoullon A (2006) ABCA2 is a marker of neural progenitors and neuronal subsets in the adult rodent brain. J Neurochem 97(2):345–355. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1471-4159.2006.03714.x

Bruckmann S, Brenn A, Grube M, Niedrig K, Holtfreter S, Bohlen und Halbach OV, Groschup M, Keller M, Vogelgesang S (2017) Lack of P-glycoprotein results in impairment of removal of beta-amyloid and increased intraparenchymal cerebral amyloid angiopathy after active immunization in a transgenic mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. Curr Alzheimer Res 14 (6):656–667. https://doi.org/10.2174/1567205013666161201201227

Burns MP, Vardanian L, Pajoohesh-Ganji A, Wang L, Cooper M, Harris DC, Duff K, Rebeck GW (2006) The effects of ABCA1 on cholesterol efflux and Aβ levels in vitro and in vivo. J Neurochem 98(3):792–800. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1471-4159.2006.03925.x

Calatozzolo C, Gelati M, Ciusani E, Sciacca FL, Pollo B, Cajola L, Marras C, Silvani A, Vitellaro-Zuccarello L, Croci D, Boiardi A (2005) Expression of drug resistance proteins Pgp, MRP1, MRP3, MRP5 AND GST-π in human glioma. J Neurooncol 74(2):113–121. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11060-004-6152-7

Cartier N, Lopez JA, Moullier P, Rocchiccioli F, Rolland MO, Jorge P, Mosser J, Mandel JL, Bougneres PF, Danos O (1995) Retroviral-mediated gene transfer corrects very-long-chain fatty acid metabolism in adrenoleukodystrophy fibroblasts. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 92 (5):1674–1678. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.92.5.1674

Chan SL, Kim WS, Kwok JB, Hill AF, Cappai R, Rye KA, Garner B (2008) ATP-binding cassette transporter A7 regulates processing of amyloid precursor protein in vitro. J Neurochem 106 (2):793–804. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1471-4159.2008.05433.x

Chen ZS, Lee K, Walther S, Raftogianis RB, Kuwano M, Zeng H, Kruh GD (2002) Analysis of methotrexate and folate transport by multidrug resistance protein 4 (ABCC4): MRP4 is a component of the methotrexate efflux system. Cancer Res 62(11):3144–3150

Chen ZJ, Vulevic B, Ile KE, Soulika A, Davis W Jr, Reiner PB, Connop BP, Nathwan P, Trojanowski JQ, Tew KD (2004) Association of ABCA2 expression with determinants of Alzheimer's disease. FASEB J 18(10):1129–1131. https://doi.org/10.1096/fj.03-1490fje

Chen Y, Agarwal S, Shaik NM, Chen C, Yang Z, Elmquist WF (2009) P-glycoprotein and breast cancer resistance protein influence brain distribution of dasatinib. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 330 (3):956–963. https://doi.org/10.1124/jpet.109.154781

Chen Q, Liang B, Wang Z, Cheng X, Huang Y, Liu Y, Huang Z (2016) Influence of four polymorphisms in ABCA1 and PTGS2 genes on risk of Alzheimer's disease: a meta-analysis. Neurol Sci 37(8):1209–1220. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10072-016-2579-9

Choudhuri S, Cherrington NJ, Li N, Klaassen CD (2003) Constitutive expression of various xenobiotic and endobiotic transporter mRNAs in the choroid plexus of rats. Drug Metab Dispos 31(11):1337–1345. https://doi.org/10.1124/dmd.31.11.1337

Cirrito JR, Deane R, Fagan AM, Spinner ML, Parsadanian M, Finn MB, Jiang H, Prior JL, Sagare A, Bales KR, Paul SM, Zlokovic BV, Piwnica-Worms D, Holtzman DM (2005) P-glycoprotein deficiency at the blood-brain barrier increases amyloid-beta deposition in an Alzheimer disease mouse model. J Clin Invest 115(11):3285–3290. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI25247

Cisternino S, Rousselle C, Lorico A, Rappa G, Scherrmann JM (2003) Apparent lack of Mrp1-mediated efflux at the luminal side of mouse blood-brain barrier endothelial cells. Pharm Res 20 (6):904–909. https://doi.org/10.1023/A:1023895404929

Cisternino S, Mercier C, Bourasset F, Roux F, Scherrmann JM (2004) Expression, up-regulation, and transport activity of the multidrug-resistance protein Abcg2 at the mouse blood-brain barrier. Cancer Res 64(9):3296–3301. https://doi.org/10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-03-2033. Published May 2004

Cooray HC, Blackmore CG, Maskell L, Barrand MA (2002) Localisation of breast cancer resistance protein in microvessel endothelium of human brain. Neuroreport 13(16):2059–2063

Cordon-Cardo C, O'Brien JP, Casals D, Rittman-Grauer L, Biedler JL, Melamed MR, Bertino JR (1989) Multidrug-resistance gene (P-glycoprotein) is expressed by endothelial cells at blood-brain barrier sites. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 86(2):695–698. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.86.2.695

Cronican AA, Fitz NF, Pham T, Fogg A, Kifer B, Koldamova R, Lefterov I (2010) Proton pump inhibitor lansoprazole is a nuclear liver X receptor agonist. Biochem Pharmacol 79 (9):1310–1316. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bcp.2009.12.018

Cserepes J, Szentpétery Z, Seres L, Özvegy-Laczka C, Langmann T, Schmitz G, Glavinas H, Klein I, Homolya L, Váradi A, Sarkadi B (2004) Functional expression and characterization of the human ABCG1 and ABCG4 proteins: indications for heterodimerization. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 320(3):860–867. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbrc.2004.06.037

Dallas S, Zhu X, Baruchel S, Schlichter L, Bendayan R (2003) Functional expression of the multidrug resistance protein 1 in microglia. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 307(1):282–290. https://doi.org/10.1124/jpet.103.054304

Dallas S, Ronaldson PT, Bendayan M, Bendayan R (2004) Multidrug resistance protein 1-mediated transport of saquinavir by microglia. Neuroreport 15(7):1183–1186

Damar U, Gersner R, Johnstone JT, Schachter S, Rotenberg A (2016) Huperzine A as a neuroprotective and antiepileptic drug: a review of preclinical research. Expert Rev Neurother. 16(6):671–680. https://doi.org/10.1080/14737175.2016.1175303

Daood MJ, Tsai C, Ahdab-Barmada M, Watchko JF (2008) Abc transporter (P-Gp/Abcb1, Mrp1/Abcc1, Bcrp/Abcg2) expression in the developing human Cns. Neuropediatrics 39(4):211. https://doi.org/10.1055/s-0028-1103272

Dauchy S, Dutheil F, Weaver RJ, Chassoux F, Daumas-Duport C, Couraud PO, Scherrmann JM, De Waziers I, Declèves X (2008) ABC transporters, cytochromes P450 and their main transcription factors: expression at the human blood–brain barrier. J Neurochem 107(6):1518–1528. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1471-4159.2008.05720.x

Davis W (2010) The ATP-binding cassette transporter-2 (ABCA2) increases endogenous amyloid precursor protein expression and Abeta fragment generation. Curr Alzheimer Res 7(7):566–577

de Lange EC (2004) Potential role of ABC transporters as a detoxification system at the blood–CSF barrier. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 56(12):1793–1809. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.addr.2004.07.009

Dean M, Allikmets R (1995) Evolution of ATP-binding cassette transporter genes. Curr Opin Genet Dev 5(6):779–785. https://doi.org/10.1016/0959-437X(95)80011-S

Dean M, Annilo T (2005) Evolution of the ATP-binding cassette (ABC) transporter superfamily in vertebrates. Annu Rev Genomics Hum Genet 6:123–142. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev.genom.6.080604.162122

Do TM, Noel-Hudson MS, Ribes S, Besengez C, Smirnova M, Cisternino S, Buyse M, Calon F, Chimini G, Chacun H, Scherrmann JM (2012) ABCG2-and ABCG4-mediated efflux of amyloid-β peptide 1-40 at the mouse blood-brain barrier. J Alzheimer's Dis 30(1):155–166. https://doi.org/10.3233/JAD-2012-112189

Dodacki A, Wortman M, Saubaméa B, Chasseigneaux S, Nicolic S, Prince N, Lochus M, Raveu AL, Declèves X, Scherrmann JM, Patel SB (2017) Expression and function of Abcg4 in the mouse blood-brain barrier: role in restricting the brain entry of amyloid-β peptide. Sci Rep 7 (1):1–4. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-017-13750-0

Donkin JJ, Stukas S, Hirsch-Reinshagen V, Namjoshi D, Wilkinson A, May S, Chan J, Fan J, Collins J, Wellington CL (2010) ATP-binding cassette transporter A1 mediates the beneficial effects of the liver X receptor agonist GW3965 on object recognition memory and amyloid burden in amyloid precursor protein/presenilin 1 mice. J Biol Chem 285(44):34144–34154. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M110.108100

Doyle LA, Yang W, Abruzzo LV, Krogmann T, Gao Y, Rishi AK, Ross DD (1998) A multidrug resistance transporter from human MCF-7 breast cancer cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 95 (26):15665–15670. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.95.26.15665

Efthymiou AG, Goate AM (2017) Late onset Alzheimer's disease genetics implicates microglial pathways in disease risk. Mol Neurodegener 12(1):1–2. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13024-017-0184-x

Eisenblätter T, Galla HJ (2002) A new multidrug resistance protein at the blood–brain barrier. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 293(4):1273–1278. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0006-291X(02)00376-5

Eisenblätter T, Hüwel S, Galla HJ (2003) Characterisation of the brain multidrug resistance protein (BMDP/ABCG2/BCRP) expressed at the blood–brain barrier. Brain Res 971(2):221–231. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0006-8993(03)02401-6

Ek CJ, Wong A, Liddelow SA, Johansson PA, Dziegielewska KM, Saunders NR (2010) Efflux mechanisms at the developing brain barriers: ABC-transporters in the fetal and postnatal rat. Toxicol Lett 197(1):51–59. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.toxlet.2010.04.025

Fan J, Zhao RQ, Parro C, Zhao W, Chou HY, Robert J, Deeb TZ, Raynoschek C, Barichievy S, Engkvist O, Maresca M (2018) Small molecule inducers of ABCA1 and apoE that act through indirect activation of the LXR pathway. J Lipid Res 59(5):830–842. https://doi.org/10.1194/jlr.M081851

Fehér Á, Juhász A, László A, Pákáski M, Kálmán J, Janka Z (2013) Association between the ABCG2 C421A polymorphism and Alzheimer's disease. Neurosci Lett 550:51–54. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neulet.2013.06.044

Felix RA, Barrand MA (2002) P-glycoprotein expression in rat brain endothelial cells: evidence for regulation by transient oxidative stress. J Neurochem 80(1):64–72. https://doi.org/10.1046/j.0022-3042.2001.00660.x

Fernández-Pérez EJ, Sepúlveda FJ, Peters C, Bascuñán D, Riffo-Lepe NO, González-Sanmiguel J, Sánchez SA, Peoples RW, Vicente B, Aguayo LG (2018) Effect of cholesterol on membrane fluidity and association of Aβ oligomers and subsequent neuronal damage: a Double-Edged Sword. Front Aging Neurosci 10:226. https://doi.org/10.3389/fnagi.2018.00226

Fouquet F, Zhou JM, Ralston E, Murray K, Troalen F, Magal E, Robain O, Dubois-Dalcq M, Aubourg P (1997) Expression of the adrenoleukodystrophy protein in the human and mouse central nervous system. Neurobiol Dis 3(4):271–285. https://doi.org/10.1006/nbdi.1997.0127

Fu Y, Hsiao JH, Paxinos G, Halliday GM, Kim WS (2016) ABCA7 mediates phagocytic clearance of amyloid-β in the brain. J Alzheimer's Dis 54(2):569–584. https://doi.org/10.3233/JAD-160456

Fujiyoshi M, Ohtsuki S, Hori S, Tachikawa M, Terasaki T (2007) 24S-hydroxycholesterol induces cholesterol release from choroid plexus epithelial cells in an apical-and apoE isoform-dependent manner concomitantly with the induction of ABCA1 and ABCG1 expression. J Neurochem 100 (4):968–978. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1471-4159.2006.04240.x

Fukumoto H, Deng A, Irizarry MC, Fitzgerald ML, Rebeck GW (2002) Induction of the cholesterol transporter ABCA1 in central nervous system cells by liver X receptor agonists increases secreted Aβ levels. J Biol Chem 277(50):48508–48513. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M209085200

Gazzin S, Strazielle N, Schmitt C, Fevre-Montange M, Ostrow JD, Tiribelli C, Ghersi-Egea JF (2008) Differential expression of the multidrug resistance-related proteins ABCb1 and ABCc1 between blood-brain interfaces. J Comp Neurol 510(5):497–507. https://doi.org/10.1002/cne.21808

Geick A, Eichelbaum M, Burk O (2001) Nuclear receptor response elements mediate induction of intestinal MDR1 by rifampin. J Biol Chem 276(18):14581–14587. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M010173200

Goralski KB, Hartmann G, Piquette-Miller M, Renton KW (2003) Downregulation of mdr1a expression in the brain and liver during CNS inflammation alters the in vivo disposition of digoxin. Br J Pharmacol 139(1):35–48. https://doi.org/10.1038/sj.bjp.0705227

Gosselet F, Candela P, Sevin E, Berezowski V, Cecchelli R, Fenart L (2009) Transcriptional profiles of receptors and transporters involved in brain cholesterol homeostasis at the blood–brain barrier: use of an in vitro model. Brain Res 1249:34–42. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.brainres.2008.10.036

Guizzetti M, Chen J, Oram JF, Tsuji R, Dao K, Möller T, Costa LG (2007) Ethanol induces cholesterol efflux and up-regulates ATP-binding cassette cholesterol transporters in fetal astrocytes. J Biol Chem 282(26):18740–18749. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M702398200

Harold D, Abraham R, Hollingworth P, Sims R, Gerrish A, Hamshere ML, Pahwa JS, Moskvina V, Dowzell K, Williams A, Jones N (2009) Genome-wide association study identifies variants at CLU and PICALM associated with Alzheimer's disease. Nat Genet 41(10):1088–1093. https://doi.org/10.1038/ng.440

Hartz AM, Bauer B, Fricker G, Miller DS (2004) Rapid regulation of P-glycoprotein at the blood-brain barrier by endothelin-1. Mol Pharmacol 66(3):387–394. https://doi.org/10.1124/mol.104.001503

Hartz AM, Bauer B, Fricker G, Miller DS (2006) Rapid modulation of P-glycoprotein-mediated transport at the blood-brain barrier by tumor necrosis factor-α and lipopolysaccharide. Mol Pharmacol 69(2):462–470. https://doi.org/10.1124/mol.105.017954

Hartz AM, Bauer B, Block ML, Hong JS, Miller DS (2008) Diesel exhaust particles induce oxidative stress, proinflammatory signaling, and P-glycoprotein up-regulation at the blood-brain barrier. FASEB J 22(8):2723–2733. https://doi.org/10.1096/fj.08-106997

Hartz AM, Miller DS, Bauer B (2010a) Restoring blood-brain barrier P-glycoprotein reduces brain amyloid-β in a mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. Mol Pharmacol 77(5):715–723. https://doi.org/10.1124/mol.109.061754

Hartz AM, Mahringer A, Miller DS, Bauer B (2010b) 17-β-Estradiol: a powerful modulator of blood–brain barrier BCRP activity. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 30(10):1742–1755. https://doi.org/10.1038/jcbfm.2010.36

Hayashi K, Pu H, Tian J, Andras IE, Lee YW, Hennig B, Toborek M (2005) HIV-Tat protein induces P-glycoprotein expression in brain microvascular endothelial cells. J Neurochem 93(5):1231–1241. https://doi.org/10.1038/sj.jcbfm.9600254

Hayashi K, Pu H, Andras IE, Eum SY, Yamauchi A, Hennig B, Toborek M (2006) HIV-TAT protein upregulates expression of multidrug resistance protein 1 in the blood–brain barrier. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 26(8):1052–1065

Hirrlinger J, König J, Keppler D, Lindenau J, Schulz JB, Dringen R (2001) The multidrug resistance protein MRP1 mediates the release of glutathione disulfide from rat astrocytes during oxidative stress. J Neurochem 76(2):627–636. https://doi.org/10.1046/j.1471-4159.2001.00101.x

Hirrlinger J, König J, Dringen R (2002) Expression of mRNAs of multidrug resistance proteins (Mrps) in cultured rat astrocytes, oligodendrocytes, microglial cells and neurones. J Neurochem 82(3):716–719. https://doi.org/10.1046/j.1471-4159.2002.01082.x

Hirsch-Reinshagen V, Zhou S, Burgess BL, Bernier L, McIsaac SA, Chan JY, Tansley GH, Cohn JS, Hayden MR, Wellington CL (2004) Deficiency of ABCA1 impairs apolipoprotein E metabolism in brain. J Biol Chem 279(39):41197–41207. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M407962200

Holtzman DM, Herz J, Bu G (2012) Apolipoprotein E and apolipoprotein E receptors: normal biology and roles in Alzheimer disease. Cold Spring Harbor Perspect Med 2(3):a006312. https://doi.org/10.1101/cshperspect.a006312

Hong H, Lu Y, Ji ZN, Liu GQ (2006) Up-regulation of P-glycoprotein expression by glutathione depletion-induced oxidative stress in rat brain microvessel endothelial cells. J Neurochem 98 (5):1465–1473. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1471-4159.2006.03993.x

Honzumi S, Shima A, Hiroshima A, Koieyama T, Ubukata N, Terasaka N (2010) LXRα regulates human CETP expression in vitro and in transgenic mice. Atherosclerosis 212(1):139–145. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.atherosclerosis.2010.04.025

Hori S, Ohtsuki S, Tachikawa M, Kimura N, Kondo T, Watanabe M, Nakashima E, Terasaki T (2004) Functional expression of rat ABCG2 on the luminal side of brain capillaries and its enhancement by astrocyte-derived soluble factor (s). J Neurochem 90(3):526–536. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1471-4159.2004.02537.x

Hosoya KI, Hori S, Ohtsuki S, Terasaki T (2004) A new in vitro model for blood–cerebrospinal fluid barrier transport studies: an immortalized choroid plexus epithelial cell line derived from the tsA58 SV40 large T-antigen gene transgenic rat. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 56(12):1875–1885. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.addr.2004.07.013

Islam MO, Kanemura Y, Tajria J, Mori H, Kobayashi S, Shofuda T, Miyake J, Hara M, Yamasaki M, Okano H (2005) Characterization of ABC transporter ABCB1 expressed in human neural stem/progenitor cells. FEBS Lett 579(17):3473–3480. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.febslet.2005.05.019

Ito S, Ohtsuki S, Terasaki T (2006) Functional characterization of the brain-to-blood efflux clearance of human amyloid-β peptide (1–40) across the rat blood–brain barrier. Neurosci Res 56(3):246–252. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neures.2006.07.006

Jetté L, Béliveau R (1993) P-glycoprotein is strongly expressed in brain capillaries. In: Frontiers in cerebral vascular biology. Springer, Boston, MA, pp 121–125. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4615-2920-0_20

Jiang Q, Lee CD, Mandrekar S, Wilkinson B, Cramer P, Zelcer N, Mann K, Lamb B, Willson TM, Collins JL, Richardson JC (2008) ApoE promotes the proteolytic degradation of Aβ. Neuron 58 (5):681–693. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neuron.2008.04.010

Johnson BM, Zhang P, Schuetz JD, Brouwer KL (2006) Characterization of transport protein expression in multidrug resistance-associated protein (Mrp) 2-deficient rats. Drug Metab Dispos 34(4):556–562. https://doi.org/10.1124/dmd.105.005793

Kilic E, Spudich A, Kilic Ü, Rentsch KM, Vig R, Matter CM, Wunderli-Allenspach H, Fritschy JM, Bassetti CL, Hermann DM (2008) ABCC1: a gateway for pharmacological compounds to the ischaemic brain. Brain 131(10):2679–2689. https://doi.org/10.1093/brain/awn222

Kim WS, Guillemin GJ, Glaros EN, Lim CK, Garner B (2006) Quantitation of ATP-binding cassette subfamily-A transporter gene expression in primary human brain cells. Neuroreport 17(9):891–896. https://doi.org/10.1097/01.wnr.0000221833.41340.cd

Kim WS, Li H, Ruberu K, Chan S, Elliott DA, Low JK, Cheng D, Karl T, Garner B (2013) Deletion of Abca7 increases cerebral amyloid-β accumulation in the J20 mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. J Neurosci 33(10):4387–4394. https://doi.org/10.1523/JNEUROSCI.4165-12.2013

Klucken J, Büchler C, Orsó E, Kaminski WE, Porsch-Özcürümez M, Liebisch G, Kapinsky M, Diederich W, Drobnik W, Dean M, Allikmets R (2000) ABCG1 (ABC8), the human homolog of the Drosophila white gene, is a regulator of macrophage cholesterol and phospholipid transport. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 97(2):817–822. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.97.2.817

Koldamova RP, Lefterov IM, Staufenbiel M, Wolfe D, Huang S, Glorioso JC, Walter M, Roth MG, Lazo JS (2005) The liver X receptor ligand T0901317 decreases amyloid β production in vitro and in a mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. J Biol Chem 280(6):4079–4088. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M411420200

Kratzer I, Liddelow SA, Saunders NR, Dziegielewska KM, Strazielle N, Ghersi-Egea JF (2013) Developmental changes in the transcriptome of the rat choroid plexus in relation to neuroprotection. Fluids Barriers CNS 10(1):1–9. https://doi.org/10.1186/2045-8118-10-25

Krohn M, Lange C, Hofrichter J, Scheffler K, Stenzel J, Steffen J, Schumacher T, Brüning T, Plath AS, Alfen F, Schmidt A (2011) Cerebral amyloid-β proteostasis is regulated by the membrane

transport protein ABCC1 in mice. J Clin Invest 121(10):3924–3931. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI57867

Kuhnke D, Jedlitschky G, Grube M, Krohn M, Jucker M, Mosyagin I, Cascorbi I, Walker LC, Kroemer HK, Warzok RW, Vogelgesang S (2007) MDR1-P-glycoprotein (ABCB1) mediates transport of Alzheimer's amyloid-β peptides—implications for the mechanisms of Aβ clearance at the blood–brain barrier. Brain Pathol 17(4):347–353. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1750-3639.2007.00075.x

Kumar N, Shukla P, Taneja KK, Kalra V, Bansal SK (2008) De novo ABCD1 gene mutation in an Indian patient with adrenoleukodystrophy. Pediatr Neurol 39(4):289–292. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pediatrneurol.2008.07.006

Kuntz M, Candela P, Saint-Pol J, Lamartiniere Y, Boucau MC, Sevin E, Fenart L, Gosselet F (2015) Bexarotene promotes cholesterol efflux and restricts apical-to-basolateral transport of amyloid-β peptides in an in vitro model of the human blood-brain barrier. J Alzheimer's Dis 48(3):849–862. https://doi.org/10.3233/JAD-150469

Kusuhara H, Sugiyama Y (2004) Efflux transport systems for organic anions and cations at the blood–CSF barrier. Adv Drug Deliv Rev 56(12):1741–1763. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.addr.2004.07.007

Lam FC, Liu R, Lu P, Shapiro AB, Renoir JM, Sharom FJ, Reiner PB (2001) β-Amyloid efflux mediated by p-glycoprotein. J Neurochem 76(4):1121–1128. https://doi.org/10.1046/j.1471-4159.2001.00113.x

Lamartinière Y, Boucau MC, Dehouck L, Krohn M, Pahnke J, Candela P, Gosselet F, Fenart L (2018) ABCA7 downregulation modifies cellular cholesterol homeostasis and decreases amyloid-β peptide efflux in an in vitro model of the blood-brain barrier. J Alzheimer's Dis 64(4):1195–1211. https://doi.org/10.3233/JAD-170883

Lambert JC, Heath S, Even G, Campion D, Sleegers K, Hiltunen M, Combarros O, Zelenika D, Bullido MJ, Tavernier B, Letenneur L (2009) Genome-wide association study identifies variants at CLU and CR1 associated with Alzheimer's disease. Nat Genet 41(10):1094–1099. https://doi.org/10.1038/ng.439

Lee G, Babakhanian K, Ramaswamy M, Prat A, Wosik K, Bendayan R (2007) Expression of the ATP-binding cassette membrane transporter, ABCG2, in human and rodent brain microvessel endothelial and glial cell culture systems. Pharm Res 24(7):1262–1274. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11095-007-9244-1

Lee HJ, Ryu JM, Jung YH, Lee SJ, Kim JY, Lee SH, Hwang IK, Seong JK, Han HJ (2016) High glucose upregulates BACE1-mediated Aβ production through ROS-dependent HIF-1α and LXRα/ABCA1-regulated lipid raft reorganization in SK-N-MC cells. Sci Rep 6(1):1–5. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep36746

Lefterov I, Bookout A, Wang Z, Staufenbiel M, Mangelsdorf D, Koldamova R (2007) Expression profiling in APP23 mouse brain: inhibition of Aβ amyloidosis and inflammation in response to LXR agonist treatment. Mol Neurodegener 2(1):1–5. https://doi.org/10.1186/1750-1326-2-20

Leggas M, Adachi M, Scheffer GL, Sun D, Wielinga P, Du G, Mercer KE, Zhuang Y, Panetta JC, Johnston B, Scheper RJ (2004) Mrp4 confers resistance to topotecan and protects the brain from chemotherapy. Mol Cell Biol 24(17):7612–7621. https://doi.org/10.1128/MCB.24.17.7612-7621.2004

Leslie EM, Deeley RG, Cole SP (2005) Multidrug resistance proteins: role of P-glycoprotein, MRP1, MRP2, and BCRP (ABCG2) in tissue defense. Toxicol Appl Pharmacol 204(3):216–237. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.taap.2004.10.012

Li G, Kim C, Kim J, Yoon H, Zhou H, Kim J (2015) Common pesticide, dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane (DDT), increases amyloid-β levels by impairing the function of ABCA1 and IDE: implication for Alzheimer's disease. J Alzheimer's Dis 46(1):109–122. https://doi.org/10.3233/JAD-150024

Li J, Yue M, Zhou D, Wang M, Zhang H (2017) Abcb1a but not Abcg2 played a predominant role in limiting the brain distribution of Huperzine A in mice. Food Chem Toxicol 107:68–73. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fct.2017.06.005

Lian W, Fang J, Xu L, Zhou W, Kang D, Xiong W, Jia H, Liu AL, Du GH (2017) DL0410 ameliorates memory and cognitive impairments induced by scopolamine via increasing cholinergic neurotransmission in mice. Molecules 22(3):410. https://doi.org/10.3390/molecules22030410

Linton KJ (2007) Structure and function of ABC transporters. Physiology 22(2):122–130. https://doi.org/10.1152/physiol.00046.2006

Liu LX, Janvier K, Berteaux-Lecellier V, Cartier N, Benarous R, Aubourg P (1999) Homo-and heterodimerization of peroxisomal ATP-binding cassette half-transporters. J Biol Chem 274 (46):32738–32743. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.274.46.32738

Liu LH, Xu J, Deng YL, Tang HD, Wang Y, Ren RJ, Xu W, Ma JF, Wang G, Chen SD (2014) A complex association of ABCA7 genotypes with sporadic Alzheimer disease in Chinese Han population. Alzheimer Dis Assoc Disord 28(2):141–144. https://doi.org/10.1097/WAD.0000000000000000

Loeb MB, Molloy DW, Smieja M, Standish T, Goldsmith CH, Mahony J, Smith S, Borrie M, Decoteau E, Davidson W, Mcdougall A (2004) A randomized, controlled trial of doxycycline and rifampin for patients with Alzheimer's disease. J Am Geriatr Soc 52(3):381–387. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1532-5415.2004.52109.x

Logue MW, Schu M, Vardarajan BN, Buros J, Green RC, Go RC, Griffith P, Obisesan TO, Shatz R, Borenstein A, Cupples LA (2011) A comprehensive genetic association study of Alzheimer disease in African Americans. Arch Neurol 68(12):1569–1579. https://doi.org/10.1001/archneurol.2011.646

Lu J, Fu J, Zhong Y, Yang Q, Huang J, Li J, Huo Y, Zhao Y, Wan L, Guo C (2018) Association between ABCA1 gene polymorphisms and the therapeutic response to donepezil therapy in Han Chinese patients with Alzheimer's disease. Brain Res Bull 140:1–4. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.brainresbull.2018.03.014

Mao Q (2005) Role of the breast cancer resistance protein (ABCG2) in drug transport. AAPS J 7(1): E118–E133. https://doi.org/10.1208/aapsj070112

Marton MJ, De Aldana CV, Qiu H, Chakraburtty K, Hinnebusch AG (1997) Evidence that GCN1 and GCN20, translational regulators of GCN4, function on elongating ribosomes in activation of eIF2alpha kinase GCN2. Mol Cell Biol 17(8):4474–4489. https://doi.org/10.1128/MCB.17.8.4474

May P, Pichler S, Hartl D, Bobbili DR, Mayhaus M, Spaniol C, Kurz A, Balling R, Schneider JG, Riemenschneider M (2018) Rare ABCA7 variants in 2 German families with Alzheimer disease. Neurol Genet 4(2). https://doi.org/10.1212/NXG.0000000000000224

Mercier C, Masseguin C, Roux F, Gabrion J, Scherrmann JM (2004) Expression of P-glycoprotein (ABCB1) and Mrp1 (ABCC1) in adult rat brain: focus on astrocytes. Brain Res 1021(1):32–40. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.brainres.2004.06.034

Miller DS, Nobmann SN, Gutmann H, Toeroek M, Drewe J, Fricker G (2000) Xenobiotic transport across isolated brain microvessels studied by confocal microscopy. Mol Pharmacol 58 (6):1357–1367. https://doi.org/10.1124/mol.58.6.1357

Miller DS, Graeff C, Droulle L, Fricker S, Fricker G (2002) Xenobiotic efflux pumps in isolated fish brain capillaries. Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol 282(1):R191–R198. https://doi.org/10.1152/ajpregu.00305.2001

Miller DS, Bauer B, Hartz AM (2008) Modulation of P-glycoprotein at the blood-brain barrier: opportunities to improve central nervous system pharmacotherapy. Pharmacol Rev 60 (2):196–209. https://doi.org/10.1124/pr.107.07109

Minich T, Riemer J, Schulz JB, Wielinga P, Wijnholds J, Dringen R (2006) The multidrug resistance protein 1 (Mrp1), but not Mrp5, mediates export of glutathione and glutathione disulfide from brain astrocytes. J Neurochem 97(2):373–384. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1471-4159.2006.03737.x

Mohan A, Kandalam M, Ramkumar HL, Gopal L, Krishnakumar S (2006) Stem cell markers: ABCG2 and MCM2 expression in retinoblastoma. Br J Ophthalmol 90(7):889–893. https://doi.org/10.1136/bjo.2005.089219

Molday RS, Zhong M, Quazi F (2009) The role of the photoreceptor ABC transporter ABCA4 in lipid transport and Stargardt macular degeneration. Biochim Biophys Acta (BBA) Mol Cell Biol Lipids 1791(7):573–583. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbalip.2009.02.004

Møllgård K, Dziegielewska KM, Holst CB, Habgood MD, Saunders NR (2017) Brain barriers and functional interfaces with sequential appearance of ABC efflux transporters during human development. Sci Rep 7(1):1–6. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-017-11596-0

Monville C, Fages C, Feyens AM, d'Hondt V, Guillet C, Vernallis A, Gascan H, Peschanski M (2002) Astroglial expression of the P-glycoprotein is controlled by intracellular CNTF. BMC Cell Biol 3(1):1–9. https://doi.org/10.1186/1471-2121-3-20

Moreno-Grau S, Hernández I, Heilmann-Heimbach S, Ruiz S, Rosende-Roca M, Mauleón A, Vargas L, Rodríguez-Gómez O, Alegret M, Espinosa A, Ortega G (2018) Genome-wide significant risk factors on chromosome 19 and the APOE locus. Oncotarget 9(37):24590. https://doi.org/10.18632/oncotarget.25083

Moser HW, Powers JM, Smith KD (1995) Adrenoleukodystrophy: molecular genetics, pathology, and Lorenzo's oil. Brain Pathol 5(3):259–266. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1750-3639.1995.tb00602.x

Narang VS, Fraga C, Kumar N, Shen J, Throm S, Stewart CF, Waters CM (2008) Dexamethasone increases expression and activity of multidrug resistance transporters at the rat blood-brain barrier. Am J Physiol Cell Physiol 295(2):C440–C450. https://doi.org/10.1152/ajpcell.00491.2007

Nazer B, Hong S, Selkoe DJ (2008) LRP promotes endocytosis and degradation, but not transcytosis, of the amyloid-β peptide in a blood–brain barrier in vitro model. Neurobiol Dis 30(1):94–102. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nbd.2007.12.005

Nedeljković M, Tanić N, Prvanović M, Milovanović Z, Tanić N (2021) Friend or foe: ABCG2, ABCC1 and ABCB1 expression in triple-negative breast cancer. Breast Cancer. 28(3):727–736. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12282-020-01210-z

Niehof M, Borlak J (2009) Expression of HNF4alpha in the human and rat choroid plexus–implications for drug transport across the blood-cerebrospinal-fluid (CSF) barrier. BMC Mol Biol 10(1):1–4. https://doi.org/10.1186/1471-2199-10-68

Nies AT, Jedlitschky G, König J, Herold-Mende C, Steiner HH, Schmitt HP, Keppler D (2004) Expression and immunolocalization of the multidrug resistance proteins, MRP1–MRP6 (ABCC1–ABCC6), in human brain. Neuroscience 129(2):349–360. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neuroscience.2004.07.051

Nordestgaard LT, Tybjærg-Hansen A, Nordestgaard BG, Frikke-Schmidt R (2015) Loss-of-function mutation in ABCA1 and risk of Alzheimer's disease and cerebrovascular disease. Alzheimer's Dement 11(12):1430–1438. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jalz.2015.04.006

Nwaozuzu OM, Sellers LA, Barrand MA (2003) Signalling pathways influencing basal and H_2O_2-induced P-glycoprotein expression in endothelial cells derived from the blood–brain barrier. J Neurochem 87(4):1043–1051. https://doi.org/10.1046/j.1471-4159.2003.02061.x

Ohtsuki S, Yamaguchi H, Asashima T, Terasaki T (2007) Establishing a method to isolate rat brain capillary endothelial cells by magnetic cell sorting and dominant mRNA expression of multidrug resistance-associated protein 1 and 4 in highly purified rat brain capillary endothelial cells. Pharm Res 24(4):688–694. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11095-006-9188-x

Ott M, Fricker G, Bauer B (2009) Pregnane X receptor (PXR) regulates P-glycoprotein at the blood-brain barrier: functional similarities between pig and human PXR. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 329 (1):141–149. https://doi.org/10.1124/jpet.108.149690

Pahnke J, Langer O, Krohn M (2014) Alzheimer's and ABC transporters—new opportunities for diagnostics and treatment. Neurobiol Dis 72:54–60. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nbd.2014.04.001

Panzenboeck U, Balazs Z, Sovic A, Hrzenjak A, Levak-Frank S, Wintersperger A, Malle E, Sattler W (2002) ABCA1 and scavenger receptor class B, type I, are modulators of reverse sterol transport at an in vitro blood-brain barrier constituted of porcine brain capillary endothelial cells. J Biol Chem 277(45):42781–42789. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M207601200

Paulusma CC, Bosma PJ, Zaman GJ, Bakker CT, Otter M, Scheffer GL, Scheper RJ, Borst P, Elferink RP (1996) Congenital jaundice in rats with a mutation in a multidrug resistance-associated protein gene. Science 271(5252):1126–1128. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.271.5252.1126

Peelman F, Labeur C, Vanloo B, Roosbeek S, Devaud C, Duverger N, Denèfle P, Rosier M, Vandekerckhove J, Rosseneu M (2003) Characterization of the ABCA transporter subfamily: identification of prokaryotic and eukaryotic members, phylogeny and topology. J Mol Biol 325 (2):259–274. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0022-2836(02)01105-1

Pekcec A, Schneider EL, Baumgärtner W, Stein VM, Tipold A, Potschka H (2011) Age-dependent decline of blood–brain barrier P-glycoprotein expression in the canine brain. Neurobiol Aging 32(8):1477–1485. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neurobiolaging.2009.08.014

Perloff MD, von Moltke LL, Fahey JM, Greenblatt DJ (2007) Induction of P-glycoprotein expression and activity by ritonavir in bovine brain microvessel endothelial cells. J Pharm Pharmacol 59(7):947–953. https://doi.org/10.1211/jpp.59.7.0006

Pohl A, Devaux PF, Herrmann A (2005) Function of prokaryotic and eukaryotic ABC proteins in lipid transport. Biochim Biophys Acta (BBA) Mol Cell Biol Lipids 1733(1):29–52. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbalip.2004.12.007

Poller B, Gutmann H, Krähenbühl S, Weksler B, Romero I, Couraud PO, Tuffin G, Drewe J, Huwyler J (2008) The human brain endothelial cell line hCMEC/D3 as a human blood-brain barrier model for drug transport studies. J Neurochem 107(5):1358–1368. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1471-4159.2008.05730.x

Poller B, Drewe J, Krähenbühl S, Huwyler J, Gutmann H (2010) Regulation of BCRP (ABCG2) and P-glycoprotein (ABCB1) by cytokines in a model of the human blood–brain barrier. Cell Mol Neurobiol 30(1):63–70. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10571-009-9431-1

Potschka H, Fedrowitz M, Löscher W (2002) P-Glycoprotein-mediated efflux of phenobarbital, lamotrigine, and felbamate at the blood–brain barrier: evidence from microdialysis experiments in rats. Neurosci Lett 327(3):173–176. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0304-3940(02)00423-8

Quinton PM (1999) Physiological basis of cystic fibrosis: a historical perspective. Physiol Rev 79 (1):S3–S22. https://doi.org/10.1152/physrev.1999.79.1.S3

Reitz C, Jun G, Naj A, Rajbhandary R, Vardarajan BN, Wang LS, Valladares O, Lin CF, Larson EB, Graff-Radford NR, Evans D (2013) Variants in the ATP-binding cassette transporter (ABCA7), apolipoprotein E ϵ4, and the risk of late-onset Alzheimer disease in African Americans. JAMA 309(14):1483–1492. https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.2013.2973

Riddell DR, Zhou H, Comery TA, Kouranova E, Lo CF, Warwick HK, Ring RH, Kirksey Y, Aschmies S, Xu J, Kubek K (2007) The LXR agonist TO901317 selectively lowers hippocampal Aβ42 and improves memory in the Tg2576 mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. Mol Cell Neurosci 34(4):621–628. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mcn.2007.01.011

Roberts LM, Black DS, Raman C, Woodford K, Zhou M, Haggerty JE, Yan AT, Cwirla SE, Grindstaff KK (2008) Subcellular localization of transporters along the rat blood–brain barrier and blood–cerebral-spinal fluid barrier by in vivo biotinylation. Neuroscience 155(2):423–438. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neuroscience.2008.06.015

Ronaldson PT, Bendayan R (2006) HIV-1 viral envelope glycoprotein gp120 triggers an inflammatory response in cultured rat astrocytes and regulates the functional expression of P-glycoprotein. Mol Pharmacol 70(3):1087–1098. https://doi.org/10.1124/mol.106.025973

Ronaldson PT, Bendayan R (2008) HIV-1 viral envelope glycoprotein gp120 produces oxidative stress and regulates the functional expression of multidrug resistance protein-1 (Mrp1) in glial cells. J Neurochem 106(3):1298–1313. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1471-4159.2008.05479.x

Ronaldson PT, Bendayan M, Gingras D, Piquette-Miller M, Bendayan R (2004) Cellular localization and functional expression of P-glycoprotein in rat astrocyte cultures. J Neurochem 89 (3):788–800. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1471-4159.2004.02417.x

Ronaldson PT, Ashraf T, Bendayan R (2010) Regulation of multidrug resistance protein 1 by tumor necrosis factor α in cultured glial cells: involvement of nuclear factor-κB and c-Jun N-terminal

kinase signaling pathways. Mol Pharmacol 77(4):644–659. https://doi.org/10.1124/mol.109.059410

Saito T, Zhang ZJ, Tokuriki M, Ohtsubo T, Noda I, Shibamori Y, Yamamoto T, Saito H (2001) Expression of multidrug resistance protein 1 (MRP1) in the rat cochlea with special reference to the blood–inner ear barrier. Brain Res 895(1–2):253–257. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0006-8993(01)02020-0

Sakae N, Liu CC, Shinohara M, Frisch-Daiello J, Ma L, Yamazaki Y, Tachibana M, Younkin L, Kurti A, Carrasquillo MM, Zou F (2016) ABCA7 deficiency accelerates amyloid-β generation and Alzheimer's neuronal pathology. J Neurosc 36(13):3848–3859. https://doi.org/10.1523/JNEUROSCI.3757-15.2016

Sano O, Tsujita M, Shimizu Y, Kato R, Kobayashi A, Kioka N, Remaley AT, Michikawa M, Ueda K, Matsuo M (2016) ABCG1 and ABCG4 suppress γ-secretase activity and amyloid β production. PLoS One 11(5):e0155400. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0155400

Satoh K, Abe-Dohmae S, Yokoyama S, St George-Hyslop P, Fraser PE (2015) ATP-binding cassette transporter A7 (ABCA7) loss of function alters Alzheimer amyloid processing. J Biol Chem 290:24152–24165. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M115.655076

Schinkel AH, Wagenaar E, Mol CA, van Deemter L (1996) P-glycoprotein in the blood-brain barrier of mice influences the brain penetration and pharmacological activity of many drugs. J Clin Invest 97(11):2517–2524. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI118699

Scott Kim W, Chan SL, Hill AF, Guillemin GJ, Garner B (2009) Impact of 27-hydroxycholesterol on amyloid-β peptide production and ATP-binding cassette transporter expression in primary human neurons. J Alzheimer's Dis 16(1):121–131. https://doi.org/10.3233/JAD-2009-0944

Seelbach MJ, Brooks TA, Egleton RD, Davis TP (2007) Peripheral inflammatory hyperalgesia modulates morphine delivery to the brain: a role for P-glycoprotein. J Neurochem 102(5):1677–1690. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1471-4159.2007.04644.x

Shani N, Valle D (1998) Peroxisomal ABC transporters. Methods Enzymol 292:753–776. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0076-6879(98)92058-4

Shen S, Callaghan D, Juzwik C, Xiong H, Huang P, Zhang W (2010) ABCG2 reduces ROS-mediated toxicity and inflammation: a potential role in Alzheimer's disease. J Neurochem 114(6):1590–1604. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1471-4159.2010.06887.x

Shi LZ, Li GJ, Wang S, Zheng W (2008) Use of Z310 cells as an in vitro blood–cerebrospinal fluid barrier model: tight junction proteins and transport properties. Toxicol In Vitro 22(1):190–199. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tiv.2007.07.007

Shimizu F, Sano Y, Maeda T, Abe MA, Nakayama H, Takahashi RI, Ueda M, Ohtsuki S, Terasaki T, Obinata M, Kanda T (2008) Peripheral nerve pericytes originating from the blood–nerve barrier expresses tight junctional molecules and transporters as barrier-forming cells. J Cell Physiol 217(2):388–399. https://doi.org/10.1002/jcp.21508

Shubbar MH, Penny JI (2018) Effect of amyloid beta on ATP-binding cassette transporter expression and activity in porcine brain microvascular endothelial cells. Biochim Biophys Acta (BBA) Gen Subjects 1862(10):2314–2322. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbagen.2018.07.021

Shukla S, Zaher H, Hartz A, Bauer B, Ware JA, Ambudkar SV (2009) Curcumin inhibits the activity of ABCG2/BCRP1, a multidrug resistance-linked ABC drug transporter in mice. Pharm Res 26(2):480–487. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11095-008-9735-8

Silverberg GD, Messier AA, Miller MC, Machan JT, Majmudar SS, Stopa EG, Donahue JE, Johanson CE (2010) Amyloid efflux transporter expression at the blood-brain barrier declines in normal aging. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol 69(10):1034–1043. https://doi.org/10.1097/NEN.0b013e3181f46e25

Sita G, Hrelia P, Tarozzi A, Morroni F (2017) P-glycoprotein (ABCB1) and oxidative stress: focus on Alzheimer's disease. Oxid Med Cell Longev 2017. https://doi.org/10.1155/2017/7905486

Soontornmalai A, Vlaming ML, Fritschy JM (2006) Differential, strain-specific cellular and subcellular distribution of multidrug transporters in murine choroid plexus and blood–brain barrier. Neuroscience 138(1):159–169. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neuroscience.2005.11.011

Spiegl-Kreinecker S, Buchroithner J, Elbling L, Steiner E, Wurm G, Bodenteich A, Fischer J, Micksche M, Berger W (2002) Expression and functional activity of the ABC-transporter proteins P-glycoprotein and multidrug-resistance protein 1 in human brain tumor cells and astrocytes. J Neurooncol 57(1):27–36. https://doi.org/10.1023/A:1015735815111

Sugiyama Y, Kusuhara H, Suzuki H (1999) Kinetic and biochemical analysis of carrier-mediated efflux of drugs through the blood–brain and blood–cerebrospinal fluid barriers: importance in the drug delivery to the brain. J Control Release 62(1-2):179–186. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168-3659(99)00036-X

Sugiyama D, Kusuhara H, Lee YJ, Sugiyama Y (2003) Involvement of multidrug resistance associated protein 1 (Mrp1) in the efflux transport of 17β estradiol-D-17β-glucuronide (E 2 17βG) across the blood-brain barrier. Pharm Res 20(9):1394–1400. https://doi.org/10.1023/A:1025749925541

Tai LM, Loughlin AJ, Male DK, Romero IA (2009) P-glycoprotein and breast cancer resistance protein restrict apical-to-basolateral permeability of human brain endothelium to amyloid-β. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 29(6):1079–1083. https://doi.org/10.1038/jcbfm.2009.42

Tarling EJ, de Aguiar Vallim TQ, Edwards PA (2013) Role of ABC transporters in lipid transport and human disease. Trends Endocrinol Metab 24(7):342–350. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tem.2013.01.006

Tarr PT, Edwards PA (2008) ABCG1 and ABCG4 are coexpressed in neurons and astrocytes of the CNS and regulate cholesterol homeostasis through SREBP-2. J Lipid Res 49(1):169–182. https://doi.org/10.1194/jlr.M700364-JLR200

Theodoulou FL, Holdsworth M, Baker A (2006) Peroxisomal ABC transporters. FEBS Lett 580(4):1139–1155. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.febslet.2005.12.095

Thiebaut FR, Tsuruo TA, Hamada HI, Gottesman MM, Pastan I, Willingham MC (1989) Immunohistochemical localization in normal tissues of different epitopes in the multidrug transport protein P170: evidence for localization in brain capillaries and crossreactivity of one antibody with a muscle protein. J Histochem Cytochem 37(2):159–164. https://doi.org/10.1177/37.2.2463300

Thomas C, Tampé R (2020) Structural and mechanistic principles of ABC transporters. Annu Rev Biochem 89:605–636. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev-biochem-011520-105201

Tyzack JK, Wang X, Belsham GJ, Proud CG (2000) ABC50 interacts with eukaryotic initiation factor 2 and associates with the ribosome in an ATP-dependent manner. J Biol Chem 275(44):34131–34139. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M002868200

Uehara Y, Yamada T, Baba Y, Miura SI, Abe S, Kitajima K, Higuchi MA, Iwamoto T, Saku K (2008) ATP-binding cassette transporter G4 is highly expressed in microglia in Alzheimer's brain. Brain Res 1217:239–246. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.brainres.2008.04.048

van Assema DM, Lubberink M, Bauer M, van der Flier WM, Schuit RC, Windhorst AD, Comans EF, Hoetjes NJ, Tolboom N, Langer O, Müller M (2012) Blood–brain barrier P-glycoprotein function in Alzheimer's disease. Brain 135(1):181–189. https://doi.org/10.1093/brain/awr298

Vasquez JB, Simpson JF, Harpole R, Estus S (2017) Alzheimer's disease genetics and ABCA7 splicing. J Alzheimer's Dis 59(2):633–641. https://doi.org/10.3233/JAD-170872

Vogelgesang S, Cascorbi I, Schroeder E, Pahnke J, Kroemer HK, Siegmund W, Kunert-Keil C, Walker LC, Warzok RW (2002) Deposition of Alzheimer's β-amyloid is inversely correlated with P-glycoprotein expression in the brains of elderly non-demented humans. Pharmacogenet Genomics 12(7):535–541

Wahrle SE, Jiang H, Parsadanian M, Legleiter J, Han X, Fryer JD, Kowalewski T, Holtzman DM (2004) ABCA1 is required for normal central nervous system ApoE levels and for lipidation of astrocyte-secreted apoE. J Biol Chem 279(39):40987–40993. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M407963200

Wahrle SE, Jiang H, Parsadanian M, Hartman RE, Bales KR, Paul SM, Holtzman DM (2005) Deletion of Abca1 increases Aβ deposition in the PDAPP transgenic mouse model of Alzheimer disease. J Biol Chem 280(52):43236–43242

Wahrle SE, Jiang H, Parsadanian M, Kim J, Li A, Knoten A, Jain S, Hirsch-Reinshagen V, Wellington CL, Bales KR, Paul SM (2008) Overexpression of ABCA1 reduces amyloid deposition in the PDAPP mouse model of Alzheimer disease. J Clin Invest 118(2):671–682. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI33622

Wang N, Yvan-Charvet L, Lütjohann D, Mulder M, Vanmierlo T, Kim TW, Tall AR (2008) ATP-binding cassette transporters G1 and G4 mediate cholesterol and desmosterol efflux to HDL and regulate sterol accumulation in the brain. FASEB J 22(4):1073–1082. https://doi.org/10.1096/fj.07-9944com

Warren MS, Zerangue N, Woodford K, Roberts LM, Tate EH, Feng B, Li C, Feuerstein TJ, Gibbs J, Smith B, de Morais SM (2009) Comparative gene expression profiles of ABC transporters in brain microvessel endothelial cells and brain in five species including human. Pharm Res 59 (6):404–413. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.phrs.2009.02.007

Wijesekara N, Kaur A, Westwell-Roper C, Nackiewicz D, Soukhatcheva G, Hayden MR, Verchere CB (2016) ABCA1 deficiency and cellular cholesterol accumulation increases islet amyloidogenesis in mice. Diabetologia 59(6):1242–1246. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00125-016-3907-6

Wijesuriya HC, Bullock JY, Faull RL, Hladky SB, Barrand MA (2010) ABC efflux transporters in brain vasculature of Alzheimer's subjects. Brain Res 1358:228–238. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.brainres.2010.08.034

Wijnholds J (1999) Drug resistance caused by multidrug resistance-associated proteins. In: Novartis Foundation symposium. Wiley, New York, pp 69–82. PMID: 11990783

Wolf A, Bauer B, Hartz A (2012) ABC transporters and the Alzheimer's disease enigma. Front Psychiatry 3:54. https://doi.org/10.3389/fpsyt.2012.00054

Wollmer MA, Sleegers K, Ingelsson M, Zekanowski C, Brouwers N, Maruszak A, Brunner F, Huynh KD, Kilander L, Brundin RM, Hedlund M (2007) Association study of cholesterol-related genes in Alzheimer's disease. Neurogenetics 8(3):179–188. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10048-007-0087-z

Wu B, Ueno M, Onodera M, Kusaka T, Huang CL, Hosomi N, Kanenishi K, Sakamoto H (2009) Age-related changes in P-glycoprotein expression in senescence-accelerated mouse. Curr Aging Sci 2(3):187–192. https://doi.org/10.2174/1874609810902030187

Xiong H, Callaghan D, Jones A, Bai J, Rasquinha I, Smith C, Pei K, Walker D, Lue LF, Stanimirovic D, Zhang W (2009) ABCG2 is upregulated in Alzheimer's brain with cerebral amyloid angiopathy and may act as a gatekeeper at the blood–brain barrier for Aβ1–40 peptides. J Neurosci 29(17):5463–5475. https://doi.org/10.1523/JNEUROSCI.5103-08.2009

Ya L, Lu Z (2017) Differences in ABCA1 R219K polymorphisms and serum indexes in Alzheimer and Parkinson diseases in northern China. Med Sci Monit 23:4591. https://doi.org/10.12659/MSM.903636

Yang RY, Zhao G, Wang DM, Pang XC, Wang SB, Fang JS, Li C, Liu AL, Wu S, Du GH (2015) DL0410 can reverse cognitive impairment, synaptic loss and reduce plaque load in APP/PS1 transgenic mice. Pharmacol Biochem Behav 139:15–26. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pbb.2015.10.009

Yasuda K, Ranade A, Venkataramanan R, Strom S, Chupka J, Ekins S, Schuetz E, Bachmann K (2008) A comprehensive in vitro and in silico analysis of antibiotics that activate pregnane X receptor and induce CYP3A4 in liver and intestine. Drug Metab Dispos 36(8):1689–1697. https://doi.org/10.1124/dmd.108.020701

Zhang Y, Han H, Elmquist WF, Miller DW (2000) Expression of various multidrug resistance-associated protein (MRP) homologues in brain microvessel endothelial cells. Brain Res 876 (1–2):148–153. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0006-8993(00)02628-7

Zhang Y, Schuetz JD, Elmquist WF, Miller DW (2004) Plasma membrane localization of multidrug resistance-associated protein homologs in brain capillary endothelial cells. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 311(2):449–455. https://doi.org/10.1124/jpet.104.068528

Zhang C, Qin H, Zheng R, Wang Y, Yan T, Huan F, Han Y, Zhu W, Zhang L (2018) A new approach for Alzheimer's disease treatment through P-gp regulation via ibuprofen. Pathol Res Practice 214(11):1765–1771. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.prp.2018.08.011

Zhao QF, Wan Y, Wang HF, Sun FR, Hao XK, Tan MS, Tan CC, Zhang DQ, Tan L, Yu JT (2016) ABCA7 genotypes confer Alzheimer's disease risk by modulating amyloid-β pathology. J Alzheimer's Dis 52(2):693–703. https://doi.org/10.3233/JAD-151005

Zhou CJ, Zhao LX, Inagaki N, Guan JL, Nakajo S, Hirabayashi T, Kikuyama S, Shioda S (2001) Atp-binding cassette transporter ABC2/ABCA2 in the rat brain: a novel mammalian lysosome-associated membrane protein and a specific marker for oligodendrocytes but not for myelin sheaths. J Neurosci 21(3):849–857. https://doi.org/10.1523/JNEUROSCI.21-03-00849.2001

Zhou SF, Wang LL, Di YM, Xue CC, Duan W, Li CG, Li Y (2008) Substrates and inhibitors of human multidrug resistance associated proteins and the implications in drug development. Curr Med Chem 15(20):1981–2039. https://doi.org/10.2174/092986708785132870

Zhou L, Schmidt K, Nelson FR, Zelesky V, Troutman MD, Feng B (2009) The effect of breast cancer resistance protein and P-glycoprotein on the brain penetration of flavopiridol, imatinib mesylate (Gleevec), prazosin, and 2-methoxy-3-(4-(2-(5-methyl-2-phenyloxazol-4-yl) ethoxy) phenyl) propanoic acid (PF-407288) in mice. Drug Metab Dispos 37(5):946–955. https://doi.org/10.1124/dmd.108.024489

Zhou D, Zhou W, Song JK, Feng ZY, Yang RY, Wu S, Wang L, Liu AL, Du GH (2016) DL0410, a novel dual cholinesterase inhibitor, protects mouse brains against Aβ-induced neuronal damage via the Akt/JNK signaling pathway. Acta Pharmacol Sin 37(11):1401–1412. https://doi.org/10.1038/aps.2016.87

Zhou W, Hu X, Tam KY (2017) Systemic clearance and brain distribution of carbazole-based cyanine compounds as Alzheimer's disease drug candidates. Sci Rep 7(1). https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-017-16635-4

Zlokovic BV, Martel CL, Matsubara E, McComb JG, Zheng G, McCluskey RT, Frangione B, Ghiso J (1996) Glycoprotein 330/megalin: probable role in receptor-mediated transport of apolipoprotein J alone and in a complex with Alzheimer disease amyloid beta at the blood-brain and blood-cerebrospinal fluid barriers. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 93(9):4229–4234. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.93.9.4229

Autism Spectrum Disorder Relationship Between Sleep and Behavior: The Effect of Sleep Variability Exploration

14

Rokeya Akter and Md. Habibur Rahman

Abstract

While it has been shown that severe sleep issues are normal in children through autism spectrum disorder (ASD), and inadequate sleep exacerbates problem-focused daytime behavior, study and clinical practice have not been very concerned with such relationships. The recommendations on therapy for treating challenging behaviors in ASD do not include sleep or are very minimal. In addition, less attention is being paid to children with low autism, who are frequently affected by extreme sleep disruptions and difficulties with their behavior. This chapter discusses the nature of ASD sleep disorders and emphasizes the implications of sleep disruptions for people with low autism. This is suggested to help understand symptoms and behavior profiles (or vice versa) and thereby contribute to better-targeted treatments by identifying ASD children based on the essence of their sleep disorders. This chapter ends by addressing current knowledge limitations and suggests fields that are essential for future study. The treatment of ASD sleep is highly likely to improve the conduct of the day and the family in this exposed population. In this chapter, we demonstrate the need to define sleep profiles for children with low-functioning autism, particularly for challenging behavior in this condition.

R. Akter
Department of Pharmacy, Jagannath University, Sadarghat, Dhaka, Bangladesh

M. H. Rahman (✉)
Department of Global Medical Science, Wonju College of Medicine, Yonsei University, Wonju, Gangwon-do, South Korea

Department of Pharmaceutical Sciences and Drug Research, Punjabi University, Patiala, Punjab, India

G. Md Ashraf, A. Alexiou (eds.), *Autism Spectrum Disorder and Alzheimer's Disease*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-4558-7_14

Keywords

Low-functioning autism · Treating sleep in ASD · Autism spectrum disorder · Exploration

14.1 Introduction

Autism spectrum disorder (ASD) is a neurodevelopmental condition marked by impairments in social contact and the occurrence of restrictive and repetitive behaviors and desires (Del Barrio 2016). Often people with ASD have issues with mental health, such as observational/powerful behavior, aggressiveness, self-injury, mood swings, hyperactivity and attention problems, anxiety, and sleep problems (Anagnostou et al. 2015). Such problems coexist with the main signs of diagnosis and have an overall effect on the functioning, quality of life, and care results for people living with ASD. ASD is a condition characterized by problems in social contact and repetitive and stereotyped attitudes (Cooper 2017). While ASD's global burden is unknown today, the company costs for this condition were recently estimated in the United States at $126 billion and in the United Kingdom at $34 billion (World Health Organization 2013). Autism is one of the most enigmatic childhood development disorders, with a dramatic rise from 1 in 88 children in 2008 to 1 in 68 in 2010 (Christensen et al. 2016).This rise and economic burden establishes ASD patients as one of the most important clinical research and development priorities. In ASD, the prevalence of sleep disorders is between 50 and 80%. Sleep issues are one of the key concerns posed by child caregivers with ASD (Humphreys et al. 2014; Reynolds and Malow 2011). Sleep performs many functions in a growing child including energy consumption, brain development, consolidation of memory, and cognition (Stores and Wiggs 1998). At present, children through autism with sleep disturbances with more than 40–80% sleep issues, in comparison to 25–40% normally developing children (TYP) is one of the most burdensome concerns of the children with autism (Marrus and Constantino 2016). Owing to the importance of regular sleep, the outcome of sleep issues is potentially serious for people with ASD. Recent work has found inadequate sleep aggravates the frequency of main ASD symptoms (Tudor et al. 2012; Liu et al. 2006) and other ill-adaptive behaviors (e.g., self-injury, tantrums, and violent behavior) (Henderson et al. 2011; Ferguson et al. 2019). The association between sleep profiles and behavior issues in people through ASD has been limited to date. The basic nature of the disorders in people with low autism cannot be addressed by present sleep therapies. In this chapter, we demonstrate the need to define sleep profiles for children with low-functioning autism, particularly for challenging behavior in this condition.

14.2 Autism Spectrum Disorder Sleeping Problems

ASD also leads to comorbid disorders and related symptoms, including sleep disorders (Matson and Rivet 2008; LoVullo and Matson 2009). Poor sleep among parents and caregivers of ASD is one of the most burdensome and heavy complaints. Evidence suggests that about 40–80% of people with ASD are sleeping, and the risk does not seem to depend on the extent of cognitive impair (Cortesi et al. 2010). Other findings found that individuals with low autism are more vulnerable than those with higher function, despite the degree and extent of their cognitive disorder, to recurrent dormant process disturbances (Sajith and Clarke 2007). This chapter suggests that recognizing, defining, and treating low-functioning autism sleep disturbances may have beneficial effects for related symptoms and daytime behavior and thereby enhance the lives of this group.

14.3 Autism and Poor Functioning

ASD is known for its extraordinary phenotypic heterogeneity, also considered an obstruction to the investigation of diagnosis, etiology, treatment, and prediction (Charman et al. 2011). The degrees of disability of ASD people are variably described as having a rational proportion that is not as large (<70) and higher (T70), correspondingly. The level of disability is therefore variably different among individuals who have low autism and high autism (Battle 2013). In addition to the signs of core ASD, many children with low autism can have extreme behavioral problems including tantrums, violence, environmental damage, a socially deficient behavior, and self-injury (Kanne et al. 2011). The new DSM-V are the far bigger impairments in people with low autism than those encountered by their more successful peers (Ni Chuileann and Quigley 2013). There is also a much more nuanced medical image of children with low-working autism, with more ASD symptoms and related co-morbidities, and a broad intervention for children over a lifetime. To date, equal consideration has not been extended to these groups of people about individuals through high-functioning autism.

14.4 ASD and Other Psychological Symptoms

A third possibility is that sleep disorders are entirely irrelevant to ASD. The association between sleep disturbances and related psychiatric comorbidities in people who have ASD is significant in this context. Sleep disorders can exacerbate related psychiatric symptoms such as interference or abuse (Daroff 1991). In comparison, medical conditions like attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) can also be linked to exacerbating sleep disturbances in individuals with ASD. It is characterized by difficulty with social communication as evidenced by "deficits in social-emotional reciprocity deficits in nonverbal communicative behaviors for social interaction deficits in developing, maintaining and understanding relationships"

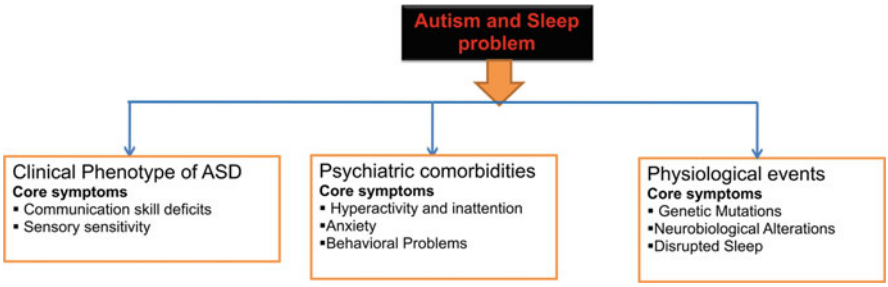


Fig. 14.1 ASD and sleep-associated problems symptoms

(Liu et al. 2017). People with ASD are often represented literally, directly, honestly, steadily, and loyally in plain language (Conte 2021). Many people with ASD are distressed by unanticipated schedule changes or unexpected events and tend to thrive with rules and routine (Henry 2020). ASD and sleep-associated problems are shown in Fig. 14.1.

14.5 Sleep Disorder Variation in ASD

ASD is seen as a multifaceted condition with various symptoms in individuals, it is no wonder that many sleep disorders in this population are prevalent. Furthermore, the sleep pattern variation in ASD indicates mixed phonotypical ASD sample profiles. Excessive sleep delay, decreased sleep duration, declared sleep time, increased sleep wake, and sleep resistance for 1 day are the most common problems for children with ASD; see (Hollway and Aman 2011) for further review. Therefore, sleep problem that is common for ASD children, but others. Such sleep issues seem to continue throughout the patient's life (Matson et al. 2008a), and individuals with ASD who have an ASD problem also suffer from sleep problems together (Rong et al. 2021; Souders et al. 2009). Several of those issues can be categorized as a primary sleep disorder (e.g., insomnia, parasomnia, and circadian sleep-wake diseases) under the International Classification of Sleep Disorders (ICSD-3) (Daroff 1991). Table 14.1 displays mainly the common sleep problems in ASD, according to ICSD-3, to provide a sense of the sleep spectrum and severity of difficulties in ASD. To date, several sleep research studies at ASD have concentrated on individuals who can communicate with and participate in sleep actigraphy and polysomnography with high-functioning autism (Allik et al. 2008). The existence and occurrence of sleep disorders in low-functioning autism is generally unclear. The cruelty of sleep disorders (such as sleep and sleep delay) and the extent of autism symptoms (e.g., communication deficits) was shown by one study (Tudor et al. 2012). One research has indicated that the increased severity of the autism causes an increased risk of sleep difficulties, but these linkages are still uncertain, and low-functioning autism sleep profiles have not yet been explained. To date, precise sleep patterns and symptoms of low autism persons remain unknown.

Table 14.1 ICSD-3 Sleep disturbances in children through ASD with a description and confirmation identification

ICSD-3 classification	Sleep summary	Study	Sleep actions	Significant findings of the ASD population
Insomnia	The initiation of sleep, treatment, length, consolidation, or coherence is an ongoing issue	Wiggs and Stores (2004)	Actigraphy and SQ	Increased latency of sleep, night awakens, and low sleep effectiveness
	Includes resistance to sleep, regular night awakenings, and/or sleep failure	Malow et al. (2014), Deye et al. (2016)	PSG and CSHQ	Sleep quality decreases, sleep takes longer, and wakes occasionally at night (2–3 h)
		Goodlin-Jones et al. (2008)	Actigraphy and SD	Sleeping time is lower in comparison with TYP or DD children
		Krakowiak et al. (2008)	SQ	Improved sleep and night awakenings in contrast to traditional children
		Anders et al. (2011)	Actigraphy and SD	ASD children 2 years of age slept on average less than controls for 24 h every 24 h
Parasomnias	Undesirable physical sensations that take place during sleep or sleep excitement. Features nightmares, wake screams, dynamic movements,	Hering et al. (1999)	Actigraphy and SQ	54% of children have numerous and early night anticipation with ASD
	Hallucinations and unconscious movement of the nervous system	Doo and Wing (2006)	SQ, CSHQ, and actigraphy	All studies indicate higher parasomnia rates in children with ASD in accordance with similar groups
		Schreck and Mulick (2000)		
Circadian rhythm sleep-wake disorders	Changes to the circadian time keeping system, its function for preparation, or misalignment of the external and endogenous circadian rhythm manifestations in sleep initiation and maintenance difficulty	Giannotti et al. (2008)	PSG and CSHQ	10% of children living with ASD reported problems with sleep that differ by season as light/dark cycle fluctuations
		Tordjman et al. (2013)	Measures of melatonin	Strong routine and weak nocturnal melatonin relative to controls in individuals with ASD

14.6 Behavioral Problems

Children with ASD also have several issues, including agitation, violence, self-injury, hyperactivity, impulsiveness, and noncompliance (Postorino et al. 2017). Such behavioral issues raise parental stress and negatively impact family life quality (Dabrowska and Pisula 2010; Mugno et al. 2007). Several studies have shown that sleep disorders can intensify behavioral issues in people with ASD (Patzold et al. 1998; Goldman et al. 2011). For example, in a study of 45 children with ASD, Fadini et al. (2015) established that sleep disruption was connected with the use of the Child Behavior Checklist (CBCL) for thinking and complete behavioral issues. In 166 kids with ASD relative to 111 uninfluenced babies, Park et al. (2012) reviewed the sleep disorders and their correlations with comorbid psychoanalysis. The authors find that children with ASD and sleep disorders are more likely than children who are not sleep-impaired to engage in violent behavior, internalize, externalize, and have total problems of behavior. This result supports the idea that improving the sleep of young children can reduce behavioral problems for children and in effect can reduce parental stress and improve the functioning of the family. One of the study on the practice route in children and youths with ASD for detection, assessment, and management of insomnia indicates to pharmacological treatment (i.e., melatonin) might be suggested in certain circumstances (Malow et al. 2012). Parents with kids with ASD and sleep disorders should also use tools to cope with these disorders. The function of parents in lessons them techniques to avoid or react to such behaviors is commendable for parent training as the first-line intervention model. Competent measures such as sleep hygiene in children with ASD are successful in managing sleep difficulties (Dunn et al. 2012; Loring et al. 2016; Pattison et al. 2020). Randomized controlled trials by Johnson and others have shown the feasibility and initial efficacy of parent training interventions in sleep disorders in a population of well-characterized young children with ASD (Johnson et al. 2013). Several features in ASD were identified for early disorder characterization and are often referred to as "Red ASD flags" (Leaf et al. 2020). Symptoms of ASD and features usually occur at the age of 2, and most ASD children prefer solitaire, no pretense, or symbolic play up to this age as well (Leader et al. 2020).

14.7 Over-Activity and Carelessness

Hyperactivity and inattention to ASD are frequently found in children with ASD, with about 30% meeting the diagnostic requirements for ADHD (complicated hyperactivity disorder with attention deficit) (Simonoff et al. 2008). Numerous research found that children with ADHD are experiencing serious sleep disturbances including erratic sleep, sleep disruptions, insomnia, and finally day sleep (Singh and Zimmerman 2015). The presence of these signs may also increase the probability that people with ASD may suffer from sleeping disorders. DeVincent et al. (2007) also showed that ASD children with sleep issues have had higher ADHD levels compared with children without sleep problems as they investigated the associations

between sleep problems and psychological symptoms. Wheelwright et al. 2010 also concluded that ASD weaker sleepers had greater recorded inattention, hyperactivity, and restricted/repetitive behavior in the assessment of the probable effect of parental sleep issues on sleep planning during objective trials (e.g., actigram). Also care for symptoms of ADHD, such as methylphenidate, drugs are recognized to interfere with sleep and even to boost sleep issues. Sangal et al., for example, noticed in a randomized, two-blind crossover study (Sangal et al. 2006) that sleep-induced latency was substantially higher than that of atomoxetine in 85 ADHD infants with methylphenidate.

14.8 Treating ASD Children's Sleep Disorders

Significant sleep disorders in children with autism are increasingly apparent, but little study has been carried out in this population on the evidence of sleep treatments (Knight and Johnson 2014). Sleep disturbances in ASD are often untreated and ignored because many behavioral issues continue to prevail (Cortesi et al. 2012). By contrast, research has shown that melatonin is helpful even to kids with ASD who suffer from sleep latency problems because night wake is known to increase and to disrupt sleep maintenance (Rossignol and Frye 2011). Some research promotes the effectiveness of melatonin in reducing the duration and increasing the total amount of sleep when administered near bedtime (Goldman et al. 2014; Dodge and Wilson 2001). Effective intervention for improving the start of sleep and maintenance in ASS has been shown in the conduct of interventions such as sleep hygiene strategies aimed at environment change to facilitate daily sleep-wake cycles (Weiskop et al. 2007). The potency of melatonin is also affected by sleep disturbances and environmental and other medical conditions (Damiani et al. 2014). Despite the absence of biological causes, the first diagnosis of sleep disturbance in ASD is parent-based education and behavioral strategies (Grigg-Damberger and Ralls 2013). The concepts regulating sleep hygiene include the selection and setup of a suitable bed, increasing TV views, and stimuli for emotion and action during the night. For patients with circadian sleep disturbances, light treatment is efficient for progressing or delaying the sleep period, and it may be recommended for children with circadian disruption of an ASD (Miano et al. 2007). However, light therapy is limited in studies for people for poorly functioning autism. This advanced clinical therapy is suitable for people with low autism who have little to no spoken abilities on average. The efficacy of conduct treatment strategies currently is therefore dependent on small trials and lacks quantitative sleep metrics. Children with a range of conditions not limited to ASD have now also been included (Malow et al. 2014). Due to the correlations between insufficient sleep, increased daytime issues, and parental pressure in ASD, successful sleep strategies tailored to the cognitive and developmental level of children are very important.

14.9 The Correlation Between Bad Sleep and Problematic ASD Behavior

Sleep disturbance is associated with emotional and compartmental issues including internalization and externalization of symptoms during typical development (Malow et al. 2014). However, increasing evidence indicates that child sleep issues can make a big difference to the well-being, actions, attention, cognition, and school performance of children (Chen et al. 2006). Lower sleep hours were associated with greater ASD severity and were predictive, including deficiencies in social skills (Richdale and Schreck 2009), cognitive defects, higher expectations, and tighter observance of nonfunctional routines (Schreck et al. 2004). Due to its nature, the consequences of sleep disturbance in this condition are potentially significant, given the associated destructive behavior. ASD signs have been compounded by sleep disorders. As well as aggravating the symptoms of ASD, sleep disorders have also been demonstrated to be associated with increased over-activity levels, agitation, noncompliance, aggressiveness, irritability, and affective issues that can all greatly interfere with the daily functioning. Despite studies into the association between sleeping disturbances and challenging ASD performance, the effect of sleep issues was overlooked for children with low autism (Schreck et al. 2004). Therefore, the two-way interplay between sleep and actions was small. Sleep disturbance is usually linked to emotional and conduct issues including the internalization and externalization of symptoms (Wang et al. 2020). ASD signs have been exacerbated by sleeping problems. Less time sleep was associated, and more serious ASDs such as social ability deficits were predicted. Knowing the severity of sleep disorders in ASD, it is apparent that sleep can be modified in certain populations with ASD (Richardson and Friedman 2016). In addition, sleep treatment has been shown to increase the core symptoms of ASD in a group of people with ASD (e.g., communication and socialization impairments) as well as to decrease the severe behaviors of ASD (Kruppa et al. 2021). The association between sleep difficulties and inappropriate behavior for children with ASD indicates further study is necessary to determine the direct links between specific sleep issues and the specific daily patterns of behavior that might affect people with ASD (Kruppa et al. 2021).

14.9.1 Mood Disturbances and Anxiety

Anxiety was also observed in children and adolescents with ASD, and a meta-analysis found that 39.6% of young people suffering from ASD had clinically high levels of anxiety or at least one anxiety disorder (van Steensel et al. 2011). Research has shown that anxiety is related to psychological hyper-arousal, which in turn can exacerbate sleep and sleep problems (Krämer et al. 2012; Monk et al. 2001). In reality, anxiety can trigger distracting thoughts and concerns during pre-sleep periods, interfering in the onset of sleep. Different studies have shown that anxiety and mood disorders can worsen sleep disorders for typically developing children (Owens 2007; Cortesi et al. 2010; Van der Heijden et al. 2018; Medic et al. 2017).

Similar research also found that anxiety is correlated with insomnia, though insomnia can lead to depression (Johnson et al. 2006; Jansson and Linton 2006). Mood disorders, for example, depressive or bipolar disorders, have also been documented frequently in people with ASD (Simonoff et al. 2012). Both conditions were also associated with abnormal or hyper-arousal cognitive function. It is known, for example, that people with bipolar disorders may suffer from decreased sleep requirements (Gold and Sylvia 2016). An increasing amount of studies recommend that anxiety and mood symptoms are also related to sleep disorders for people with ASD (Paavonen et al. 2008; Quine 1991). A survey of 477 autism children also showed a significant rise in family issues with maternal anxieties and mood symptoms (Mayes and Calhoun 2009). For example, Nadeau et al. (2015) found that a number of issues with sleep were associated with the internalization and externalization of symptoms and the symptoms of anxiety in a study of 102 children with ASD. Past research of anxious children has shown that management of these symptoms improves sleeping conditions (Alfano et al. 2009). These symptoms may minimize problems in sleep even in people with ASD. It is possible. Nonetheless, more research into the potential of reducing sleep disorders is also needed in the psychological or pharmacological treatment approaches tailored to the wants of young people with ADS.

14.9.2 Future Guidance: Sleep and Activity Relationship in ASD

The latest research indicates that people with ASD have a strong one-way relationship between sleep and behavior. Sleep disorders are well-known to aggravate and exacerbate symptoms of ASD in most important areas. These interactions have been studied very well with people with mixed groups of ASD populations and with people with high-functioning autism in a cross-sectional research. Target tools like polysomnography and wrist actigraphy (a tool which measures physiological conditions during sleep, like an electroencephalogram) were used to confirm the associations between bad sleep and daytime behaviors in a mixed sample of ASD kids (Knight and Johnson 2014; Goodlin-Jones et al. 2009). With the severity awareness of sleep disturbances in ASD, sleep in some populations with ASD is modifiable. (Reed et al. 2009). For children with autism, medication intervention including melatonin is an important sleep intervention (Guénolé et al. 2011). Moderate evidence is also available that holistic parent monitoring interventions as the CSHQ are a high-level single-point response intervention to help determine childhood ASD sleep efficiency (Hodge et al. 2012). Sleep therapy has shown that the principal symptoms of ASD in a subgroup of ASD individuals are improved and complicated activity in ASD is decreased (Tordjman et al. 2013). Taking into account the two-way correlation between sleep disorders and challenging behavior in ASD, preliminary research indicates that sleep disorder and sleep disorder do not result in positive outcomes in isolation (Richdale et al. 2014). ABA (applied behavior analysis) therapy is known to be effective in helping a subset of children with ASD with disruptive behavior; it is known to affect learning levels and

cognitive efficiency. Furthermore, the effects are affected by the consistency of learning. Since sleep is involved in learning behaviors including obedience, irritability, hyperactivity, and aggressiveness, more research is now emerging to show that sleep can be an obstacle to ABA care with ASD (Russell et al. 2013). The association between sleep issues and inappropriate behavior, which has been listed for children with ASD since daytime, indicates that more work is needed to establish direct ties between such problems and everyday comportment habits that can influence individuals with ASD.

14.9.3 Further Fields of Study

As mentioned, recent work primarily focuses on more productive ends of autism and literature in people with low autism who may have the most serious problems in sleep and behavior. However, though recent studies have shown strong connections between inadequate sleep and problematic behaviors in ASD, it is still unclear, as discussed above, how special the particular issues are in sleep and symptoms of people suffering from low-functioning autism. The study of sleep in children with poorly functioning autism poses particular analytical challenges. Biased parental accounts impart bias, negative halo effects (Souders et al. 2017), and individuals with sensor sensitivities or lack of engagement have difficulty tolerating objective intervention, such as PSG and actigraphy (Hodge et al. 2012). To date, very few studies have been performed longitudinally on compartmental problems and ASD sleeping conditions, most of which have been cross sections. Transversal studies often investigate a single age group, and the majority of research includes mixed children and adolescents. Since children with ASD are listed as one of the most significant priority sleep research populations by the National Sleep Foundation (Mindell et al. 2009), more accurate, reliable, nonintrusive sleep measures and child autism data are needed to better define sleep quality and quantity in this population. It is understood that the extent of ASD and behavioral disorder wax and fall over development with some activity that improves with age (Matson et al. 2008b). Since various behavioral patterns are found in particular ages and maturity age does not always correlate with chronological age in ASD, longitudinal designs are important for researching relationships. Up to now, only one study examines retrospective, high-functioning autism and usually improves regulation oversleep disturbance and behavior. Little is understood how sleep changes over time in ASD and how variables such as age and stage of development can be associated with this transition. The research found no association between sleep difficulty and developmental period (i.e., childhood, adolescence, and adulthood) in ASD (Delahaye et al. 2014) although sleep difficulties with age decreased with other tests, albeit cross sectional, comparable to normal developmental difficulties (Giannotti et al. 2008; Goldman et al. 2012). Therefore, further longitudinal studies are necessary to monitor the pathway to sleep in this population to recognize key ASD phenotypes and link these to sleep profiles. For example, sleeping problems in ASD can vary with medication, climate, or comorbidities like epilepsy or GI problems. Whether co-occurring

disorders cause behavioral issues or continue to present problems, or exacerbate existing ASDs, is difficult to determine. To answer this poignant question, research must be carried out. To improve sleep and to promote more optimistic predictions by improving day-to-day actions and family functioning in that population, it is important to recognize and provide treatment for sleep problems in ASD. Studies have a common proposal that factors resulting in the ASD phenotype should be identified and instead tailored therapeutic measures designed to restore or minimize particular deficits. Eventually, treatment recommendations for helping people with low autism to handle difficult behavior often do not include sleep or are rather minimal in scope. ASD sound resistance may be correlated with lower waking thresholds, sleep fragmentation, etc. This chapter suggests that identifying ASD children with sleep disturbances based of the essence of their sleep issues may help them understand signs and behaviors (or vice versa). The exposure of children with low-functioning self-regulation behavior (such as self-harming behavior) can, for example, increase sleep and sleep latency before they go to bed until they sleep and become sleepy. Increased light sensitivity from exposure to the device and/or tablet blue-enriched light may also be correlated with circadian timing and melatonin issues, which contribute to increasing sleep-wake circadian patterns in this population.

14.10 Concluding Remarks

Although severe sleep disorders are common in children with ASD and inadequate sleep exacerbates the everyday behavior of particular problems, the results are premature. A new avenue for the advancement of procedures is provided by having a more detailed insight into the human existence of sleep problems at ASD as sleep is an environment that can be remedied. Because sleep is a key physiological process (e.g., learning, memory, neuroplasticity), sleep disturbances play a key role, including the exacerbation of problematic behavior, in ASDs. Nonetheless, to date, studies have failed to offer conclusive proof of the connection between sleep and actions in people (of all ages) who are poorly functioning with autism. This review underlines the importance for children with ASD to identify sleep profiles and to include various aspects of their symptom profiles in sleep deficiencies (and vice versa). In addition, this knowledge results in new therapeutically strategies and action that, in 68 individuals impacted by this overall developmental condition, will ideally enhance the long-term outcomes.

Conflicts of Interest Authors declare that he has no conflict of interest.

References

Allik, H., Larsson, J. O., & Smedje, H. (2008). Sleep patterns in school-age children with Asperger syndrome or high-functioning autism: a follow-up study. Journal of Autism and Developmental Disorders, 38(9), 1625-1633.

Anagnostou, E., Jones, N., Huerta, M., Halladay, A. K., Wang, P., Scahill, L., ... & Dawson, G. (2015). Measuring social communication behaviors as a treatment endpoint in individuals with autism spectrum disorder. Autism, 19(5), 622-636.

Anders, T. F., Iosif, A. M., Schwichtenberg, A. J., Tang, K., & Goodlin-Jones, B. L. (2011). Six-month sleep–wake organization and stability in preschool-age children with autism, developmental delay, and typical development. Behavioral sleep medicine, 9(2), 92-106.

Battle DE (2013) Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders (DSM). CoDAS. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-642-28753-4_1094

Charman T, Jones CRG, Pickles A, Simonoff E, Baird G, Happé F (2011) Defining the cognitive phenotype of autism. Brain Res. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.brainres.2010.10.075

Chen F, Lemonnier E, Lazartigues A, Planche P (2006) Sleep problems and information processing, a "disconnection effect" in autism? [4]. Med Hypotheses. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mehy.2006.01.004

Christensen DL, Baio J, Van Naarden Braun K, Bilder D, Charles J, Constantino JN, Daniels J, Durkin MS, Fitzgerald RT, Kurzius-Spencer M, Lee LC, Pettygrove S, Robinson C, Schulz E, Wells C, Wingate MS, Zahorodny W, Yeargin-Allsopp M (2016) Prevalence and characteristics of autism spectrum disorder among children aged 8 years—autism and developmental disabilities monitoring network, 11 sites, United States, 2012. MMWR Surveill Summ. https://doi.org/10.15585/mmwr.ss6503a1

Conte DA (2021) The lived experiences of adults with autism spectrum disorder in the workplace: a descriptive phenomenological study. Northcentral University

Cooper R (2017) Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders (DSM). Knowl Organ. https://doi.org/10.5771/0943-7444-2017-8-668

Cortesi F, Giannotti F, Ivanenko A, Johnson K (2010) Sleep in children with autistic spectrum disorder. Sleep Med. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.sleep.2010.01.010

Cortesi F, Giannotti F, Sebastiani T, Panunzi S, Valente D (2012) Controlled-release melatonin, singly and combined with cognitive behavioural therapy, for persistent insomnia in children with autism spectrum disorders: a randomized placebo-controlled trial. J Sleep Res. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2869.2012.01021.x

Dabrowska A, Pisula E (2010) Parenting stress and coping styles in mothers and fathers of pre-school children with autism and Down syndrome. J Intellect Disabil Res. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2788.2010.01258.x

Damiani JM, Sweet BV, Sohoni P (2014) Melatonin: an option for managing sleep disorders in children with autism spectrum disorder. Am J Health Syst Pharm. https://doi.org/10.2146/ajhp130215

Daroff RB (1991) The international classification of sleep disorders: diagnostic and coding manual. Neurology. https://doi.org/10.1212/wnl.41.1.160

Del Barrio V (2016) Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders. Curated Ref Collect Neurosci Biobehav Psychol. https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-12-809324-5.05530-9

Delahaye J, Kovacs E, Sikora D, Hall TA, Orlich F, Clemons TE, Van Der Weerd E, Glick L, Kuhlthau K (2014) The relationship between health-related quality of life and sleep problems in children with autism spectrum disorders. Res Autism Spectr Disord. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rasd.2013.12.015

DeVincent CJ, Gadow KD, Delosh D, Geller L (2007) Sleep disturbance and its relation to DSM-IV psychiatric symptoms in preschool-age children with pervasive developmental disorder and community controls. J Child Neurol. https://doi.org/10.1177/0883073807300310

Deye N, Vincent F, Michel P, Ehrmann S, Da Silva D, Piagnerelli M et al (2016) Changes in cardiac arrest patient's temperature management after the 2013 "TTM" trial: results from an international survey. Ann Intensive Care 6(1). https://doi.org/10.1186/s13613-015-0104-6

Dodge NN, Wilson GA (2001) Melatonin for treatment of sleep disorders in children with developmental disabilities. J Child Neurol. https://doi.org/10.1177/088307380101600808

Doo S, Wing YK (2006) Sleep problems of children with pervasive developmental disorders: correlation with parental stress. Dev Med Child Neurol. https://doi.org/10.1017/S001216220600137X

Fadini CC, Lamônica DA, Fett-Conte AC, Osório E, Zuculo GM, Giacheti CM, Pinato L (2015) Influence of sleep disorders on the behavior of individuals with autism spectrum disorder. Front Hum Neurosci. https://doi.org/10.3389/fnhum.2015.00347

Ferguson BJ, Dovgan K, Takahashi N, Beversdorf DQ (2019) The relationship among gastrointestinal symptoms, problem behaviors, and internalizing symptoms in children and adolescents with autism spectrum disorder. Front Psych. https://doi.org/10.3389/fpsyt.2019.00194

Giannotti F, Cortesi F, Cerquiglini A, Miraglia D, Vagnoni C, Sebastiani T, Bernabei P (2008) An investigation of sleep characteristics, EEG abnormalities and epilepsy in developmentally regressed and non-regressed children with autism. J Autism Dev Disord. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10803-008-0584-4

Gold AK, Sylvia LG (2016) The role of sleep in bipolar disorder. Nat Sci Sleep. https://doi.org/10.2147/NSS.S85754

Goldman SE, McGrew S, Johnson KP, Richdale AL, Clemons T, Malow BA (2011) Sleep is associated with problem behaviors in children and adolescents with autism spectrum disorders. Res Autism Spectr Disord. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rasd.2011.01.010

Goldman SE, Richdale AL, Clemons T, Malow BA (2012) Parental sleep concerns in autism spectrum disorders: variations from childhood to adolescence. J Autism Dev Disord. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10803-011-1270-5

Goldman SE, Adkins KW, Calcutt MW, Carter MD, Goodpaste RL, Wang L, Shi Y, Burgess HJ, Hachey DL, Malow BA (2014) Melatonin in children with autism spectrum disorders: endogenous and pharmacokinetic profiles in relation to sleep. J Autism Dev Disord. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10803-014-2123-9

Goodlin-Jones BL, Tang K, Liu J, Anders TF (2008) Sleep patterns in preschool-age children with autism, developmental delay, and typical development. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry. https://doi.org/10.1097/CHI.0b013e3181799f7c

Goodlin-Jones B, Tang K, Liu J, Anders TF (2009) Sleep problems, sleepiness and daytime behavior in preschool-age children. J Child Psychol Psychiatry Allied Discip. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1469-7610.2009.02110.x

Grigg-Damberger M, Ralls F (2013) Treatment strategies for complex behavioral insomnia in children with neurodevelopmental disorders. Curr Opin Pulm Med. https://doi.org/10.1097/MCP.0b013e328365ab89

Guénolé F, Godbout R, Nicolas A, Franco P, Claustrat B, Baleyte JM (2011) Melatonin for disordered sleep in individuals with autism spectrum disorders: systematic review and discussion. Sleep Med Rev. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.smrv.2011.02.001

Henderson JA, Barry TD, Bader SH, Jordan SS (2011) The relation among sleep, routines, and externalizing behavior in children with an autism spectrum disorder. Res Autism Spectr Disord. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rasd.2010.09.003

Henry SJ (2020) Successful transitioning from high school? Case study of students with high-functioning autism. Northcentral University

Hering E, Epstein R, Elroy S, Iancu DR, Zelnik N (1999) Sleep patterns in autistic children. J Autism Dev Disord. https://doi.org/10.1023/A:1023092627223

Hodge D, Parnell AMN, Hoffman CD, Sweeney DP (2012) Methods for assessing sleep in children with autism spectrum disorders: a review. Res Autism Spectr Disord. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rasd.2012.05.009

Hollway JA, Aman MG (2011) Sleep correlates of pervasive developmental disorders: a review of the literature. Res Dev Disabil. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ridd.2011.04.001

Humphreys JS, Gringras P, Blair PS, Scott N, Henderson J, Fleming PJ, Emond AM (2014) Sleep patterns in children with autistic spectrum disorders: a prospective cohort study. Arch Dis Child. https://doi.org/10.1136/archdischild-2013-304083

Jansson M, Linton SJ (2006) The role of anxiety and depression in the development of insomnia: cross-sectional and prospective analyses. Psychol Health. https://doi.org/10.1080/14768320500129015

Johnson EO, Roth T, Breslau N (2006) The association of insomnia with anxiety disorders and depression: exploration of the direction of risk. J Psychiatr Res. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jpsychires.2006.07.008

Johnson CR, Turner KS, Foldes E, Brooks MM, Kronk R, Wiggs L (2013) Behavioral parent training to address sleep disturbances in young children with autism spectrum disorder: a pilot trial. Sleep Med. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.sleep.2013.05.013

Kanne SM, Gerber AJ, Quirmbach LM, Sparrow SS, Cicchetti DV, Saulnier CA (2011) The role of adaptive behavior in autism spectrum disorders: implications for functional outcome. J Autism Dev Disord. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10803-010-1126-4

Knight RM, Johnson CM (2014) Using a behavioral treatment package for sleep problems in children with autism spectrum disorders. Child Family Behav Ther. https://doi.org/10.1080/07317107.2014.934171

Krakowiak P, Goodlin-Jones B, Hertz-Picciotto I, Croen LA, Hansen RL (2008) Sleep problems in children with autism spectrum disorders, developmental delays, and typical development: a population-based study. J Sleep Res. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2869.2008.00650.x

Krämer M, Seefeldt WL, Heinrichs N, Tuschen-Caffier B, Schmitz J, Wolf OT, Blechert J (2012) Subjective, autonomic, and endocrine reactivity during social stress in children with social phobia. J Abnorm Child Psychol. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10802-011-9548-9

Kruppa JA, Reindl V, Gerloff C, Oberwelland Weiss E, Prinz J, Herpertz-Dahlmann B et al (2021) Brain and motor synchrony in children and adolescents with ASD—a fNIRS hyperscanning study. Soc Cogn Affect Neurosci 16(1–2):103–116

Leader G, Tuohy E, Chen JL, Mannion A, Gilroy SP (2020) Feeding problems, gastrointestinal symptoms, challenging behavior and sensory issues in children and adolescents with autism spectrum disorder. 1–10

Leaf JB, Cihon JH, Ferguson JL, Milne CM, Leaf R, McEachin JJ (2020) Advances in our understanding of behavioral intervention: 1980 to 2020 for individuals diagnosed with autism spectrum disorder. 1–16

Liu X, Hubbard JA, Fabes RA, Adam JB (2006) Sleep disturbances and correlates of children with autism spectrum disorders. Child Psychiatry Hum Dev. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10578-006-0028-3

Liu R, Salisbury JP, Vahabzadeh A, Sahin NT (2017) Feasibility of an autism-focused augmented reality smartglasses system for social communication and behavioral coaching. Front Pediatr 5:145

LoVullo SV, Matson JL (2009) Comorbid psychopathology in adults with autism spectrum disorders and intellectual disabilities. Res Dev Disabil. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ridd.2009.05.004

Malow BA, Byars K, Johnson K, Weiss S, Bernal P, Goldman SE, Panzer R, Coury DL, Glaze DG (2012) A practice pathway for the identification, evaluation, and management of insomnia in children and adolescents with autism spectrum disorders. Pediatrics. https://doi.org/10.1542/peds.2012-0900I

Malow BA, Adkins KW, Reynolds A, Weiss SK, Loh A, Fawkes D, Katz T, Goldman SE, Madduri N, Hundley R, Clemons T (2014) Parent-based sleep education for children with autism spectrum disorders. J Autism Dev Disord. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10803-013-1866-z

Marrus N, Constantino JN (2016) Autism spectrum disorders. Curated Ref Collect Neurosci Biobehav Psychol. https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-12-809324-5.23581-5

Matson JL, Rivet TT (2008) Characteristics of challenging behaviours in adults with autistic disorder, PDD-NOS, and intellectual disability. J Intellect Dev Disabil. https://doi.org/10.1080/13668250802492600

Matson JL, Ancona MN, Wilkins J (2008a) Sleep disturbances in adults with autism spectrum disorders and severe intellectual impairments. J Ment Health Res Intellect Disabil. https://doi.org/10.1080/19315860801988210

Matson JL, Wilkins J, Ken JM (2008b) The relationship of challenging behaviors to severity and symptoms of autism spectrum disorders. J Ment Health Res Intellect Disabil. https://doi.org/10.1080/19315860802611415

Mayes SD, Calhoun SL (2009) Variables related to sleep problems in children with autism. Res Autism Spectr Disord. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rasd.2009.04.002

Miano S, Bruni O, Elia M, Trovato A, Smerieri A, Verrillo E, Roccella M, Terzano MG, Ferri R (2007) Sleep in children with autistic spectrum disorder: a questionnaire and polysomnographic study. Sleep Med. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.sleep.2007.01.014

Mindell JA, Meltzer LJ, Carskadon MA, Chervin RD (2009) Developmental aspects of sleep hygiene: findings from the 2004 National Sleep Foundation Sleep in America Poll. Sleep Med. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.sleep.2008.07.016

Monk C, Kovelenko P, Ellman LM, Sloan RP, Bagiella E, Gorman JM, Pine DS (2001) Enhanced stress reactivity in paediatric anxiety disorders: implications for future cardiovascular health. Int J Neuropsychopharmacol. https://doi.org/10.1017/S146114570100236X

Mugno D, Ruta L, D'Arrigo VG, Mazzone L (2007) Impairment of quality of life in parents of children and adolescents with pervasive developmental disorder. Health Qual Life Outcomes. https://doi.org/10.1186/1477-7525-5-22

Nadeau JM, Arnold EB, Keene AC, Collier AB, Lewin AB, Murphy TK, Storch EA (2015) Frequency and clinical correlates of sleep-related problems among anxious youth with autism spectrum disorders. Child Psychiatry Hum Dev. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10578-014-0496-9

Ni Chuileann S, Quigley J (2013) Assessing recollection and familiarity in low functioning autism. J Autism Dev Disord. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10803-012-1697-3

Paavonen EJ, Vehkalahti K, Vanhala R, Von Wendt L, Nieminen-von Wendt T, Aronen ET (2008) Sleep in children with Asperger syndrome. J Autism Dev Disord. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10803-007-0360-x

Park S, Cho SC, Cho IH, Kim BN, Kim JW, Shin MS, Chung US, Park TW, Son JW, Yoo HJ (2012) Sleep problems and their correlates and comorbid psychopathology of children with autism spectrum disorders. Res Autism Spectr Disord. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rasd.2012.02.004

Patzold LM, Richdale AL, Tonge BJ (1998) An investigation into sleep characteristics of children with autism and Asperger's disorder. J Paediatr Child Health. https://doi.org/10.1046/j.1440-1754.1998.00291.x

Postorino V, Sharp WG, McCracken CE, Bearss K, Burrell TL, Evans AN, Scahill L (2017) A systematic review and meta-analysis of parent training for disruptive behavior in children with autism spectrum disorder. Clin Child Fam Psychol Rev. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10567-017-0237-2

Quine L (1991) Sleep problems in children with mental handicap. J Intellect Disabil Res. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2788.1991.tb00402.x

Reed HE, McGrew SG, Artibee K, Surdkya K, Goldman SE, Frank K, Wang L, Malow BA (2009) Parent-based sleep education workshops in autism. J Child Neurol. https://doi.org/10.1177/0883073808331348

Reynolds AM, Malow BA (2011) Sleep and autism spectrum disorders. Pediatr Clin North Am. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pcl.2011.03.009

Richardson M, Friedman N (2016) Clinician's guide to pediatric sleep disorders. CRC Press

Richdale AL, Schreck KA (2009) Sleep problems in autism spectrum disorders: prevalence, nature, & possible biopsychosocial aetiologies. Sleep Med Rev. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.smrv.2009.02.003

Richdale AL, Baker E, Short M, Gradisar M (2014) The role of insomnia, pre-sleep arousal and psychopathology symptoms in daytime impairment in adolescents with high-functioning autism spectrum disorder. Sleep Med. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.sleep.2014.05.005

Rong X, Jiang L, Qu M, Liu Z (2021) Enhancing therapeutic efficacy of donepezil by combined therapy: a comprehensive review. Curr Pharm Des 27(3):332–344

Rossignol DA, Frye RE (2011) Melatonin in autism spectrum disorders: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Dev Med Child Neurol. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1469-8749.2011.03980.x

Russell M, Baldwin CM, Quan SF (2013) Sleep disorders among children with autism spectrum disorders. Sleep

Sajith SG, Clarke D (2007) Melatonin and sleep disorders associated with intellectual disability: a clinical review. J Intellect Disabil Res. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1365-2788.2006.00893.x

Sangal RB, Owens J, Allen AJ, Sutton V, Schuh K, Kelsey D (2006) Effects of atomoxetine and methylphenidate on sleep in children with ADHD. Sleep. https://doi.org/10.1093/sleep/29.12.1573

Schreck KA, Mulick JA (2000) Parental report of sleep problems in children with autism. J Autism Dev Disord. https://doi.org/10.1023/A:1005407622050

Schreck KA, Mulick JA, Smith AF (2004) Sleep problems as possible predictors of intensified symptoms of autism. Res Dev Disabil. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ridd.2003.04.007

Simonoff E, Pickles A, Charman T, Chandler S, Loucas T, Baird G (2008) Psychiatric disorders in children with autism spectrum disorders: prevalence, comorbidity, and associated factors in a population-derived sample. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry. https://doi.org/10.1097/CHI.0b013e318179964f

Simonoff E, Jones CRG, Pickles A, Happé F, Baird G, Charman T (2012) Severe mood problems in adolescents with autism spectrum disorder. J Child Psychol Psychiatry Allied Discip. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1469-7610.2012.02600.x

Singh K, Zimmerman AW (2015) Sleep in autism spectrum disorder and attention deficit hyperactivity disorder. Semin Pediatr Neurol. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.spen.2015.03.006

Souders MC, Mason TBA, Valladares O, Bucan M, Levy SE, Mandell DS, Weaver TE, Pinto-Martin J (2009) Sleep behaviors and sleep quality in children with autism spectrum disorders. Sleep. https://doi.org/10.1093/sleep/32.12.1566

Souders MC, Zavodny S, Eriksen W, Sinko R, Connell J, Kerns C, Schaaf R, Pinto-Martin J (2017) Sleep in children with autism spectrum disorder. Curr Psychiatry Rep. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11920-017-0782-x

Stores G, Wiggs L (1998) Abnormal sleep patterns associated with autism: a brief review of research findings, assessment methods and treatment strategies. Autism. https://doi.org/10.1177/1362361398022004

Tordjman S, Najjar I, Bellissant E, Anderson GM, Barburoth M, Cohen D, Jaafari N, Schischmanoff O, Fagard R, Lagdas E, Kermarrec S, Ribardiere S, Botbol M, Fougerou C, Bronsard G, Vernay-Leconte J (2013) Advances in the research of melatonin in autism spectrum disorders: literature review and new perspectives. Int J Mol Sci. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms141020508

Tudor ME, Hoffman CD, Sweeney DP (2012) Children with autism: sleep problems and symptom severity. Focus Autism Other Dev Disabil. https://doi.org/10.1177/1088357612457989

van Steensel FJA, Bögels SM, Perrin S (2011) Anxiety disorders in children and adolescents with autistic spectrum disorders: a meta-analysis. Clin Child Fam Psychol Rev. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10567-011-0097-0

Wang G, Takahashi M, Wu R, Liu Z, Adachi M, Saito M et al (2020) Association between sleep disturbances and emotional/behavioral problems in Chinese and Japanese preschoolers. Behav Sleep Med 18(3):420–431

Weiskop S, Richdale A, Matthews J (2007) Behavioural treatment to reduce sleep problems in children with autism or fragile X syndrome. Dev Med Child Neurol. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1469-8749.2005.tb01097.x

Wheelwright S, Auyeung B, Allison C, Baron-Cohen S (2010) Defining the broader, medium and narrow autism phenotype among parents using the autism spectrum quotient (AQ). Mol Autism. https://doi.org/10.1186/2040-2392-1-10

Wiggs L, Stores G (2004) Sleep patterns and sleep disorders in children with autistic spectrum disorders: insights using parent report and actigraphy. Dev Med Child Neurol. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0012162204000611

World Health Organization (2013) Comprehensive and coordinated efforts for the management of autism spectrum disorders. In: World Health Organization, Executive Board 133rd Session Provisional Agenda Item 6.1

Cognitive Impairment and Rehabilitation of Children and Adults with Autism Spectrum Disorder

15

Fauzia Nazam and Akbar Husain

Abstract

Since 1943, when Kanner introduced the term "Autism," there has been much progress to identify the nature of impairment in autism spectrum disorder (ASD) among adults and children. Currently, it is classified as a neurodevelopment disorder marked by impaired social cognition, altered sensory stimulation and language deficiency with or without impaired IQ. Despite having clear diagnostic criteria, the heterogeneity in cognitive, language and intellectual abilities across type and ages perplexes the clinical picture of ASD and needs clinical expertise for diagnosis. This chapter outlines the nature of ASD and types of impairment broadly classified in the area of cognition, speech and language, intelligence impairment and executive dysfunctioning. Furthermore, the chapter highlights a range of rehabilitative technique for person with ASD, namely, dialectical behaviour therapy (DBT), cognitive behaviour therapy (CBT), pivotal response treatment (PRT), sensory motor training, parent-mediated intervention (PMT), speech therapy, music therapy and sensory integration therapy. This chapter has also highlighted the current scholarly debate about ASD and DLD (developmental language disorder) categorically different or on the same continuum.

Keywords

Autism spectrum disorder · Social cognition · Cognitive behaviour therapy · Dialectical behaviour therapy · Music therapy · Speech therapy

F. Nazam (✉)
Section of Psychology, Women's College, Aligarh Muslim University, Aligarh, India

A. Husain
Department of Psychology, Aligarh Muslim University, Aligarh, India

G. Md Ashraf, A. Alexiou (eds.), *Autism Spectrum Disorder and Alzheimer's Disease*, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-4558-7_15

In 1943, Kanner used the term autism, which is derived from Greek word "autos" meaning "self" and "ismos" meaning "Action". Autism spectrum disorder (ASD) is a neurodevelopmental disorder (Suthar et al. 2020) characterized by the deficit in social communication and interaction, social and emotional reciprocity, nonverbal communication behaviour (e.g. inability to maintain eye contact, facing away from the listener), developing and maintaining relationship, problems in adjusting to new social context (e.g. absence of interest in others), restricted and repeated behaviour (e.g. a typical speech or movement), excessive routine rituals, fixed interest and hyper-/hypo-reactivity to sensory stimulation (e.g. indifferent to pain, altered vigorous and truncated sniff response, odour identification impairment, hypo-discrimination for sour and bitter taste, i.e. lower taste discrimination, etc.). The symptoms are present in early childhood and cause marked impairment together in everyday functioning (Hyman et al. 2020; American Psychiatric Association 2013). Cognitive, language and intellectual challenges are the major diagnostic criteria for ASD (Hus 2017). Although there are well-defined diagnostic criteria, the heterogeneity in cognitive, language and intellectual abilities across the type and age differentials perplexes the clinical picture of ASD. Children with regression type exhibit more impaired cognitive and social abilities as compared to non-regressive type around the age of 28 months since birth (Matson et al. 2010). Furthermore, compared to early-onset type of ASD among the regression type, symptoms manifest until the age of 2 years proceeded by regression, whereas among children of early-onset type, symptoms manifest soon after birth (Barbeu 2017). A study has found differential IQ in the sample of 156 children with neonatal and regression type with age range of 10–14 years ($M = 11.7$, $SD = 0.9$), where 3% of children were above average IQ (>115), 28% had average IQ (85–115), 16% had below average IQ (<50) and 55% intellectual disability (<70) (Charman et al. 2011). In this chapter, we describe the cognitive impairment and rehabilitation aspects of children and adults with ASD.

15.1 Cognitive Impairment

Mere sensory and perceptual impairment is the classical way of looking at ASD. The DSM-5 (American Psychiatric Association 2013), has shown an improvement and shift of focus to the impaired social cognition (SC), as a key feature of ASD among children and adults. In the new development of literature, the disorder is largely characterized by impaired socio-cognition and language/communication deficiency. Researchers have examined the association between general/specific intelligence and social cognition. Skuse et al. (2009) have found significant correlation between higher verbal IQ and social communication. A recent study has also found low general intelligence hindering social cognition, but up to a certain threshold. They further added that increased intelligence does not add outstanding social cognition in ADS children (Hirosawa et al. 2020).

15.1.1 Social Cognition (SC)

Social cognition includes social motivation, social recognition, social attention and social learning ability (Happe et al. 2017). This is important in the positioning of "self" while interacting with others (Isaksson et al. 2020). Alteration in these abilities is presumed as impaired in SC. Negative alteration in SC is associated with increase in ASD symptoms and autistic trait (Isaksson et al. 2020). While explaining SC among adults with ASD, "theory of mind" (ToM) provides useful findings. ToM relates with the ability to recognize other's mental state to understand and predict people's behaviour. Recent research has recognized ToM as an important social cognition ability, which helps in making meaningful social interaction and maintaining interpersonal relationship (Baksh et al. 2020). ToM has cognitive and affective domains. Adults with ASD have both types of impairment (Murray et al. 2017). Recent advances show that children with ASD manifest preference to non-social stimuli over social stimuli. Gale et al. (2019) conducted an empirical study to test the social motivation of ASD children. They presented abstract moving geometrical figures (non-social stimuli) and films of faces of young adults (social stimuli) to ASD children. It was found that the children preferred geometrical figures over human faces. This finding supports that ASD children lack social motivation in the sense that preference of non-social stimuli over social stimuli signifies greater reinforcement strength of non-social stimuli and tendency to avoid social stimuli. Avoidance of social stimuli may lead to deficit attending faces and eyes of caregivers or listening human voices which may act as an additive factor of low social communication.

15.1.2 Non-social Cognition

There is a great research interest about the nature of impairment among children with ASD, and comparatively less researches have focused on the nature of impairment among adults with ASD. In children, largely social cognition impairment is a focal area of research, and non-social cognition deficit is an understudied aspect of it. It refers to reasoning, problem-solving, attention, vigilance, verbal learning and memory. Recently, non-social cognition was studied among adults with ASD. A meta-analytical review shows statistically largest impairment on information processing speed, followed by verbal learning, memory, reasoning and lastly problem-solving skills among adults with ASD (Velikonja et al. 2019). This finding clearly demonstrates that at different stages of life, ASD probably shows different kinds of impairment. However, the external validity of this finding is subjected to multi-cultural prospective studies.

15.2 Language and Speech Impairment

The second kind of impairment is related to language which is an important aspect of human cognition. Studies have reported that children with ASD have difficulty in producing the complex sentence structure specifically sentences with relative clause (e.g. The chocolate that Sam had yesterday, was made of dark chocolate and milk) (McGregor et al. 2012; Riches et al. 2010) and producing the repeated sound; therefore, they omit the speech sound (Cleland et al. 2010). Notably the reduction in the use of tense while sentence making and speaking is very common (Modyanova et al. 2017; Roberts et al. 2004; Tager-Flusberg 2015). Morphosyntactic deficit is another visible language deficiency in this case (Gladfelter and Barron 2020; Riches et al. 2012). Similar language deficiency is observed in developmental language disorder (DLD); therefore, the current scholarly debate is whether ASD and DLD are the categorically different disorders or they are on the same continuum (Gladfelter and Barron 2020). Adults with ASD also reported communication difficulty (Lewis et al. 2008). Recently, a qualitative study was conducted to examine the autistic adult's view of their communication skills and needs. Through thematic analysis of their experiential orientation, it was found that autistic adults presented a complex communication difficulty (e.g. inability to find the word while public speaking). This difficulty further exacerbate while conversing with strangers as compared to the people with spectrum. They experience intense anxiety while communicating (Cummins et al. 2020).

15.3 Intellectual Impairment

The third kind of impairment is intellectual impairment. The intellectual impairment and autistic symptoms are mostly not mutually independent of each other in ASD. For example, repetitive and restrictive behaviour (RRB) (e.g. typical movement) is found to be correlated with low non-verbal quotient (Bishop et al. 2013; Hirosawa et al. 2020; Riches et al. 2010). There exists negative correlation between RRBs and non-verbal IQ among ASD children (Kim and Lord 2010; Ray-Subramanian and Weismer 2012). In fact, the first description of autistic disorder given by Kanner (1943) included delayed intellectual development. Although Intellectual Disability (ID) is a separate disorder under DSM-5 as a Neurodevelopmental Disorder characterized by the significant impairment in intellectual functioning (IQ <70) and adaptive functioning prior to 18 years of age (Ropers 2010). Epidemiological studies report that 30% of ASD children also have ID. DSM-5 specifies the diagnosis of ASD "With or Without Intellectual Disability" (Thurm et al. 2019). Presence of RRBs in both the disorder makes them more proximal to each other. ASD can persist with or without ID; therefore, diagnosis requires more clinical expertise (Thurm et al. 2019).

15.4 Executive Dysfunction (ED)

Executive dysfunctioning is the fourth type of cognitive impairment among individuals with ASD. 41% to 78% of individuals with ASD experience issues related with executive functioning (EF) (Lynch et al. 2017). It impacts neurocognitive, psychosocial and behavioural aspects of ASD personalities (Leung et al. 2016; Pugliese et al. 2016). Executive functioning involves proper functioning of working memory, cognitive flexibility, inhibitory control and planning abilities (Christ et al. 2017). Working memory helps in active manipulation of sensory information for a relatively shorter period of time compared with long-term memory (LTM). Inhibitory control is the ability to suppress activation and processing of sensory information which could interfere with cognitive goals. Executive dysfunctions are operated by the prefrontal cortex (PFC), a part of the frontal cortex. The frontal lobe helps in memory, reasoning, problem-solving and decision-making. It is found that people with ASD irrespective of ages and functional level have this kind of impairment. Impairment in cognitive flexibility, planning, working memory and self-monitoring is the most prevalent among individuals with ASD (Cassidy et al. 2014; Zinke et al. 2010). A recent study in this context among children recorded highest impairment in organizing ability, followed by working memory, emotion control and self-monitoring. Significant difference was not found on executive dysfunction related to age differential of children. Therefore, it is suggested that executive dysfunctioning among ASD children remains stable across all ages (Alsaedi et al. 2020) (Fig. 15.1).

The following section covers the rehabilitation aspect of children and adults with ASD.

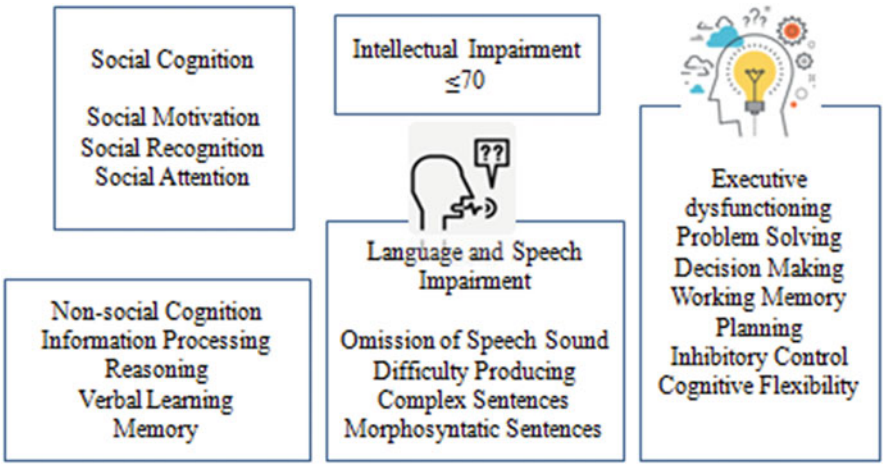


Fig. 15.1 Showing cognitive impairment in autism spectrum disorder

15.5 Rehabilitation

The meta-analytic review of epidemiological study shows less prevalence of ASD in Asia (Bangladesh 2018 0.76/1000, India 2017 2.19/1000, China 2014 2.75/1000, Nepal 2018 3.42/1000) compared to the European countries (Sweden 2011 14.4/1000, Poland 2014 5.29/1000, Germany 2012 6.50/1000) (Chiarotti and Venerosi 2020), but since Asian countries are more populous, therefore we could expect a rise in the prevalence rate. Thus, we consider that it is important to discuss the types of rehabilitation that is needed for children and adults with ASD (Fig. 15.2).

15.5.1 Dialectical Behaviour Therapy (DBT)

In the 1990s, dialectical behaviour therapy (DBT) emerged as a rehabilitative technique for suicidal behaviour and borderline personality disorder. But researches have found similar suicidal ideation in ASD patients (Hedley and Uljarević 2018; Segers and Rawana 2014). Hedley and Uljarević (2018) have found that 25% of the total ($N = 76$) adults with ASD had clinical range of depression and 20% had suicidal ideation. They also found that perceived tangible support was a protective factor against suicidal ideation. ASD patients manifest depressive thoughts also (Dickerson Mayes et al. 2014; Cassidy et al. 2014). In ASD, the deficit in emotion regulation and lack of control over affective state are associated with suicidal

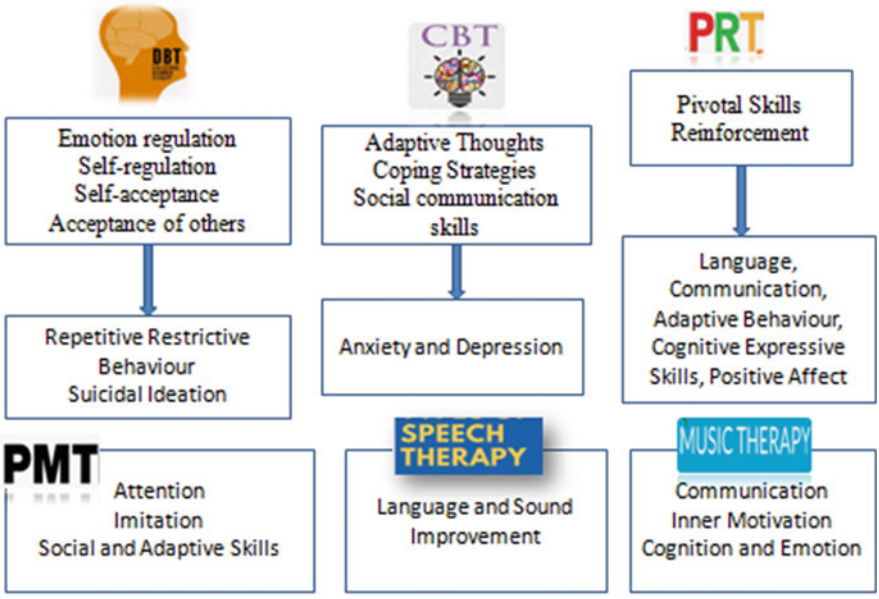


Fig. 15.2 Showing the rehabilitative techniques for autism spectrum disorder

ideation and attempts. Social anxiety is also a precursor for suicidal ideation. Therefore, DBT could be applied on them. This therapy is based on "dialectical therapeutic alliance" where the therapist teaches skills related to emotion regulation, self-regulation, self-acceptance and acceptance of other (Huntjens et al. 2020; Salsman and Linehan 2006). Learned emotion regulation reduces RRBs (repetitive restrictive behaviour) (Salsman and Linehan 2006). Current advances have proved the efficacy of DBT in reducing suicidal ideation. Through randomized single blind technique, it was found that DBT is effective in teaching emotion regulation that further decreases suicidal thoughts and attempts among patients with ASD (Huntjens et al. 2020). But the authors suggest conduction of empirical follow-up studies with repeated measure trials in case of such findings, which was the limitation of the above-mentioned study.

15.5.2 Cognitive Behaviour Therapy (CBT)

CBT is used to reduce the anxiety of ASD patients. Anxiety is seen as a comorbid symptom in ASD and observed since the conceptualization of the disorder 70 years ago till today (Uljarević et al. 2016). According to Özerk and Cardinal (2020), ASD is more commonly observed among pre-school and school-age children. The basic premise of CBT is that there is an association between the way we think (cognition) and the way we act (behaviour). Therefore, non-adaptive thoughts and coping strategies perpetuate negative affect like anxiety (Spain and Happe 2019). A large number of ASD patients are refereed for CBT sessions, but the effectiveness among ASD patients depends on building therapeutic alliance, which requires socio-communication characteristics of the patients. Since ASD children and adults have difficulty in socio-communicative skills and introspecting own thought, therefore, it is very difficult to develop alliance with them (Kinnaird et al. 2019). By and large, cotemporary research supports CBT as the most widely used psychoeducation intervention for anxiety reduction among school-age children with ASD (Hillman et al. 2020). On the contrary, very few studies have used CBT to alleviate the depression co-occurring with ASD in adults. Restrictive and repetitive behaviour and thinking cause depressive symptoms (Gotham et al. 2014). A pilot study with randomized controlled group design found low-intensity CBT as feasible and effective for alleviating severe depression of adults with ASD (Russell et al. 2020).

15.5.3 Pivotal Response Treatment (PRT) Approach

PRT is not an independent type of therapy, but it is a technique derived from applied behaviour analysis (ABA). The term "pivotal" in this technique refers to "the target skills which when successfully acquired can elicit more widespread positive clinical gains in the Childs' other domain of functioning" (Lei and Ventola 2017). PRT is widely in used to teach and improve cognitive and language skills of ASD children. It is a natural behavioural intervention that aims at the pivotal skills combined with

motivational reinforcement and is found to benefit most of the children with ASD (Verschuur et al. 2020; Koegel et al. 2016). It improves language, communication, maladaptive behaviour, cognitive expressive skills and positive affect and decreased social avoidance and repetitive vocalization (Verschuur et al. 2020; Fossum et al. 2018).

15.5.4 Sensory-Motor Training

Sensory-motor abnormalities particularly postural sway are the most visible features of some ASD children and adults, along with social communication and interaction deficit (Bruchhage et al. 2018; Lim et al. 2018; Mosconi and Sweeney 2015). Recently, poor postural control was found to be associated with poor somatosensory input in children with ASD (Bucci et al. 2018; Gouleme et al. 2017). Largely, the problem is found in the cerebellum which results in impaired integration of somatosensory input through functional neuroimaging (Bruchhage et al. 2018). Recent advances in this connection are aiming to decrease postural sway and postural control by using different sensory-motor training programs. Travers et al. (2013) conducted a study in which video games were implied in biofeedback techniques for balance postural training of such children. The results showed significant improvement postural sway and better postural stability. Caldani et al. (2020) have provided preliminary evidence by demonstrating positive impact of short-rehabilitation training program on postural control in children with ASD. The study consisted of 20 children in two groups—group 1 and group 2 (G1 & G2)—matched on age, IQ and sex. G1 was given short posture rehabilitation training, while G2 served as the control group. Their posture was measured two times, before training is given—time 1 (T1)—and after giving the training, time 2 (T2) They found that T1 measurement was the same in both the groups; however, at T2, postural control and stability improved in the treatment group (G1).

15.5.5 Parent-Mediated Intervention (PMI)

Parent-mediated training programmes are used for young children of ASD. Parents learn the therapy from therapists and provide support to their children, e.g. joint attention therapy, social communication therapy and behaviour therapy. Manoharan et al. (2019) studied the impact of Brief Parent-Mediated Intervention on joint attention, imitation and social and adaptive skills of children with ASD living in South India. They found that after 12 weeks of training, parents reported improvement on children's outcome measures as compared to the control group. This study suggested effectiveness of the parent-mediated intervention for attention, imitation and social adaptive skills. Despite documenting evidence on PMI outcomes, current studies suggest that parental characteristics play a crucial role in PMI outcome such as parental stress, socio-economic status and autism phenotype which are related to varying effects of PMI (Shalev et al. 2020).

15.5.6 Speech Therapy Intervention

Communication in inherent social behaviour and given the diagnosis of ASD, speech is a prominent disability. In addition to pharmacological treatment for language improvement, speech therapy is used to improve the language deficiency of ASD children and adolescents. Speech-related issues such as echolalia, improper use of pronouns, improper grammatical structure of sentence, etc. are commonly observed (Oliveria et al. 2018). Although language deficiency is the major symptom of ASD, ASD patients need SLPs—speech language pathologists. However, it has been found that SLPs are not regularly used in the routine assessment of the speech of these children (Hus 2017). Insufficient training in using language assessment tools is a probable reason (Gillon et al. 2017). Multidisciplinary approach is recommended for the assessment of ASD which includes the involvement of SLPs along with physical and mental health professionals (Volkmar et al. 2014).

15.5.7 Music Therapy (MT)

Conceptually defining the term, "music therapy" is considerably insoluble because this therapy involves interdisciplinary component "music" and "therapy" (Eren 2017). The American Music Therapy Association (AMTA) has defined it as "the clinical and evidence-based use of music interventions to accomplish individualized goals within a therapeutic relationship by a credentialed professional who has completed an approved music therapy program". There are a number of approaches to MT, e.g. Orff approach to music therapy (OMT), the Kodaly approach to music therapy (KMT), the Dalcroze approach to music therapy (DMT), Kindermusik and music therapy (KinMT), psychodynamic approach to music therapy (PMT), behavioural approach to music therapy (BMT), music therapy in wellness (MTW), neurologic music therapy (NMT), biomedical music therapy (BioMT), sensory integration approach to music therapy (SIMT), etc. (Eren 2017). But the profile study of most preferred and effective music therapy for children with ASD shows that behaviour approach and sensory integration approach are the most effective ones. It involves singing, bodily movement, dancing and communicating while listening to music (American Music Therapy Association 2005). Music therapy has always given encouraging results when employed to improve the physical, emotional, cognitive and social requirements of children with developmental disability. Findings of previous studies have mentioned the application of music therapy for children with ASD to facilitate a variety of skills such as communication, to maintain relationship with adults, increased inner motivation for mastery, etc. (Stevens and Clark 1969; Yinger and Gooding 2014). A recent study has tested the impact of active music therapy and passive music therapy among children with ASD. Bharathi et al. (2019) conducted an empirical study to examine the impact of active MT and passive MT on social skills of children with ASD in South India. Along with listening to music, the active MT group was required to dance, play music instrument and sing songs. However, the passive MT group listened to music

alone. Findings showed the former group scored high on perspective-taking ability, initiating interaction, responding to others while communicating, maintaining relationships and interaction. Therefore, it is suggested that MT has a significant influence on improving social skills of ASD children.

15.5.8 Sensory Integration Therapy

Sensory integration therapy is used as an occupational therapy to make children and adults with ASD learn the adaptive sensory and motor ability, according to the environmental demands. This therapy involves tasks which require sensory-motor coordination such as use of deep busing, bounce pads, scooter boards, weighted vest and clothing, etc. (Shaw 2002). A recent systematic review of those interventions shows limited efficacy (Bodison and Parham 2018). The impact of this kind of therapy shall be seen with the age-related perspective. For example, Ayres Sensory Integration (ASI) is found effective for children with ASD whose age ranges between 4 and 12 years (Schoen et al. 2019). ASI is a sensory integration intervention used for children, in which the therapist identifies the sensory-motor issue by using an assessment tool. These issues must interfere with the functional ability of the child at home and in school. After that, intervention is given largely through designing a play.

15.6 Conclusion

This chapter focuses on the cognitive impairment (i.e. social cognition, non-social cognition, language and speech impairment, intellectual impairment) and executive dysfunction and rehabilitation (i.e. dialectical behaviour therapy, cognitive behaviour therapy, pivotal response treatment approach, sensory-motor training, parent-mediated intervention, speech therapy intervention, music therapy and sensory integration therapy) aspects of children and adults with ASD. Findings of recent studies suggest that autism spectrum disorder is one of the most vulnerable disorders. The functional ability of ASD can be rehabilitated by means of various non-pharmacological interventions.

References

Alsaedi RH, Carrington S, Watters JJ (2020) Behavioural and neuropsychological executive functions in children with autism spectrum disorder in the Gulf regions. Brain Sci 10:120. https://doi.org/10.3390/brainsci10020120

American Music Therapy Association (2005) AMTA member sourcebook. American Music Therapy Association, Inc., Silver Spring, MD

American Psychiatric Association (2013) Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders, 5th edn. American Psychiatric Publishing, Arlington, VA

Baksh RA, Abrahams S, Bertlich M, Cameron R, Jany S, Dorrian T, Baron-Cohen S, Allison C, Smith P, MacPherson SE, Auyeung B (2020) Social cognition in adults with autism spectrum disorders: validation of the Edinburgh Social Cognition Test (ESCoT). Clin Neuropsychol. https://doi.org/10.1080/13854046.2020.1737236

Barbeu WE (2017) Neonatal and regressive forms of autism: disease with similar symptoms but a different etiology. Med Hypotheses 109:46–52. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mehy.2017.09.015

Bharathi G, Venugopal A, Vellingiri B (2019) Music therapy as a therapeutic tool in improving the social skills of autistic children. Egypt J Neurol Psychiatry Neurosurg 55:44. https://doi.org/10.1186/s41983-019-0091-x

Bishop SL, Hus V, Duncan A, Huerta M, Gotham K, Pickles A, Kreiger A, Buja A, Lund S, Lord C (2013) Subcategories of restricted and repetitive behaviors in children with autism spectrum disorders. J Autism Dev Disord 43(6):1287–1297. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10803-012-1671-0

Bodison SC, Parham LD (2018) Specific sensory techniques and sensory environmental modifications for children and youth with sensory integration difficulties: a systematic review. Am J Occup Ther 72(1):11. https://doi.org/10.5014/ajot.2018.029413

Bruchhage MMK, Bucci MP, Becker EBE (2018) Cerebellar involvement in autism and ADHD. Handb Clin Neurol 155:61–72. https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-444-64189-2.00004-4

Bucci MP, Goulème N, Dehouck D, Stordeur C, Acquaviva E, Septier M, Lefebvre A, Gerard CL, Peyre H, Delorme R (2018) Interactions between eye movements and posture in children with neurodevelopmental disorders. Int J Dev Neurosci 71:61–67. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijdevneu.2018.07.010

Caldani S, Afzori P, Peyre H, Delorme R, Bucci MP (2020) Short-rehabilitation training program may improve postural control in children with autism spectrum disorders: preliminary evidences. Sci Rep 10:7917. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-020-64922-4

Cassidy S, Bradley P, Robinson J, Allison C, McHugh M, Baron-Cohen S (2014) Suicidal ideation and suicide plans or attempts in adults with Asperger's syndrome attending a specialist diagnostic clinic: a clinical cohort study. Lancet Psychiatry 1:142–147. https://doi.org/10.1016/S2215-0366(14)70248-2

Charman T, Pickles A, Simonoff E, Chandler S, Loucas T, Baird G (2011) IQ in children with autism spectrum disorders: data from the Special Needs and Autism Project (SNAP). Psychol Med 41(3):619–627. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0033291710000991

Chiarotti F, Venerosi A (2020) Epidemiology of autism spectrum disorder: a review of world wide prevalence estimates since 2014. Brain Sci 10(5):274. https://doi.org/10.3390/brainschi10050274

Christ SE, Stichter JP, O'connor V, Bodner K, Moffitt AJ, Herzog MJ (2017) Social skills intervention participation and association improvements in executive function performance. Autism Res Treat 2017:584385. https://doi.org/10.1155/2017/5843851

Cleland J, Gibbon FE, Peppé SJ, O'Hare A, Rutherford M (2010) Phonetic and phonological errors in children with high functioning autism and Asperger syndrome. Int J Speech Lang Pathol 12(1):69–76. https://doi.org/10.3109/17549500903469980

Cummins C, Pellieano E, Crane L (2020) Autistic adult's view of their communication skills and needs. Int J Lang Commun Disord 55(5):678–689. https://doi.org/10.1111/1460-6984.12552

Dickerson Mayes S, Baweja R, Calhoun SL, Syed E, Mahr F, Siddiqui F (2014) Suicide ideation and attempts and bullying in children and adolescents: psychiatric and general population samples. Crisis 35:301–309. https://doi.org/10.1027/0227-5910/a000264

Eren B (2017) Profiles of most preferred and the most effective music therapy approaches being utilized with children with autism spectrum disorders according to the opinions of music therapist in the U.S. J Educ Pract 8(20). ISSN-222-1735

Fossum KL, Williams L, Garon N, Bryson SE, Smith IM (2018) Pivotal response treatment for preschoolers with autism spectrum disorder: defining a predictor profile. Autism Res 11:153–165. https://doi.org/10.1002/aur.1859

Gale CM, Eikeseth S, Klintwall L (2019) Children with autism show atypical preference for non-social stimuli. Sci Rep 9:10355. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-019-46705-8

Gillon G, Hyter Y, Fernandes FD, Ferman S, Hus Y, Petinou K, Segal O, Tumanova T, Vogindroukas I, Westby C, Westerveld M (2017) International survey of speech-language pathologists' practices in working with children with autism spectrum disorder. Folia Phoniatr Logop 69(1–2):8–19. https://doi.org/10.1159/000479063

Gladfelter A, Barron KL (2020) How children with autism spectrum disorder, developmental disorder and typical language learn to produce global and local semantics. Brain Sci 10 (4):231. https://doi.org/10.3390/brainsci10040231

Gotham K, Bishop SL, Brunnwaser S, Lord C (2014) Rumination and perceived impairment associated with depressive symptoms in verbal adolescents and adults autism spectrum disorder sample. Autism Res 7(3):381–389. https://doi.org/10.1002/aur.1377

Gouleme N, Scheid I, Peyre H, Seassau M, Maruani A, Clarke J, Delorme R, Bucci MP (2017) Postural control and emotion in children with autism spectrum disorders. Transl Neurosci 8:158–166. https://doi.org/10.1515/tnsci-2017-0022

Happe F, Cook JL, Bird G (2017) The structure of social cognition: interdependence of sociocognitive process. Annu Rev Psychol 68:243–267. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev-psy-010416-044046

Hedley D, Uljarević M (2018) Systematic review of suicide in autism spectrum disorder: current trends and implications. Curr Dev Disord Rep 5:65–76. https://doi.org/10.1007/s40474-018-0133-6

Hillman K, Dix K, Ahmed K, Lietz P, Trevitt J, O'Grady E, Uljarevic M, Vivanti G, Headley D (2020) Interventions for anxiety in mainstream school-aged children with autism spectrum disorder: a systematic review. Campbell Syst Rev 16(2):e1086. https://doi.org/10.1002/c12.1086

Hirosawa T, Kontani K, Fukai M, Kameya M, Soma D, Hino S, Kitamura T, Hasegawa C, An K, Takahashi T, Yoshimura Y, Kikuchi M (2020) Different associations between intelligence and social cognition in children with and without autism spectrum disorders. PLoS One 15(8): e0235380. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0235380

Huntjens A, van den Bosch LMCW, Sizoo B, Kerkhof A, Huibers MJH, van der Gaag M (2020) The effect of dialectical behaviour therapy in autism spectrum patients with suicidality and/ or self-destructive behaviour (DIASS): study protocol for a multicentre randomized controlled trial. BMC Psychiatry 20(1):127. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12888-020

Hus Y (2017) Issues in identification and assessment of children with autism and a proposed resource toolkit for speech-language pathologists. Folia Phoniatr Logop 69:27–37. https://doi.org/10.1159/000477398

Hyman SL, Levy SE, Myers SM (2020) Identification, evaluation, and management of children with autism spectrum disorder. Pediatrics 145:e20193447. https://doi.org/10.1542/peds.2019-3447

Isaksson J, Westeinde AV, Cauvet E, Kuja-Halkola R, Lundin K, Neufeld J, Willfors C, Bölte C (2020) Social cognition in autism and other neurodevelopmental disorders: a co-twin control study. J Autism Dev Disord 49:2838–2848. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10803-019-04001-4

Kanner L (1943) Autistic disturbances of affective contact. Nervous Child 2:217–250

Kim SH, Lord C (2010) Restricted and repetitive behaviors in toddlers and preschoolers with autism spectrum disorders based on the autism diagnostic observation schedule (ADOS). Autism Res 3:162–173. https://doi.org/10.1002/aur.142

Kinnaird E, Stewart C, Tchanturia K (2019) Investigating alexithymia in autism: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Eur Psychiatry 55:80–89. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.eurpsy.2018.09.004

Koegel LK, Ashbaugh K, Koegel RL (2016) Pivotal response treatment. In: Lang R, Hancock T, Singh N (eds) Early intervention for young children with autism spectrum disorder. Springer, Cham, pp 85–112. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-30925_4

Lei J, Ventola P (2017) Pivotal response treatment for autism spectrum disorder: current perspectives. Neuropsychiatr Dis Treat 13:1613–1626. https://doi.org/10.2147/NDT.S120710

Leung R, Vogan V, Powell T, Anagnostou E, Taylor M (2016) The role of executive functions in social impairment in autism spectrum disorder. Child Neuropsychol 22:336–344. https://doi.org/10.1080/09297049.2015.1005066

Lewis FM, Woodyatt GC, Murdoch BE (2008) Linguistic and pragmatic language skills in adults with autism spectrum disorder: a pilot study. Res Autism Spectr Disord 2(1):176–187. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rasd.2007.05.002

Lim YH, Lee HC, Falkmer T, Allison GT, Tan T, Lee WL, Morris SL (2018) Effect of visual information on postural control in adults with autism spectrum disorder. J Autism Dev Disord 49(12):4731–4739. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10803-018-3634-6

Lynch C, Breeden A, You X, Ludlum R, Gaillard W, Kenworthy L, Vaidya C (2017) Executive dysfunction in autism spectrum disorder is associated with a failure to modulate frontoparietal-insular hub architecture. Biol Psychiatry 2:537–545. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bpsc.2017.03.008

Manoharan H, Kandasamy P, Chandrasekaran V, Rajkumar RP (2019) Brief parent-mediated intervention for children with autism spectrum disorder: a feasibility study from South India. J Autism Dev Disord 49(8):3146–3158. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10803-019-0432-x

Matson J, Wilkins J, Fostad J (2010) Children with autism spectrum disorders: a comparison of those who regress vs those who do not. Dev Neurorehabil 13(1):7–45. https://doi.org/10.3109/17518420903107984

McGregor KK, Berns AJ, Owen AJ, Michels SA, Duff D, Bahnsen AJ, Loyd M (2012) Association between syntax and the lexicon among children with or without ASD and language impairment. J Autism Dev Disord 42(1):35–47. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10803-011-1210-4

Modyanova N, Perovic A, Wexler K (2017) Grammar is differentially impaired in subgroups of autism spectrum disorders: evidence from an investigation of tense marking and morphosyntax. Front Psychol 28(8):320. https://doi.org/10.3389/fpsyg.2017.00320

Mosconi MW, Sweeney JA (2015) Sensorimotor dysfunctions as primary features of autism spectrum disorders. Sci China Life Sci 58(10):1016–1023. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11427-015-4894-4

Murray K, Johnston K, Cunnane H, Kerr C, Spain D, Gillan N, Hammond N, Murphy D, Happe F (2017) A new test of advanced theory of mind: the strange stories film task captures social processing differences in adults with autism spectrum disorders. Autism Res 10(6):1120–1132. https://doi.org/10.1002/aur.1744

Oliveria TRS, Nascimento AA, Pellican AD, Torres GMX, de-Silva K, Guedes-Granzotti RB (2018) Speech therapy intervention in a teenager with autism spectrum disorder: a case report. Rev CEFA 20(6). https://doi.org/10.1590/1982-021620182068518

Özerk K, Cardinal D (2020) Prevalence of autism/ASD among preschool and school-age children in Norway. Contemp School Psychol 24:419–428. https://doi.org/10.1007/s40688-020-00302-z

Pugliese C, Anthony L, Strang J, Dudley K, Wallace G, Naiman D, Kenworthy L (2016) Longitudinal examination of adaptive behavior in autism spectrum disorders: influence of executive function. J Autism Dev Disord 46:467–477. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10803-015-2548-5

Ray-Subramanian CE, Weismer SE (2012) Receptive and expressive language as predictors of restricted and repetitive behaviors in young children with autism spectrum disorders. J Autism Dev Disord 42(10):2113–2120. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10803-012-1463-6

Riches NG, Loucas T, Baird G, Charman T, Simonoff E (2010) Sentence repetition in adolescents with specific language impairments and autism: an investigation of complex syntax. Int J Lang Commun Disord 45:47–60. https://doi.org/10.31019/13682802647676

Riches NG, Loucas T, Baird G, Charman T, Simonoff E (2012) Interpretation of compound nouns by adolescents with specific language impairment and autism spectrum disorders: an investigation of phenotypic overlap. Int J Speech Lang Pathol 14(4):307–317. https://doi.org/10.3109/17549507.2012.679313

Roberts JA, Rice ML, Tager-Flusberg H (2004) Tense making in children with autism. Appl Psycholinguistic 25:429–448. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0142716404001201

Ropers HH (2010) Genetics of early onset cognitive impairment. Annu Rev Genomics Hum Genet 11:161–187. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev-genom-082509-141640

Russell A, Gaunt DM, Cooper K, Barton S, Horwood J, Kessler D, Metcalfe C, Ensum I, Ingham B, Parr JR, Rai D, Wiles N (2020) The feasibility of low-intensity psychological therapy for depression co-occurring with autism in adults: the Autism Depression Trial (ADEPT)—a

pilot randomised controlled trial. Autism 24(6):1360–1372. https://doi.org/10.1177/1362361319889272

Salsman NL, Linehan MM (2006) Dialectical-behavioural therapy for borderline personality disorder. Prim Psychiatry 13(5):51–58

Schoen SA, Lane SJ, Mailloux Z, May-Benson T, Parham LD, Smith Roley S, Schaaf RC (2019) A systematic review of ayres sensory integration intervention for children with autism. Autism Res 12(1):6–19. https://doi.org/10.1002/aur.2046

Segers M, Rawana J (2014) What do we know about suicidality in autism spectrum disorders? A systematic review. Autism Res 7(4):507–521. https://doi.org/10.1002/aur.1375

Shalev RA, Lavine C, Di Martino A (2020) A systematic review of the role of parent characteristics in parent-mediated interventions for children with autism spectrum disorder. J Dev Phys Disabil 32:1–21. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10882-018-9641-x

Shaw SR (2002) A school psychologist investigates sensory integration therapies: promise, possibility, and the art of placebo. NASP Communiqué 31(2):5–6

Skuse DH, Mandy W, Steer C, Miller LL, Goodman R, Lawrence K, Emond A, Golding J (2009) Social communication competence and functional adaptation in a general population of children: preliminary evidence for sex-by-verbal IQ differential risk. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 48(2):128–137. https://doi.org/10.1097/CHI.0b013e31819176b8

Spain D, Happe F (2019) How to optimize cognitive behaviour therapy (CBT) for people with autism spectrum disorder (ASD): a Delphi study. J Rat Emo Cognitive Behav Ther 38:184–208. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10942-019-00335-1

Stevens E, Clark F (1969) Music therapy in the treatment of autistic children. J Music Ther 6 (4):98–104. https://doi.org/10.1093/jmt/6.4.98

Suthar N, Jains S, Nebhinani N, Singhai K (2020) Autism spectrum disorder and its differential diagnosis: a nonsological update. Indian Assoc Child Adolesc Ment Health 16:86–101

Tager-Flusberg H (2015) Defining language impairments in a subgroup of children with autism spectrum disorder. Sci China Life Sci 58:1044–1052. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11427-012-4297-8

Thurm A, Farmer C, Salzman E, Lord C, Bishop S (2019) State of the field: differentiating intellectual disability from autism spectrum disorder. Front Psych 10:526. https://doi.org/10.3389/fpsyt.2019.00526

Travers BG, Powell PS, Klinger LG, Klinger MR (2013) Motor difficulties in autism spectrum disorder: linking symptom severity and postural stability. J Autism Dev Disord 43 (7):1568–1583. PMID: 23132272. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10803-012-1702-x

Uljarević M, Nuske H, Vivanti G (2016) Anxiety in autism spectrum disorder. In: Mazzone L, Vitiello B (eds) Psychiatric symptoms and comorbidities in autism spectrum disorder. Springer, Basel, pp 21–38

Velikonja T, Fell AK, Velthorst E (2019) Patterns of non-social and social cognitive functioning in adults with autism spectrum disorder. JAMA Psychiatry 76(2):135–151. https://doi.org/10.1001/jamapsychiatry.2018.3645

Verschuur R, Huskens B, Korzilius H, Bakker L, Snijder M, Didden R (2020) Pivotal response treatment: a study into the relationship between therapist characteristics and fidelity of implementation. Autism 24(2):499–514. https://doi.org/10.1177/1362361319876213

Volkmar F, Siegel M, Woodbury-Smith M, King B, McCracken J, State M (2014) Practice parameter for the assessment and treatment of children and adolescents with autism spectrum disorder. J Am Acad Child Adolesc Psychiatry 53(2):237–257. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jaac.2013.10.013

Yinger OS, Gooding L (2014) Music therapy and music medicine for children and adolescents. Child Adolesc Psychiatr Clin N Am 23(3):535–553. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.chc.2013.03.003

Zinke K, Fries E, Altgassen M, Kirschbaum C, Dettenborn L, Kliegel M (2010) Visuospatial short-term memory explains deficits in tower task planning in high-functioning children with autism spectrum disorder. Child Neuropsychol 16:229–241. https://doi.org/10.1080/09297040903559648